Highway Hydrology

HDS 2

September 1996

Metric Version

Welcome to HDS 2-Highway Hydrology

Table of Contents

Tech Doc

DISCLAIMER: During the editing of this manual for conversion to an electronic format, the intent has been to keep the document text as close to the original as possible. In the process of scanning and converting, some changes may have been made inadvertently.

Acknowledgements:

This manual is a revision of Hydrologic Engineering Circular No. 19, which was written by Mr. Frank D. Masch. Some of the contents of HEC-19 are used in this revision and we appreciate the important contributions of Mr. Masch. Drafts of this manual were reviewed by Dr. Gary A. Lewis, Wilbert O. Thomas, Jr. (U.S. Geological Survey), and Lawrence J. Harrison. Their comments were very helpful and represented significant contributions. The figures were drafted by Ms. Alison R. Montgomery and Ms. Florence Kemerer. We are deeply grateful to Ms. Florence Kemerer who has faithfully and with great skill typed many drafts and the final manuscript.

Table of Contents for HDS 2-Highway Hydrology (Metric)

List of Figures List of Tables List of Equations

Cover Page : HDS 2-Highway Hydrology (Metric)

Chapter 1 : HDS 2 Introduction
- 1.1 Hydrologic Cycle
- 1.2 Hydrology of Highway Stream Crossings
  - 1.2.1 Elements of the Hydrologic Cycle Pertinent to Stream Crossings
  - 1.2.2 Overview of Hydrology as Applied to Stream Crossings
- 1.3 General Data Requirements
- 1.4 Solution Methods
  - 1.4.1 Deterministic Methods
  - 1.4.2 Statistical Methods
- 1.5 Analysis versus Synthesis
  - 1.5.1 A Conceptual Representation of Analysis and Synthesis
  - 1.5.2 Examples of Analysis and Synthesis in Hydrologic Design

Chapter 2 : HDS 2 The Runoff Process
- 2.1 Precipitation
  - 2.1.1 Forms of Precipitation
  - 2.1.2 Types of Precipitations (by Origin)
    - 2.1.2.1 Convective Storms
    - 2.1.2.2 Orographic Storms
    - 2.1.2.3 Cyclonic Storms
    - 2.1.2.4 Hurricanes
  - 2.1.3 Characteristics of Rainfall Events
  - 2.1.4 Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves
- 2.2 Hydrologic Abstractions
  - 2.2.1 Evaporation
  - 2.2.2 Transpiration
  - 2.2.3 Interception
  - 2.2.4 Infiltration
  - 2.2.5 Depression Storage
  - 2.2.6 Sheet Flow Storage
  - 2.2.7 Total Abstraction Methods
- 2.3 Characteristics of Runoff
  - 2.3.1 Peak Discharge
  - 2.3.2 Time Variation (Hydrograph)

- 2.3.3 Stage-Discharge
- 2.3.4 Total Volume
- 2.3.5 Frequency
- 2.3.6 Return Period
- 2.4 Effects of Basin Characteristics on Runoff
  - 2.4.1 Drainage Area
  - 2.4.2 Slope
  - 2.4.3 Hydraulic Roughness
  - 2.4.4 Storage
  - 2.4.5 Drainage Density
  - 2.4.6 Channel Length
  - 2.4.7 Antecedent Moisture Conditions
  - 2.4.8 Other Factors
- 2.5 Illustration of the Runoff Process
  - 2.5.1 Rainfall Input
  - 2.5.2 Interception
  - 2.5.3 Depression Storage
  - 2.5.4 Infiltration
  - 2.5.5 Rainfall Excess
  - 2.5.6 Detention Storage
  - 2.5.7 Local Runoff
  - 2.5.8 Outflow Hydrograph
- 2.6 Travel Time
  - 2.6.1 Time of Concentration
  - 2.6.2 Sheet-Flow Travel Time
  - 2.6.3 Velocity Method

Chapter 3 : HDS 2 Hydrologic Data

- 3.1 Collection and Compilation of Data
  - 3.1.1 Site Investigations and Field Surveys
  - 3.1.2 Sources of Other Data
    - 3.1.2.1 Streamflow Data
    - 3.1.2.2 Precipitation Data
    - 3.1.2.3 Soil Type Data
    - 3.1.2.4 Land-Use Data
    - 3.1.2.5 Miscellaneous Basic Data
    - 3.1.2.6 National Water Data Exchange
- 3.2 Adequacy of Data
- 3.3 Presentations of Data and Analysis
  - 3.3.1 Documentation

- 3.3.2 Indexing

Chapter 4 : HDS 2 Frequency Analysis of Gaged Data Part I

- 4.1 Record Length Requirements
- 4.2 Statistical Character of Floods
  - 4.2.1 Analysis of Annual and Partial-Duration Series
  - 4.2.2 Detection of Nonhomogeneity in the Annual Flood Series
  - 4.2.3 Arrangement by Geographic Location
  - 4.2.4 Probability Concepts
  - 4.2.5 Return Period
  - 4.2.6 Estimation of Parameters
  - 4.2.7 Frequency Analysis Concepts
    - 4.2.7.1 Frequency Histograms
    - 4.2.7.2 Central Tendency
    - 4.2.7.3 Variability
    - 4.2.7.4 Skewness
    - 4.2.7.5 Generalized and Weighted Skew
  - 4.2.8 Probability Distribution Functions
  - 4.2.9 Plotting Position Formulas

Chapter 4 : HDS 2 Frequency Analysis of Gaged Data Part II

- 4.3 Standard Frequency Distributions
  - 4.3.1 Normal Distribution
    - 4.3.1.1 Standard Normal Distribution
    - 4.3.1.2 Frequency Analysis for a Normal Distribution
    - 4.3.1.3 Plotting Sample Data
    - 4.3.1.4 Estimation with the Frequency Curve
  - 4.3.2 Log-Normal Distribution
    - 4.3.2.1 Procedure
    - 4.3.2.2 Estimation
  - 4.3.3 Gumbel Extreme Value Distribution
  - 4.3.4 Log-Pearson Type III Distribution
    - 4.3.4.1 Procedure
    - 4.3.4.2 Estimation
  - 4.3.5 Evaluation of Flood Frequency Predictions
    - 4.3.5.1 Standard Error of Estimate
    - 4.3.5.2 Confidence Limits

Chapter 4 : HDS 2 Frequency Analysis of Gaged Data Part III

- 4.3.6 Other Data Considerations in Frequency Analysis
  - 4.3.6.1 Outliers

- 4.3.6.2 Historical Data
- 4.3.6.3 Incomplete Records and Zero Flows
- 4.3.6.4 Mixed Populations
- 4.3.6.5 Two-Station Comparison
- 4.3.7 Sequence of Flood Frequency Calculations
- 4.3.8 Other Methods for Estimating Flood Frequency
- 4.3.9 Low-flow Frequency Analysis
- 4.4 Risk Assessment
  - 4.4.1 Binomial Distribution
  - 4.4.2 Flood Risk

Chapter 5 : HDS 2 Peak Flow Determination for Ungaged Sites

- 5.1 Regional Regression Equations
  - 5.1.1 Analyses Procedure
  - 5.1.2 USGS Regression Equations
    - 5.1.2.1 Assessing Prediction Accuracy
    - 5.1.2.2 Comparison with Gaged Estimates
    - 5.1.2.3 Considerations in Application
  - 5.1.3 FHWA Regression Equations
- 5.2 Index Flood Method
  - 5.2.1 Procedure for Analysis
  - 5.2.2 Other Considerations
- 5.3 Peak-Discharge Equations for Ungaged Locations
  - 5.3.1 Rational Formula
    - 5.3.1.1 Assumptions
    - 5.3.1.2 Estimating Input Requirements
  - 5.3.2 SCS Graphical Peak Discharge Method
    - 5.3.2.1 Runoff Depth Estimation
    - 5.3.2.2 Soil Group Classification
    - 5.3.2.3 Cover Complex Classification
    - 5.3.2.4 Curve Number Tables
    - 5.3.2.5 Estimation of CN Values for Urban Land Uses
    - 5.3.2.6 Effect of Unconnected Impervious Area on Curve Numbers
    - 5.3.2.7 Ia/P Parameter
    - 5.3.2.8 Peak Discharge Estimation
  - 5.3.3 Other Peak Flow Methods
- 5.4 Peak Discharge Envelope Curves
- 5.5 National Flood Frequency Program
  - 5.5.1 Background
  - 5.5.2 Applicability and Limitations
  - 5.5.3 Hydrologic Flood Regions

- 5.5.4 Local Urban Equations

Chapter 6 : HDS 2 Determination of Flood Hydrographs Part I

- 6.1 Unit Hydrograph Analysis
  - 6.1.1 Assumptions
  - 6.1.2 Unit Hydrograph Definitions
  - 6.1.3 Convolution
  - 6.1.4 Analysis of Unit Hydrographs
    - 6.1.4.1 Base Flow Separation
    - 6.1.4.2 Determination of the Unit Hydrograph
    - 6.1.4.3 Estimation of Losses
    - 6.1.4.4 Rainfall Excess Hyetograph and Duration
    - 6.1.4.5 Illustration of the UH Analysis Process
  - 6.1.5 Derivation of a Unit Hydrograph From a Complex Storm
  - 6.1.6 Averaging Storm-Event Unit Hydrographs

Chapter 6 : HDS 2 Determination of Flood Hydrographs Part II

- 6.2 Development of a Design Storm
  - 6.2.1 Constant-Intensity Design storm
  - 6.2.2 The SCS 24-Hour Storm Distributions
  - 6.2.3 Depth-Area Adjustments
  - 6.2.4 Design Storm from Measured Storm Data
  - 6.2.5 Design Storm by Triangular Hyetograph
- 6.3 Design Hydrograph Synthesis
  - 6.3.1 S-Hydrograph Method
  - 6.3.2 Snyder Unit Hydrograph
  - 6.3.3 SCS Unit Hydrograph
  - 6.3.4 Rainfall Excess Determination: SCS Method
- 6.4 Other Considerations
  - 6.4.1 Unit Hydrograph Limitations
  - 6.4.2 Time-Area Unit Hydrograph
  - 6.4.3 Hydrograph Development Using Assumptions Inherent in the Rational Method.
  - 6.4.4 Design Hydrographs by Transposition

Chapter 7 : HDS 2 Hydrograph Routing

- 7.1 Channel Routing
  - 7.1.1 Muskingum Routing Method
  - 7.1.2 Kinematic Wave Method
  - 7.1.3 Muskingum-Cunge Method
  - 7.1.4 Modified Att-Kin Method

- 7.1.5 Application of Routing Methods
- 7.2 Reservoir Routing
  - 7.2.1 Required Functions for Storage Routing
  - 7.2.2 The Storage Indication Curve
  - 7.2.3 Input Requirements for the Storage-Indication Method
  - 7.2.4 Computational Procedure

Chapter 8 : HDS 2 Urbanization and Other Factors Affecting Peak Discharges and Hydrographs

- 8.1 Urbanization
- 8.2 USGS Urban Watershed Studies
  - 8.2.1 Peak Discharge Equations
  - 8.2.2 Basin Development Factor
  - 8.2.3 Effects of Future Urbanization
  - 8.2.4 Hydrograph Estimation
- 8.3 Index Adjustment of Flood Records
  - 8.3.1 Index Adjustment Method for Urbanization
  - 8.3.2 Adjustment Procedure
- 8.4 Channelization
- 8.5 Detention Storage
- 8.6 Diversion and Dam Construction
- 8.7 Natural Disasters

Chapter 9 : HDS 2 Arid Lands Hydrology

- 9.1 Zero-Flood Records
- 9.2 Transmission Losses
  - 9.2.1 Volume Estimation
  - 9.2.2 Hydrograph Estimation
  - 9.2.3 SCS Transmission Loss Method
- 9.3 Regression Equations for Southwestern U.S.
  - 9.3.1 Purpose and Scope
  - 9.3.2 Descriptions of Study Area
  - 9.3.3 Peak Discharge Equations

Chapter 10 : HDS 2 Stormwater Management Part I

- 10.1 Classification
  - 10.1.1 Analyses versus Synthesis
  - 10.1.2 Planning versus Design
- 10.2 Estimating Detention Volumes
  - 10.2.1 The Loss-of-Natural-Storage Method

- 10.2.2 The Rational Formula Hydrograph Method
- 10.2.3 The SCS TR-55 Method
- 10.3 Weir and Orifice Equations
  - 10.3.1 Orifice Equation
  - 10.3.2 Weir Equation
- 10.4 Sizing of Detention Basin Outlet Structures

Chapter 10 : HDS 2 Stormwater Management Part II

- 10.5 Sizing of Single-Stage Risers
  - 10.5.1 Input Requirements and Output
  - 10.5.2 Procedure for Sizing the Riser
- 10.6 Sizing of Two-Stage Risers
  - 10.6.1 Input Requirements and Output
  - 10.6.2 Procedure for Sizing the Riser
- 10.7 Derivation of a Stage-Storage-Discharge Relationship
  - 10.7.1 The Stage-Storage Relationship
  - 10.7.2 The Stage-Discharge Relationship
  - 10.7.3 Stage-Storage-Discharge for Two-Stage Risers
- 10.8 Design Procedure

Chapter 11 : HDS 2 The Role of Geographic Information Systems in Hydrologic Modeling

- 11.1 Introduction
  - 11.1.1 Purpose of a Hydrologic GIS and an Operational Scenario
  - 11.1.2 Organizational Considerations in Adopting a GIS
  - 11.1.3 Objective
  - 11.1.4 Approach
- 11.2 What is a Geographic Information System?
  - 11.2.1 GIS Definition and Function
  - 11.2.2 GIS Structure
  - 11.2.3 Sources of Additional Information
- 11.3 GIS Requirements for Hydrologic Modeling
  - 11.3.1 Introduction Through a Small Watershed Example
    - 11.3.1.1 Use of Manual Approach to Establish GIS Requirements
    - 11.3.1.2 Translation of Manual Approach into GIS Procedures
  - 11.3.2 GIS Requirements for the Modeling of a Complex Watershed
  - 11.3.3 Summary
- 11.4 Implementation Issues
  - 11.4.1 The Database
    - 11.4.1.1 Storage and Resolution

- 11.4.1.2 Sources of Digital Format Geographic Data
- 11.4.1.3 Digitizing Paper Format Data Sources
- 11.4.2 Relations with the GIS Implementation Team
- 11.5 Conclusion

Glossary

References

List of Figures for HDS 2-Highway Hydrology (Metric)

Back to Table of Contents

- Figure 1-1. The Hydrologic Cycle
- Figure 1-2. Concept and Examples of the Systems Analysis and Synthesis Process
- Figure 2-1. Convective Storm
- Figure 2-2. Orographic Storm
- Figure 2-3. Storms as It Appears on Weather Map in Northern Hemisphere
- Figure 2-4. Cyclonic Storms in Mid-Latitude: Cross Section from A to B of Figure 2-3
- Figure 2-5. Typical Rainfall Curves: Kickapoo Station Recording Gage
- Figure 2-6. Rainfall Hyetographs for Kickapoo Station
- Figure 2-7. Maximum Observed Rainfalls (U.S.) from U.S.W.B., 1947; ECAFE U.N., 1967
- Figure 2-8. Effect of Time Variation of Rainfall Intensity on the Surface Runoff
- Figure 2-9. Effect of Storm Size on Runoff Hydrograph
- Figure 2-10. Effect of Storm Movement on Runoff Hydrograph
- Figure 2-11. Elements of a Flood Hydrograph
- Figure 2-12. (a) Relation Between Stage and Discharge: (b) Location of Stream Cross-Section Velocity Measurements
- Figure 2-13. Effects of Basin Characteristics on the Flood Hydrograph
- Figure 2-14. The Runoff Process
- Figure 2-15. Time of Concentration Estimation: (a) Principal Flow Path for Existing Conditions; (b) Principal Flow Path for Developed Conditions
- Figure 2-16. Rainfall Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for Selected Return Periods
- Figure 4-1. Peak Annual and Other Large Secondary Flows, Mono Creek, CA
- Figure 4-2. Annual and Partial-Duration Series
- Figure 4-3. Relation Between Annual and Partial-Duration Series
- Figure 4-4. Measured and Smoothed Flood Series for Mono Creek, CA
- Figure 4-5. Measured and Smoothed Series for Annual Peak Flows in Pond Creek, KY
- Figure 4-6. Sample Frequency Histogram and Probability for Mono Creek, CA
- Figure 4-7. Probability Density Function
- Figure 4-8. Hydrologic Probability from Density Functions

Figure 4-9. Cumulative Frequency Histogram, Mono Creek, CA
Figure 4-10. Cumulative and Complimentary Cumulative Distribution Functions
Figure 4-11. (a) Normal Probability Distribution: (b) Standard Normal Distribution
Figure 4-12. Normal Distribution Frequency Curve: Medina River
Figure 4-13. Log-Normal Distribution Frequency Curve (Solid Line) and One-Sided Upper Confidence Interval (dashed line)
Figure 4-14. Gumbel Extreme Value Distribution Frequency Curve: Medina River
Figure 4-15. Log-Pearson Type III Distribution Frequency Curve: Medina River
Figure 5-1. Hydrologic Homogeneity Test
Figure 5-2. Composite Curve Number Estimation. (a) All Imperviousness Area Connected to Storm Drains. (b) Some Imperviousness Area Not Connected to Storm Drain
Figure 5-3. Map of the Conterminous United States Showing Flood-Region Boundaries
Figure 5-4. Description of NWF Regression Equations for Rural Watersheds in Maine (Jennings et al., 1994)
Figure 6-1. Rainfall/Runoff as the System Process
Figure 6-2. Runoff Hydrograph for 1-Hour Storm
Figure 6-3. Runoff Hydrograph for a 1-Hour Storm with Twice the Intensity
Figure 6-4. Runoff Hydrograph for Two Successive 1-Hour Storms
Figure 6-5. Convolution: A Process of Multiplication-Translation-Addition
Figure 6-6. Alternative Base Flow Seperation Methods: (a) Constant-Discharge, (b) Straight-Line and, (c) Convex Methods
Figure 6-7. Application of Unit Hydrograph Analysis Process
Figure 6-8. Unit Hydrograph from Table 6-3
Figure 6-9. Observed Unit Hydrographs - White Oak Bayou
Figure 6-10. Constant-Intensity Design Storm for a 15-Minute Time of Concentration and a 10-Year Return Period (Baltimore, MD)
Figure 6-11. Approximate Geographic Areas for SCS Rainfall Distribution
Figure 6-12. SCS 24-Hour Rainfall Distributions (Not to Scale)
Figure 6-13. 6-Hour Storms for Example 6-5: (a) Dimensionless Cumulative Design Storm and the Cumulative Design Storm and (b) The Design Storm
Figure 6-14. Standard Isohyetal Pattern
Figure 6-15. Depth-Area Curves for Adjusting Point Rainfalls
Figure 6-16. Triangular Hyetograph

- Figure 6-17. Normalized Triangular Hyetograph
- Figure 6-18. Example of Hydrograph Synthesis
- Figure 6-19. Development of a 6-Hour Unit Hydrograph from a 3-Hour Unit Hydrograph
- Figure 6-20. Graphical Illustration of the S-Curve Construction
- Figure 6-21. Snyder Synthetic Unit Hydrograph Definition
- Figure 6-22. Unit Hydrograph Analysis
- Figure 6-23. Dimensionless Unit Hydrograph and Mass Curve
- Figure 6-24. Dimensionless Curvilinear Unit Hydrograph and Equivalent Triangular Hydrograph
- Figure 6-25. Example: SCS Curvillinear Unit Hydrograph
- Figure 6-26. Separation of Losses and Initial Abstraction From a Design-Storm Hyetograph Using the SCS Method
- Figure 6-27. Time-Area Analysis
- Figure 7-1. Inflow and Outflow Hydrographs from a Stream Reach
- Figure 7-2. Schematic of River Reach for Example 7-1
- Figure 7-3. Storage-Indication Curves for Example 7-2
- Figure 8-1. Subdivision of Watersheds for Determination of Basin Development Factor
- Figure 8-2. Dimensionless USGS Urban Hydrograph
- Figure 8-3. Urban Hydrograph for Little Sugar Creek, NC, USGS Dimensionless Hydrograph Method
- Figure 8-4. Peak Adjustment Factors for Correcting a Flood Discharge Magnitude for Urbanization (From McCuen, 1989)
- Figure 9-1. Unadjusted, Conditional, and Synthetic Frequency Curves for Orestimba Creek, CA
- Figure 9-2. Adjustment of Hydrograph for Transmission Losses
- Figure 10-1. Schematic Cross-Section of a Detention Basin with a Single-Stage Riser
- Figure 10-2. Schematic Diagram of Volume of Storage Determination for the Rational Formula Hydrograph Method
- Figure 10-3. Schematic Diagram of Flow Through an Orifice
- Figure 10-4. Schematic Diagram of Flow over a Sharp-Crested Weir
- Figure 10-5. Single-Stage Riser Characteristic for (a) Weir Flow and (b) Orifice (or Port) Flow
- Figure 10-6. Topographic and Land Use Map
- Figure 10-7. Two-Stage Outlet Facility
- Figure 10-8. Topographic Map for Example 10-7

Figure 10-9. Topographic Map for Deriving Stage-Storage Relationship at Site of Structure (Section 5 + 20; Not to Scale)

Figure 10-10. Stage-Storage Relationship

Figure 10-11. Flowchart of Storage Basin Design Procedure

Figure 11-1. Major Components of a Geographic System

Figure 11-2. Elements of a GIS Workstation Built around a Personal Computer

Figure 11-3. Minimum Information Requirements to Run an SCS Model

Figure 11-4. Grid Cell Representation of the Spatial Distribution of Landcover and Hydrologic Soil Groups

Figure 11-5. Grid Cell Representation of Landcover and Hydrologic Soil Groups within a Watershed

Figure 11-6. Binary Mask Developed through Region Growing to Isolate Watershed from Database

Figure 11-7. Distribution of Subwatersheds and Network Representation of a Complex River Basin

Figure 11-8. Existing and Ultimate Development Landcover Distribution in a Complex Watershed

Figure 11-9. Overview of Watershed Definition and Modeling Using a Statewide Database

Figure 11-10. Example of a Detailed Landcover Distribution Required for the Modeling of a Very Small Watershed

Figure 11-11. County/USGS Quadsheet Based Hierarchical Data Storage for a State-Wide GIS

Figure 11-12. Plots Showing the Absolute Change in the Curve Number Estimation as the Size of the Grid Cell Is Increased above 30 Meters (Three Landcover Soil Complexes)

Back to Table of Contents

List of Tables for HDS 2-Highway Hydrology (Metric)

Back to Table of Contents

- Table 1-1. Design Storm Selection Guidelines
- Table 2-1. Manning's Roughness Coefficient (n) for Overland and Sheet Flow
- Table 2-2. Intercept Coefficients for Velocity vs. Slope Relationship of Equation 2-4 (McCuen, 1989)
- Table 2-3. Characteristics of Principal Flow Path for Time of Concentration Estimation for Example 2-1
- Table 2-4. Characteristics of Principal Flow Path
- Table 4-1. Analysis of Annual Flood Series, Mono Creek, CA
- Table 4-2. Comparison of Annual and Partial-Duration Curves: Number of Years Flow Is Exceeded per Hundred Years (from Beard, 1962)
- Table 4-3. Computation of 5-year Moving Average of Peak Flows: Pond Creek, KY
- Table 4-4. Frequency Histogram and Relative Frequency Analysis of Annual Flood Data for Mono Creek
- Table 4-5. Alternative Frequency (f) Histograms of the Pond Creek, KY, Annual Maximum Flood Record (1945-1968)
- Table 4-6. Computation of Statistical Characteristics: Annual Maximum Flows for Mono Creek, CA
- Table 4-7. Summary of Mean Square Error of Station Skew as a Function of Record Length and Station Skew
- Table 4-8. Selected Values of the Standard Normal Deviate (z) for the Cumulative Normal Distribution
- Table 4-9. Probabilities of the Cumulative Standard Normal Distribution for Selected Values of the Standard Normal Deviate (z)
- Table 4-10. Frequency Analysis Computations for the Normal Distribution: Medina River, TX
- Table 4-11. Frequency Analysis Computations for the Log-Normal Distribution: Medina River
- Table 4-12. Frequency Factors (K) for the Gumble Extreme Value Distribution
- Table 4-13. Frequency Factors (K) for the Log-Pearson Type III Distribution
- Table 4-14. Calculation of Log Pearson Type III Discharges for Medina River using Station Skew
- Table 4-15. Calculation of Log Pearson Type III Discharges for Medina River using Generalized Skew
- Table 4-16. Calculation of Log Pearson Type III Discharges for Medina River using Weighted Skew
- Table 4-17. Summary of 10- and 100-year Discharges for Selected Probability Distributions
- Table 4-18. Confidence Limit Deviate Values for Normal and Log-Normal Distributions (from Bulletin 17B)
- Table 4-19. Computation of One-sided, 95 Percent Confidence Interval for the Log-Normal Analysis of the Medina River Annual Maximum Series

- Table 4-20. Computation of One-sided, 95 Percent Confidence Interval for the LP3 Analysis of the Medina River Annual Maximum Series with Weighted Skew
- Table 4-21. Outlier Test Deviates (KN) at 10 Percent Significance Level (from Bulletin 17B)
- Table 4-22. Data for Two-Station Adjustment
- Table 4-23. Risk of Failure (R) as a Function of Project Life (n) and Return Period (Tr)
- Table 5-1. Example of Regression Equation
- Table 5-2. Comparison of Peak Flows from Log-Pearson Type III Distribution and USGS Regional Regression Equation
- Table 5-3. Upper and Lower Limit Coordinates of Envelope Curve for Homogeneity Test (Dalrymple, 1960)
- Table 5-4. Runoff Coefficients for Rational Formula (ASCE, 1960)
- Table 5-5. Runoff Curve Numbers (Average Watershed Condition, Ia = 0.2S)(after SCS, 1986)(49)
- Table 5-6. Ia/p for Selected Rainfall Depths and Curve Numbers
- Table 5-7. Coefficients for SCS Peak Discharge Method (Equation 5-21)
- Table 5-8. Adjustment Factor (Fp) for Pond and Swamp Areas that Are Spread throughout the Watershed
- Table 5-9. Coefficients for Peak Discharge Envelope Curves
- Table 6-1. Calculation of Base Flow, Direct Runoff, and Unit Hydrograph
- Table 6-2. Calculation of Phi-Index Loss Function and Rainfall-Excess Hyetograph
- Table 6-3. Derivation of Unit Hydrograph from a Complex Storm
- Table 6-4. Computing a Watershed Unit Hydrograph from Five Storm-Event Unit Hydrographs, White Oak, Bayou, TX: (a) Dimensionless UH (b) Characteristics of Storm-Event Unit Hydrographs
- Table 6-5. SCS Cumulative, Dimensionless One-Day Storms
- Table 6-6. Development of 6-hour Dimensionless Cumulative Design Storms for Baltimore
- Table 6-7. Calculation of Total Runoff by Convolving Rainfall Excess with the Unit Hydrograph
- Table 6-8. Computation of a 6-hour Unit Hydrograph from a 3-hour Unit Hydrograph Using the S-curve Method
- Table 6-9. Adjustment of Ordinates of Snyder's Unit Hydrograph
- Table 6-10. Ratios for Dimensionless Unit Hydrograph and Mass Curve
- Table 6-11. Calculation of SCS Curvilinear Unit Hydrograph
- Table 6-12. Computation of Rainfall-Excess Hyetograph Using SCS Rainfall-Runoff Equation
- Table 7-1. Inflow and Outflow Hydrographs for Three Routing Methods
- Table 7-2. Inflow and Outflow Hydrographs for Modified Channel Using Muskingum Method.
- Table 7-3. Inflow Hydrograph for CMP Culvert Storage Routing Example.

- Table 7-4. Discharge (m3/s) versus Headwater Depth for Various Culvert Sizes
- Table 7-5. Depth-Storage Relationship for Example 7-2
- Table 7-6a. Hydrograph Routed through a 600-mm Diameter Culvert
- Table 7-6b. Hydrograph Routed through an 800-mm Diameter Culvert
- Table 7-6c. Hydrograph Routed through a 900-mm Diameter Culvert
- Table 8-1. Variation of BDF Exponent (n) with Recurrence Interval (Tr)
- Table 8-2. Time and Discharge Ratios of the Dimensionless Urban Hydrograph (from Stricker and Sauer, 1982)
- Table 8-3. Computation of Ordinates of Runoff Hydrograph
- Table 8-4. Adjustment of the Rubio Wash Annual Maximum Flood Record for Urbanization
- Table 8-5. Computed Discharges for Log-Pearson Type III with Generalized Skew for Measured Series and Series Adjusted to 40 Percent Imperviousness
- Table 9-1. Annual Maximum Flood Series: Orestimba Creek, CA (Station 11-2745)
- Table 9-2. Computation of Unadjusted and Conditional Frequency Curves
- Table 9-3. Computation of the Synthetic Frequency Curve
- Table 9-4. Adjustment of Hydrograph for Transmission Losses
- Table 9-5. Generalized Least-Squares Regression Equations for Estimating Regional Flood-Frequency Relations for the High-Elevation Region 1 (from Thomas et al., 1993)
- Table 10-1. Coefficients for the SCS Detention Volume Method
- Table 10-2. Worksheet for Sizing a Riser
- Table 10-3. Calculations for Example 10-6
- Table 10-4. Calculations for Example 10-7
- Table 10-5. Derivation of Stage-Storage Relationship for Example 10-9
- Table 10-6. Computation of Stage-Active Storage Relationship for Example 10-10
- Table 10-7. Computation of Times of Concentration
- Table 10-8. Derivation of Stage-Storage Relationship
- Table 10-9. Stage-Storage-Discharge and Storage-Indication Curves for a Weir Length of 0.5 Meters
- Table 10-10. Storage-Indication Analysis for Weir Length of 0.5 m
- Table 10-11. Stage-Storage-Discharge and Storage-Indication Curves for a Weir Length of 0.6 Meters
- Table 10-12. Storage-Indication Analysis for Weir Length of 0.6 m
- Table 10-13. Stage-Storage-Discharge and Storage-Indication Curves for a Weir Length of 0.57 Meters

Table 10-14. Storage-Indication Analysis for Weir Length of 0.57 m
Table 11-1. Characteristics of Land Cover in Area of Interest
Table 11-2. SCS Hydrologic Soil Groups
Table 11-3. Summary of Land Cover Distribution in Watershed of Figure 11-3
Table 11-4. Summary of Hydrologic Soil Group Distribution in Watershed of Figure 11-3
Table 11-5. Example of Type of Tabulation Used to Define Cell Counts for Curve Number Computation
Table 11-6. Example of Weighted Curve Number Computation
Table 11-7. Benefits of GIS-Based Hydrologic Modeling

Back to Table of Contents

List of Equations for HDS 2-Highway Hydrology (Metric)

Back to Table of Contents

- Equation 2-1
- Equation 2-1a
- Equation 2-2
- Equation 2-3
- Equation 2-4
- Equation 2-5
- Equation 2-6
- Equation 4-1
- Equation 4-2
- Equation 4-3
- Equation 4-4
- Equation 4-5
- Equation 4-6
- Equation 4-7
- Equation 4-8
- Equation 4-9
- Equation 4-10
- Equation 4-11
- Equation 4-12
- Equation 4-13
- Equation 4-14
- Equation 4-15
- Equation 4-16
- Equation 4-17a
- Equation 4-17b
- Equation 4-17c
- Equation 4-17d

- Equation 4-17e
- Equation 4-18
- Equation 4-18a
- Equation 4-19
- Equation 4-20
- Equation 4-21a
- Equation 4-21b
- Equation 4-21c
- Equation 4-22
- Equation 4-23
- Equation 4-24
- Equation 4-25
- Equation 4-26
- Equation 4-27
- Equation 4-28
- Equation 4-29
- Equation 4-30
- Equation 4-31
- Equation 4-32
- Equation 4-33
- Equation 4-33a
- Equation 4-33b
- Equation 4-34
- Equation 4-35
- Equation 4-36
- Equation 4-37
- Equation 4-38
- Equation 4-39
- Equation 4-40
- Equation 4-41

- Equation 4-42a
- Equation 4-42b
- Equation 4-42c
- Equation 4-42d
- Equation 4-43
- Equation 4-44
- Equation 4-45
- Equation 4-46
- Equation 4-47
- Equation 4-48
- Equation 4-49
- Equation 4-50
- Equation 4-51
- Equation 4-52
- Equation 4-53
- Equation 4-54
- Equation 4-55
- Equation 4-56
- Equation 4-57
- Equation 4-58
- Equation 4-59
- Equation 4-60
- Equation 4-61
- Equation 4-62
- Equation 4-63
- Equation 4-64
- Equation 4-65
- Equation 4-66a
- Equation 4-66b
- Equation 4-67

- Equation 4-68a
- Equation 4-68b
- Equation 4-68c
- Equation 4-69
- Equation 4-70
- Equation 4-71
- Equation 4-72
- Equation 4-73
- Equation 4-74
- Equation 4-75
- Equation 4-76
- Equation 4-77
- Equation 4-78
- Equation 4-79
- Equation 4-80
- Equation 5-1
- Equation 5-2
- Equation 5-3
- Equation 5-4
- Equation 5-5
- Equation 5-6
- Equation 5-7
- Equation 5-8
- Equation 5-9
- Equation 5-10
- Equation 5-11
- Equation 5-12
- Equation 5-13
- Equation 5-14
- Equation 5-15

- Equation 5-16
- Equation 5-17
- Equation 5-18
- Equation 5-19
- Equation 5-19a
- Equation 5-20
- Equation 5-21
- Equation 5-22
- Equation 5-23
- Equation 6-1
- Equation 6-2
- Equation 6-3
- Equation 6-4
- Equation 6-5
- Equation 6-6
- Equation 6-7
- Equation 6-8
- Equation 6-9
- Equation 6-10
- Equation 6-11
- Equation 6-12
- Equation 6-13
- Equation 6-14
- Equation 6-15
- Equation 6-16
- Equation 6-17
- Equation 6-18
- Equation 6-19
- Equation 6-20
- Equation 6-21

- Equation 6-22
- Equation 6-23
- Equation 6-24
- Equation 6-25
- Equation 6-26
- Equation 7-1
- Equation 7-2
- Equation 7-3
- Equation 7-4
- Equation 7-5
- Equation 7-6
- Equation 7-7
- Equation 7-8
- Equation 7-9
- Equation 7-10
- Equation 7-11
- Equation 7-12
- Equation 7-13
- Equation 7-14
- Equation 7-15
- Equation 7-16
- Equation 7-17
- Equation 7-18
- Equation 7-19
- Equation 7-20
- Equation 7-21
- Equation 7-22
- Equation 7-23
- Equation 7-24
- Equation 7-25a

- Equation 7-25b
- Equation 7-26
- Equation 7-27
- Equation 7-28
- Equation 7-29
- Equation 7-30a
- Equation 7-30b
- Equation 7-31
- Equation 7-32
- Equation 7-33
- Equation 7-34
- Equation 7-35
- Equation 7-36
- Equation 7-37
- Equation 7-38
- Equation 8-1
- Equation 8-2
- Equation 8-3
- Equation 8-4
- Equation 8-5
- Equation 8-6
- Equation 8-7
- Equation 8-8
- Equation 8-9
- Equation 8-10
- Equation 9-1
- Equation 9-2
- Equation 9-3
- Equation 9-4
- Equation 9-5

- Equation 9-6
- Equation 9-7
- Equation 9-8
- Equation 9-9
- Equation 9-10
- Equation 9-11
- Equation 9-12
- Equation 9-13
- Equation 9-14
- Equation 9-15
- Equation 9-16
- Equation 9-17
- Equation 9-18
- Equation 9-19
- Equation 9-20a
- Equation 9-20b
- Equation 9-21
- Equation 9-22a
- Equation 9-22b
- Equation 10-1a
- Equation 10-1b
- Equation 10-2
- Equation 10-3
- Equation 10-4
- Equation 10-5
- Equation 10-6
- Equation 10-7
- Equation 10-8
- Equation 10-9
- Equation 10-10

- Equation 10-11
- Equation 10-12
- Equation 10-13
- Equation 10-14
- Equation 10-15
- Equation 10-16
- Equation 10-17
- Equation 10-18
- Equation 10-19
- Equation 10-20
- Equation 10-21
- Equation 10-22
- Equation 10-23
- Equation 10-24
- Equation 10-25
- Equation 10-26
- Equation 10-27
- Equation 10-28
- Equation 10-29
- Equation 10-30
- Equation 10-31
- Equation 10-32a
- Equation 10-32b
- Equation 10-33a
- Equation 10-33b
- Equation 10-34a
- Equation 10-34b
- Equation 10-35
- Equation 10-36
- Equation 10-37

Equation 10-38
Equation 10-39
Equation 10-40
Equation 10-41
Equation 10-42
Equation 10-43
Equation 10-44
Equation 10-45
Equation 11-1
Equation 11-2
Equation 11-3
Equation 11-4
Equation 11-5
Equation 11-6

Back to Table of Contents

Chapter 1 : HDS 2
Introduction

Go to Chapter 2

Hydrology is often defined as the science that deals with the physical properties, occurrence, and movement of water in the atmosphere, on the surface of, and in the outer crust of the earth. This is an all-inclusive and somewhat controversial definition for there are individual bodies of science dedicated to the study of various elements contained within this definition. Meteorology, oceanography, geohydrology, among others, are typical. For the highway designer, the primary focus is with the water that moves on the earth's surface and in particular that part which ultimately crosses transportation arterials, i.e., highway stream crossings. A secondary interest is to provide interior drainage for roadways, median areas, and interchanges.

Hydrologists have been studying the flow or runoff of water over land for many decades, and some rather sophisticated theories have been proposed to describe the process. Unfortunately, most of these attempts have been only partially successful not only because of the complexity of the process and the many interactive factors involved, but also because of the stochastic nature of rainfall, snowmelt, and other sources of water. Most of the factors and parameters that influence surface runoff have been defined, but for many, complete functional descriptions of their individual effects exist only in empirical form. Extensive field data, empirically determined coefficients, and sound judgment and experience are required for their quantitative analysis.

By application of the principles and methods of modern hydrology, it is possible to obtain solutions that are functionally acceptable and form the basis for the design of highway drainage structures. It is the purpose of this manual to present some of these principles and techniques and to explain their uses by illustrative examples. First, however, it is desirable to discuss some of the basic hydrologic concepts that will be utilized throughout the manual and to discuss hydrologic analysis as it relates to the highway stream crossing problem.

1.1 Hydrologic Cycle

Water, which is found everywhere on the earth, is one of the most basic and commonly occurring substances. It is the only substance on earth that exists naturally in the three basic forms of matter, i.e., liquid, solid, and gas. The quantity of water varies from place to place and from time to time. Although at any given moment the vast majority of the earth's water is found in the world's oceans, there is a constant interchange of water from the oceans to the atmosphere to the land and back to the ocean. This interchange is called the hydrologic cycle.

The hydrologic cycle, illustrated in Figure 1-1, is a description of the transformation of water from one phase to another and its motion from one location to some other. In this context, it represents the complete life cycle of water on and near the surface of the earth.

Beginning with atmospheric moisture, the hydrologic cycle can be described as follows. When warm moist air is lifted to the condensation level, precipitation in the form of rain, hail, sleet, or

snow forms and then falls on a watershed. Some of the water evaporates as it is falling and the rest either reaches the ground or is intercepted by buildings, trees, and other vegetation. The intercepted water evaporates directly back to the atmosphere thus completing a part of the cycle. The remaining precipitation falls to the ground's surface or onto the water surfaces of rivers, lakes, ponds, and oceans.

If the precipitation falls as snow or ice, and the surface or air temperature is sufficiently cold, this frozen water will be stored temporarily as snowpack to be released later when the temperature increases and melting occurs. While contained in a snowpack, some of the water escapes through sublimation, the process where frozen water (i.e., ice) changes directly into water vapor and returns to the atmosphere without entering the liquid phase. When the temperature exceeds the melting point, the water from snowmelt becomes available to continue in the hydrologic cycle.

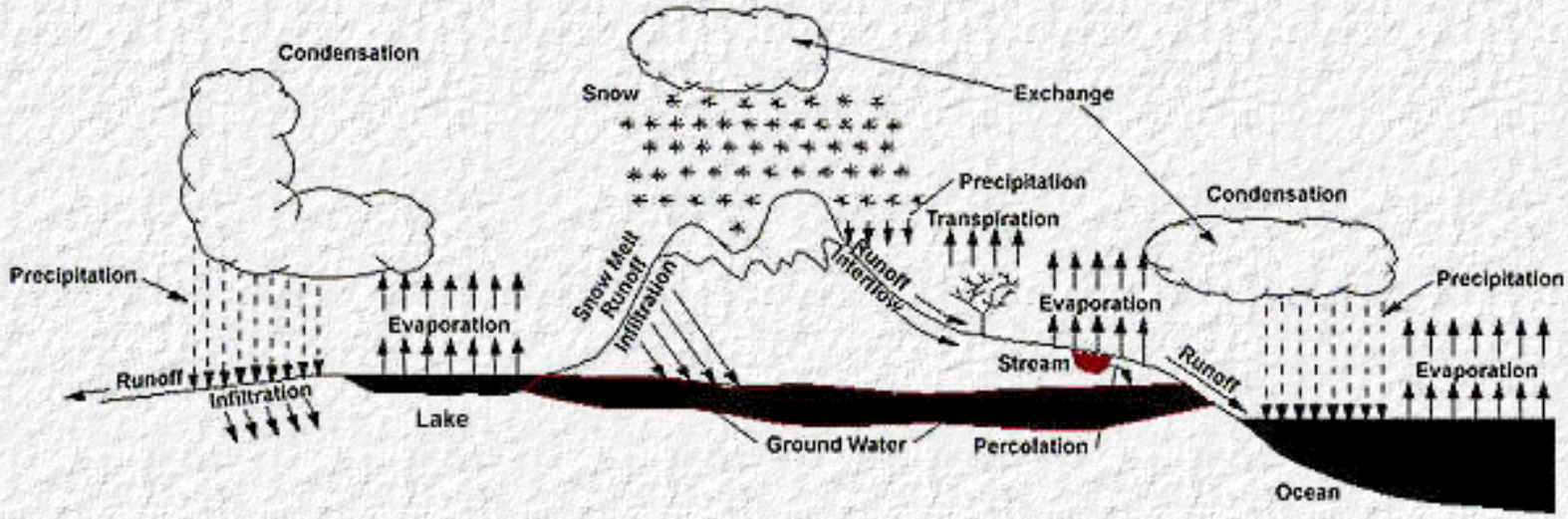


Figure 1-1. The Hydrologic Cycle

The water that reaches the earth's surface either evaporates, infiltrates into the root zone, or flows overland into puddles and depressions in the ground or into swales and streams. The effect of infiltration is to increase the soil moisture. If the moisture content is less than the field capacity of the soil, water returns to the atmosphere through soil evaporation and by transpiration from plants and trees. If the moisture content becomes greater than the field capacity, the water percolates downward to become ground water. Field capacity is the moisture held by the soil after all gravitational drainage.

The part of precipitation that falls into puddles and depressions can evaporate, infiltrate, or if it fills the depressions, the excess water begins to flow overland until eventually it reaches natural drainageways. Water held within the depressions is called depression storage and is not available for overland flow or surface runoff.

Before flow can occur overland and in the natural and/or manmade drainage systems, the flow path must be filled with water. This form of storage, called detention storage, is temporary since most of this water continues to run off after the rainfall ceases. The precipitation that percolates down to ground water is maintained in the hydrologic cycle as seepage into streams and lakes,

as capillary movement back into the root zone, or it is pumped from wells and discharged into irrigation systems, sewers, or other drainageways. Water that reaches streams and rivers may be detained in storage reservoirs and lakes or it eventually reaches the oceans. Throughout this path, water is continually evaporated back to the atmosphere, and the hydrologic cycle is repeated.

1.2 Hydrology of Highway Stream Crossings

In highway engineering, the diversity of drainage problems is broad and includes the design of pavements, bridges, culverts, siphons, and other cross drainage structures for channels varying from small streams to large rivers. Stable open channels and stormwater collection, conveyance, and detention systems must be designed for both urban and rural areas. It is often necessary to evaluate the impacts that future land use, proposed flood control and water supply projects, and other planned and projected changes will have on the design of the highway crossing. On the other hand, the designer also has a responsibility to adequately assess flood potentials and environmental impacts that planned highway and stream crossings may have on the watershed.

1.2.1 Elements of the Hydrologic Cycle Pertinent to Stream Crossings

In highway design, the primary concern is with the surface runoff portion of the hydrologic cycle. Depending on local conditions other elements may be important; however, evaporation and transpiration can generally be discounted. The four most important parts of the hydrologic cycle to the highway designer are:

1. precipitation,
2. infiltration,
3. storage, and
4. surface runoff.

Runoff processes are the subject of Chapter 2.

Precipitation is very important to the development of hydrographs and especially in synthetic unit hydrograph methods and some peak discharge formulas where the flood flow is determined in part from excess rainfall or total precipitation minus the sum of the infiltration and storage. As described above, infiltration is that portion of the rainfall that enters the ground surface to become ground water or to be used by plants and trees and transpired back to the atmosphere. Some infiltration may find its way back to the tributary system as interflow moving slowly near the ground surface or as ground-water seepage, but the amount is generally small. Storage is the water held on the surface of the ground in puddles and other irregularities (depression storage) and water stored in more significant quantities often in human-made structures (detention storage). Surface runoff is the water that flows across the surface of the ground into the watershed's tributary system and eventually into the primary watercourse.

The task of the designer is to determine the quantity and associated time distribution of runoff at a given highway stream crossing taking into account each of the pertinent aspects of the hydrologic cycle. In most cases, it is necessary to make approximations of these factors. In some situations, values can be assigned to storage and infiltration with confidence, while in others, there may be considerable uncertainty, or the importance of one or both of these losses may be discounted in the final analysis. Thorough study of a given situation is necessary to permit assumptions to be made, and often only acquired experience or qualified advice permit solutions to the more complex and unique situations that may arise at a given crossing.

1.2.2 Overview of Hydrology as Applied to Stream Crossings

In many hydrologic analyses, the three basic elements are:

1. measurement, recording, compilation, and publication of data;
2. interpretation and analysis of data; and
3. application to design or other practical problems.

The development of hydrology for a highway stream crossing is no different. Each of these tasks must be performed, at least in part, before an actual hydraulic structure can be designed. How extensively involved the designer becomes with each depends on:

1. importance and cost of the structure or the acceptable risk of failure;
2. amount of data available for the analysis;
3. additional information and data needed;
4. required accuracy; and
5. time and other resource constraints.

These factors normally determine the level of analysis needed and justified for any particular design situation. As practicing designers will confirm, they may be confronted with the problems of insufficient data and limited resources (time, manpower, and money). It is impractical in routine design to use analytical methods that require extensive time and manpower or data not readily available or which are difficult to acquire. The more demanding methods and techniques should be reserved for those special projects where additional data collection and accuracy produces benefits that offset the additional costs involved. Examples of techniques requiring large amounts of time and data include basinwide computer simulation and rainfall-runoff models such as the Corps of Engineers' HEC-1, and the Soil Conservation Service's (SCS) TR-20, among others.

There are, however, a number of sound and proven methods available to analyze the hydrology for the more traditional and routine day-to-day design problem. These are procedures that enable peak flows and hydrographs to be determined without an excessive expenditure of time and which use existing data, or in the absence of data, synthesize methods to develop the design parameters. With care, and often with only

limited additional data, these same procedures can be used to develop the hydrology for the more complex and/or costly design projects.

The choice of an analytical method is a decision that must be made as each problem arises. For this to be an informed decision, the designer must know what level of analysis is justified, what data are available or must be collected, and what methods of analysis are available together with their relative strengths and weaknesses in terms of cost and accuracy.

Exclusive of the effects a given design may have upstream or downstream in a watershed, hydrologic analysis at a highway stream crossing requires the determination of either peak flow or the flood hydrograph. Peak discharge (sometimes called the instantaneous maximum discharge) is critical because most highway stream crossings are traditionally designed to pass a given quantity of water with an acceptable level of risk. This capacity is usually specified in terms of the peak rate of flow during passage of a flood, called peak discharge or peak flow. Associated with this flow is a flood severity that is defined based on a predictable frequency of occurrence, i.e., a 10-year flood, a 50-year flood, etc. Table 1-1 is an example of some typical design frequencies for various hydraulic structures on certain classes of highways.

Table 1-1. Design Storm Selection Guidelines (Ref: AASHTO, 1991)

Roadway Classification	Exceedence Probability	Return Period
Rural Principal Arterial System	2%	50-year
Rural Minor Arterial System	4% - 2%	25-50-year
Rural Collector System, Major	4%	25-year
Rural Collector System, Minor	10%	10-year
Rural Local Road System	20% - 10%	5-10-year
Urban Principal Arterial System	4% - 2%	25-50-year
Urban Minor Arterial Street System	4%	25-year
Urban Collector Street System	10%	10-year
Urban Local Street System	20% - 10%	5-10-year
Note: Federal law requires interstate highways to be provided with protection from the 2 percent flood event and facilities such as underpasses, depressed roadways, etc. where no overflow relief is available should be designed for the 2 percent event.		

Generally, the task of the highway designer is to determine the peak flows for a range of flood frequencies at a site in a drainage basin. Culverts, bridges, or other structures are then sized to convey the design peak discharge within other constraints imposed on the design. If possible, the peak discharge that almost causes highway overtopping is estimated, and this discharge is then used to evaluate the risk associated with the crossing.

Hydrograph development is important where a detailed description of the time variation of runoff rates and volumes are required. Similarly, urbanization, storage, and other changes in a watershed affect flood flows in many ways. Travel time, time of concentration, runoff duration, peak flow, and the volume of runoff may be

changed by very significant amounts. The flood hydrograph is the primary way to evaluate and assess these changes. Additionally, when flows are combined and routed to another point along a stream, hydrographs are essential.

Neither peak flow nor hydrographs present any real computational difficulties provided data are available for their determination. A problem faced by the highway designer is that insufficient flow data, or often no data, exist at the site where a stream crossing is to be designed. While data describing the topography and the physical characteristics of the basin are readily attainable, rarely is there sufficient time to collect the flow data necessary to evaluate peak flows and hydrographs. In this case, the designer must resort to synthetic methods to develop design parameters. These methods require considerably more judgment and understanding in order to evaluate their application and reliability.

Finally, the designer must be constantly alert to changing or the potential for changing conditions in a watershed. This is especially important when reviewing reported streamflow data for a watershed that has undergone urban development, and channelization, diversions and other drainage improvements. Similarly, the construction of reservoirs, flow regulation measures, stock ponds, and other storage facilities in the basin may be reflected in stream flow data. Other factors such as change in gage datum, moving of a gage, or mixed floods (floods caused by rainfall and snowmelt or rainfall and hurricanes) must be carefully analyzed to avoid misinterpretation and/or incorrect conclusions.

1.3 General Data Requirements

Regardless of the method selected for the analysis of a particular hydrologic problem, there is a need for data or analysis methods that are based on statistical manipulation of data. These needs take a variety of forms and may include data on precipitation and streamflow, information about the watershed, and the project to be designed. The type, amount, and availability of the data will be determined in part by the method selected for the design.

Types of data and information are discussed in Chapter 3 and the common sources for this information are identified. Other pertinent aspects on handling data are described including identification, documentation, and indexing.

1.4 Solution Methods

Available analytical methods can be grouped into the two broad categories of deterministic and statistical methods. Deterministic methods strive to model the physical aspects of the rainfall-runoff process while statistical methods utilize measured data to fit functions that represent the process. Deterministic methods can either be conceptual, where each element of the runoff process is accounted for in some manner, or they may be empirical, where the relationship between rainfall and runoff is quantified based on measured data and experience.

For example, unit hydrograph methods are deterministic. Statistical methods apply the techniques and procedures of modern statistical analysis to actual or synthetic data and fit the needed design parameters directly. Flood frequency analysis and peak-discharge regression equations are examples of the statistical approach.

1.4.1 Deterministic Methods

Deterministic methods often require a large amount of judgment and experience to be used effectively. These methods depend heavily upon the approach used, and it is not uncommon for two different designers to arrive at different estimates of runoff for the same watershed. The accuracy of deterministic methods is also difficult to quantify. However, deterministic methods are usually based on fundamental concepts, and there is often an intuitive "rightness" about them that has led to their widespread acceptance in highway and other design practice. An experienced designer, familiar with a particular deterministic method, can arrive at reasonable solutions in a relatively short period of time. Unit hydrograph methods such as the SCS TR-20 program and the Corps of Engineers HEC-1 program are deterministic methods. Hydrologic channel routing methods such as the Muskingum method are deterministic.

1.4.2 Statistical Methods

Statistical methods, in general, do not require as much subjective judgment and experience to apply as deterministic methods. They are usually well documented mathematical procedures that are applied to measured or observed data. The predictions of a designer should be very nearly the same as those of another who applies the same procedures with the same data. The accuracy of statistical methods can also be measured quantitatively. However, statistical methods may not be well understood, and as a result, answers may be misinterpreted. One objective of this manual is to present the commonly accepted statistical methods for peak flow determination in a logical format that encourages their use in highway drainage design.

1.5 Analysis versus Synthesis

Like most of the basic sciences, hydrology requires both analysis and synthesis to use fundamental concepts in the solution of engineering problems. The word analysis is derived from the Greek word annuluses, which means "a releasing," and from analuein, which means "to undo." In practical terms, it means "to break apart" or "to separate into its fundamental constituents." Analysis should be compared with the word synthesis. The word synthesis comes from the Latin word suntithenai, which means "to put together." In practical terms, it means "to combine separate elements to form a whole." The meanings of the words analysis and synthesis given here may differ from common usage. Specifically, practicing engineers often use analysis as a synonym for design. This difference needs to be recognized and understood.

Because of the complexity of many hydrologic engineering problems, the fundamental elements of the hydrologic sciences cannot be used directly. Instead, it is necessary to take measurements of the response of a hydrologic process and analyze the measurements in an attempt to understand how the process functions. Quite frequently, a model is formulated on the basis of the physical concepts that underlie the process and the fitting of the hydrologic model with the measurements provides the basis for understanding how the physical process varies as the input to the process varies. After the measurements have been analyzed (i.e., taken apart) to fit the model, the model can be used to synthesize (i.e., put together) design rules. That is, the analysis leads to a set of systematic rules that explain how the underlying hydrologic processes will function in the future. The act of synthesizing is not, of course, a total reproduction of the original process. It is a simplification. As with any simplification, it will not provide a totally precise representation of the physical process under all conditions. But in general it should provide reasonable solutions, especially when many designs based on the same design rules are considered.

It should be emphasized that almost every hydrologic design (or synthesis) was preceded by a hydrologic analysis. Most often, one hydrologic analysis is used as the basis for many, many hydrologic designs. But the important point is that the designer must understand the basis for the analysis that underlies any design method; otherwise, the designer may not apply the design procedure in a way that is compatible with the underlying analysis. This is not to say that a design method cannot be applied without knowing the underlying basis, only that it is best when the design engineer fully understands the analysis that led to development of the design rules. Anyone can substitute the values of input variables into a design method. But when a design is used under circumstances for which it was not intended, inaccurate designs can be the result.

Hydrologic models are commonly used without the user taking the time to determine the analysis that underlies the model. In cases where the user is fortunate enough to be applying the model within the proper bounds of the analysis, the accuracy of the design is probably within the limits established by the analysis; however, inaccurate designs can result because the assumptions used in the analysis are not valid for the particular design. **Those involved in the analysis phase should clearly define the limits of the model, and those involved in synthesis, or design, should make sure that the design does not require using the model outside the bounds established by the analysis.**

1.5.1 A Conceptual Representation of Analysis and Synthesis

Because of the importance of the concepts of analysis and synthesis, it may be worthwhile placing the design problem in a conceptual hydrologic system of three parts: the input, the output, and the transfer function. This conceptual framework is shown schematically in Figure 1-2. In the analysis phase, the input and output are known and the analyst must find a rational model of the transfer function. When the analysis phase is completed, either the model of the transfer function or design tools developed from the model are ready to be used in the synthesis phase. In the synthesis or design phase, the design input and the model of the transfer function are known and the predicted system output must be computed; the true system output is unknown. The designer predicts the response of the system using the model and

bases the engineering design solution on the predicted or synthesized response.

1.5.2 Examples of Analysis and Synthesis in Hydrologic Design

Two hydrologic design methods available to the highway engineer are peak-discharge regression equations and unit hydrograph models. These can be used to illustrate factors that must be considered in analysis and synthesis.

Peak-discharge regression equations are commonly used for the design of a variety of highway facilities, such as bridges, culverts, and roadway inlets. In the analysis phase, the input consists of values of watershed characteristics at gaged stations in a homogeneous region. The output is the peak discharge values for a selected return period from frequency analyses at gaged locations. The transfer function, or model, is the power model with unknown regression coefficients. Least-squares regression analyses usually use the watershed characteristics and peak discharge magnitudes from the known watersheds to fit the unknown coefficients. Important assumptions are made in this phase of modeling. While these assumptions may limit the use of the equations, they are necessary. Specifically, only gaged data from unregulated streams are used. Additionally, stream records used in the frequency analyses should not include watersheds that have undergone extensive watershed change, such as urbanization or deforestation, unless this is specifically accounted for in the flood frequency analyses. Each of the watershed characteristics cover certain ranges; for example, the drainage areas included in the analyses may range from 50 to 200 square kilometers. These limits are important to know so that the model is not used without caution beyond the ranges of the inputs used to fit the equation. Failure to understand these factors can lead to an inappropriate use of the fitted model.

It is important to know the accuracy that can be expected of a model, which might be indicated by a standard error of estimate or correlation coefficient of the fitted model. This is important if the engineer wants to compare alternative models when selecting a design method and when the engineer is considering the accuracy of the design. This is also important if the designer wants to compare alternative models when selecting a design method and when considering the accuracy of a design.

In the synthesis phase, the fitted model and values of watershed characteristics at an ungaged location are available; these represent the transfer function and input, respectively. The output is the computed discharge estimate. There is no direct way to assess the accuracy of the design estimate, so the accuracy statistics of the fitted equation are used as estimates of the accuracy of the computed value.

Unit hydrograph models, which are introduced in Chapter 6, can be used for design work where either the watershed is not homogeneous or storage is a significant factor. To develop a unit hydrograph, which is the transfer function, both a measured rainfall hyetograph and the storm hydrograph measured for the same storm event are needed. The hyetograph is the input function and the hydrograph is the output function. When possible, hyetographs and hydrographs for several storm events should be available to fit unit hydrographs. Then the individual unit hydrographs can

be averaged to obtain a more representative unit hydrograph.

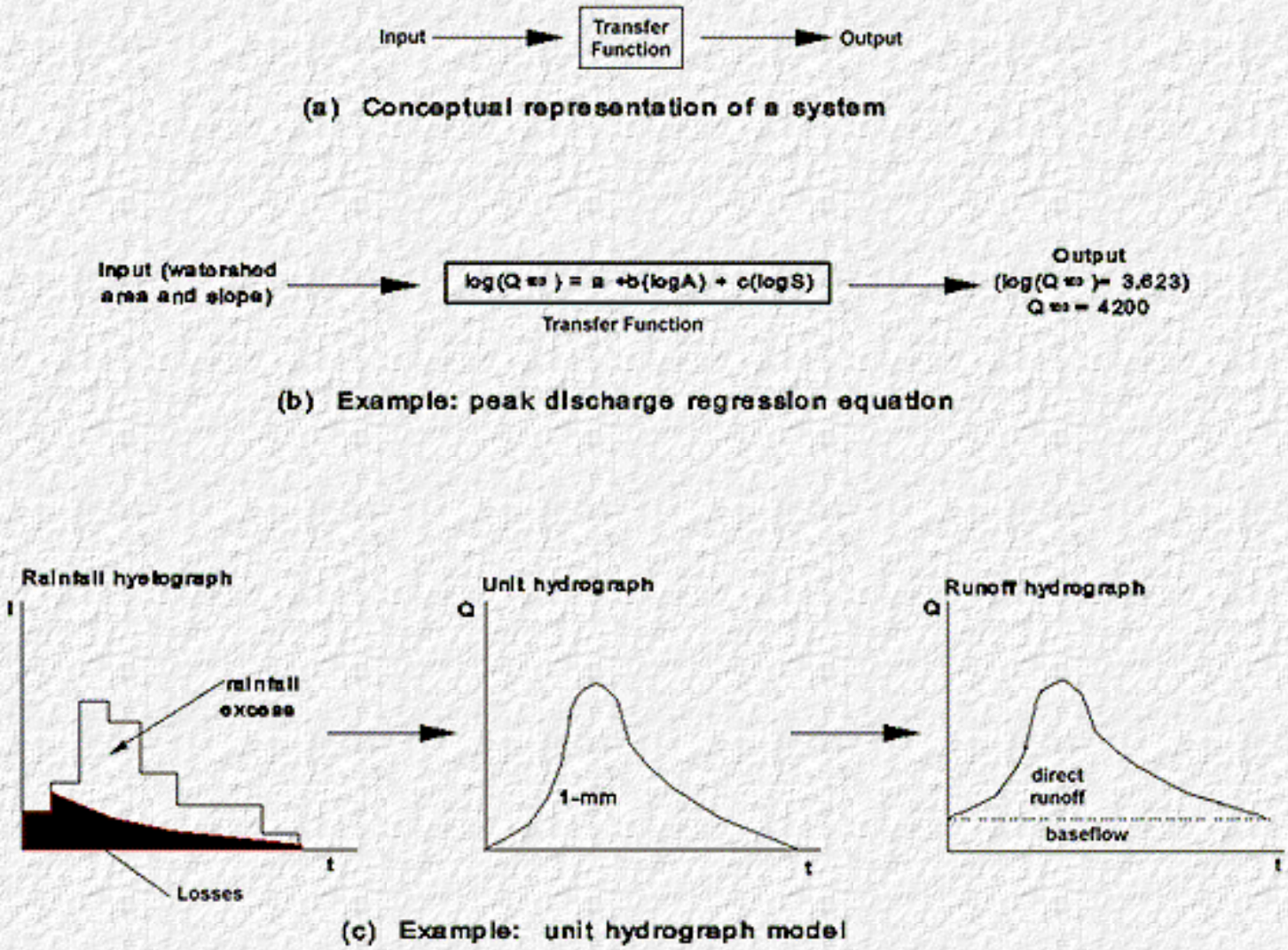


Figure 1-2. Concept and Examples of the Systems Analysis and Synthesis Process

An engineer who uses the unit hydrograph for design work should know factors such as the size and character of the watersheds from which it was developed. A unit hydrograph based on data from a coastal area may lead to underdesign if it is used on a mountainous watershed. If the fitted unit hydrograph does not provide an accurate reproduction of the outflow hydrographs used in its development, then it will not be reliable and should be used with caution.

In the synthesis phase, the unit hydrograph, as the transfer function, is used with a design storm, which is the input function. The design hydrograph obtained by convolving the design storm and unit hydrograph is the output function. The accuracy of the design hydrograph will depend on the accuracy of the unit hydrograph and its appropriateness for the watershed for which the design is being made.

Go to Chapter 2

Chapter 2 : HDS 2
The Runoff Process

Go to Chapter 3

From the discussion of the hydrologic cycle in Chapter 1, the runoff process can be defined as that collection of interrelated natural processes by which water, as precipitation, enters a watershed and then leaves as runoff. In other words, surface runoff is the portion of the total precipitation that has not been removed by processes in the hydrologic cycle. The amount of precipitation that runs off from the watershed is called the "rainfall excess," and "hydrologic abstractions" is the commonly used term that groups all of the processes that extract water from the original precipitation. It follows then that the volume of surface runoff is equal to the volume of rainfall excess, or in the case of the typical highway problem, the runoff is the original precipitation less infiltration and storage.

The primary purpose of this chapter is to describe more fully the runoff process. An understanding of the process is necessary to properly apply hydrologic design methods. Pertinent aspects of precipitation are identified and each of the hydrologic abstractions is discussed in some detail. The important characteristics of runoff are then defined together with how they are influenced by different features of the drainage basin. The chapter includes a qualitative discussion of the runoff process beginning with precipitation and illustrating how this input is modified by each of the hydrologic abstractions. Because the time characteristics of runoff are important in design, a discussion of runoff travel time parameters is included.

2.1 Precipitation

Precipitation is the water that falls from the atmosphere in either liquid or solid form. It results from the condensation of moisture in the atmosphere due to the cooling of a parcel of air. The most common cause of cooling is dynamic or adiabatic lifting of the air. Adiabatic lifting means that a given parcel of air is caused to rise with resultant cooling and possible condensation into very small cloud droplets. If these droplets coalesce and become of sufficient size to overcome the air resistance, precipitation in some form results.

2.1.1 Forms of Precipitation

Precipitation occurs in various forms. Rain is precipitation that is in the liquid state when it reaches the earth. Snow is frozen water in a crystalline state, while hail is frozen water in a 'massive' state. Sleet is melted snow that is an intermixture of rain and snow. Of course, precipitation that falls to earth in the frozen state cannot become part of the runoff process until melting occurs. Much of the precipitation that falls in mountainous areas and in the northerly latitudes falls in the frozen form and is stored as snowpack or ice until warmer temperatures prevail.

2.1.2 Types of Precipitations (by Origin)

Precipitation can be classified by the origin of the lifting motion that causes the precipitation. Each type is characterized by different spatial and temporal rainfall regimens. The three major types of storms are classified as convective storms, orographic storms, and cyclonic storms. A fourth type of storm is often added, the hurricane or tropical cyclone, although it is a special case of the cyclonic storm.

2.1.2.1 Convective Storms

Precipitation from convective storms results as warm moist air rises from lower elevations into cooler overlying air as shown in Figure 2-1. The characteristic form of convective precipitation is the summer thunderstorm. The surface of the earth is warmed considerably by mid- to late afternoon of a summer day, the surface imparting its heat to the adjacent air. The warmed air begins rising through the overlying air, and if proper moisture content conditions are met (condensation level), large quantities of moisture will be condensed from the rapidly rising, rapidly cooling air. The rapid condensation may often result in huge quantities of rain from a single thunderstorm spawned by convective action, and very large rainfall rates and depths are quite common beneath slowly moving thunderstorms.

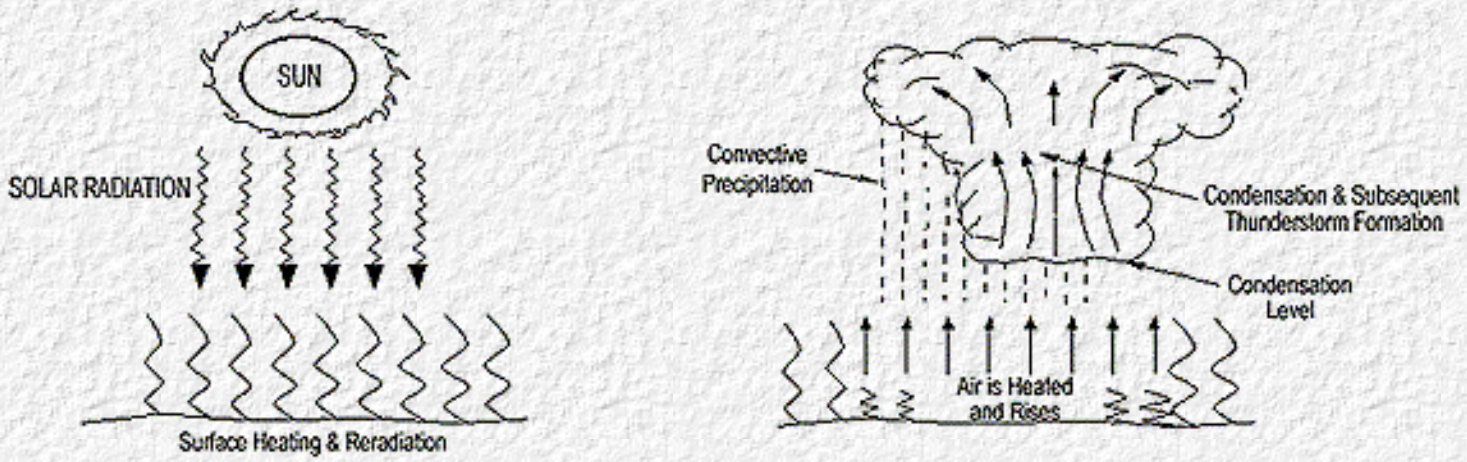


Figure 2-1. Convective Storm

2.1.2.2 Orographic Storms

Orographic precipitation results as air is forced to rise over a fixed-position geographic feature such as a range of mountains (see Figure 2-2). The characteristic precipitation patterns of the Pacific coastal states are the result of significant orographic influences. Mountain slopes that face the wind (windward) are much wetter than the opposite (leeward) slopes. In the

Cascade Range in Washington and Oregon, the west-facing slopes may receive upwards of 2500 mm of precipitation annually, while the east-facing slopes, only a few kilometers away over the crest of the mountains, receive on the order of 500 mm of precipitation annually.

2.1.2.3 Cyclonic Storms

Cyclonic precipitation is caused by the rising or lifting of air as it converges on an area of low pressure. Air moves from areas of higher pressure toward areas of lower pressure. In the middle latitudes, cyclonic storms generally move from west to east and have both cold and warm air associated with them. These mid-latitude cyclones are sometimes called extra-tropical cyclones or continental storms.

Continental storms occur at the boundaries of air of significantly different temperatures. A disturbance in the boundary between the two air parcels can grow, appearing as a wave as it travels from west to east along the boundary. Generally, on a weather map, the cyclonic storm will appear as shown in Figure 2-3 with two boundaries or fronts developed. One has warm air being pushed into an area of cool air, while the other has cool air pushed into an area of warmer air. This type of air movement is called a front; where warm air is the aggressor, it is a warm front, and where cold air is the aggressor, it is a cold front (see Figure 2-4). The precipitation associated with a cold front is usually heavy and covers a relatively small area, whereas the precipitation associated with a warm front is more passive, smaller in quantity, but covers a much larger area. Tornadoes and other violent weather phenomena are associated with cold fronts.

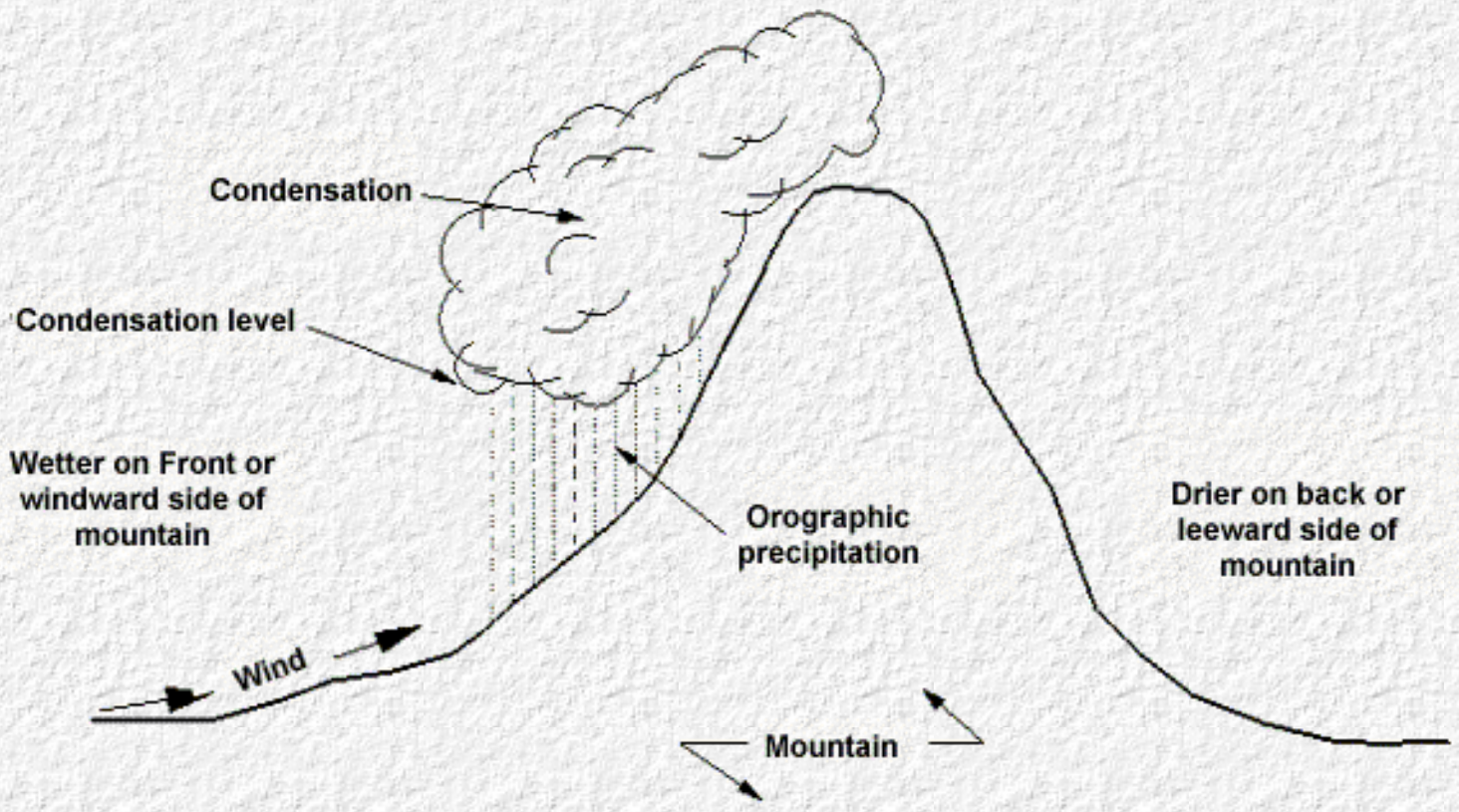


Figure 2-2. Orographic Storm

2.1.2.4 Hurricanes

Hurricanes or tropical cyclones develop over tropical oceans that have a surface-water temperature greater than 29°C. A hurricane has no trailing fronts as the air is uniformly warm since the ocean surface from which it was spawned is uniformly warm. Hurricanes can drop tremendous amounts of moisture on an area in a relatively short time. Rainfall amounts of 350-500 mm in less than 24 hours are common in well-developed hurricanes, where winds are often sustained in excess of 120 km/h.

2.1.3 Characteristics of Rainfall Events

The characteristics of precipitation that are important to highway drainage are the intensity (rate of rainfall); the duration; the time distribution of rainfall; the storm shape, size, and movement; and the frequency.

Intensity is defined as the time rate of rainfall depth and is commonly given in the units of millimeters per hour. All precipitation is measured as the vertical depth of water (or water equivalent in the case of snow) that would accumulate on a flat level surface if all the precipitation remained where it fell. A variety of rain gages have been devised to measure precipitation. All first-order weather stations utilize gages that provide nearly continuous records of accumulated rainfall with time. These data are typically reported

in either tabular form or as cumulative mass rainfall curves (see Figure 2-5).

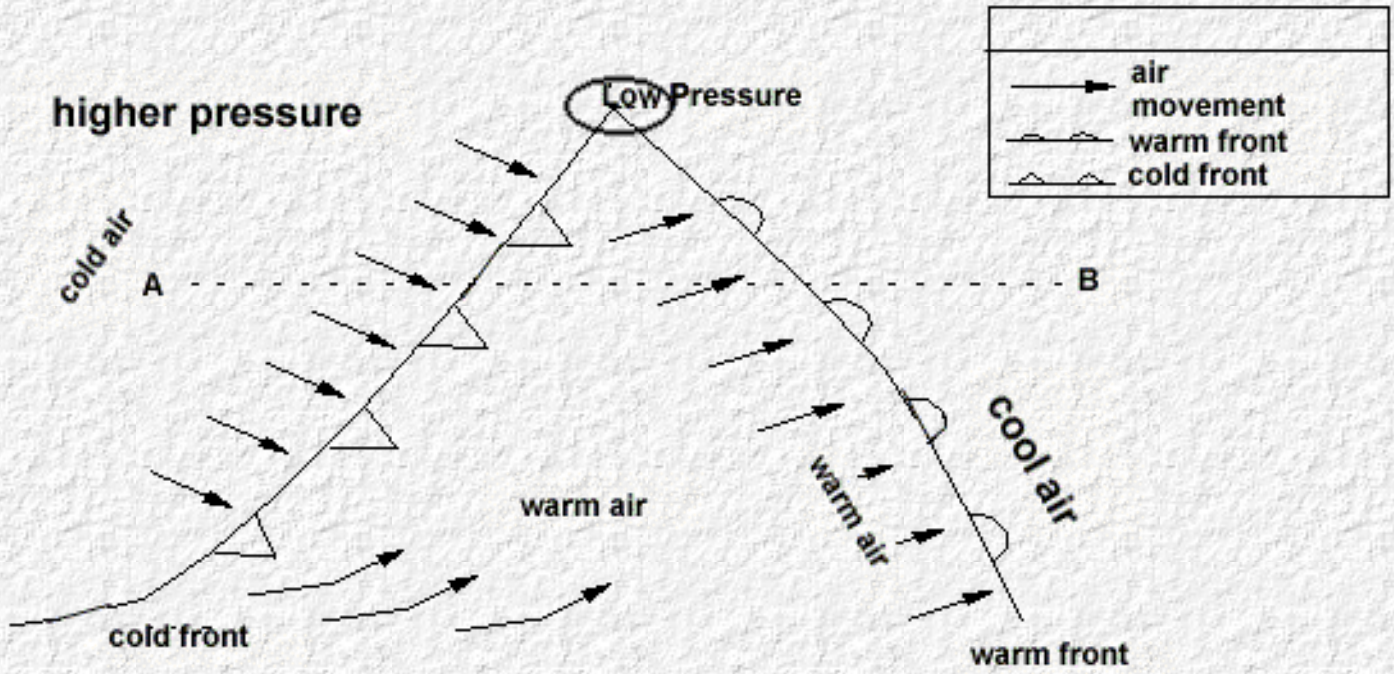


Figure 2-3. Storms as It Appears on Weather Map in Northern Hemisphere

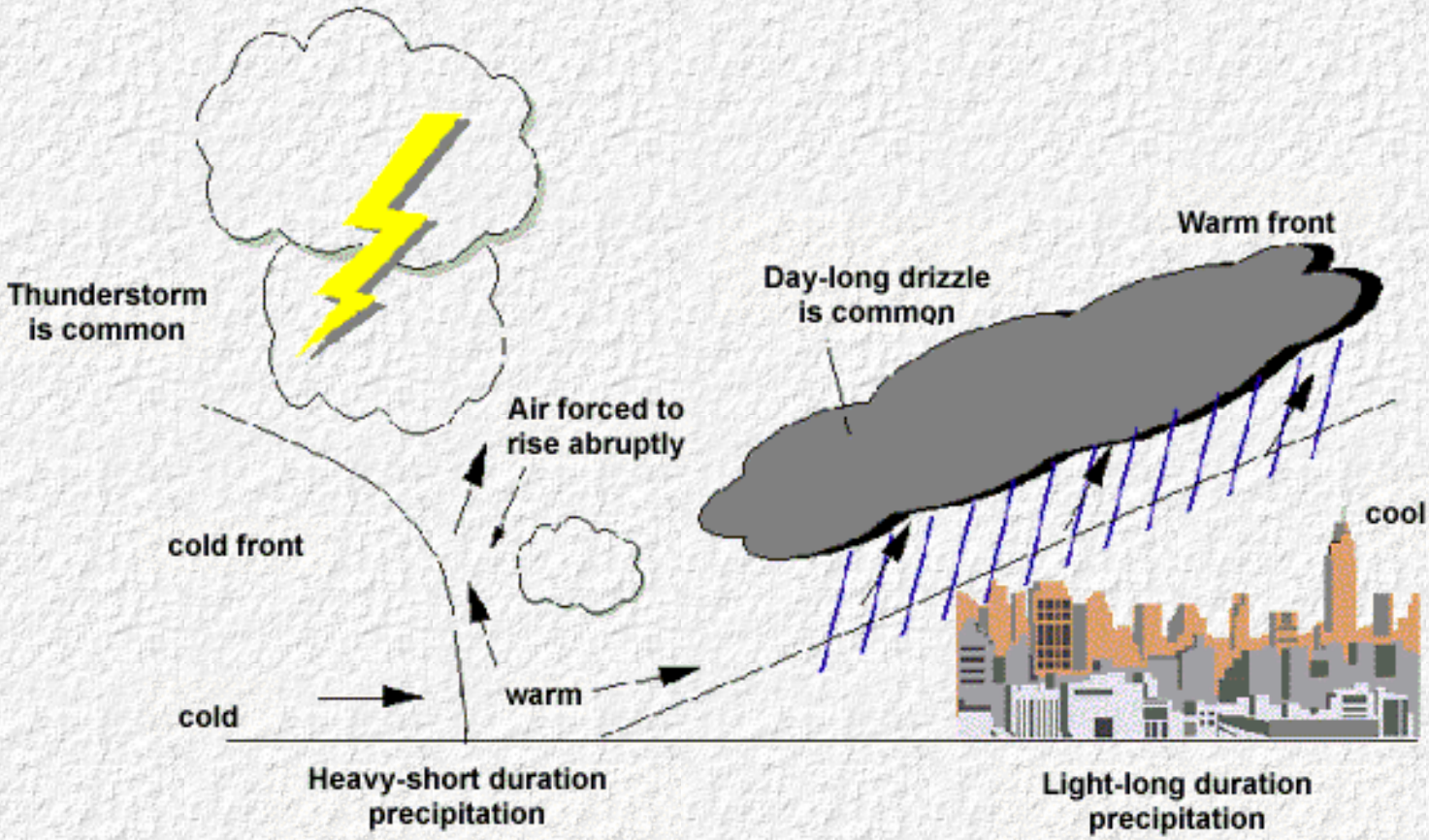


Figure 2-4. Cyclonic Storms in Mid-Latitude: Cross Section from A to B of Figure 2-3

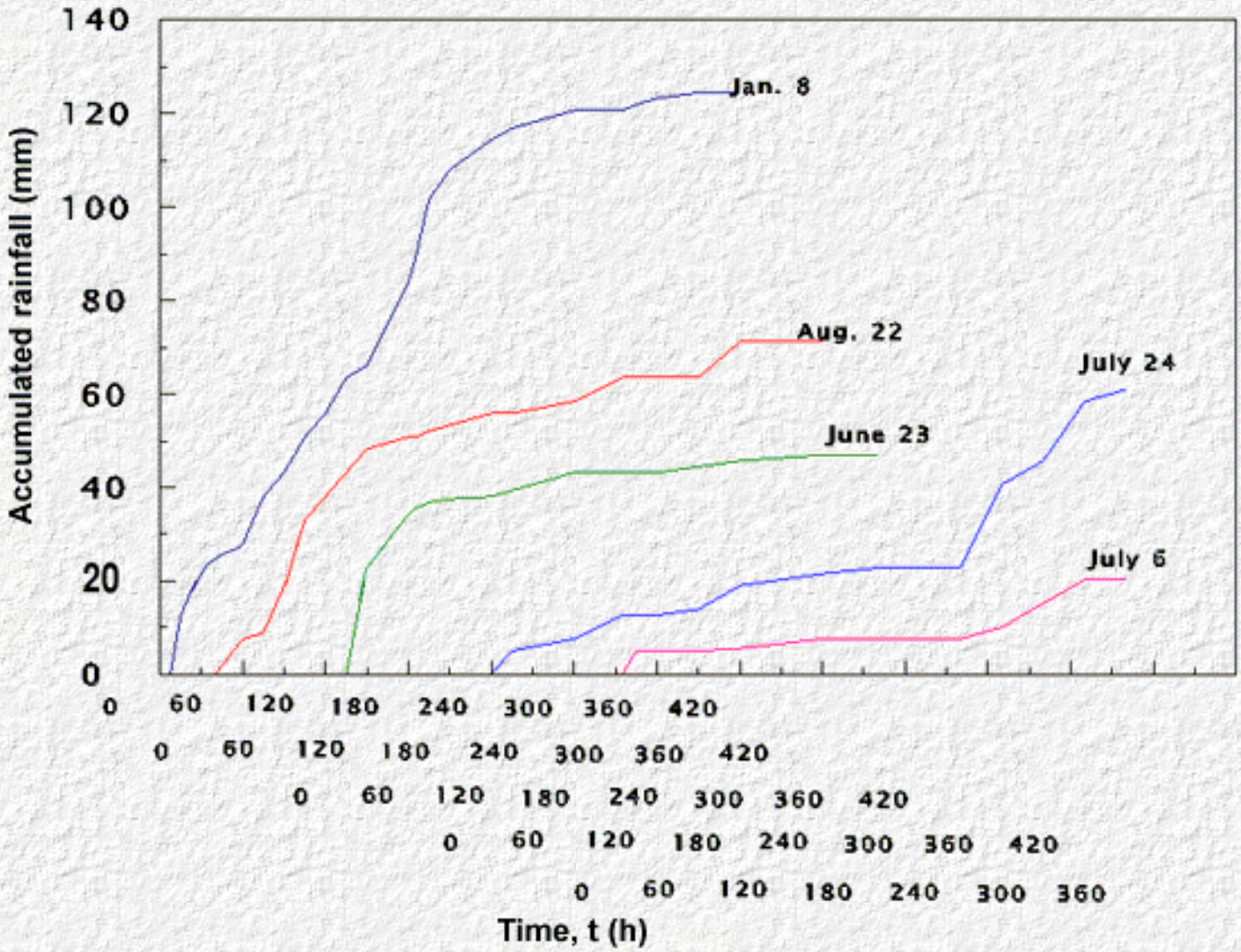


Figure 2-5. Typical Rainfall Curves: Kickapoo Station Recording Gage

In any given storm, the instantaneous intensity is the slope of the mass rainfall curve at a particular time. For hydrologic analysis, it is desirable to divide the storm into convenient time increments and to determine the average intensity over each of the selected periods. These results are then plotted as rainfall hyetographs, two examples of which are shown in Figure 2-6 for the Kickapoo Station.

While the above illustrations use a 1-hour time increment to determine the average intensity, any time increment compatible with the time scale of the hydrologic event to be analyzed can be used. Figure 2-6 shows the irregular and complex nature of different storms measured at the same station.

In spite of this complexity, intensity is the most important of the rainfall characteristics. All other factors being equal, the more intense the rainfall, the larger will be the discharge rate from a given watershed. Intensities can vary from misting conditions where a trace less than approximately 0.001 mm of precipitation may fall to cloudbursts where several centimeters per hour are common. Figure 2-7 summarizes some of the

maximum observed rainfalls in the United States. The events given in Figure 2-7 are depth-duration values at a point and can only be interpreted for average intensities over the reported durations. Still some of these storms were very intense with average intensities on the order of 150 to 500 mm/h for the shorter durations (<1 hour) and from 50 to 250 mm/h for the longer durations (>1 hour). Since these are only averages, it is probable that intensities in excess of these values occurred during the various storms.

The storm duration or time of rainfall can be determined from either Figure 2-5 or Figure 2-6. In the case of Figure 2-5, the duration is the time from the beginning of rainfall to the point where the mass curve becomes horizontal indicating no further accumulation of precipitation. In Figure 2-6, the storm duration is simply the width (time base) of the hyetograph. The most direct effect of storm duration is on the volume of surface runoff, with longer storms producing more runoff than shorter duration storms of the same intensity.

The time distribution of the rainfall is normally given in the form of intensity hyetographs similar to those shown in Figure 2-6. This time variation directly determines the corresponding distribution of the surface runoff. As illustrated in Figure 2-8, high intensity rainfall at the beginning of a storm, such as the January 8 storm in Figure 2-6, will usually result in a rapid rise in the runoff followed by a long recession of the flow. Conversely, if the more intense rainfall occurs toward the end of the duration, as in the July 24 storm of Figure 2-6, the time to peak will be longer followed by a rapidly falling recession.

Storm pattern, areal extent, and movement are normally determined by the type of storm (see Section 2.1.2). For example, storms associated with cold fronts (thunderstorms) tend to be more localized, faster moving, and of shorter duration, whereas warm fronts tend to produce slowly moving storms of broad areal extent and longer durations. All three of these factors determine the areal extent of precipitation and how large a portion of the drainage area contributes over time to the surface runoff. As illustrated in Figure 2-9, a small localized storm of a given intensity and duration, occurring over a part of the drainage area, will result in much less runoff than if the same storm covered the entire watershed.

The location of a localized storm in the drainage basin also affects the time distribution of the surface runoff. A storm near the outlet of the watershed will result in the peak flow occurring very quickly and a rapid passage of the flood. If the same storm occurred in a remote part of the basin, the runoff at the outlet due to the storm would be longer and the peak flow lower due to storage in the channel.

Storm movement has a similar effect on the runoff distribution particularly if the basin is long and narrow. Figure 2-10 shows that a storm moving up a basin from its outlet gives a distribution of runoff that is relatively symmetrical with respect to the peak flow. The same storm moving down the basin will usually result in a higher peak flow and an unsymmetrical distribution with the peak flow occurring later in time.

Frequency is also an important characteristic because it establishes the frame of reference for how often precipitation with given characteristics is likely to occur. From

the standpoint of highway design, a primary concern is with the frequency of occurrence of the resulting surface runoff, and in particular, the frequency of the peak discharge. While the designer is cautioned about assuming that a storm of a given frequency always produces a flood of the same frequency, there are a number of analytical techniques that are based on this assumption, particularly for ungaged watersheds. Some of the factors that determine how closely the frequencies of precipitation and peak discharge correlate with one another are discussed further in Section 2.4.

Precipitation is not easily characterized although there have been many attempts to do so. References and data sources are available that provide general information on the character of precipitation at specified geographic locations. These sources are discussed more fully in Chapter 3. It is important, however, to understand the highly variable and erratic nature of precipitation. Highway designers should become familiar with the different types of storms and the characteristics of precipitation that are indigenous to their regions of concern. They should also understand the seasonal variations that are prevalent in many areas. In addition, it is very beneficial to study reports that have been prepared on historic storms and floods in a region. Such reports can provide information on past storms and the consequences that they may have had on drainage structures.

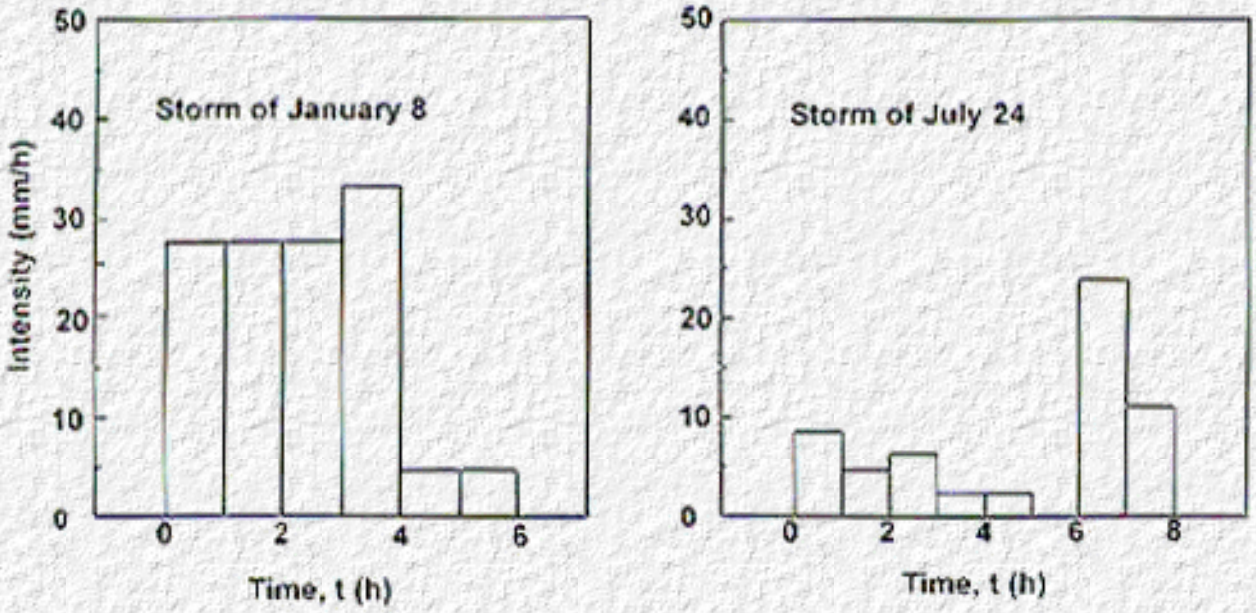


Figure 2-6. Rainfall Hyetographs for Kickapoo Station

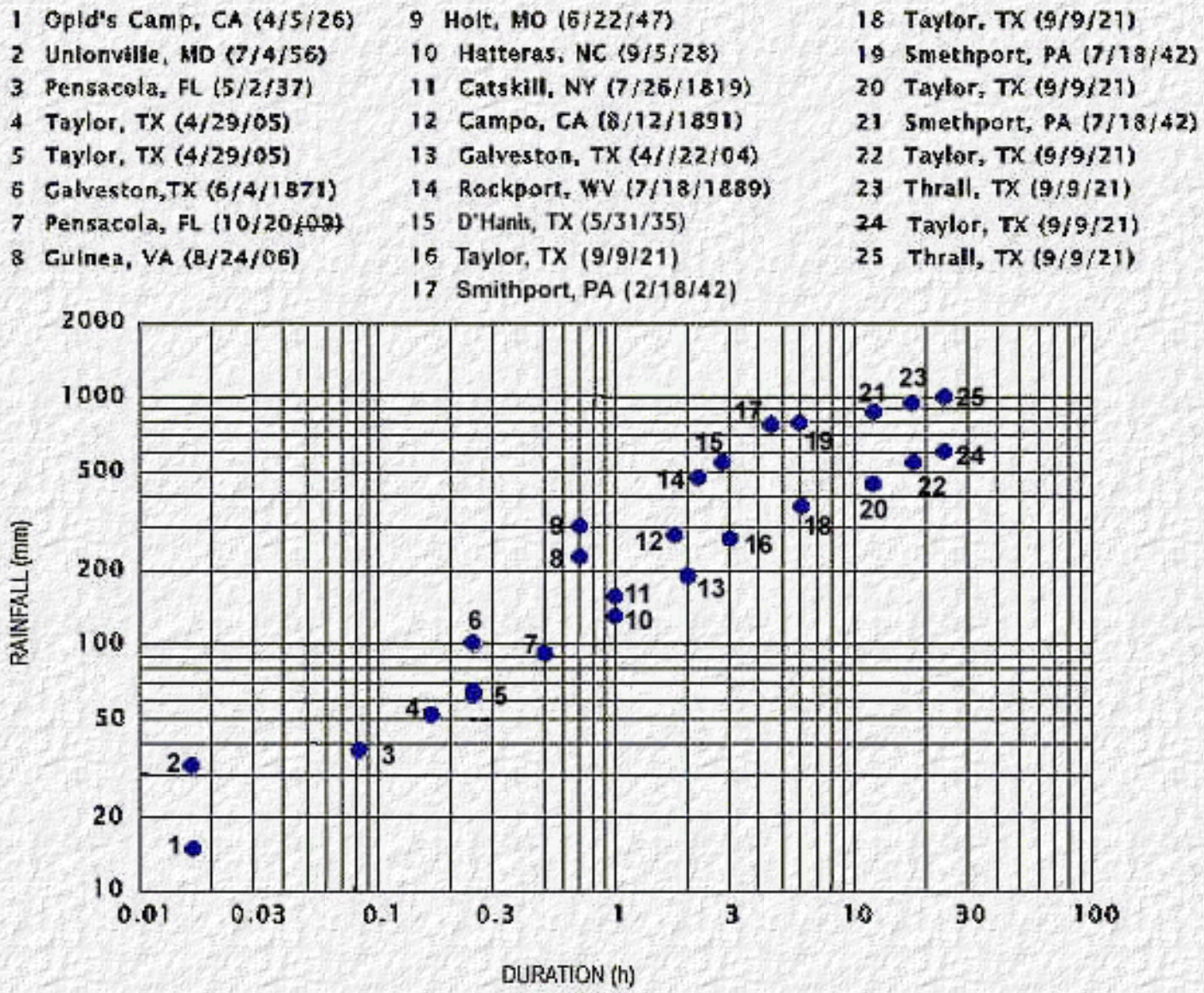


Figure 2-7. Maximum Observed Rainfalls (U.S.) from U.S.W.B., 1947; ECAFE U.N., 1967

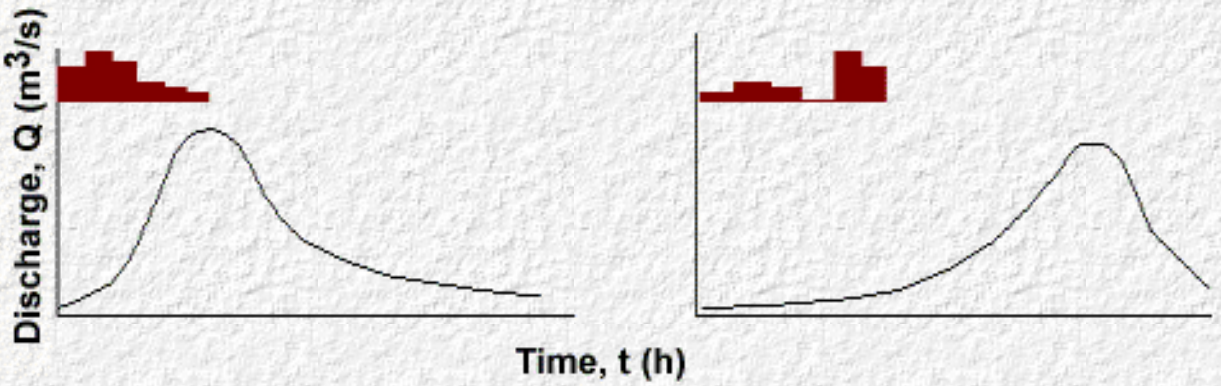


Figure 2-8. Effect of Time Variation of Rainfall Intensity on the Surface Runoff

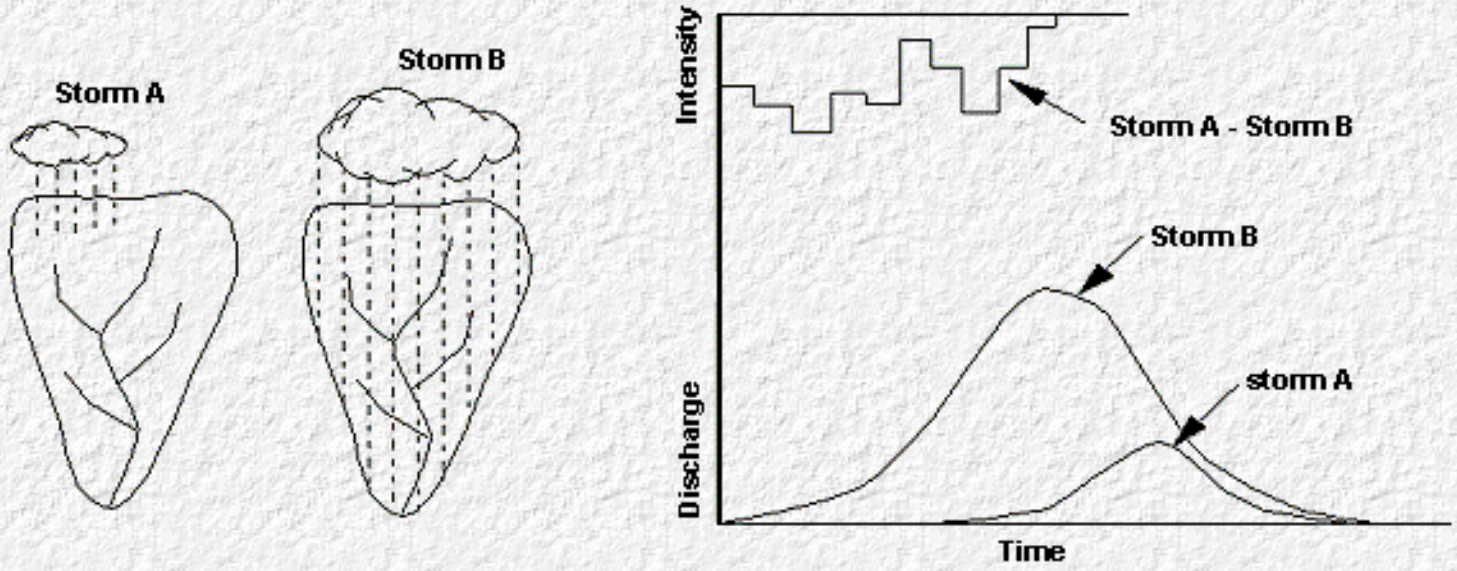


Figure 2-9. Effect of Storm Size on Runoff Hydrograph

2.1.4 Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves

Three rainfall characteristics are important and interact with each other in many hydrologic design problems. Rainfall intensity, duration, and frequency were defined and discussed in the previous section. For use in design, the three characteristics are combined, usually graphically into the intensity-duration-frequency (IDF) curve. Rainfall intensity is graphed as the ordinate and duration as the abscissa. One curve of intensity versus duration is given for each exceedence frequency. IDF curves are location dependent. For example, the IDF curve for Baltimore, MD, is not the same as that for Washington, D.C. The differences, while slight, reflect differences in rainfall characteristics at the two locations. Because of this location dependency, a local IDF curve must be used for hydrologic design work. An example of an IDF graph is used in Example 2-3. The development of IDF curves is discussed in Appendix A of Drainage of Highway Pavements (Johnson and Chang, 1984).

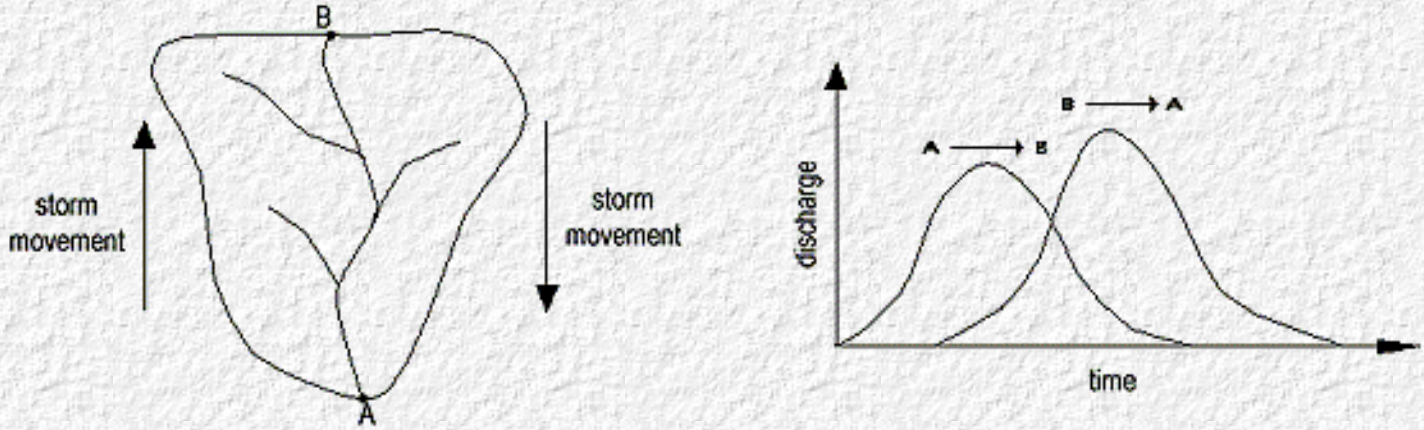


Figure 2-10. Effect of Storm Movement on Runoff Hydrograph

IDF curves are plotted on log-log paper and have a characteristic shape. Typically, the IDF curve for a specific exceedence frequency is characteristically curved for small durations, usually 2 hours and shorter, and straight for the longer durations. Thus, the following model can be used to represent the IDF curve for any exceedence frequency:

$$i = \begin{cases} \dfrac{a}{D+b} & for \quad D \le 2h \\ cD^{d} & for \quad D > 2h \end{cases}$$

in which

i is the rainfall intensity (mm/h)
D is the rainfall duration (hours)
a, b, c, and d are constants that can be estimated using least-squares regression (McCuen, 1989).

For D less than two hours, a linear least-squares relationship is obtained by taking the reciprocal of the equation, which yields:

$$\frac{1}{i} = \frac{D+b}{a} = \frac{1}{a}D + \frac{b}{a} = fD + g$$

Letting y = 1/i, the values of f and g can be fitted using least-squares regression of y on D.
The values of a and b are then obtained by algebraic transformation: a = 1/f and b = g/f.

For durations longer than two hours the power-model equation is placed in linear form by taking logarithms:

log i = log c + d log D
y = h + dx

in which

y = log i
h = log c
x = log D

Once h and d are fitted with least-squares, the value of c is computed by $c = 10^{h}$.

Volume-duration-frequency (VDF) curves are sometimes provided in hydrologic design manuals. The VDF curve is similar to the IDF curve except the depth of rainfall is graphed as the ordinate. The IDF curve is preferred because many design methods use rainfall intensities rather than rainfall depths.

2.2 Hydrologic Abstractions

Abstractions is the collective term given to the various processes that act to remove water from the incoming precipitation before it leaves the watershed as runoff. These processes are evaporation, transpiration, interception, infiltration, depression storage, and detention storage. The most important abstractions in determining the surface runoff from a given precipitation event are infiltration, depression storage, and detention storage.

2.2.1 Evaporation

Evaporation is the process by which water from the land and water surfaces is converted into water vapor and returned to the atmosphere. It occurs continually whenever the air is unsaturated and temperatures are sufficiently high. Air is 'saturated' when it holds its maximum capacity of moisture at the given temperature. Saturated air has a relative humidity of 100 percent. Evaporation plays a major role in determining the long-term water balance in a watershed. However, evaporation is usually insignificant in small watersheds for single storm events and can be discounted when calculating the discharge from a given rainfall event.

2.2.2 Transpiration

Transpiration is the physical removal of water from the watershed by the life actions associated with the growth of vegetation. In the process of respiration, green plants consume water from the ground and transpire water vapor to the air through their foliage. As was the case with evaporation, this abstraction is only significant when taken over a long period of time, and has minimal effect upon the runoff resulting from a single storm event for a watershed.

2.2.3 Interception

Interception is the removal of water that wets and adheres to objects above ground such as buildings, trees, and vegetation. This water is subsequently removed from the surface through evaporation. Interception can be as high as 2 mm during a single rainfall event but usually is nearer 0.5 mm. The quantity of water removed through interception is usually not significant for an isolated storm, but when added over a period of time, it can be a significant. It is thought that as much as 25 percent of the total annual precipitation for certain heavily forested areas of the Pacific Northwest of the United States is lost through interception during the course of a year.

2.2.4 Infiltration

Infiltration is the flow of water into the ground by percolation through the earth's surface. The process of infiltration is complex and depends upon many factors such as soil type, vegetal cover, antecedent moisture conditions or the amount of time elapsed since the last precipitation event, precipitation intensity, and temperature. Infiltration is usually the

single most important abstraction in determining the response of a watershed to a given rainfall event. As important as it is, there is no generally acceptable model developed to accurately predict infiltration rates or total infiltration volumes for a given watershed.

2.2.5 Depression Storage

Depression storage is the term applied to water that is lost because it becomes trapped in the numerous small depressions that are characteristic of any natural surface. When ponded water temporarily accumulates in a low point with no possibility for escape as runoff, the accumulation is referred to as depression storage. The amount of water that is lost due to depression storage varies greatly with the land use. A paved surface will not detain as much water as a recently furrowed field. The relative importance of depression storage in determining the runoff from a given storm depends on the amount and intensity of precipitation in the storm. Typical values for depression storage range from 1 to 8 mm with some values as high as 15 mm per event. As with evaporation and transpiration, depression storage is generally not directly calculated in highway design.

2.2.6 Sheet Flow Storage

Sheet flow storage is water that is temporarily stored in the depth of water necessary for overland flow to occur. The volume of water in motion over the land constitutes the detention storage. The amount of water that will be stored is dependent on a number of factors such as land use, vegetal cover, slope, and rainfall intensity. Typical values for detention storage range from 2 to 10 mm but values as high as 50 mm have been reported.

2.2.7 Total Abstraction Methods

While the volumes of the individual abstractions may be small, their sum can be hydrologically significant. Therefore, hydrologic methods commonly lump all abstractions together and compute a single value. The SCS curve number method lumps all abstractions together, with the volume equal to the difference between the volumes of rainfall and runoff. The phi-index method assumes a constant rate of abstraction over the duration of the storm. These total abstraction methods simplify the calculation of storm runoff rates.

2.3 Characteristics of Runoff

Water that has not been abstracted from the incoming precipitation leaves the watershed as surface runoff. While runoff occurs in several stages, the flow that becomes channelized is the main consideration to highway stream crossing design since it determines the size of a given drainage structure. The rate of flow or runoff at a given instant, in terms of volume per unit of time, is called discharge. Some characteristics of runoff that are important to drainage design are:

1. the peak discharge or peak rate of flow,

2. the discharge variation with time (hydrograph),
3. the stage-discharge relationship,
4. the total volume of runoff; and
5. the frequency with which discharges of specified magnitudes are likely to be equalled or exceeded (probability of exceedence).

2.3.1 Peak Discharge

The peak discharge, often called peak flow, is the maximum rate of runoff passing a given point during or after a rainfall event. Highway designers are interested in peak flows for storms in an area because it is the discharge that a given structure must be sized to handle. Of course, the peak flow varies for each different storm, and it becomes the designer's responsibility to size a given structure for the magnitude of storm that is determined to present an acceptable risk in a given situation. Peak flow rates can be affected by many factors in a watershed, including rainfall, basin size, and the physiographic features.

2.3.2 Time Variation (Hydrograph)

The flow in a stream varies from time to time, particularly during and in response to storm events. As precipitation falls and moves through the watershed, water levels in streams rise and may continue to do so (depending on position of the storm over the watershed) after the precipitation has ceased. The response of an affected stream through time during a storm event is characterized by the flood hydrograph. This response can be pictured by graphing the flow in a stream relative to time. The primary features of a typical hydrograph are illustrated in Figure 2-11 and include the rising and falling limbs, the peak flow, the time to peak, and the time base of the hydrograph. There are several types of hydrographs, such as flow per unit area and stage hydrographs, but all display the same typical variation through time.

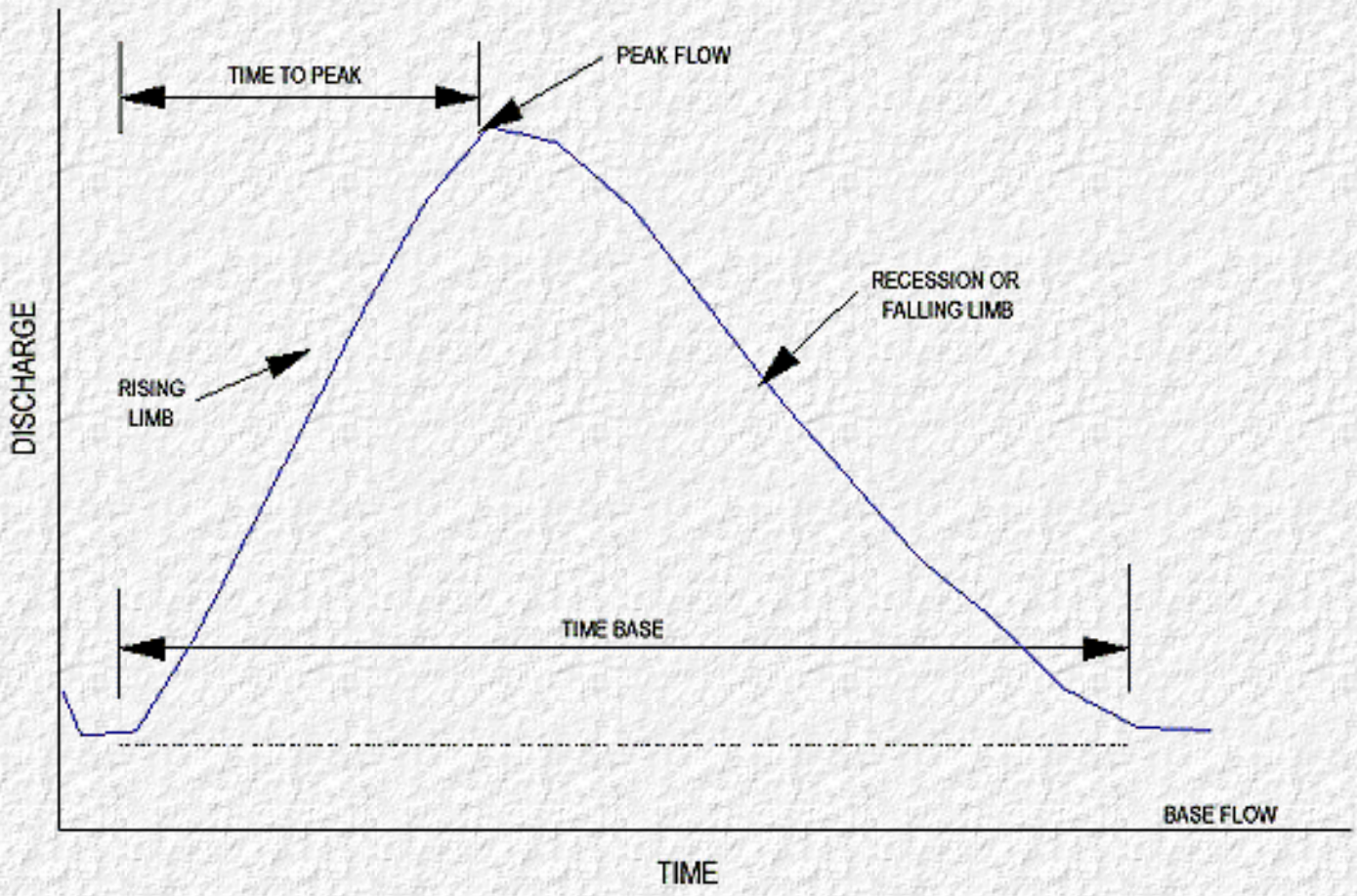


Figure 2-11. Elements of a Flood Hydrograph

2.3.3 Stage-Discharge

The stage of a river is the elevation of the water surface above some arbitrary datum. The datum can be mean sea level, but usually is set slightly below the point of zero flow in the given stream. The stage of a river is directly related to the discharge, which is the quantity of water passing a given point (see Figure 2-12a). Discharge varies directly with stage. As the discharge increases, the stage rises and as the discharge decreases the stage falls. Generally, discharge is related to stage at a particular point by a series of field measurements of discharge that define the stage-discharge relationship.

The discharge is determined by mapping a cross-sectional area in a stream, and multiplying the area by point measurements of velocity at various locations and depths in that cross section. It has been found that the average velocity in a given cross section segment (of not more than 5 percent of the total cross-sectional area of a stream) can be approximated within 2 percent by averaging the velocities at two-tenths and eight-tenths of the total depth at the measurement location (see Figure 2-12b). The velocity at six-tenths depth below the surface also characterizes the mean velocity in a cross-sectional segment within about 5 percent for depths less than 0.75 m. For depths greater than 0.75 m, the two-tenths and eight-tenths depth velocities are averaged to

obtain the mean velocity. The total discharge is the sum of the incremental flows estimated for each cross-sectional segment.

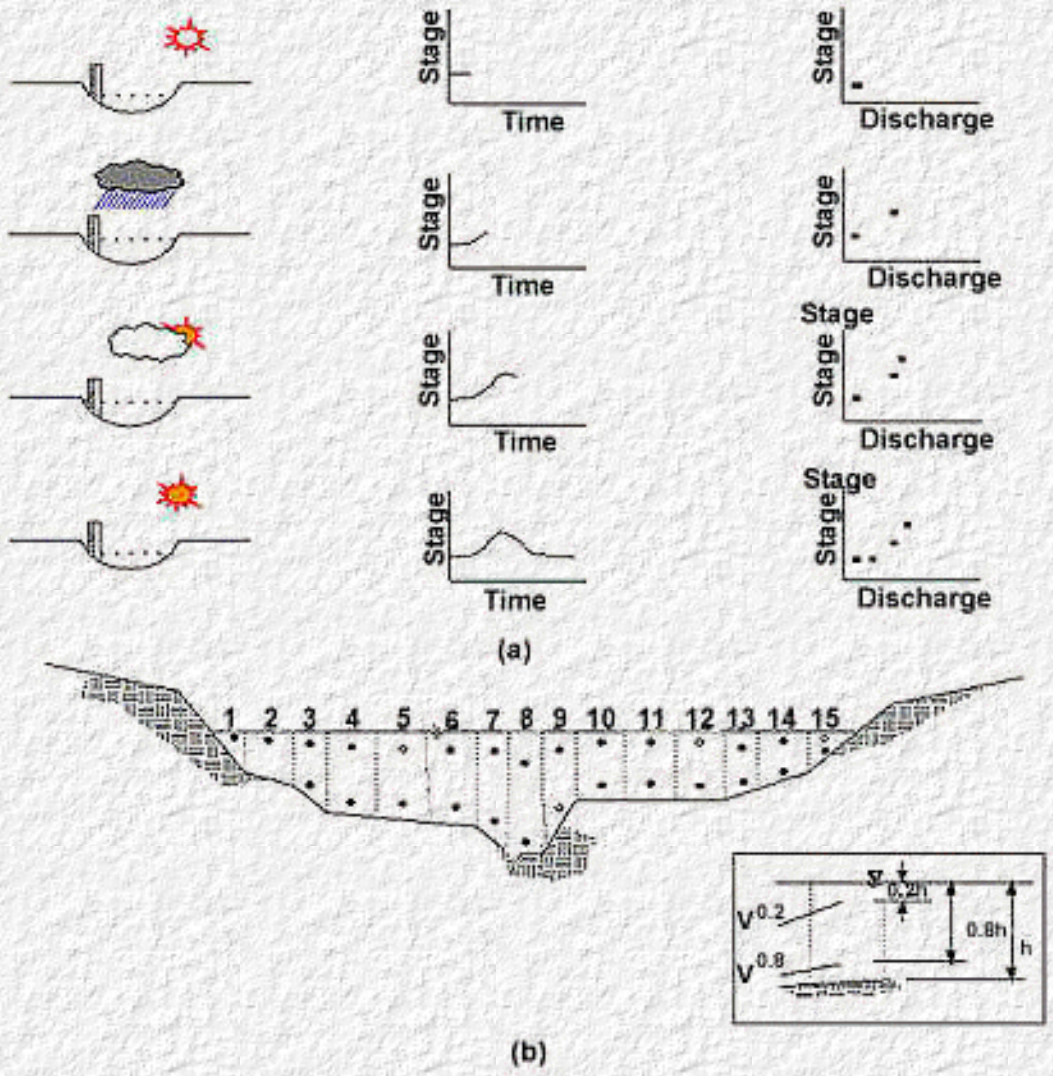


Figure 2-12. (a) Relation Between Stage and Discharge: (b) Location of Stream Cross-Section Velocity Measurements

---

2.3.4 Total Volume

The total volume of runoff from a given flood is of primary importance to the design of storage facilities and flood control works. Flood volume is not normally a consideration in the design of highway structures although it is used in various analyses for other design parameters. Flood volume is most easily determined as the area under the flood hydrograph (Figure 2-11) and is commonly measured in units of cubic meters. The equivalent depth of net rain over the watershed is determined by dividing the volume of runoff by the watershed area.

2.3.5 Frequency

The exceedence frequency is the relative number of times a flood of a given magnitude can be expected to occur on the average over a long period of time. It is usually expressed as a ratio or a percentage. By its definition, frequency is a probabilistic concept and is the probability that a flood of a given magnitude may be equalled or exceeded in a specified period of time, usually 1 year. Exceedence frequency is an important design parameter in that it identifies the level of risk during a specified time interval acceptable for the design of a highway structure.

2.3.6 Return Period

Return period is a term commonly used in hydrology. It is the average time interval between the occurrence of storms or floods of a given magnitude. The exceedence probability (p) and return period (T) are related by T = 1/p. For example, a flood with an exceedence probability of 0.01 in any one year is referred to as the 100-year flood. The use of the term return period is sometimes discouraged because some people interpret it to mean that there will be exactly T years between occurrences of the event. Two 100-year floods can occur in successive years or they may occur 500 years apart. The return period is only the long-term average number of years between occurrences.

2.4 Effects of Basin Characteristics on Runoff

The spatial and temporal variations of precipitation and the concurrent variations of the individual abstraction processes determine the characteristics of the runoff from a given storm. These are not the only factors involved, however. Once the local abstractions have been satisfied for a small area of the watershed, water begins to flow overland and eventually into a natural drainage channel such as a gully or a stream valley. At this point, the hydraulics of the natural drainage channels have a large influence on the character of the total runoff from the watershed.

A few of the many factors that determine the hydraulic character of the natural drainage system are drainage area, slope, hydraulic roughness, natural and channel storage, drainage density, channel length, antecedent moisture conditions, and other factors. The effect that each of these factors has on the important characteristics of runoff is often difficult to quantify. The following paragraphs discuss some of the factors that affect the hydraulic character of a given drainage system.

2.4.1 Drainage Area

Drainage area is the most important watershed characteristic that affects runoff. The larger the contributing drainage area, the larger will be the flood runoff (see Figure 2-13a). Regardless of the method utilized to evaluate flood flows, peak flow is directly related to the drainage area.

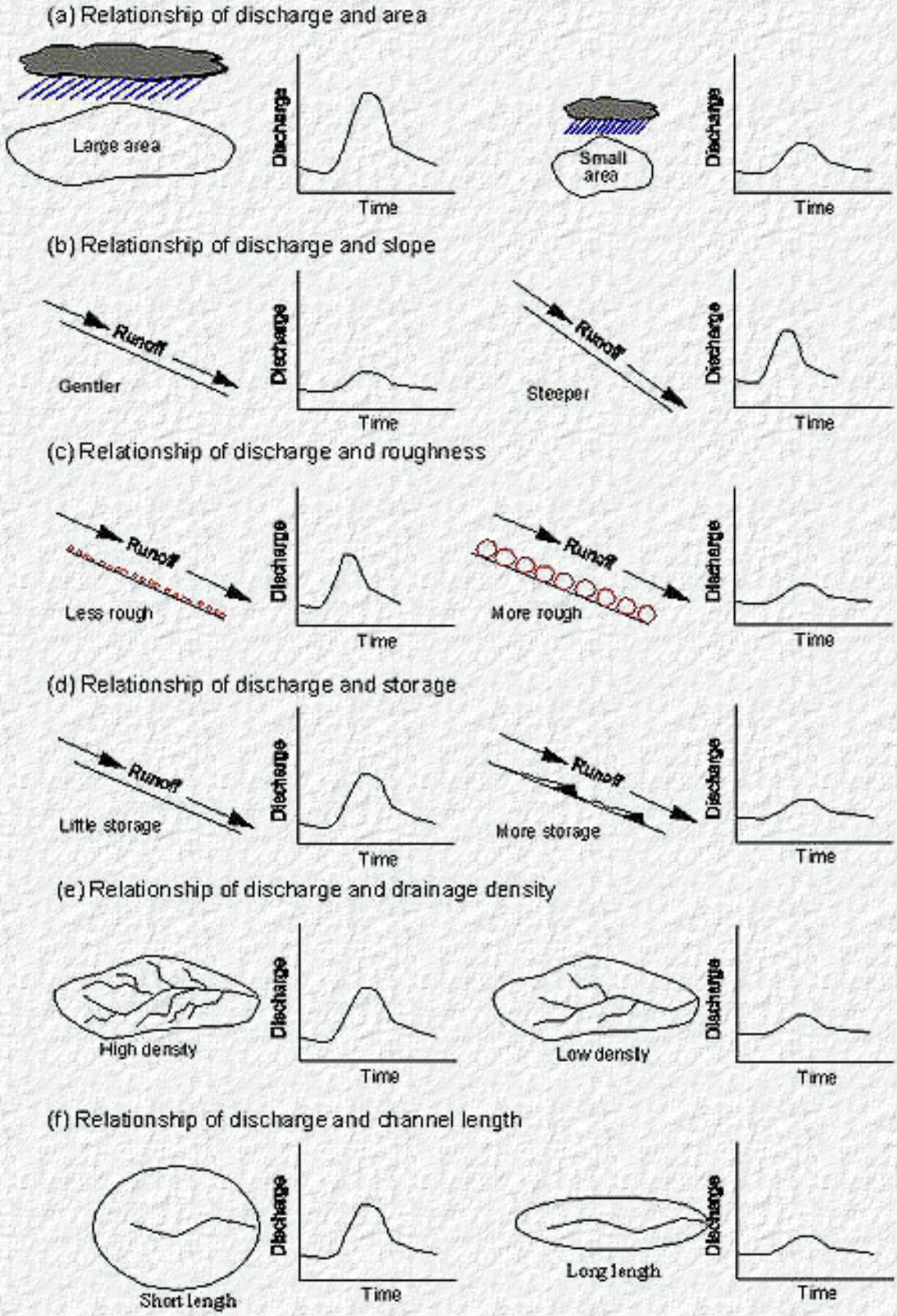


Figure 2-13. Effects of Basin Characteristics on the Flood Hydrograph

2.4.2 Slope

Steep slopes tend to result in rapid runoff responses to local rainfall excess and consequently higher peak discharges (see Figure 2-13b). The runoff is quickly removed from the watershed, so the hydrograph is short with a high peak. The stage-discharge relationship is highly dependent upon the local characteristics of the cross section of the drainage channel, and if the slope is sufficiently steep, supercritical flow may prevail. The total volume of runoff is also affected by slope. If the slope is very flat, the rainfall will not be removed as rapidly. The process of infiltration will have more time to affect the rainfall excess, thereby increasing the abstractions and resulting in a reduction of the total volume of rainfall that appears directly as runoff.

Slope is very important in how quickly a drainage channel will convey water, and therefore, it influences the sensitivity of a watershed to precipitation events of various time durations. Watersheds with steep slopes will rapidly convey incoming rainfall, and if the rainfall is convective (characterized by high intensity and relatively short duration), the watershed will respond very quickly with the peak flow occurring shortly after the onset of precipitation. If these convective storms occur with a given frequency, then the resulting runoff can be expected to occur with a similar frequency. On the other hand, for a watershed with a flat slope, the response to the same storm will not be as rapid, and depending on a number of other factors, the frequency of the resulting discharge may be dissimilar to the storm frequency.

2.4.3 Hydraulic Roughness

Hydraulic roughness is a composite of the physical characteristics that influence the depth and speed of water flowing across the surface, whether natural or channelized. It affects both the time response of a drainage channel and the channel storage characteristics. Hydraulic roughness has a marked effect on the characteristics of the runoff resulting from a given storm. The peak rate of discharge is usually inversely proportional to hydraulic roughness, i.e., the lower the roughness, the higher the peak discharge. Roughness affects the runoff hydrograph in a manner opposite of slope. The lower the roughness, the more peaked and shorter in time the resulting hydrograph will be for a given storm (see Figure 2-13c).

The stage-discharge relationship for a given section of drainage channel is also dependent on roughness (assuming normal flow conditions and the absence of artificial controls). The higher the roughness, the higher the stage for a given discharge.

The total volume of runoff is virtually independent of hydraulic roughness. An indirect relationship does exist in that higher roughnesses slow the watershed response and allow some of the abstraction processes more time to affect runoff. Roughness also has an influence on the frequency of discharges of certain magnitudes by affecting the response time of the watershed to precipitation events of specified frequencies.

2.4.4 Storage

It is common for a watershed to have natural or manmade storage that greatly affects the response to a given precipitation event. Common features that contribute to storage within a watershed are lakes, marshes, heavily vegetated overbank areas, natural or manmade constrictions in the drainage channel that cause backwater, and the storage in the floodplains of large, wide rivers. Storage can have a significant effect in reducing the peak rate of discharge, although this reduction is not necessarily universal. There have been some instances where artificial storage redistributes the discharges very radically resulting in higher peak discharges than would have occurred had the storage not been added. As shown in Figure 2-13d, storage generally spreads the hydrograph out in time, delays the time to peak, and alters the shape of the resulting hydrograph from a given storm. The effect of storage reservoirs is detailed in Section 7.2.

The stage-discharge relationship also can be influenced by storage within a watershed. If the section of a drainage channel is upstream of the storage and within the zone of backwater, the stage for a given discharge will be higher than if the storage were not present. If the section is downstream of the storage, the stage-discharge relationship may or may not be affected, depending upon the presence of channel controls.

The total volume of runoff is not directly influenced by the presence of storage. Storage will redistribute the volume over time, but will not directly change the volume. By redistributing the runoff over time, storage may allow other abstraction processes to decrease the runoff as was the case with slope and roughness.

Changes in storage have a definite effect upon the frequency of discharges of given magnitudes. Storage tends to dampen the response of a watershed to very short events and to accentuate the response to very long events. This alters the relationship between frequency of precipitation and the frequency of the resultant runoff.

2.4.5 Drainage Density

Drainage density can be defined as the ratio between the number of well defined drainage channels and the total drainage area in a given watershed. Drainage density is usually assumed to equal the total length of continuously flowing streams (km) divided by the drainage area (km^2). It is determined by the geology and the geography of the watershed.

Drainage density has a strong influence on both the spatial and temporal response of a watershed to a given precipitation event. If a watershed is well covered by a pattern of interconnected drainage channels, and the overland flow time is relatively short, the watershed will respond more rapidly than if it were sparsely drained and overland flow time was relatively long. The mean velocity of runoff is normally lower for overland flow than it is for flow in a well defined natural channel. High drainage densities are associated with increased response of a watershed leading to higher peak discharges and shorter hydrographs for a given precipitation event (see Figure 2-13e).

Drainage density has minimal effect on the stage-discharge relationship for a particular section of drainage channel. It does, however, have an effect on the total volume of

runoff since some of the abstraction processes are directly related to how long the rainfall excess exists as overland flow. Therefore, the lower the density of drainage, the lower will be the volume of runoff from a given precipitation event.

Changes in drainage density such as with channel improvements in urbanizing watersheds can have an effect on the frequency of discharges of given magnitudes. By strongly influencing the response of a given watershed to any precipitation input, the drainage density determines in part the frequency of the response. The higher the drainage density, the more closely related the resultant runoff frequency will be to that of the corresponding precipitation event.

2.4.6 Channel Length

Channel length is an important watershed characteristic. The longer the channel the more time it takes for water to be conveyed from the headwaters of the watershed to the outlet. Consequently, if all other factors are the same, a watershed with a longer channel length will usually have a slower response to a given precipitation input than a watershed with a shorter channel length. As the hydrograph travels along a channel, it is attenuated and extended in time due to the effects of channel storage and hydraulic roughness. As shown in Figure 2-13f, longer channels result in lower peak discharges and longer hydrographs.

The frequency of discharges of given magnitudes will also be influenced by channel length. As was the case for drainage density, channel length is an important parameter in determining the response time of a watershed to precipitation events of given frequency. However, channel length may not remain constant with discharges of various magnitudes. In the case of a wide floodplain where the main channel meanders appreciably, it is not unusual for the higher flood discharges to overtop the banks and essentially flow in a straight line in the floodplain, thus reducing the effective channel length.

The stage-discharge relationship and the total volume of runoff are practically independent of channel length. Volume, however, will be redistributed in time, similar in effect to storage but less pronounced.

2.4.7 Antecedent Moisture Conditions

As noted earlier, antecedent moisture conditions, which are the soil moisture conditions of the watershed at the beginning of a storm, affect the volume of runoff generated by a particular storm event. Runoff volumes are related directly to antecedent moisture levels. The smaller the moisture in the ground at the beginning of precipitation, the lower will be the runoff. Conversely, the larger the moisture content of the soil, the higher the runoff attributable to a particular storm.

2.4.8 Other Factors

There can be other factors within the watershed that determine the characteristics of runoff, including the extent and type of vegetation, the presence of channel modifications, and flood control structures. These factors modify the runoff by either augmenting or negating some of the basin characteristics described above. It is important to recognize that all of the factors discussed exist concurrently within a given watershed, and their combined effects are very difficult to model and quantify.

2.5 Illustration of the Runoff Process

In Section 2.2 several key abstractions were described in general terms. The method by which the runoff process can be analyzed and the results used to obtain a hydrograph are illustrated in the following example. Figure 2-14a through Figure 2-14h show the development of the flood hydrograph from a typical rainfall event.

2.5.1 Rainfall Input

Rainfall is randomly distributed in time and space, and the rainfall experienced at a particular point can vary greatly. For simplification, consider the rainfall at only one point in space and assume that the variation of rainfall intensity with time can be approximated by discrete time periods of constant intensity. This simplification is illustrated in Figure 2-14a. The specific values of intensity and time are not important for this illustrative example since it shows only relative magnitudes and relationships. The rainfall, so arranged, is the input to the runoff process, and from this, the various abstractions must be deleted

---

2.5.2 Interception

Figure 2-14b illustrates the relative magnitude and time relationship for interception. When the rainfall first begins, the foliage and other intercepting surfaces are dry. As water adheres to these surfaces, a large portion of the initial rainfall is abstracted. This occurs in a relatively short period of time and once the initial wetting is complete, the interception losses quickly decrease to a lower, nearly constant value. The rainfall that has not been intercepted falls to the ground surface to continue in the runoff process.

2.5.3 Depression Storage

Figure 2-14c illustrates the relative magnitude of depression storage with time. Only the water that is in excess of that necessary to supply the interception is available for depression storage. This is the reason that the depression storage curve begins at zero. The amount of water that goes into depression storage varies with differing land uses and soil types, but the curve shown is representative. The smallest depressions are filled first and then the larger depressions are filled as time and the rainfall supply

continue. The slope of the depression-storage curve depends on the distribution of storage volume with respect to the size of depressions. There are usually many small depressions that fill rapidly and account for most of the total volume of depression storage. This results in a rapid peaking of storage with time as shown in Figure 2-14c. The large depressions take longer to fill and the curve gradually approaches zero when all of the depression storage has been filled. When the rainfall input equals the interception, infiltration, and depression storage, there is no surface runoff.

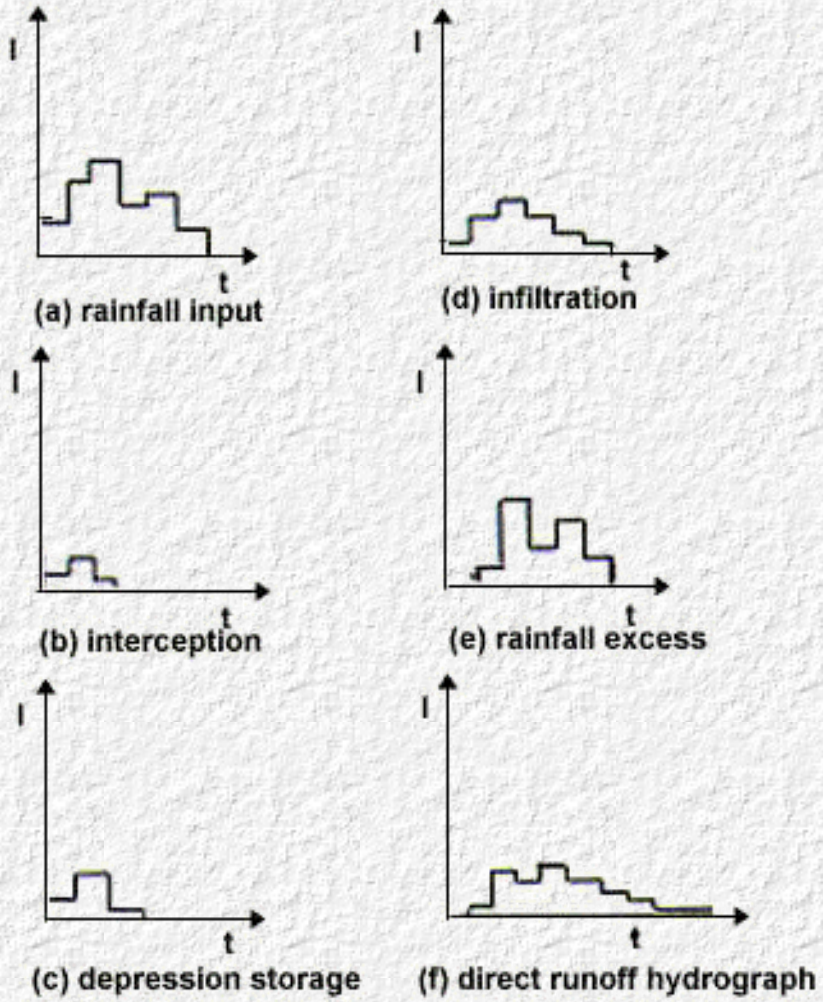


Figure 2-14. The Runoff Process

2.5.4 Infiltration

Infiltration is a complex process, and the rate of infiltration at any point in time depends on many factors. The important point to be illustrated in Figure 2-14d is the time dependence of the infiltration curve. It is also important to note the behavior of the infiltration curve after the period of relatively low rainfall intensity near the middle of the storm event. The infiltration rate increases over what it was prior to the period of lower intensity because the upper layers of the soil are drained at a rate that is independent of the rainfall intensity. Most deterministic models, including the phi-index method for estimating infiltration discussed in Section 6.1.4.3, do not model the infiltration process accurately in this respect.

2.5.5 Rainfall Excess

Only after interception, depression storage, and infiltration have been satisfied is there an excess of water available to run off from the land surface. As previously defined, this is the rainfall excess and is illustrated in Figure 2-14e. Note how this rainfall excess differs with the actual rainfall input, Figure 2-14a.

The concept of excess rainfall is very important in hydrologic analyses. It is the amount of water available to run off after the initial abstractions and other losses have been satisfied. Except for the losses that may occur during overland and channelized flow, it determines the volume of water that flows past the outlet of a drainage basin. When multiplied by the drainage area, it should be very nearly equal to the volume under the direct runoff hydrograph as defined in Section 2.3.4. The rainfall excess has a direct effect on the outflow hydrograph. It influences the magnitude of the peak flow, the duration of the flood hydrograph, and the shape of the hydrograph.

2.5.6 Detention Storage

A volume of water is detained in temporary (detention) storage. This volume is proportional to the local rainfall excess and is dependent on a number of other factors as mentioned in Section 2.2.6. Although all water in detention storage eventually leaves the basin, this requirement must be met before runoff can occur.

2.5.7 Local Runoff

Local runoff is actually the residual of the rainfall input after all abstractions have been satisfied. It is similar in shape to the excess rainfall (see Figure 2-14e), but is extended in time as the detention storage acts on the local runoff.

2.5.8 Outflow Hydrograph

Figure 2-14f illustrates the final outflow hydrograph from the watershed due to the local runoff hydrograph. This final hydrograph is the cumulative effect of all the modifying factors that act on the water as it flows through drainage channels as discussed in Section 2.4. The total volume of water contained under the direct runoff hydrograph of Figure 2-14f and the rainfall excess of Figure 2-14e are the same, although the position of the outflow hydrograph in time is modified due to the smoothing of the surface runoff and the channel processes.

The processes that have been discussed in the previous sections all act simultaneously to transform the incoming rainfall from that shown in Figure 2-14a to the corresponding outflow hydrograph of Figure 2-14f. This example serves to illustrate the runoff process for a small local area. If the watershed is of appreciable size or if the storm is large, then areal and time variations and other factors add a new level of complexity to the problem.

2.6 Travel Time

The travel time of runoff is very important in hydrologic design. In the design of inlets and pipe drainage systems, travel times of surface runoff must be estimated. Some peak discharge methods (see Chapter 5) use the time of concentration as input to obtain rainfall intensities from the intensity-duration-frequency curves. Hydrograph times-to-peak, which are in some cases computed from times of concentration, are used with the hydrograph methods of Chapter 6. Channel routing methods (see Chapter 7) use computed travel times in routing hydrographs through channel reaches. Thus, estimating travel times are central to a variety of hydrologic design problems.

2.6.1 Time of Concentration

The time of concentration, which is denoted as t_c, is defined as the time required for a particle of water to flow from the hydraulically most distant point in the watershed to the outlet or design point. Factors that affect the time of concentration are the length of flow, the slope of the flow path, and the roughness of the flow path. For flow at the upper reaches of a watershed, rainfall characteristics, most notably the intensity, may also influence the velocity of the runoff.

Various methods can be used to estimate the time of concentration of a watershed. When selecting a method to use in design, it is important to select a method that is appropriate for the flow path. Some estimation methods were designed and can be classified as lumped in that they were designed and calibrated to be used for an entire watershed; the SCS lag formula is an example of this method. These methods have t_c as the dependent variable. Other methods are intended for one segment of the principal flow path and produce a flow velocity that can be used with the length of that segment of the flow path to compute the travel time on that segment. With this method, the time of concentration equals the sum of the travel times on each segment of the principal flow path.

In classifying these methods so that the proper method can be selected, it is useful to describe the segments of flow paths. Sheet flow occurs in the upper reaches of a watershed. Such flow occurs over short distances and at shallow depths prior to the point where topography and surface characteristics cause the flow to concentrate in rills and swales. The depth of such flow is usually 20 to 30 mm or less. Concentrated flow is runoff that occurs in rills and swales and has depths on the order of 40 to 100 mm. Part of the principal flow path may include pipes or small streams. The travel time through these segments would be computed separately. Velocities in open channels are usually determined assuming bank-full depths.

2.6.2 Sheet-Flow Travel Time

Sheet flow is a shallow mass of runoff on a plane surface with the depth uniform across the sloping surface. Typically flow depths will not exceed 50 mm. Such flow occurs over relatively short distances, rarely more than about 100 m, but most likely less than 25 m. Sheet flow rates are commonly estimated using a version of the kinematic wave equation. The original form of the kinematic wave time of concentration is:

$$t_c = \frac{6.92}{i^{0.4}}\left(\frac{nL}{\sqrt{S}}\right)^{0.6} \qquad \text{2-1}$$

in which t_c is the time of concentration (minutes), n is the roughness coefficient ($s/m^{1/3}$), L is the flow length (m), i is the rainfall intensity (mm/h) for a storm that has a return period T and duration of t_c minutes, and S is the slope of the surface in m/m. Values of n can be obtained from Table 2-1.

Some hydrologic design methods, such as the rational equation, assume that the storm duration equals the time of concentration. Thus, the time of concentration is entered into the IDF curve to find the design intensity. However, for Equation 2-1, i depends on t_c and t_c is not initially known. Therefore, the computation of t_c is an iterative process. An initial estimate of t_c is assumed and used to obtain i from the intensity-duration-frequency curve for the locality. The t_c is computed from Equation 2-1 and used to check the initial value of i. If they are not the same, then the process is repeated until two successive t_c estimates are the same.

To avoid the necessity to solve for t_c iteratively, the SCS TR-55 (1986) uses the following variation of the kinematic wave equation:

$$t_c = \frac{5.476}{P_2^{0.5}}\left(\frac{nL}{\sqrt{S}}\right)^{0.8} \qquad \text{2-1a}$$

in which P_2 is the 2-year, 24-hour rainfall depth (mm) and the other variables are the same as for Equation 2-1. Equation 2-1a is based on an assumed IDF relationship. TR-55 recommends an upper limit of L = 91 m for using Equation 2-1a, although others have suggested that 91 m is too long of a flow length for Equation 2-1a to be applicable.

Table 2-1. Manning's Roughness Coefficient (n) for Overland and Sheet Flow+

n	Surface Description
0.011	Smooth asphalt
0.012	Smooth concrete
0.013	Concrete lining
0.014	Good wood
0.014	Brick with cement mortar
0.015	Vitrified clay
0.015	Cast iron

0.024	Corrugated metal pipe
0.024	Cement rubble surface
0.05	Fallow (no residue)
	Cultivated soils
0.06	Residue cover ≤ 20%
0.17	Residue cover > 20%
0.13	Range (natural)
	Grass
0.15	Short grass prairie
0.24	Dense grasses
0.41	Bermudagrass
	Woods*
0.40	Light underbrush
0.80	Dense underbrush

*When selecting n for woody underbrush, consider cover to a height of about 30 mm. This is the only part of the plant cover that will obstruct sheet flow.
+Values obtained from SCS TR-55 (1986)[49] and McCuen (1989)[33].

2.6.3 Velocity Method

The velocity method can be used to estimate travel times for sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow, pipe flow, or channel flow. It is based on the concept that the travel time (T_t) for a flow segment is a function of the length of flow (L) and the velocity (V):

$$T_t = \frac{L}{60V} \qquad 2\text{-}2$$

in which T_t, L, and V have units of minutes, meters, and meters/second, respectively. The travel time is computed for the principal flow path. When the principal flow path consists of segments that have different slopes or land covers, the principal flow path should be divided into segments and Equation 2-2 used for each flow segment. The time of concentration is then the sum of travel times:

$$t_c = \sum_{i=1}^{k} T_{ti} = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \left(\frac{L_i}{60V_i}\right) \qquad 2\text{-}3$$

in which k is the number of segments and the subscript i refers to the flow segment.

The velocity of Equation 2-2 is a function of the type of flow (overland, sheet, rill and gully flow, channel flow, pipe flow), the roughness of the flow path, and the slope of the flow path. Some methods also include a rainfall index such as the 2-year, 24-hour rainfall depth. A number of methods have been developed for estimating the velocity.

After short distances, sheet flow tends to concentrate in rills and then gullies of increasing proportions. Such flow is usually referred to as shallow concentrated flow. The velocity of such flow can be estimated using an empirical relationship between the velocity and the slope:

$$V = kS^{0.5} \qquad 2\text{-}4$$

in which V is the velocity (m/s) and S is the slope (percent). The value of k is a function of the land cover, with values for selected land covers given in Table 2-2.

Table 2-2. Intercept Coefficients for Velocity vs. Slope Relationship of Equation 2-4 (McCuen, 1989)

k	Land cover/flow regime
0.076	Forest with heavy ground litter; hay meadow (overland flow)
0.152	Trash fallow or minimum tillage cultivation; contour or strip cropped; woodland (overland flow)
0.213	Short grass pasture (overland flow)
0.274	Cultivated straight row (overland flow)
0.305	Nearly bare and untilled (overland flow); alluvial fans in western mountain regions
0.457	Grassed waterway (shallow concentrated flow)
0.491	Unpaved (shallow concentrated flow)
0.619	Paved area (shallow concentrated flow); small upland gullies

Manning's Equation. Flow in gullies empties into channels or pipes. Open channels are assumed to begin where either the blue-line stream shows on USGS quadrangle sheets or the channel is visible on aerial photographs. Cross-section information (i.e., depth-area and roughness) can be obtained for any channel reach in the watershed. Manning's equation can be used to estimate average flow velocities in pipes and open channels:

$$V = \frac{1.0}{n} R^{2/3} S^{1/2} \qquad 2\text{-}5$$

in which V is the velocity (m/s), n is the roughness coefficients, R is the hydraulic radius (m), and S is the slope (m/m). The hydraulic radius equals the cross-sectional area divided by the wetted perimeter. For a circular pipe flowing full, the hydraulic radius equals one-fourth of the diameter: R = D/4. For flow in a wide rectangular channel, the hydraulic radius is approximately equal to the depth of flow (d): R = d. Note that Equation 2-4 uses the slope as a percentage, while Equation 2-5 uses the slope expressed as a fraction.

Example 2-1

The data of Table 2-3 can be used to illustrate the estimation of the time of concentration with the velocity method. Two watershed conditions are indicated, pre- and post-development. In the pre-development condition, the 1.62-hectare drainage area is primarily forested, with a natural channel having a good stand of high grass. In the post-development condition, the channel has been eliminated and replaced with a 381-mm (15-inch) diameter pipe.

For the existing condition, the velocities of flow for the overland and grassed waterway segments can be obtained with Equation 2-4 and Table 2-2. For the slopes given in Table 2-3, the velocities for the first two segments are:

$$V_1 = 0.076 S^{0.5} = 0.076(1.0)^{0.5} = 0.076\ m/s$$

$$V_2 = 0.457 S^{0.5} = 0.457(0.8)^{0.5} = 0.409\ m/s$$

For the roadside channel, the velocity can be estimated using Manning's equation; a value for Manning's n of 0.15 is obtained from Table 2-1 and a hydraulic radius of 0.3 meters is estimated using conditions at the site:

Table 2-3. Characteristics of Principal Flow Path for Time of Concentration Estimation for Example 2-1

Watershed condition	Flow segment	Length (m)	Slope (m/m)	Type of flow
Existing	1	43	0.010	Overland (forest)
	2	79	0.008	Grassed waterway
	3	146	0.008	Roadside channel (high grass, good stand)
Developed	1	15	0.010	Overland (short grass)
	2	15	0.010	Paved
	3	91	0.008	Grassed waterway
	4	128	0.009	Pipe-concrete (381-mm dia.

$$V_3 = \frac{1.0}{0.15}(0.3)^{0.67}(0.008)^{0.5} = 0.27\ m/s$$

Thus the time of concentration can be computed with Equation 2-3:

$$t_c = \frac{43}{0.076} + \frac{79}{0.409} + \frac{146}{0.27} = 566 + 193 + 541 = 1300\ s$$

which is 21.7 minutes.

For the post-development conditions, the flow velocities for the first three segments can be determined with Equation 2-4. For the slopes given in Table 2-3, the velocities are:

$$V_1 = 0.213(1.0)^{0.5} = 0.213\ m/s$$

$$V_2 = 0.619(1.0)^{0.5} = 0.619\ m/s$$

$$V_3 = 0.457(0.8)^{0.5} = 0.409\ m/s$$

Assuming Manning's coefficient equals 0.011 for the concrete pipe and R = D/4, the velocity is:

$$V = \frac{1.0}{0.011}\left(\frac{0.38}{4}\right)^{0.67}(0.009)^{0.5} = 1.8\ m/s$$

A slope of 0.009 m/m is used since the meandering roadside channel was replaced with a pipe, which resulted in a shorter length of travel and, therefore, a larger slope. Thus the time of concentration is:

$$t_c = \frac{15}{0.213} + \frac{15}{0.619} + \frac{91}{0.409} + \frac{128}{1.8}$$
$$= 70 \quad + 24 \quad + 222 \quad + 71 = 387\ s$$

which is 6.5 minutes. Thus the land development decreased the time of concentration from 21.5 minutes to 6.5 minutes.

Example 2-2

Figure 2-15a shows the principal flow path for the existing conditions of a small watershed. The characteristics of each section are given in Table 2-4, including the land use/cover, slope, and length.

Equation 2-4 is used to compute the velocity of flow for section A to B:

$$V = kS^{0.5} = 0.076(7)^{0.5} = 0.2\ m/s$$

Thus, the travel time, which is computed with Equation 2-2, is:

$$T_t = \frac{150\ m}{0.2\ m/s\ (60)} = 12.5\ min$$

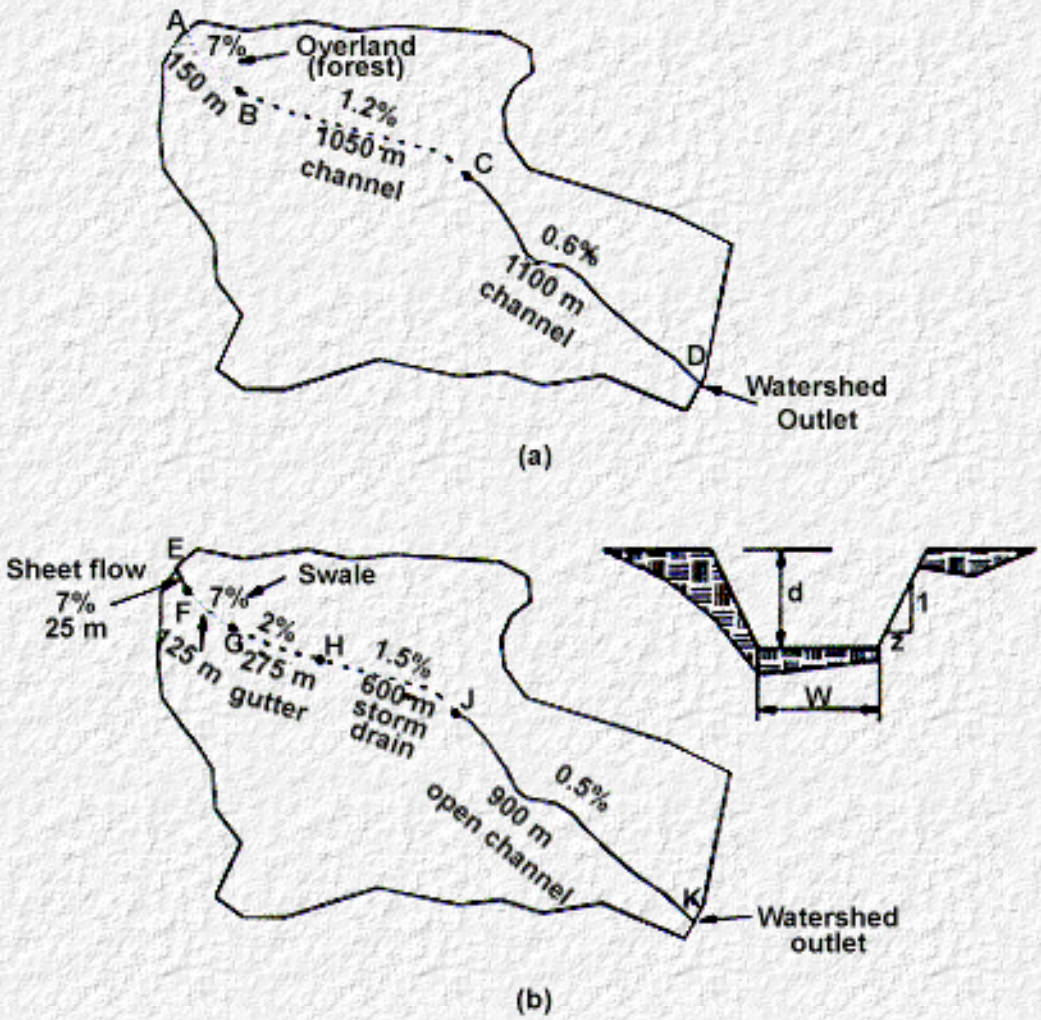


Figure 2-15. Time of Concentration Estimation: (a) Principal Flow Path for Existing Conditions; (b) Principal Flow Path for Developed Conditions

For the section from B to C, Manning's equation is used. For a trapezoidal channel the hydraulic radius is:

$$R = \frac{A}{WP} = \frac{wd + zd^2}{w + 2d\sqrt{1 + z^2}} + \frac{0.3(0.7) + 2(0.7)^2}{0.3 + 2(0.7)\sqrt{1 + (2)^2}}$$

$$= 0.35\ m$$

Thus, Manning's equation yields a velocity of:

$$V = \frac{1}{0.040}(0.35)^{0.67}(0.012)^{0.5} = 1.36\ m/s$$

and the travel time is:

$$T_t = \frac{1050\ m}{1.36\ m/s\ (60)} = 12.9\ min$$

For the section from C to D, Manning's equation is used. The hydraulic radius is:

$$R = \frac{1.25(0.7) + 2(0.7)^2}{1.25 + 2(0.7)\sqrt{1 + (2)^2}} = 0.42\ m$$

Thus, the velocity is:

$$V = \frac{1}{0.030}(0.42)^{2/3}(0.006)^{0.5} = 1.45\ m/s$$

Table 2-4. Characteristics of Principal Flow Path

Watershed Condition	Reach	Length (m)	Slope (%)	n	Land use/cover
Existing	A to B	150	7.0	-	Overland (forest)
	B to C	1050	1.2	0.040	Natural channel (trapezoidal): w = 0.3 m, d = 0.7 m, z = 2:1
	C to D	1100	0.6	0.030	Natural channel (trapezoidal): w = 1.25 m, d= 0.7 m, z = 2:1
Developed	E to F	25	7.0	0.013	Sheet flow: i = 47/(0.285 + D) where i[=] mm/h, D[=] h
	F to G	125	7.0	-	Grassed swale
	G to H	275	2.0	-	Gutter flow (paved)
	H to J	600	1.5	0.015	Storm drain (Dia. = 1.07 m)
	J to K	900	0.5	0.019	Open channel (trapezoidal): w = 1.6 m, d = 1 m, z = 1:1

and the travel time is:

$$T_t = \frac{1100\ m}{1.45\ m/s\ (60)} = 12.6\ min$$

Thus, the total travel time is the sum of the travel times for the individual segments (Equation 2-3):

$$t_c = 12.5 + 12.9 + 12.6 = 38.0\ min$$

For the developed conditions, the principal flow path is segmented into five parts (see Figure 2-15b). For the first part of the overland flow portion, the runoff is sheet flow;

thus, the kinematic wave equation (Equation 2-1) is used. For short durations at the location of this example, the 2-year IDF curve for the location of the example can be represented by the following relationship between i and D:

$$i = \frac{47}{0.285 + D}$$

in which i is the intensity (mm/h) and D is the duration (hours).

An initial time of concentration of 5 minutes is assumed and used with the 2-year IDF curve to estimate the intensity:

$$i = \frac{47}{0.285 + D} = \frac{47}{0.285 + 5/60} = 128\ mm/h$$

Thus, Equation 2-1 yields a revised estimate of the travel time:

$$T_t = \frac{6.92}{128^{0.4}} \left(\frac{0.013(25)}{\sqrt{0.07}} \right)^{0.6} = 1.1\ min$$

Since this differs from the initial estimate of 5 minutes, the intensity is recomputed from the IDF relationship. A value of 155 mm/h results, which then yields a revised travel time of 1.1 min, which is used as the value for this part of the flow path because it equals the travel time of 1.1 minutes computed after the first iteration.

For the section from F to G, the flow path consists of grass-lined swales. Equation 2-4 can be used to compute the velocity:

$$V = 0.457\ S^{0.5} = 0.457(7)^{0.5} = 1.21\ m/s$$

Thus, the travel time is:

$$T_t = \frac{L}{V} = \frac{125\ m}{1.21\ m/s(60)} = 1.7\ min$$

For the segment from G to H, the principal flow path consists of paved gutters. Thus, Equation 2-4 with Table 2-2 is used:

$$V = 0.619\ S^{0.5} = 0.619(2)^{0.5} = 0.88\ m/s$$

and the travel time is:

$$T_t = \frac{275\ m}{0.88\ m/s(60)} = 5.2\ min$$

The segment from H to J is a 1.07-m (42-inch) pipe. Thus, Manning's equation is used. The hydraulic radius is one-fourth the diameter (D/4), so the velocity for full flow is:

$$V = \frac{1}{0.015}(0.2675)^{0.67}(0.015)^{0.5} = 3.39\ m/s$$

and the travel time is:

$$T_t = \frac{L}{V} = \frac{600\ m}{3.39\ m/s(60)} = 2.9\ min$$

The final section J to K is an improved trapezoidal channel. The hydraulic radius is:

$$R = \frac{wd + zd^2}{w + 2d\sqrt{1 + z^2}} = \frac{1.6(1) + 1(1)^2}{1.6 + 2(1)\sqrt{1 + 1^2}} = 0.59\ m$$

Manning's equation is used to compute the velocity:

$$V = \frac{1}{0.019}(0.59)^{0.67}(0.005)^{0.5} = 2.61\ m/s$$

and the travel time is:

$$T_t = \frac{L}{V} = \frac{900\ m}{2.61\ m/s(60)} = 5.8\ min$$

Thus, the total travel time through the five segments is the time of concentration for the developed conditions:

$$t_c = \Sigma T_t = 1.1 + 1.7 + 5.2 + 2.9 + 5.8 = 16.7\ min$$

The t_c for developed conditions is 45 percent of the t_c for the existing conditions.

Example 2-3

When Equation 2-1 is used, it must be solved iteratively. Consider the case of overland flow on short grass (n = 0.15) at a slope of 0.005 m/m. Assume the flow length is 50 m.

Equation 2-1 is:

$$t_c = \frac{6.92}{i^{0.4}}\left(\frac{0.15(50)}{\sqrt{0.005}}\right)^{0.6} = \frac{113.6}{i^{0.4}} \qquad 2\text{-}6$$

The value of i is obtained from an IDF curve for the locality of the project. For this example, the IDF curve of Baltimore is used (see Figure 2-16), and the problem assumes that a 2-year return period is specified. An initial t_c of 12 minutes will be used to obtain the intensity from Figure 2-16. The initial intensity is 116 mm/h. Using this Equation 2-6 gives a t_c of 17.0 minutes. Since this differs from the assumed t_c of 12 minutes, a second iteration is necessary.

Using a duration of 17.0 minutes with Figure 2-16 gives a rainfall intensity of 78 mm/h, which when substituted into Equation 2-6 yields an estimated t_c of 19.9 minutes. Again, this differs from the assumed value of 17.0 minutes, so another iteration is required.

For this iteration, the rainfall intensity is found from Figure 2-16 using a duration of 19.9 minutes. This gives an intensity of 72 mm/h. With Equation 2-6, the estimated t_c is 20.5 minutes. While the change in t_c for this iteration is small, one more iteration will be made.

For a duration of 20.5 minutes, the intensity is 71 mm/h. Equation 2-6 gives a t_c of 20.6 minutes. Since this would not change the intensity, a time of concentration of 20.6 minutes is used for this flow path.

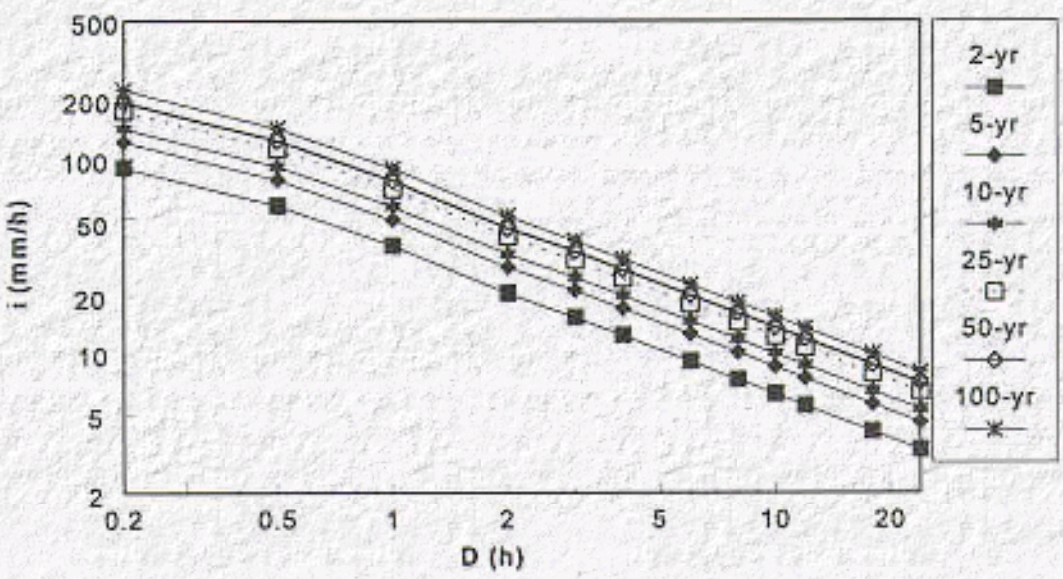


Figure 2-16. Rainfall Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for Selected Return Periods

---

Go to Chapter 3

Chapter 3 : HDS 2
Hydrologic Data

Go to Chapter 4, Part I

As a first step in a hydrologic study, it is desirable to identify the data needs as precisely as possible. These needs will depend on whether the project is preliminary and accuracy is not critical, or if detailed analysis is to be performed to obtain parameters for final design. Once the purpose of the study is defined, it is usually possible to select a method of analysis for which the type and amount of data can be readily determined. These data may consist of details of the watershed such as maps, topography, and land use, records of precipitation for various storm events, and information on annual or partial peak flows or continuous streamflow records. Depending on the size and scope of the project, it may even be necessary to seek out historical data on floods in order to better define the streamflow record. Occasionally, the collection of raw data may be necessitated by the project purposes.

If data needs are clearly identified, the effort necessary for its collection and compilation can be tailored to the importance of the project. Often, a well thought out data collection program generally leads to a more orderly and efficient analysis. It should be remembered, however, that data needs vary with the method of analysis, and that there is no single method applicable to all design problems.

Once data needs have been properly defined the next step is to identify possible sources of data. Past experience is the best guide as to which sources of data are likely to yield the required information. There is no substitute for actually searching through all the possible sources of data as a means of becoming familiar with the types of data available. This experience will pay dividends in the long run even if the data required for a particular study are not available in the researched sources. By acquainting the designer with the data that are available and the procedures necessary to access the various data sources, the time required for subsequent data, searches can often be significantly reduced.

3.1 Collection and Compilation of Data

Most of the data and information necessary for the design of highway stream crossings are obtained from some combination of the following sources:

1. Site investigations and field surveys.
2. Files of federal agencies such as the National Weather Service, U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), SCS, among others.
3. Files of state and local agencies such as state highway departments, water agencies, and various planning organizations.
4. Other published reports and documents.

Certain types of data are needed so frequently that some highway departments have compiled

them into a single document, typically a drainage manual. Having data available in a single source greatly speeds up the retrieval of needed data and also helps to standardize the hydrologic analysis of highway drainage design.

3.1.1 Site Investigations and Field Surveys

It must be remembered that every problem is unique and that reliance on rote application of a standardized procedure, without due appreciation of the characteristics of the particular site is risky at best. A field survey or site investigation should always be conducted except for the most preliminary analysis or trivial designs. The field survey is one of the primary sources of hydrologic data.

The need for a field survey that appraises and collects site specific hydrologic and hydraulic data cannot be overstated. The value of such a survey has been well documented by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Highway Drainage Guidelines and Model Drainage Manual and in Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) guidelines.

Typical data that are collected during a field survey include highwater marks, assessments of the performance of nearby drainage structures, assessments of stream stability and scour potential, location and nature of important physical and cultural features that could affect or be affected by the proposed structure, significant changes in land use from those indicated on available topographic maps, and other equally important and necessary items of information that could not be obtained from other sources.

In order to maximize the amount of data that results from a field site survey, the following should be standard procedure:

1. The individual in charge of the drainage aspects of the field site survey should have a general knowledge of drainage design.
2. Data should be well documented with written reports and photographs.
3. The field site survey should be well planned and a systematic approach employed to maximize efficiency and reduce wasted effort.

The field survey should be performed by highway personnel responsible for the actual design or can be performed by the location survey team if they are well briefed and well prepared. Though the site survey is considered of paramount importance, it is but one data source and must be augmented by additional information from other reliable sources.

3.1.2 Sources of Other Data

An excellent source of data is the records and reports that other federal, state, and municipal public works agencies have published or maintain. Many such agencies have been active in drainage design and construction and have data that can be

very useful for a particular highway project. The designer who is responsible for highway drainage design should become familiar with the various agencies that are, or have been, active in an area. A working relationship with these agencies should be established, either formally or informally, to exchange data for mutual benefit.

Federal agencies that collect data include the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, the USGS, the U.S. SCS, the U.S. Forest Service, the Bureau of Reclamation, the Tennessee Valley Authority, the Federal Emergency Management Agency, and the Environmental Protection Agency.

Historical records or accounts are another source of data that should be considered by the highway designer. Floods are noteworthy events and very often the occurrence of a flood and specific information such as high-water elevations are recorded. Sources of such information include newspapers, magazines, State historical societies or universities, and publications by any of several Federal agencies. A report by the Tennessee Valley Authority (1961) describes sources of historic information. Previous storms or flood events of historic proportion have been very thoroughly documented by the USGS, the Corps of Engineers, and the National Weather Service (NWS). USGS reports documenting historic floods are summarized by Thomas (1987). The publications of these sources can be used to define storm events that may have occurred in the area of concern and their information should be noted.

The sources of information and data referred to in the preceding paragraphs may provide hydrologic data in a form suitable for analysis by the highway designer. Other sources of data will provide information of a more basic nature. An example is the data available from the USGS for the network of stream gaging stations that this agency maintains throughout the country. The stream-gaging program operated by the USGS is described by Condes (1992). This type of information is the basis for any hydrologic study and the highway designer needs to know where to find it. The information categories are:

1. streamflow records,
2. precipitation records,
3. soil types,
4. land use and,
5. other types of basic data needed for hydrologic analysis.

3.1.2.1 Streamflow Data

The major source of streamflow information is the USGS, an agency charged with collecting and documenting this data. In 1994, the USGS collected data at 7,292 stream-gaging stations nationwide. Their computer data base holds mean daily-discharge data for about 18,500 locations (Wahl et al., 1995). This data is compiled by the USGS and is published in Water Supply Papers and also added to a data base called

the Water Data Storage and Retrieval System or WATSTORE.

WATSTORE contains a peak flow file retrieval program that provides pertinent characteristics of the station and drainage area and a listing of both peak annual and secondary floods by water year (October through September). The WATSTORE system contains both data and programs that can be used to analyze and produce statistical summaries of the data (Wahl et al., 1995). Also, the Corps of Engineers and the Bureau of Reclamation collect stream-flow data. These two agencies along with the USGS together account for about 90 percent of the stream flow data that are available in the United States. Other sources of data are local governments, utility companies, water-intensive industries, and academic or research institutions.

Streamflow data are one of the types of data referenced by the National Water Data Exchange (NAWDEX). NAWDEX is a nationwide confederation of water-oriented organizations working together to improve access to water data. Their primary objective is to assist users of water data in the identification, location, and acquisition of needed data.

3.1.2.2 Precipitation Data

The major source of precipitation data is the National Weather Service (NWS). Precipitation and other measurements are made at approximately 20,000 locations each day. The measurements are fed through the Weather Service Forecast Offices (WSFO), which serve each of the 50 states and Puerto Rico.

Each WSFO uses this data and information obtained via satellite and other means, to forecast the weather for its area of responsibility. In addition to the WSFO's, the Weather Service maintains a network of River Forecast Centers (RFC). These River Forecast Centers prepare river and flood forecasts for about 2,500 communities. These two organizational units of the National Weather Service are an excellent source of data and information.

The highway engineer can also obtain data from a regional office of the NWS. The National Weather Service is a part of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), and the data collected by the NWS and other organizations within NOAA are sent to the National Climatic Data Center (NCDC). The NCDC is charged with the responsibility of collecting, processing, and disseminating environmental data, and it is an excellent source of basic data with which the designer should be familiar.

3.1.2.3 Soil Type Data

Information on the type of soil that is characteristic of a particular region is often needed as a basic input in hydrologic evaluations. The major source of soil information is the SCS, which is actively engaged in the classification and mapping of the soils across the country. Soil maps have been prepared for most of the counties in the country. The highway designer should contact the SCS or county extension service to determine the availability of this data.

3.1.2.4 Land-Use Data

Land-use data are available in different forms such as topographic maps, aerial photographs, zoning maps, and Landsat images. These different forms of data are available from many different sources such as State, Regional or municipal planning organizations, the USGS and the Natural Resource Economic Division, Water Branch, of the Department of Agriculture. The highway designer should become familiar with the various planning or other land-use related organizations within the geographic area of interest, and the types of information that they collect, publish, or record.

3.1.2.5 Miscellaneous Basic Data

Aerial photographs are an excellent source of hydrologic information and the SCS and State Highway Departments are good sources of such photographs. Another source of aerial photographs is the USGS, through the National Cartographic Information Center (NCIC). The NCIC operates a national information service for U.S. cartographic and geographic data. They provide access to a number of useful cartographic and photographic products. A few of these products are land-use and land-cover maps, orthophotoquads (black and white photo images in standard USGS quadrangle format), aerial photographs covering the entire country, Landsat images (both standard and computer enhanced), photo indexes showing the prints available for standard USGS quadrangles, and many other services and products too numerous to list.

Other types of basic data that might be needed for a hydrologic analysis include data on infiltration, evaporation, geology, snowfall, solar radiation, and oceanography. Sources of these types of data are scattered and the designer must rely upon past experience or the experience of others, to help locate them. (In order to utilize the combined experience of others, it is wise to develop strong working relationships with other professionals active in the same geographic

area.) The Environmental Data and Information Service (EDIS) is a good starting point for the collection of miscellaneous types of data. The water resources centers located at most land grant universities can also assist in data source identification.

3.1.2.6 National Water Data Exchange

As can be seen from the discussion above, there are a number of different sources of hydrologic data. In fact there are so many that just keeping track of them is an enormous job. It is for this reason that NAWDEX (National Water Data Exchange) was founded. The primary objective of NAWDEX is to assist users of water data in the identification, location, and acquisition of needed data. NAWDEX became operational in l976 and currently provides relatively easy access to vast amounts of water related data.

NAWDEX maintains two major files. The first is the WATER DATA SOURCES DIRECTORY, which identifies organizations that collect water data, locations within these organizations from which water data may be obtained, the geographic area in which the organization collects water data, the types of water data collected and available, and alternate sources from which the organization's water data may be obtained. Information has been compiled for more than 660 organizations, and more will be added on a continuing basis.

The second major file is the MASTER WATER DATA INDEX, which provides a nationwide indexing service of water data-collection sites. Over 375,000 sites are indexed by geographic locations, the data-collecting organization, the types of data available, the period of time for which the data are available, the major water-data parameters for which data are available, the frequency of measurement, and the media in which the data are stored.

The WATER DATA SOURCE DIRECTORY and the MASTER WATER DATA INDEX contain common identifiers that allow them to be used together. For example, the MASTER WATER DATA INDEX may be used to identify water data available in a geographic area and the WATER DATA SOURCES DIRECTORY may then be used to obtain the names and addresses of organizations from which the data may be obtained.

NAWDEX is maintained by the USGS and access to NAWDEX is through a nationwide network of 60 Assistance Centers. A current directory containing the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of all Assistance Centers is available from the NAWDEX Program Office.

Using the agencies mentioned above, the highway designer should

have ample sources to begin collecting the specific data needed. However, there is another source of information that the designer will need. This is the broad collection of general information sources that are invaluable aids in hydrologic analyses. Among them are general references such as textbooks, drainage or hydrology manuals of State or Federal agencies, hydrologic atlases, special reports and technical publications, journals of professional societies, and university publications. It is essential that an adequate hydrologic library be established and maintained so that the wealth of available information is easily accessed. It is equally important that a systematic effort be made to keep abreast of new developments and methods that could improve the accuracy or efficiency of hydrologic analyses.

3.2 Adequacy of Data

Once the needed hydrologic data has been collected, the next step is to compile the data into a usable format. The designer must ascertain whether the data contain inconsistencies or other unexplained anomalies that might lead to erroneous calculations or results. The main reason for analyzing the data is to draw all of the various pieces of collected information together, and to fit them into a comprehensive and accurate representation of the hydrology at a particular site.

Experience, knowledge, and judgment are an important part of data evaluation. It is in this phase that reliable data must be separated from that which is not so reliable and historical data combined with that obtained from measurements. The data must be evaluated for consistency and to identify any changes from established patterns. At this time, any gaps in the data record should either be justified or filled in if possible. Some of the methods and techniques discussed later in this manual are useful for this purpose.

The methods of statistics can be of great value in data analysis, but it must be emphasized that an underlying knowledge of hydrology is essential for prudent and meaningful application of statistical methods. It is also helpful to review previous studies and reports for types and sources of data, how the data were used, and any indications of accuracy and reliability. Historical data should be reviewed to determine whether significant changes have occurred in the watershed that might affect its hydrology and whether these data can be used to possibly improve or extend the period of record.

Basic data, such as streamflow and precipitation, need to be evaluated for hydrologic homogeneity and summarized before use. Maps, aerial photographs, Landsat images, and land-use studies should be compared with one another and with the results of the field survey so any inconsistencies can be resolved. General references should be consulted to help define the hydrologic character of the site or region under study, and to aid in the analysis and evaluation of data.

The results of this type of data evaluation should provide a description of the hydrology of the site within the allotted time and the resources committed to this effort. Obviously, not every

project will be the same, but the designer must adequately define the parameters necessary to design the needed drainage structures to the required reliability.

3.3 Presentations of Data and Analysis

If the data needs have been clearly identified, the results of the analysis can be readily summarized in an appropriate manner and quickly used in the selected method of hydrologic analysis. The data needs of each method are different so no single method of presenting the data will be applicable to all situations. However, there are a few methods of hydrologic analysis that are used so frequently that standardized formats are appropriate. These will be illustrated with examples in subsequent sections of this document.

3.3.1 Documentation

The results of the data collection and data evaluation phases should be documented in order to:

1. Provide a record of the data itself.
2. Provide references to data which have not been incorporated into the record because of its volume or for other reasons.
3. Provide references for the methods of data analysis used.
4. Document assumptions, recommendations and conclusions.
5. Present the results in a form compatible with the analytical method utilized.
6. Index the data and analysis for ease of retrieval.
7. Provide support of expenditures of public funds by highway agencies.

The format, or method, used to document the collected data or subsequent analysis should be standardized. In this way, those unfamiliar with a specific project may readily refer to the needed information. This is especially important in those states where there are several different offices or districts performing hydrologic analyses and design. It is important that all of the data collected is either included in the documentation or adequately referenced so that it may be quickly retrieved. This is true, whether or not the data were used in the subsequent analysis, since it could be very useful in a future study.

It is also important that data analyses be presented in the documentation. If several different methods were used, then each analysis should be reported and documented, even if the results were not included in the final recommendations. Pertinent comments as to why certain results were either discounted or accepted should be a part of the documentation.

Methods used should be referenced to a source such as a State drainage manual, textbook, or other publication. The edition, date, and author (if known) of each reference should be included. It is helpful to include a notation as to where a

particular reference should be consulted. It is also helpful to identify where a particular reference is available.

Perhaps the most important part of the documentation is the recording of assumptions, conclusions, and recommendations that are made during or as a result of the collection and analysis of the data. Since hydrology is not an exact science, it is impossible to adequately collect and analyze hydrologic data without using judgment and making some assumptions. By recording these subjective judgments, the designer not only provides a more detailed and valuable record of the work, but the documentation will prove invaluable to younger, less experienced, personnel who can be educated by exposure to the judgment and experience of their peers.

3.3.2 Indexing

The value of the data collected and its subsequent analysis is greatly enhanced if the data can be retrieved easily and used again in the future. In order for others to find previous studies that contain usable information, it is helpful to positively identify and physically locate the studies. This process is facilitated by a well thought out system of indexing the studies.

One of the best sources of data is the project files of the given highway department. Highway departments have been studying, designing, and constructing drainage structures for many years. The wealth of information that has been gathered and documented during previous work should be consulted routinely whenever a new project is studied or designed.

In order to be of use, it is important that the highway project records and files be cross referenced to facilitate their use as a data base for hydrologic studies. Frequently, project records are filed only by a project number, which is based on the source of financing and route number. This often makes it difficult to retrieve the needed data.

Some method of cross-referencing, which is keyed to a hydrologic index such as the name of a river basin or a hydrologic unit map number, is desirable. A hydrologic unit map number system was developed by the USGS and utilizes a code consisting of from two to eight digits based on four levels of classification. The first level divides the United States into 21 major geographic regions and contains either a major river basin or the combined drainage areas of several rivers. The second level divides the 21 regions into 222 planning subregions, each including either the area drained by a river system, a reach of river and its tributaries, or a closed basin/s or groups of streams forming a coastal drainage area. The third level subdivides the planning subregions into 352 accounting units that are used in managing the National Water Data Network. The fourth level is the cataloging unit which represents all or part of a surface drainage area or distinct hydrologic feature. There are approximately 2,150 cataloging units in the Nation. An example of a

hydrologic unit code is 01080204, where

01 - region
0108 - planning subregion
010802 - accounting unit
01080204 - cataloging unit

USGS Water Supply Paper 2294 provides a map of all the primary regions, planning regions, and accounting units in the United States and a list of all hydrologic unit codes including State and outlying areas. This hydrologic unit code is identical to that used to define gaging stations; for example, the code for the Medina River at San Antonio is 08181500, which is the USGS identifier for this gage.

If a system of documentation and indexing, such as that described above, is implemented and maintained for several years, then the most valuable source of hydrologic data may always be the files of the respective State highway agency.

Go to Chapter 4, Part I

Chapter 4 : HDS 2

Frequency Analysis of Gaged Data
Part I

Go to Chapter 4, Part II

The estimation of peak discharges of various recurrence intervals is one of the most common problems faced by engineers when designing for highway drainage structures. The problem can be divided into two categories:

1. Gaged sites: the site is at or near a gaging station, and the streamflow record is fairly complete and of sufficient length to be used to provide estimates of peak discharges;
2. Ungaged sites: the site is not near a gaging station or the streamflow record is not adequate for analysis.

Sites that are located at or near a gaging station but that have incomplete or very short records represent special cases. For these situations, peak discharges for selected frequencies are estimated either by supplementing or transposing data and treating them as gaged sites; or by using regression equations or other synthetic methods applicable to ungaged sites.

Bulletin 17B (1982) is a guide that "describes the data and procedures for computing flood flow frequency curves where systematic stream gaging records of sufficient length (at least 10 years) to warrant statistical analysis are available as the basis for determination." The guide was intended for use for analyzing records of annual flood peak discharges, including both systematic records and historic data.

Methods for making flood peak estimates can be separated on the basis of the gaged vs. ungaged classification. If gaged data are available at or near the site of interest, then the statistical analysis of the gaged data is generally the preferred method of analysis. Where such data are not available, estimates of flood peaks can be made using either regional regression equations or one of the generally available empirical equations. If the assumptions that underlie the regional regression equations are valid for the site of interest, then their use is preferred to the use of an empirical equations. The USGS has developed and published regional regression equations for estimating the magnitude and frequency of flood discharges for all States and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico (Jennings et al., 1994). Empirical approaches include the rational equation and the SCS Graphical peak discharge equation.

This chapter is concerned primarily with the statistical analysis of gaged data. Appropriate solution techniques are presented and the assumptions and limitations of each are discussed. Regional regression equations and the empirical equations applicable to ungaged sites are discussed in Chapter 5.

4.1 Record Length Requirements

Analysis of gaged data permits an estimate of the peak discharge in terms of its probability or frequency of exceedence at a given site. This is done by statistical methods provided sufficient data are available at the site to permit a meaningful statistical analysis to be made. The Interagency Advisory Committee on Water Data Bulletin 17B (1982) suggests that at least 10 years of record are necessary to warrant a

statistical analysis by methods presented therein. The USGS suggests that flood discharges up to 500 years can be estimated using just ten years of record.

At some sites, historical data may exist on large floods prior to or after the period over which streamflow data were collected. This information can be collected from inquiries, newspaper accounts, and from field surveys for highwater marks. Whenever possible, these data should be compiled and documented to improve frequency estimates.

4.2 Statistical Character of Floods

Fundamental to statistical analysis are the concepts of populations and samples. A population that may be either finite or infinite is defined as the entire collection of all possible occurrences of a given quantity. An example of a finite population is the number of possible outcomes of the throw of the dice, a fixed number. An example of an infinite population is the number of different peak annual discharges possible for a given stream.

A sample is defined as part of a population. In all practical instances, hydrologic data are analyzed as a sample of an infinite population, and it is usually assumed that the sample is representative of its parent population. By representative, it is meant that the characteristics of the sample, such as its measures of central tendency and its frequency distribution, are the same as that of the parent population.

An entire branch of statistics deals with the inference of population characteristics and parameters from the characteristics of samples. The techniques of inferential statistics, which is the name of this branch of statistics, are very useful in the analysis of hydrologic data because samples are used to predict the characteristics of the populations. Not only will the techniques of inferential statistics allow estimates of the characteristics of the population from samples, but they also permit the evaluation of the reliability or accuracy of the estimates. Some of the methods available for the analysis of data are discussed below and illustrated with actual peak flow data.

Before analyzing data it is necessary that it be arranged in a systematic manner. Data can be arranged in a number of ways depending on the specific characteristics that are to be examined. An arrangement of data by a specific characteristic is called a distribution or a series. Some common types of data groupings are the following:

1. magnitude;
2. time of occurrence; and
3. geographic location.

4.2.1 Analysis of Annual and Partial-Duration Series

The most common arrangement of hydrologic data is by magnitude of the annual peak discharge. This arrangement is called an annual series. As an example of an annual series, the 29 annual peak discharges for Mono Creek near Vermilion Valley, California, are listed and ordered according to magnitude in Table 4-1.

Another method used in flood data arrangement is the partial-duration series. This procedure uses all peak flows above some base value. For example, the partial-duration series may consider all flows above the discharge of approximately bankfull stage. The USGS sets the base for the partial-duration series so that approximately three peak flows, on average, exceed the base each year. Over a 20-year period of record, this may yield

sixty or more floods compared to twenty floods in the annual series. The USGS WATSTORE Peak Flow File contains both annual peaks and partial-duration peaks for unregulated watersheds. Figure 4-1 illustrates a portion of the record for Mono Creek containing both the highest annual floods and other large secondary floods.

Partial-duration series are used primarily in defining annual flood damages when more than one event that causes flood damages can occur in any year. If the base for the partial-duration series conforms approximately to bankfull stage, then the peaks above the base are generally flood-damaging events. The partial-duration series avoids a problem with the annual-maximum series, specifically that annual-maximum series analyses ignore floods that are not the highest flood of that year even though they are larger than the highest floods of other years. While partial-duration series produce larger sample sizes than annual maximum series, they require a criterion that defines peak independence. Two large peaks that are several days apart and separated by a period of lower flows may be part of the same hydrometeorological event, and thus, they may not be independent events. Independence of events is a basic assumption that underlies the method of analysis.

Table 4-1. Analysis of Annual Flood Series, Mono Creek, CA

Basin: Mono Creek near Vermilion Valley, CA, South Fork of San Joaquin River Basin

Location: Latitude 37º 22' 00", Longitude 118º 59' 20", 1.6 km downstream from lower end of Vermilion Valley and 9.6 km downstream from North Fork.

Area: 238.3 km ^{2}

Remarks: diversion or regulation

Record: 1922-1950, 29 years (no data adjustments)

Year	Annual maximum (m^3/s)	Ordered series (m^3/s)	Rank	Weibull exceedence probability	Smoothed series (m^3/s)
1922	39.4	49.9	1	0.0333	-
1923	26.6	40.8	2	0.0667	-
1924	13.6	40.2	3	0.1000	27.8
1925	30.0	40.2	4	0.1333	27.9
1926	29.2	40.2	5	0.1667	28.9
1927	40.2	39.4	6	0.2000	30.4
1928	31.5	38.8	7	0.2333	29.2
1929	21.3	38.3	8	0.2667	26.4
1930	24.0	34.9	9	0.3000	26.4
1931	14.9	34.3	10	0.3333	27.7
1932	40.2	33.2	11	0.3667	25.8
1933	38.3	32.0	12	0.4000	27.9
1934	11.4	31.5	13	0.4333	31.0
1935	34.9	31.2	14	0.4667	29.8
1936	30.0	30.0	15	0.5000	32.1
1937	34.3	30.0	16	0.5333	32.9
1938	49.9	29.2	17	0.5667	32.3
1939	15.3	28.0	18	0.6000	34.3
1940	32.0	26.6	19	0.6333	34.1

1941	40.2	26.0	20	0.6667	32.3
1942	33.2	25.8	21	0.7000	34.1
1943	40.8	24.2	22	0.7333	35.4
1944	24.2	24.0	23	0.7667	32.6
1945	38.8	23.7	24	0.8000	31.5
1946	25.8	21.3	25	0.8333	28.1
1947	28.0	15.3	26	0.8667	28.5
1948	23.7	14.9	27	0.9000	26.9
1949	26.0	13.6	28	0.9333	-
1950	31.2	11.4	29	0.9667	-

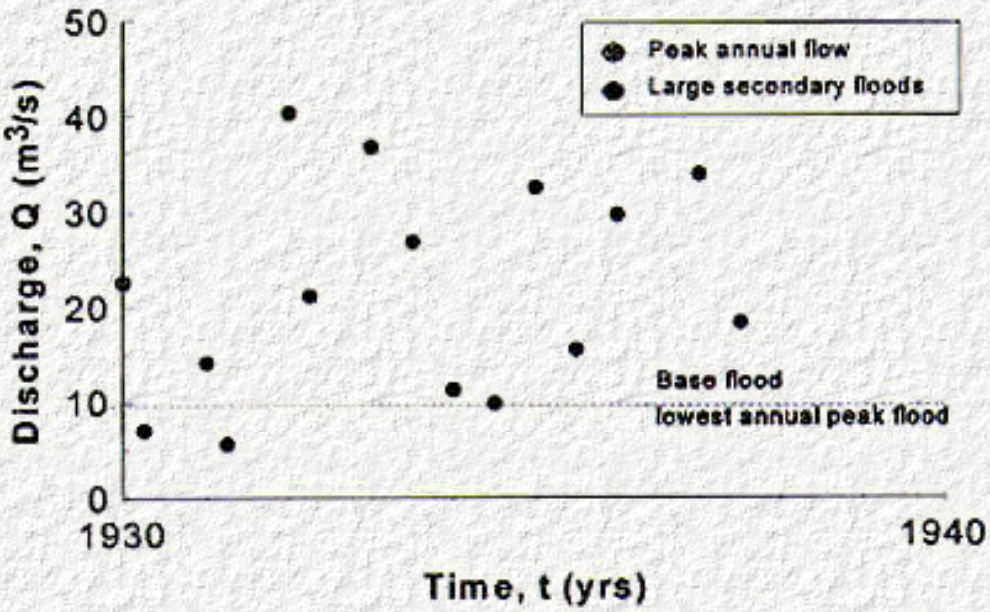


Figure 4-1. Peak Annual and Other Large Secondary Flows, Mono Creek, CA

If these floods are ordered in the same manner as in an annual series, they can be plotted as illustrated in Figure 4-2. By separating out the peak annual flows, the two series can be compared as also shown in Figure 4-2 where it is seen that for a given order, m, the partial-duration series yields a higher peak flow than the annual series. The difference is greatest at the lower flows and becomes very small at the higher peak discharges. If the recurrence interval of these peak flows is computed as the order divided by the number of events (not years), the recurrence interval of the partial-duration series can be computed in the terms of the annual series by the equation:

$$T_B = \frac{1}{\ln T_A - \ln(T_A - 1)} \qquad 4\text{-}1$$

where:

T_B and T_A are the recurrence intervals of the partial-duration series and annual series, respectively. Equation 4-1 can also be plotted as shown in Figure 4-3.

This curve shows that the maximum deviation between the two series occurs for flows with recurrence intervals less than 10 years. At this interval the deviation is about 5 percent and for the 5-year discharge, the deviation is about 10 percent. For the less frequent floods, the two series approach one another (see Table 4-2).

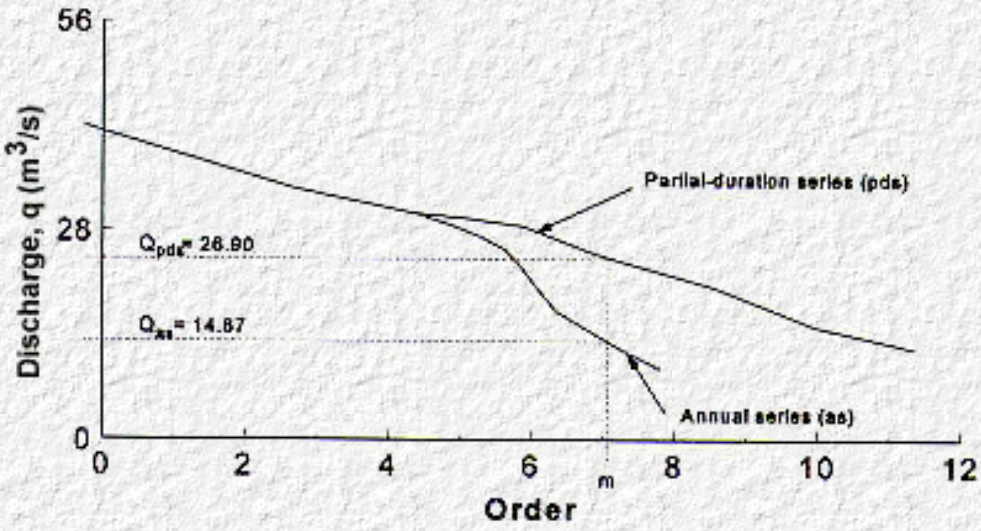


Figure 4-2. Annual and Partial-Duration Series

When using the partial-duration series, one must be especially careful that the selected flood peaks are independent events. This is a tough practical problem since secondary flood peaks may occur during the same flood as a result of high antecedent moisture conditions. In this case, the secondary flood is not an independent event. One should also be cautious with the choice of the lower limit or base flood since it directly affects the computation of the properties of the distribution (i.e., the mean, the variance and standard deviation, and the coefficient of skew) all of which may change the peak flow determinations. For this reason it is probably best to utilize the annual series and convert the results to a partial-duration series through use of Equation 4-1. For the less frequent events (greater than 5 to 10 years), the annual series is entirely appropriate and no other analysis is required.

4.2.2 Detection of Nonhomogeneity in the Annual Flood Series

Frequency analysis is a method based on order-theory statistics. Basic assumptions that should be evaluated prior to performing the analysis are:

1. The data are independent and identically distributed random events.
2. The data are from the sample population.
3. The data are assumed to be representative of the population.
4. The process generating these events is stationary with respect to time.

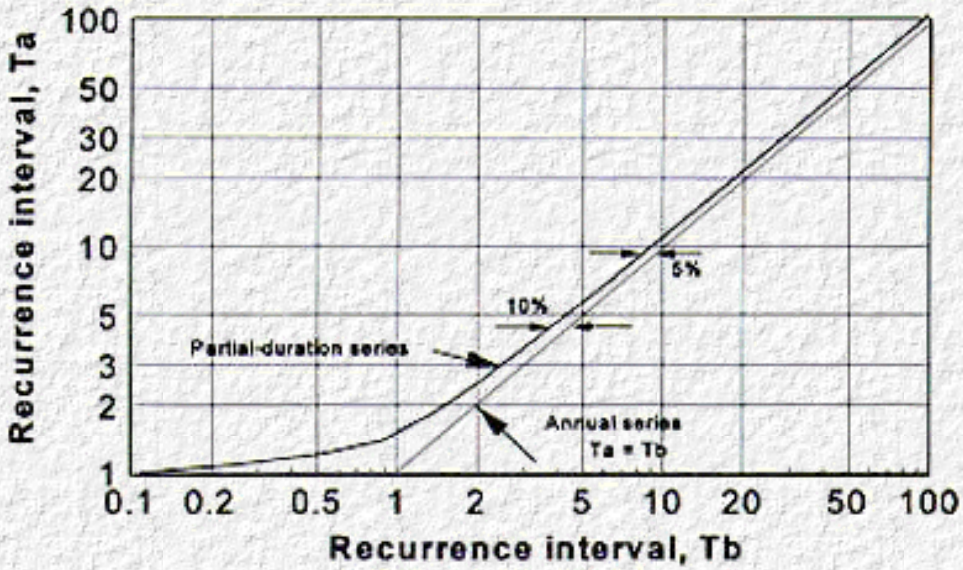


Figure 4-3. Relation Between Annual and Partial-Duration Series

Table 4-2. Comparison of Annual and Partial-Duration Curves: Number of Years Flow Is Exceeded per Hundred Years (from Beard, 1962)

Annual-Event	Partial-Duration
1	1.00
2	2.02
5	5.10
10	10.50
20	22.30
30	35.60
40	51.00
50	69.30
60	91.70
63	100.00
70	120.00
80	161.00
90	230.00
95	300.00

Obviously using a frequency analysis assumes that no measurement or computational errors were made. When analyzing a set of data, the validity of the four assumptions can be statistically tested using tests such as the following:

- Runs test for randomness
- Mann-Whitney U test for homogeneity
- Kendall test for trend
- Spearman rank-order correlation coefficient for trend

The Kendall test is described by Hirsch et al. (1982). The other tests are described in the British Flood Studies Report (National Environmental Research Council, 1975) and in the

documentation for the Canadian flood-frequency program (Pilon and Harvey, 1992). A work group for revising Bulletin 17B is currently writing a report that documents and illustrates these tests.

Another way to arrange data is according to its time of occurrence. Such an arrangement is called a time series. As an example of a time series, the same 29 years of data presented in Table 4-1 are arranged according to year of occurrence rather than magnitude and plotted in Figure 4-4.

This time series shows the temporal variation of the data and is an important step in data analysis. The analysis of time variations is called trend analysis and there are several methods that are used in trend analysis. The two most commonly used in hydrologic analysis are the moving-average method and the methods of curve fitting. A major difference between the moving-average method and curve fitting is that the moving-average method does not provide a mathematical equation for making estimates. It only provides a tabular or graphical summary from which a trend can be subjectively assessed. Curve fitting can provide an equation that can be used to make estimates. The various methods of curve fitting are discussed in more detail by Sanders (1980) and McCuen (1993).

The method of moving averages is presented here. Moving-average filtering reduces the effects of random variations. The method is based on the premise that the systematic component of a time series exhibits autocorrelation (i.e., correlation between nearby measurements) while the random fluctuations are not autocorrelated. Therefore, the averaging of adjacent measurements will eliminate the random fluctuations, with the result converging to a qualitative description of any systematic trend that is present in the data.

In general, the moving-average computation uses a weighted average of adjacent observations to produce a new time series that consists of the systematic trend. Given a time series Y_i, the filtered series $\hat{Y}_i$ is derived by:

$$\hat{Y}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{m} w_j Y_{i-k+j-1} \quad for\ i = (k+1), (k+2), \ldots, (n-k) \qquad 4\text{-}2$$

in which m is the number of observations used to compute the filtered value (i.e., the smoothing interval), and w_j is the weight applied to value j of the series Y. The smoothing interval should be an odd integer, with 0.5 (m-1) values of Y before observation i and 0.5 (m-1) values of Y after observation i used to estimate the smoothed value $\hat{Y}_i$. A total of 2k observations are lost; that is, while the length of the measured time series equals n, the smoothed series, $\hat{Y}_i$, has (n - 2k) values. The simplest weighting scheme would be the arithmetic mean (i.e., $w_j = 1/m$). Other weighting schemes give the greatest weight to the central point in the interval, with successively smaller weights given to points farther removed from the central point.

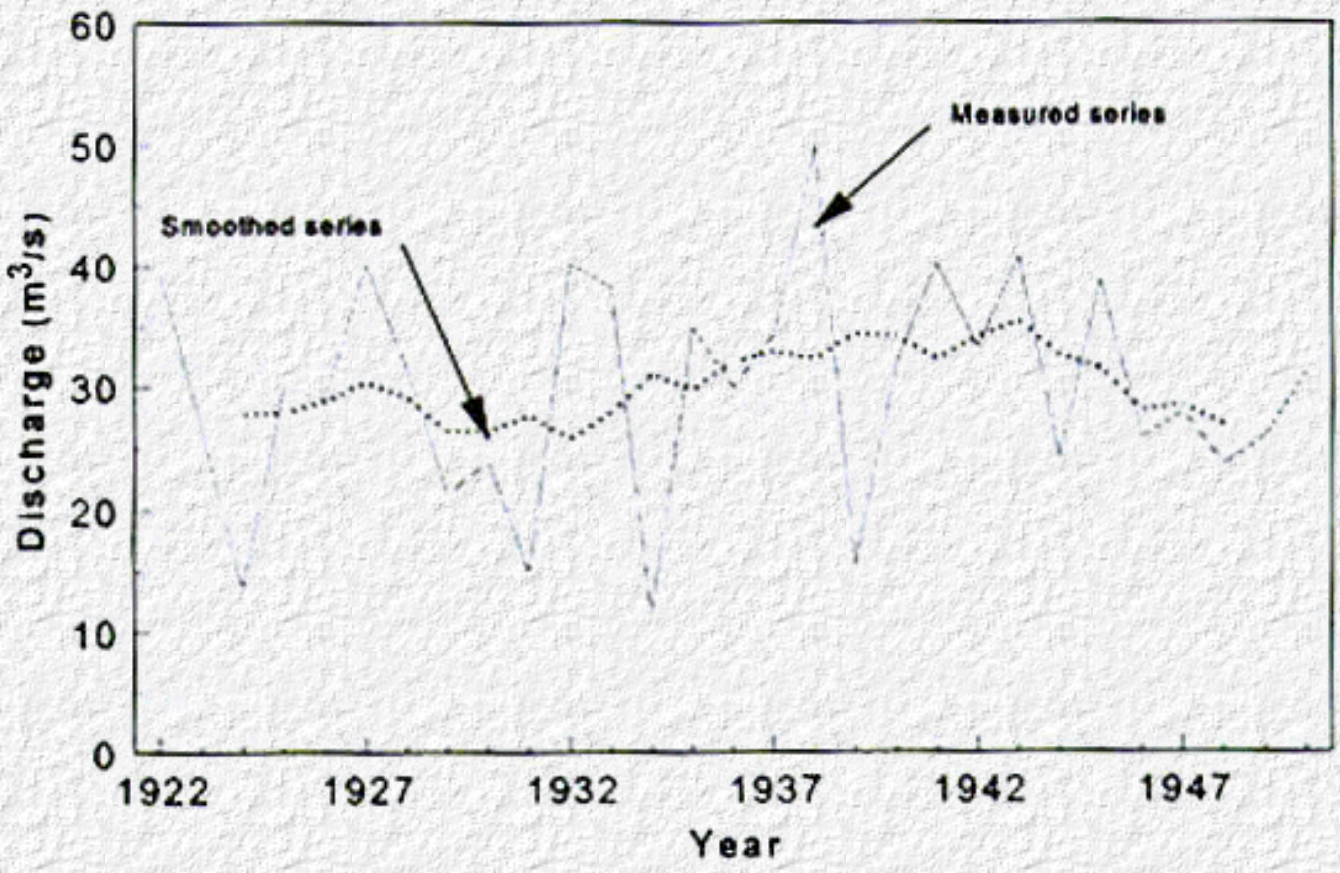


Figure 4-4. Measured and Smoothed Flood Series for Mono Creek, CA

Moving-average filtering has several disadvantages. First, 2k observations are lost, which may be a very limiting disadvantage for short record lengths. Second, a moving-average filter is not itself a mathematical representation, and thus forecasting with the filter is not possible; a structural form must still be calibrated to forecast any systematic trend identified by the filtering. Third, the choice of the smoothing interval is not always obvious, and it is often necessary to try several values in order to provide the best separation of systematic and random variation. Fourth, if the smoothing interval is not properly selected, it is possible to eliminate some of the systematic variation with the random variation.

A moving-average filter can be used to identify the presence of either a trend or a cycle. The smoothed series will enable the form of the trend or the period of the cycle to be estimated. A model can be developed to represent the systematic component and the model coefficients evaluated with a numerical fitting method.

Trend analysis plays an important role in evaluating the effects of changing land use and other time dependent parameters. Often through the use of trend analysis, future events can be estimated more rationally and past events are better understood.

Two examples will be used to demonstrate the use of moving-average smoothing. In both cases, a 5-year smoothing interval was used. Three-year intervals were not sufficient to clearly show the trend, and intervals longer than five years did not improve the ability to interpret the results.

Example 4-1

Table 4-1 contains the 29-year annual flood series for Mono Creek, CA; the series is shown

in Figure 4-4. The calculated smoothed series is also listed in Table 4-1 and shown in Figure 4-4. The trend in the smoothed series is not hydrologically significant, which suggests that rainfall and watershed conditions have not caused a systematic trend during the period of record.

Example 4-2

Table 4-3 contains the 24-year annual flood series and smoothed series for Pond Creek, KY; the two series are shown in Figure 4-5. The Pond Creek watershed became urbanized in the late 1950's. Thus, the flood peaks tended to increase. This is evident from the obvious trend in the smoothed series during the period of urbanization. It appears that urbanization caused at least a doubling of flood magnitudes. While the smoothing does not provide a model of the effects of urbanization, the series does suggest the character of the effects of urbanization. Other possible causes of the trend should be investigated to provide some assurance that the urban development was the cause.

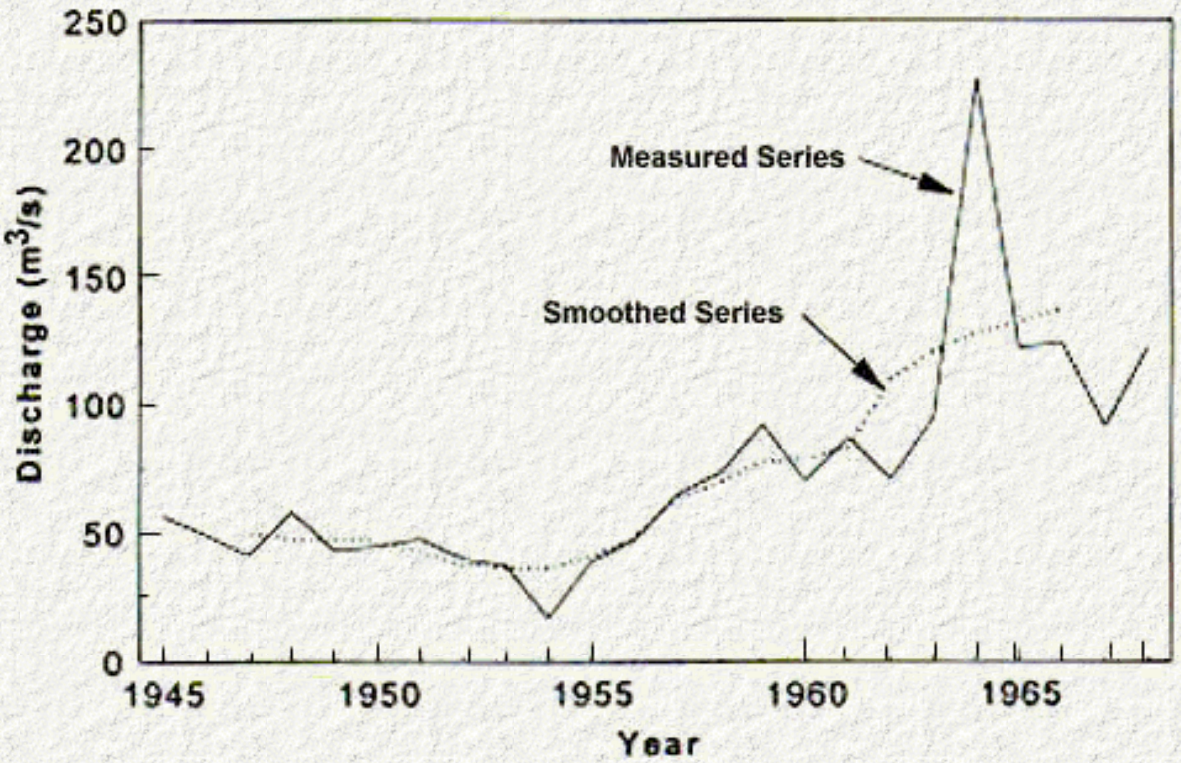


Figure 4-5. Measured and Smoothed Series for Annual Peak Flows in Pond Creek, KY

4.2.3 Arrangement by Geographic Location

The primary purpose of arranging flood data by geographic area is to develop a data base for the analysis of peak flows at sites that are either ungaged or have insufficient data. Classically, flood data are grouped for basins with similar meteorologic and physiographic characteristics. Meteorologically, this means that floods are caused by storms with similar type rainfall intensities, durations, distributions, shapes, travel directions, and other climatic conditions. Similarity of physiographic features means that basin slopes, shapes, stream density, ground cover, geology, and hydrologic abstractions are similar among watersheds in the same region.

Table 4-3. Computation of 5-year Moving Average of Peak Flows: Pond Creek, KY

Year	Annual series (m^3/s)	Smoothed series (m^3/s)
1945	56.7	-
1946	49.3	-
1947	41.4	49.8
1948	58.4	47.5
1949	43.4	47.2
1950	45.1	47.0
1951	47.9	42.8
1952	40.2	37.6
1953	37.7	36.4
1954	17.2	36.3
1955	39.1	41.2
1956	47.0	48.3
1957	64.9	63.4
1958	73.4	69.7
1959	92.4	77.7
1960	70.6	79.0
1961	87.3	83.4
1962	71.4	110.4
1963	95.2	120.7
1964	227.3	128.0
1965	122.1	132.0
1966	124.1	137.4
1967	91.3	-
1968	122.4	-

Some of these parameters are described quantitatively in a variety of ways while others are totally subjective. There can be considerable variation in estimates of watershed similarity in a geographical area. From a quantitative standpoint, it is preferable to consider the properties that describe the distribution of floods from different watersheds. These properties, which are described more fully in later parts of this section, include the variance, standard deviation, and coefficient of skew. Other methods can be used to test for hydrologic homogeneity such as the runoff per unit of drainage area, the ratio of various frequency floods to average floods, the standard error of estimate, and the residuals of regression analyses. The latter techniques are typical of those used to establish geographic areas for regional regression equations and other regional procedures for peak flow estimates.

4.2.4 Probability Concepts

The statistical analysis of repeated observations of an event, e.g., observations of peak annual flows, is based on the laws of probability. The probability of exceedence of a single peak flow, Q_1, is approximated by the relative number of exceedences of Q_1 after a long series of observations, i.e.,

$$P_r(Q_1) = \frac{n_1}{n} = \frac{\text{No. of exceedences of some flood magnitude}}{\text{No. of observations (if large)}} \qquad 4\text{-}3$$

where:

n_1 is defined as the frequency
n_1/n is the relative frequency of Q_1.

Most people have an intuitive grasp of the concept of probability. They know that if a coin is tossed, there is an equal probability that a head or a tail will result. They know this because there are only two possible outcomes and that each is equally likely. Again, relying on past experience or intuition, when a fair die is tossed, there are six equally likely outcomes, any of the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6. Each has a probability of occurrence of 1/6. So the chances that the number 3 will result from a single throw is 1 out of 6. This is fairly straightforward because all of the possible outcomes are known beforehand and the probabilities can be readily quantified.

On the other hand, the probability of a nonexceedence (or failure) of an event such as peak flow, Q_1, is given by:

$$P_r(\text{not } Q_1) = \frac{n - n_1}{n} = 1 - \frac{n_1}{n} = 1 - P_r(Q_1) \qquad 4\text{-}4$$

Combining Equation 4-3 and Equation 4-4 yields:

$$P_r(Q_1) + P_r(\text{not } Q_1) = 1 \qquad 4\text{-}5$$

or the probability of an event being exceeded is between 0 and 1, i.e., $0 \le Pr\{Q_1\} \le 1$. If an event is certain to occur, it has a probability of 1, and if it cannot occur at all, it has a probability of 0.

Given two independent flows, Q_1 and Q_2, the probability of the successive exceedence of both Q_1 and Q_2 is given by:

$$P_r(Q_1 \text{ and } Q_2) = P_r(Q_1)P_r(Q_2) \qquad 4\text{-}6$$

If the exceedence of a flow Q_1 excludes the exceedence of another flow Q_2, then the two events are said to be mutually exclusive. For mutually exclusive events the probability of exceedence of either Q_1 or Q_2 is given by:

$$P_r(Q_1 \text{ or } Q_2) = P_r(Q_1) + P_r(Q_2) \qquad 4\text{-}7$$

4.2.5 Return Period

If the probability of a given annual peak flow, Q_1, or its relative frequency determined from Equation 4-3 is 0.2, this means that there is a 20 percent chance that this flood over a long period of time will be exceeded in any one year. Stated another way, this flood will be exceeded on an average of once every 5 years. This is called the return period, recurrence interval, or exceedence frequency.

The return period, T_r, is related to the probability of exceedence by:

$$T_r = \frac{1}{P_r(Q_1)} \qquad 4\text{-}8$$

The designer is cautioned to remember that a flood with a return period of 5 years does not mean this flood will occur once every five years. As noted, the flood has a 20 percent probability of being exceeded in any year, and there is no preclusion of the 5-year flood being exceeded in several consecutive years. Two 5-year floods can occur in two consecutive years; there is also a probability that a 5-year flood may not be exceeded in a 10-year period. The same is true for any flood of specified return period.

4.2.6 Estimation of Parameters

Flood frequency analysis uses sample information to fit a population, which is a probability distribution. These distributions have parameters that must be estimated in order to make probability statements about the likelihood of future flood magnitudes. A number of methods for estimating the parameters are available. Bulletin 17B uses the method of moments, which is just one of the parameter-estimation methods. The method of maximum likelihood is a second method.

The method of moments equates the moments of the sample flood record to the moments of the population distribution, which yields equations for estimating the parameters of the population as a function of the sample moments. As an example, if the population is assumed to follow distribution f(x), then the sample mean ($\overline{X}$) could be related to the definition of the population mean (μ):

$$\overline{X} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) dx \qquad 4\text{-}9$$

and the sample variance (S^2) could be related to the definition of the population variance (σ^2):

$$S^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (X - \mu)^2 f(x) dx \qquad 4\text{-}10$$

Since f(x) is a function that includes the parameters (μ and σ^2), then the solution of Equation 4-9 and Equation 4-10 will be expressions that relate $\overline{X}$ and S^2 to the parameters μ and σ^2.

While maximum likelihood estimation (MLE) is not used in Bulletin 17B and it is more involved than the method of moments, it is instructive to put MLE in perspective. MLE defines a likelihood function that expresses the probability of obtaining the population parameters given that the measured flood record has occurred. For example, if μ and σ are the population parameters and the flood record X contains N events, then the likelihood function is:

$$L(\mu, \sigma | X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N) = \prod_{i=1}^{N} f(X_i | \mu, \sigma) \qquad 4\text{-}11$$

where:

$f(X_i | \mu, \sigma)$ is the probability distribution of X as a function of the parameters. The solution of Equation 4-11 will yield expressions for estimating μ and σ from the flood record X.

4.2.7 Frequency Analysis Concepts

Future floods cannot be predicted with certainty. Therefore, their magnitude and frequency are treated using probability concepts. To do this, a sample of flood magnitudes are obtained and analyzed for the purpose of estimating a population that can be used to represent flooding at that location. The assumed population is then used in making projections of the magnitude and frequency of floods. It is important to recognize that the population is estimated from sample information and that the assumed population, not the sample, is then used for making statements about the likelihood of future flooding. The purpose of this section is to introduce concepts that are important in analyzing sample flood data in order to identify a probability distribution that can represent the occurrence of flooding.

4.2.7.1 Frequency Histograms

Frequency distributions are used to facilitate an analysis of sample data. A frequency distribution, which is sometimes presented as a histogram, is an arrangement of data by classes or categories with associated frequencies of each class. The frequency distribution shows the magnitude of past events for certain ranges of the variable. Sample probabilities can also be computed by dividing the frequencies of each interval by the sample size.

A frequency distribution or histogram is constructed by first examining the range of magnitudes, i.e., the difference between the largest and the smallest floods, and dividing this range into a number of conveniently sized groups, usually between 5 and 20. These groups are called class intervals. The size of the class interval is simply the range divided by the number of class intervals selected. There is no precise rule concerning the number of class intervals to select, but the following guidelines may be helpful:

1. The class intervals should not overlap, and there should be no gaps between the bounds of the intervals.
2. The number of class intervals should be chosen so that most class intervals have at least one event.
3. It is preferable that the class intervals are of equal width.
4. It is also preferable for most class intervals to have at least five occurrences; this may not be practical for the first and last intervals.

Example 4-3

Using these rules, the discharges for Mono Creek listed in Table 4-1 are placed into a frequency histogram using class intervals of 5 m^3/s (see Table 4-4). This data can also be represented graphically by a frequency histogram as shown in Figure 4-6. Since relative frequency has been defined as the number of exceedences of a certain class of events divided by the sample size, this curve can also represent P_r {Q} as shown on the right-hand ordinate of Figure 4-6.

From this frequency histogram, several features of the data can now be illustrated. Notice that there are some ranges of magnitudes that have occurred more frequently than others; also notice that the data are somewhat spread out and that the distribution of the ordinates is not symmetrical. While an effort was made to have frequencies of five or more, this was not possible with the class intervals selected. Because of the small sample size, it is difficult to assess the distribution of the population using the frequency histogram.

Example 4-4

Many flood records have relatively small record lengths. For such records, histograms may not be adequate to assess the shape characteristics of the distribution of floods. The flood record for Pond Creek of Table 4-2 provides a good illustration. With a record length of 24, it would be impractical to use more than 5 or 6 intervals when creating a histogram. Three histograms were compiled from the annual flood series (see Table 4-5). The first histogram uses an interval of 40 m^3/s and results in a hydrograph-like shape, with few values in the lowest cell and a noticeable peak in the second cell. The second histogram uses an interval of 50 m^3/s. This produces a box-like shape with the first two cells having a large number of occurrences and the other cells very few, with one intermediate cell not having any occurrences. The third histogram uses an unequal cell width and produces an exponential-decay shape. These results indicate that short record lengths make it difficult to identify the distribution of floods.

4.2.7.2 Central Tendency

The clustering of the data about particular magnitudes is known as central tendency, of which there are a number of measures. The most frequently used is the average or the mean value. The mean value is calculated by summing all of the individual values of the data and dividing the total by the number of individual data values:

$$\overline{Q} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i}{n} \qquad 4\text{-}12$$

The symbol $\overline{Q}$ is used for an average or mean peak.

The median, another measure of central tendency, is the value of the middle item when the items are arranged according to magnitude. When there is an even number of items, the median is taken as the average of the two central

values.

The mode is a third measure of central tendency. The mode is the most frequent or most common value that occurs in a set of data. For continuous variables, such as discharge rates, the mode is defined as the central value of the most frequent class interval.

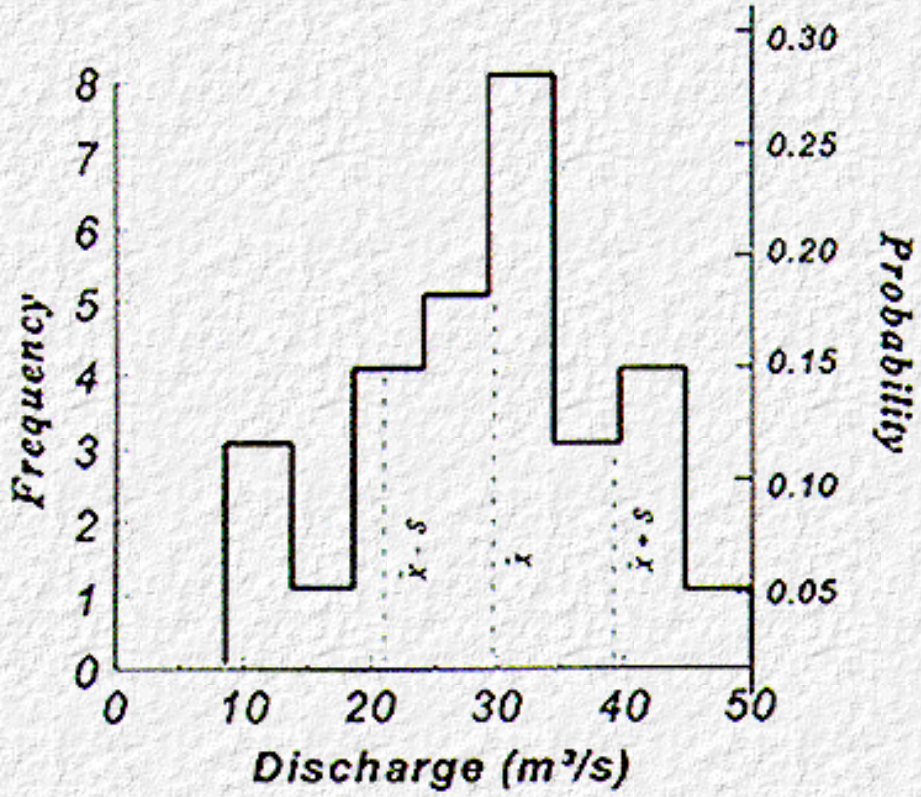


Figure 4-6. Sample Frequency Histogram and Probability for Mono Creek, CA ($\bar{x}$ =29.95 m^3/s and S=9.26 m^3/s)

Table 4-4. Frequency Histogram and Relative Frequency Analysis of Annual Flood Data for Mono Creek

(1) Interval of annual floods (m ^{3} /s)	(2) Frequency	(3) Number of exceedences	(4) Relative frequency	(5) Cumulative frequency
0 - 19.99	4	29	0.138	0.138
20 - 24.99	4	25	0.138	0.276
25 - 29.99	5	20	0.172	0.448
30 - 34.99	8	12	0.276	0.724
35 - 39.99	3	9	0.104	0.828
40 or larger	5	4	0.172	1.000
			1.000	

Table 4-5. Alternative Frequency (f) Histograms of the Pond Creek, KY, Annual Maximum Flood Record (1945-1968)

Histogram 1		Histogram 2		Histogram 3	

Interval of floods (m^3/s)	f	Interval of floods (m^3/s)	f	Interval of floods (m^3/s)	f
0-40	3	0-50	10	0-50	10
40-80	13	50-100	10	50-75	5
80-120	4	100-150	3	75-100	5
120-160	3	150-200	0	100-150	3
> 160	1	> 200	1	> 150	1

4.2.7.3 Variability

The spread of the data is called dispersion. The most commonly used measure of dispersion is the standard deviation. The standard deviation, S, is defined as the square root of the mean square of the deviations from the average value. This is shown symbolically as:

$$S = \left[\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(Q_i - \overline{Q})^2}{n-1}\right]^{0.5} = \overline{Q}\left[\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{Q_i}{\overline{Q}} - 1\right)^2}{n-1}\right]^{0.5} \qquad 4\text{-}13$$

The second expression on the right-hand side of Equation 4-13 is often used to facilitate and improve on the accuracy of hand calculations.

Another measure of dispersion of the flood data is the variance, or simply the standard deviation squared. A measure of relative dispersion is the coefficient of variation, V, or the standard deviation divided by the mean peak:

$$V = \frac{S}{\overline{Q}} \qquad 4\text{-}14$$

4.2.7.4 Skewness

The symmetry of the frequency distribution, or more accurately the asymmetry, is called skewness. One common measure of skew is the coefficient of skewness, G. The skew coefficient is calculated by:

$$G = \frac{n\sum_{i=1}^{n}(Q_i - \overline{Q})^3}{(n-1)(n-2)S^3} = \frac{n\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{Q_i}{\overline{Q}} - 1\right)^3}{(n-1)(n-2)V^3} \qquad 4\text{-}15$$

where all symbols are as previously defined. Again, the second expression on the right-hand side of the equation is for ease of hand computations.

If a frequency distribution is perfectly symmetrical, the coefficient of skew is zero. If the distribution has a longer "tail" to the right of the central maximum than to the left, the distribution has a positive skewness and G would be

positive. If the longer tail is to the left of the central maximum, then the distribution has a negative coefficient of skew.

Example 4-5

Table 4-6 illustrates the computation of measures of central tendency, standard deviation, variance, and coefficient of skew for the Mono Creek frequency distribution shown in Figure 4-6. Computed values of the mean and standard deviation are also identified in Figure 4-6.

Table 4-6 shows that the mean value of the sample of floods is 30 m^3/s, the standard deviation is 9.3 m^3/s, and the coefficient of variation is 0.31. The coefficient of skew is -0.188, which indicates that the distribution is skewed negatively to the left. For the flow data in Table 4-6, the median value is 30.02 m^3/s.

Table 4-6. Computation of Statistical Characteristics: Annual Maximum Flows for Mono Creek, CA

Year	Flood (m^3/s)	Rank	Flood (m^3/s)	[(X/)]	[(X/)-1]	[(X/)-1] ^{2}	[(X/)-1] ^{3}
1922	39.36	1	49.84	1.6641	0.6641	0.4410	0.2928
1923	26.62	2	40.78	1.3615	0.3615	0.1307	0.0472
1924	13.82	3	40.21	1.3426	0.3426	0.1174	0.0402
1925	30.02	4	40.21	1.3426	0.3426	0.1174	0.0402
1926	29.17	5	40.21	1.3426	0.3426	0.1174	0.0402
1927	40.21	6	39.36	1.3142	0.3142	0.0987	0.0310
1928	31.43	7	38.79	1.2953	0.2953	0.0872	0.0258
1929	21.24	8	38.23	1.2764	0.2764	0.0764	0.0211
1930	24.01	9	34.83	1.1629	0.1629	0.0266	0.0043
1931	14.87	10	34.26	1.1440	0.1440	0.0207	0.0030
1932	40.21	11	33.13	1.1062	0.1062	0.0113	0.0012
1933	38.23	12	32.00	1.0684	0.0684	0.0047	0.0003
1934	11.44	13	31.43	1.0495	0.0495	0.0024	0.0001
1935	34.83	14	31.15	1.0400	0.0400	0.0016	0.0001
1936	30.02	15	30.02	1.0022	0.0022	0.0000	0.0000
1937	34.26	16	30.02	1.0022	0.0022	0.0000	0.0000
1938	49.84	17	29.17	0.9739	-0.0261	0.0007	0.0000
1939	15.29	18	27.98	0.9341	-0.0659	0.0043	-0.0003
1940	32.00	19	26.62	0.8888	-0.1112	0.0124	-0.0014
1941	40.21	20	25.94	0.8661	-0.1339	0.0179	-0.0024
1942	33.13	21	25.77	0.8604	-0.1396	0.0195	-0.0027
1943	40.78	22	24.21	0.8084	-0.1916	0.0367	-0.0070
1944	24.21	23	24.01	0.8018	-0.1982	0.0393	-0.0078
1945	38.79	24	23.73	0.7923	-0.2077	0.0431	-0.0090
1946	25.77	25	21.24	0.7091	-0.2909	0.0846	-0.0246
1947	27.98	26	15.29	0.5106	-0.4894	0.2395	-0.1172
1948	23.73	27	14.87	0.4964	-0.5036	0.2536	-0.1277

1949	25.94	28	13.82	0.4614	-0.5386	0.2901	-0.1562
1950	31.15	29	11.44	0.3820	-0.6180	0.3820	-0.2361
TOTAL	868.53					2.6772	-0.1449

$$\overline{X} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_i}{n} = \frac{868.53}{29} = 29.95\ m^3/s$$

$$S = \overline{X}\left[\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{X_i}{\overline{X}} - 1\right)^2}{n-1}\right]^{0.5} = 29.85\left(\frac{2.6672}{28}\right)^{0.5} = 9.26\ m^3/s$$

$$V = \frac{S}{\overline{X}} = \frac{9.26}{29.95} = 0.309$$

$$G = \frac{n\sum\left(\frac{X_i}{\overline{X}} - 1\right)^3}{(n-1)(n-2)V^3} = \frac{29(-0.1449)}{28(27)(0.309)^3} = -0.188$$

4.2.7.5 Generalized and Weighted Skew

Three methods are available for representing the skew coefficient. These include the station skew, a generalized skew, and a weighted skew. Since the skew coefficient is very sensitive to extreme values, the station skew, i.e., the skew coefficient computed from the actual data, may not be accurate if the sample size is small. In this case, Bulletin 17B recommends use of a generalized skew coefficient determined from a map which shows isolines of generalized skew coefficients of the logarithms of annual maximum streamflows throughout the United States. A map of generalized skew is provided in Bulletin 17B. This map also gives average skew coefficients by one degree quadrangles over most of the country.

Often the station skew and generalized skew can be combined to provide a better estimate for a given sample of flood data. Bulletin 17B outlines a procedure based on the concept that the mean-square error (MSE) of the weighted estimate is minimized by weighting the station and generalized skews in inverse proportion to their individual mean-square errors. The mean-square error is defined as the sum of the squared differences between the true and estimated values of a quantity divided by the number of observations. In

analytical form, this concept is given by the equation:

$$G_W = \frac{MSE_{\overline{G}}(G) + MSE_G(\overline{G})}{MSE_{\overline{G}} + MSE_G} \qquad 4\text{-}16$$

where:

G_W is the weighted skew,
G is the station skew
$\overline{G}$ is the generalized skew
MSE_G and $MSE_{\overline{G}}$ are the mean square errors for the station and generalized skews, respectively.

Equation 4-16 is based on the assumption that station and generalized skew are independent. If they are independent, then the weighted estimate will have a lower variance than either the station or generalized skew.

When $\overline{G}$ is taken from the map of generalized skews in Bulletin 17B, $MSE_{\overline{G}}$ = 0.302. The value of MSE_G can be obtained from Table 4-7, which is from Bulletin 17B, or approximated by the equation:

$$MSE_G = 10^{\left[A - B\left|\log_{10}\left(\frac{n}{10}\right)\right|\right]} \qquad 4\text{-}17a$$

where:

n is the record length and

$$A = -0.33 + 0.08|G| \quad \text{for } |G| \le 0.90 \qquad 4\text{-}17b$$

$$A = -0.52 + 0.30|G| \quad \text{for } |G| > 0.90 \qquad 4\text{-}17c$$

and

$$B = 0.94 - 0.26|G| \quad \text{for} |G| \le 1.50 \qquad 4\text{-}17d$$

$$B = 0.55 \quad \text{for} |G| > 1.50 \qquad 4\text{-}17e$$

If the difference between the generalized and station skews is greater than 0.5, the data and basin characteristics should be reviewed, possibly giving more weight to the station skew.

Table 4-7. Summary of Mean Square Error of Station Skew as a Function of Record Length and Station Skew

Skew	Record length, N or H (years)									
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
0.0	0.468	0.244	0.167	0.127	0.103	0.087	0.075	0.066	0.059	0.054
0.1	0.476	0.253	0.175	0.134	0.109	0.093	0.080	0.071	0.064	0.058
0.2	0.485	0.262	0.183	0.142	0.116	0.099	0.086	0.077	0.069	0.063
0.3	0.494	0.272	0.192	0.150	0.123	0.105	0.092	0.082	0.074	0.068

0.4	0.504	0.282	0.201	0.158	0.131	0.113	0.099	0.089	0.080	0.073
0.5	0.513	0.293	0.211	0.167	0.139	0.120	0.106	0.095	0.087	0.079
0.6	0.522	0.303	0.221	0.176	0.148	0.128	0.114	0.102	0.093	0.086
0.7	0.532	0.315	0.231	0.186	0.157	0.137	0.122	0.110	0.101	0.093
0.8	0.542	0.326	0.243	0.196	0.167	0.146	0.130	0.118	0.109	0.100
0.9	0.562	0.345	0.259	0.211	0.181	0.159	0.142	0.130	0.119	0.111
1.0	0.603	0.376	0.285	0.235	0.202	0.178	0.160	0.147	0.135	0.126
1.1	0.646	0.410	0.315	0.261	0.225	0.200	0.181	0.166	0.153	0.143
1.2	0.692	0.448	0.347	0.290	0.252	0.225	0.204	0.187	0.174	0.163
1.3	0.741	0.488	0.383	0.322	0.281	0.252	0.230	0.212	0.197	0.185
1.4	0.794	0.533	0.422	0.357	0.314	0.283	0.259	0.240	0.224	0.211
1.5	0.851	0.581	0.465	0.397	0.351	0.318	0.292	0.271	0.254	0.240
1.6	0.912	0.623	0.498	0.425	0.376	0.340	0.313	0.291	0.272	0.257
1.7	0.977	0.667	0.534	0.456	0.403	0.365	0.335	0.311	0.292	0.275
1.8	1.047	0.715	0.572	0.489	0.432	0.391	0.359	0.334	0.313	0.295
1.9	1.122	0.766	0.613	0.523	0.463	0.419	0.385	0.358	0.335	0.316
2.0	1.202	0.821	0.657	0.561	0.496	0.449	0.412	0.383	0.359	0.339
2.1	1.288	0.880	0.704	0.601	0.532	0.481	0.442	0.410	0.385	0.363
2.2	1.380	0.943	0.754	0.644	0.570	0.515	0.473	0.440	0.412	0.389
2.3	1.479	1.010	0.808	0.690	0.610	0.552	0.507	0.471	0.442	0.417
2.4	1.585	1.083	0.866	0.739	0.654	0.592	0.543	0.505	0.473	0.447
2.5	1.698	1.160	0.928	0.792	0.701	0.634	0.582	0.541	0.507	0.479
2.6	1.820	1.243	0.994	0.849	0.751	0.679	0.624	0.580	0.543	0.513
2.7	1.950	1.332	1.066	0.910	0.805	0.728	0.669	0.621	0.582	0.550
2.8	2.089	1.427	1.142	0.975	0.862	0.780	0.716	0.666	0.624	0.589
2.9	2.239	1.529	1.223	1.044	0.924	0.836	0.768	0.713	0.669	0.631
3.0	2.399	1.638	1.311	1.119	0.990	0.895	0.823	0.764	0.716	0.676

4.2.8 Probability Distribution Functions

If the frequency histogram from a very large population of floods were constructed, it would be possible to define very small class intervals and still have a number of events in each interval. Under these conditions the frequency histogram would approach a smooth curve (see Figure 4-7).This curve, which is called the probability density function, f(Q), encloses an area of 1.0, or Equation 4-18.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(Q)\,dQ = 1 \qquad \text{4-18}$$

The cumulative distribution function, F(Q), equals the area under the probability density function, f(Q), from $-\infty$ to Q:

$$F(Q) = \int_{-\infty}^{Q} f(Q)\,dQ \qquad \text{4-18a}$$

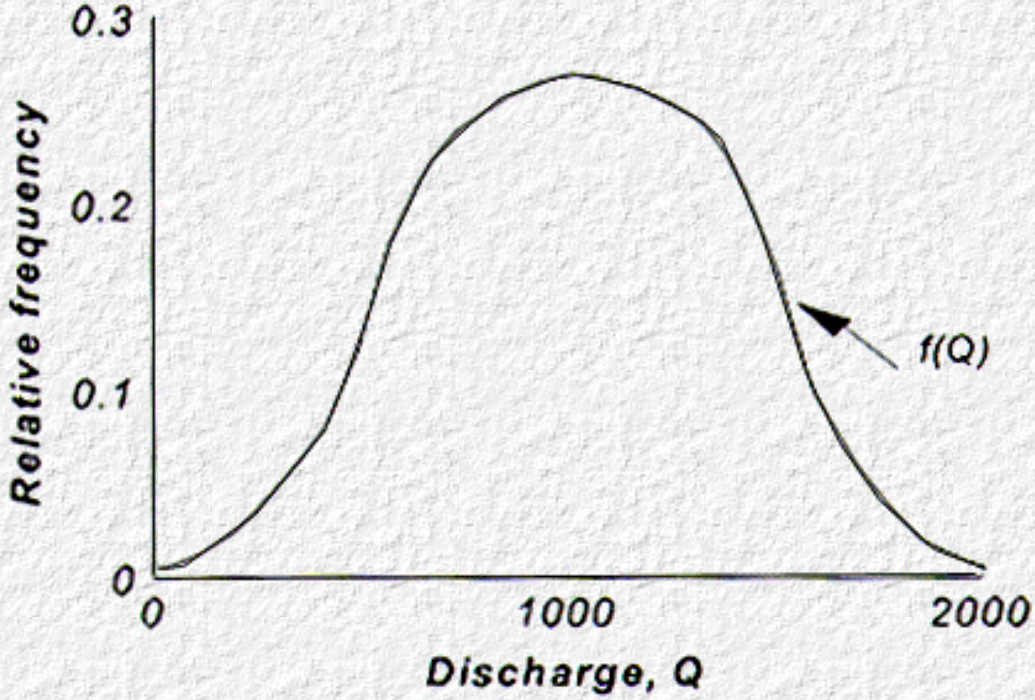


Figure 4-7. Probability Density Function

Equation 4-18 is a mathematical statement that the sum of the probabilities of all events is equal to unity. Two conditions of hydrologic probability are readily illustrated from Equation 4-18 and Equation 4-18 a. Figure 4-8a shows that the probability of a flow Q falling between two known flows, Q_1 and Q_2, is the area under the probability density curve between Q_1 and Q_2. Figure 4-8b shows the probability that a flood Q exceeds Q_1 is the area under the curve from Q_1 to infinity. From Equation 4-18A, this probability is given by $F(Q > Q_1) = 1 - F(Q < Q_1)$.

As can be seen from Figure 4-8a and Figure 4-8b, the calculation for probability from the density function is somewhat tedious. A further refinement of the frequency distribution is the cumulative frequency distribution. Table 4-5 illustrates the development of a cumulative frequency distribution, which is simply the cumulative total of the relative frequencies by class interval. For each range of flows, Column 3 of Table 4-5 defines the number of times that floods equal or exceed the lower limit of the class interval and Column 5 gives the cumulative frequency.

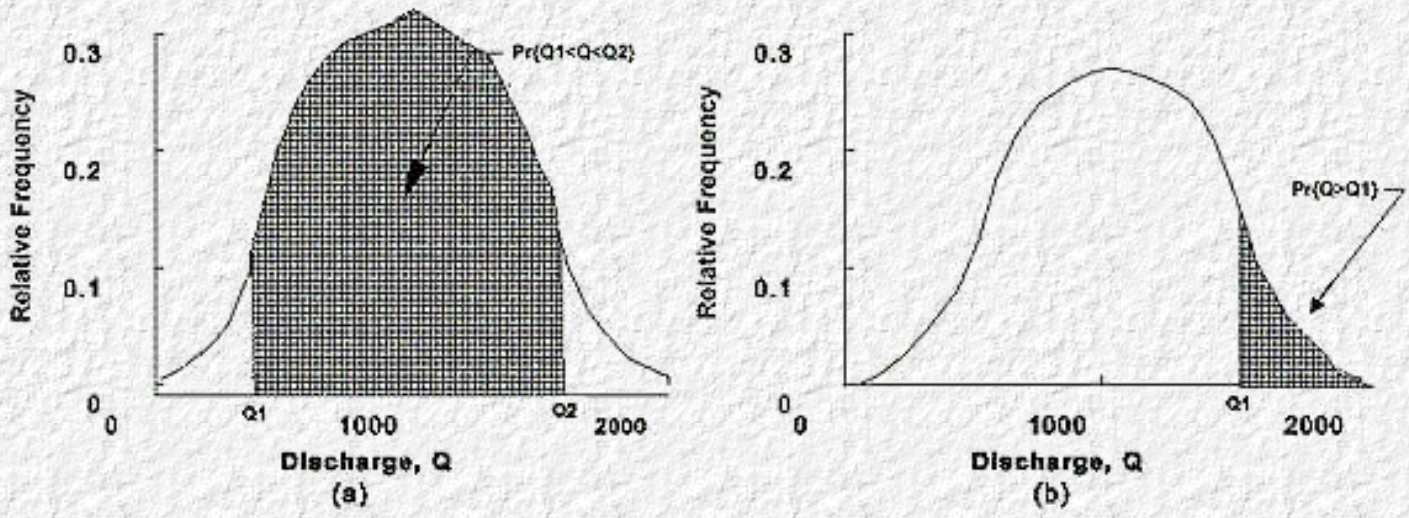


Figure 4-8. Hydrologic Probability from Density Functions

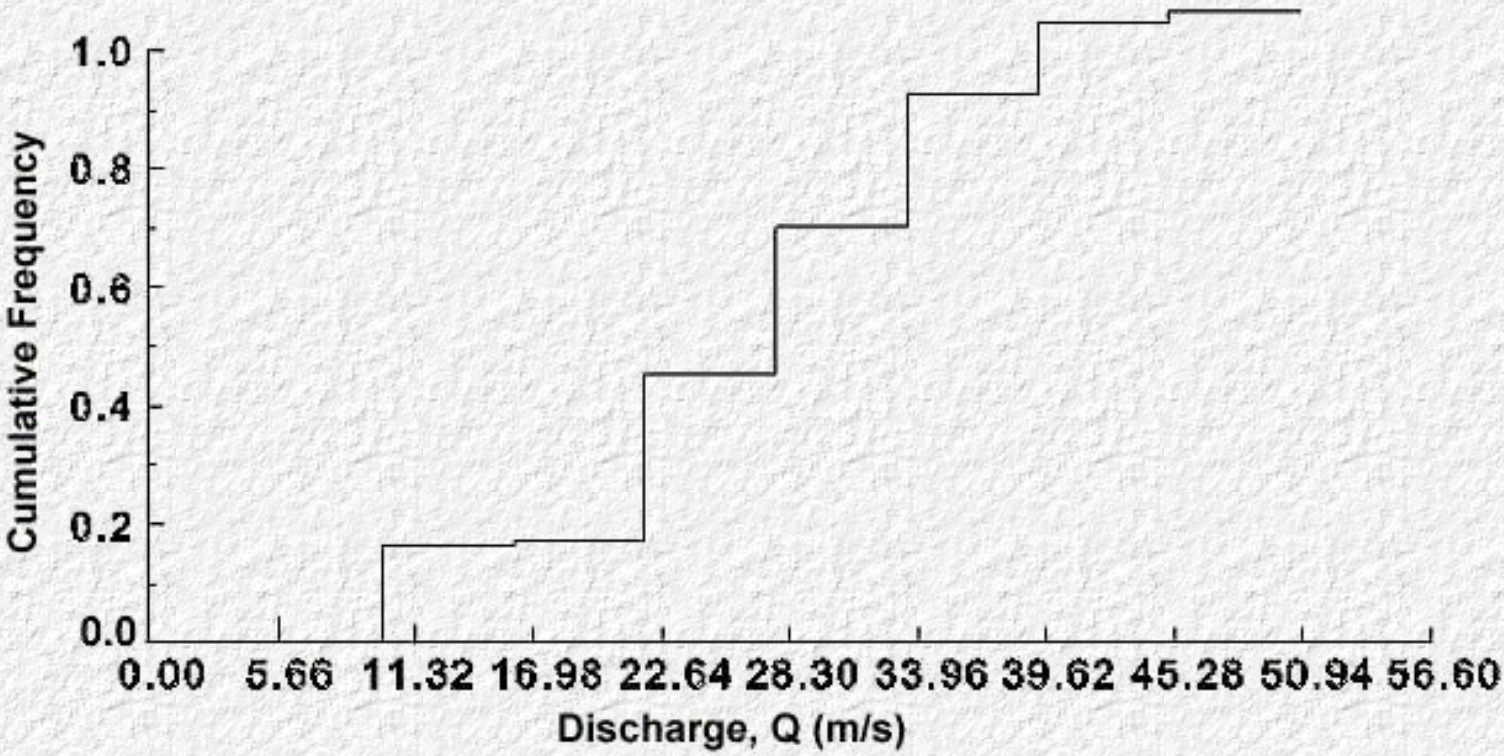


Figure 4-9. Cumulative Frequency Histogram, Mono Creek, CA

Using the cumulative frequency distribution it is possible to compute directly the nonexceedence probability for a given magnitude. The nonexceedence probability is defined as the probability that the specified value will not be exceeded. The exceedence probability is 1.0 minus the nonexceedence probability. The sample cumulative frequency histogram for the Mono Creek, CA, annual flood series is shown in Figure 4-9.

Again, if the sample were very large so that small class intervals could be defined, the histogram becomes a smooth curve which is defined as the cumulative probability function, F(Q), shown in Figure 4-10a. This figure shows the area under the curve to the left of each Q of Figure 4-7 and defines the probability that the flow will be less than some stated value,

i.e., the nonexceedence probability.

Another convenient representation for hydrologic analysis is the complementary probability function, G(Q), defined as:

$$G(Q) = 1 - F(Q) = P_r(Q \geq Q_1) \qquad 4\text{-}19$$

The function, G(Q), shown in Figure 4-10b, is the exceedence probability, i.e., the probability that a flow of a given magnitude will be equaled or exceeded.

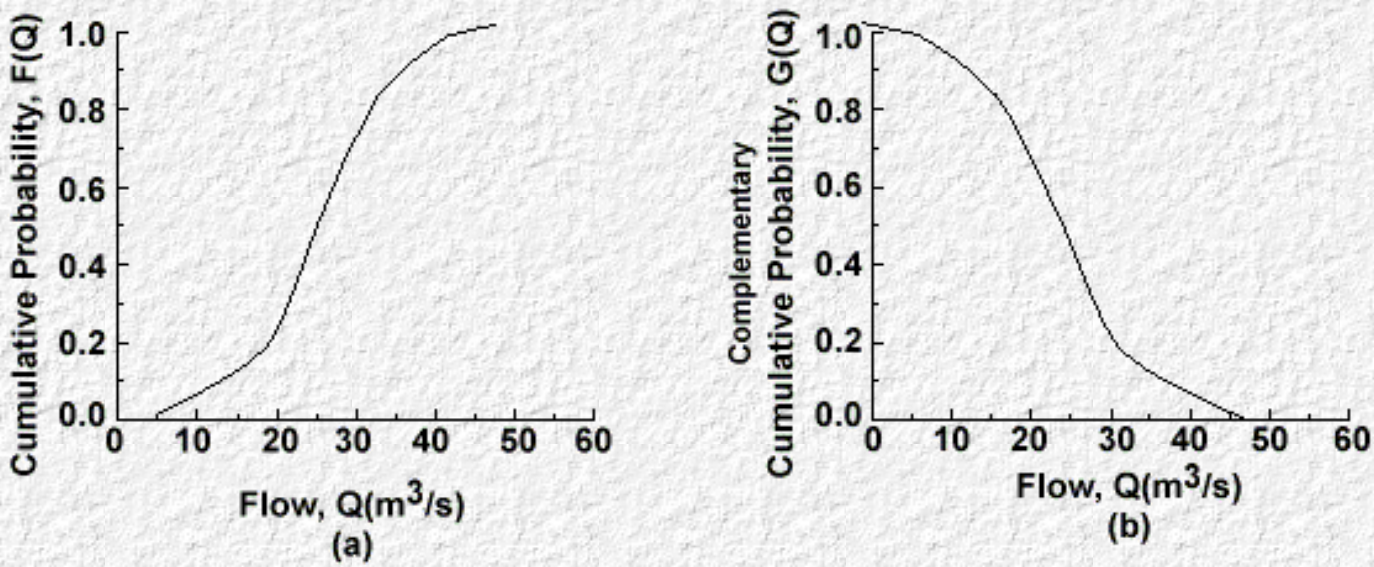


Figure 4-10. Cumulative and Complimentary Cumulative Distribution Functions

---

4.2.9 Plotting Position Formulas

When making a flood frequency analysis, it is common to plot both the assumed population and the peak discharges of the sample. To plot the sample values on frequency paper, it is necessary to assign an exceedence probability to each magnitude. A plotting position formula is used for this purpose.

A number of different formulas have been proposed for computing plotting position probabilities, with no unanimity on the preferred method. Beard (1962) illustrates the nature of this problem. If a very long period of record, say 2000 years, is broken up into l00, 20-year records and each is analyzed separately, then the highest flood in each of these 20-year records will have the same probability of occurrence of 0.05. Actually, one of these l00 highest floods is the l in 2000-year flood, which is a flood with an exceedence probability of 0.0005. Some of the records will also contain l00-year floods and many will contain floods in excess of the true 20-year flood. Similarly some of the 20-year records will contain highest floods that are less than the true 20-year flood.

A general formula for computing plotting positions is:

$$P = \frac{i - a}{n - a - b + 1} \qquad 4\text{-}20$$

where:

i = the rank of the ordered flood magnitudes, with the largest flood having a rank of 1
n = the record length
a and b = constants for a particular plotting position formula

The Weibull, P_w (a=b=0), Hazen, P_h (a =b=0.5), and Cunnane, P_c(a=b=0.4) are three possible plotting position formulas:

$$P_w = \frac{i}{n+1} \qquad \text{4-21a}$$

$$P_h = \frac{i-0.5}{n} \qquad \text{4-21b}$$

$$P_c = \frac{i-0.4}{n+0.2} \qquad \text{4-21c}$$

The data are plotted by placing a point for each value of the flood series at the intersection of the flood magnitude and the exceedence probability computed with the plotting position formula. The plotted data should approximate the population line if the assumed population model is a reasonable assumption.

For the partial-duration series where the number of floods exceeds the number of years of record, Beard (1962) recommends:

$$P = \frac{2i-1}{2n} = \frac{i-0.5}{n} \qquad \text{4-22}$$

where:

m = the rank order number of the event
n = the record length

Go to Chapter 4, Part II

Chapter 4 : HDS 2

Frequency Analysis of Gaged Data
Part II

Go to Chapter 4, Part III

4.3 Standard Frequency Distributions

Several cumulative frequency distributions are commonly used in the analysis of hydrologic data, and as a result they have been studied extensively and are now standardized. The frequency distributions that have been found most useful in hydrologic data analysis are the normal distribution, the log-normal distribution, the Gumbel extreme value distribution, and the log-Pearson Type III distribution. The characteristics and application of each of these distributions will be presented in the following sections.

4.3.1 Normal Distribution

The normal or Gaussian distribution is a classical mathematical distribution commonly used in the analysis of natural phenomena. The normal distribution has a symmetrical, unbounded, bell-shaped curve with the maximum value at the central point and extending from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$. The normal distribution is shown in Figure 4-11a.

For the normal distribution, the maximum value occurs at the mean. Because of symmetry, half of the flows will be below the mean and half are above. Another characteristic of the normal distribution curve is that 68.3 percent of the events fall between ±1 standard deviation (S), 95 percent of the events fall within ±2S, and 99.7 percent fall within ±3S. In a sample of flows, these percentages will be approximated.

For the normal distribution, the coefficient of skew is zero. The function describing the normal distribution curve is:

$$f(X) = \frac{e^{-\frac{(X-\bar{X})^2}{2S^2}}}{S(2\pi)^{0.5}} \qquad \text{4-23}$$

Note that only two parameters are necessary to describe the normal distribution: the mean value, $\bar{X}$, and the standard deviation, S.

One disadvantage of the normal distribution is that it is unbounded in the negative direction whereas most hydrologic variables are bounded and can never be less than zero. For this reason and the fact that many hydrologic variables exhibit a pronounced skew, the normal distribution usually has limited applications. However, these problems can sometimes be overcome by performing a log transform on the data. Often the logarithms of hydrologic variables are normally distributed.

4.3.1.1 Standard Normal Distribution

A special case of the normal distribution of Equation 4-23 is called the standard normal distribution and is represented by the variate z (see Figure 4-11b). The standard normal distribution always has a mean of 0 and a standard deviation of 1. If the random variable $\bar{X}$ has a normal distribution with mean $\bar{X}$ and standard deviation S, then values of X

can be transformed so that they have a standard normal distribution using the following transformation:

$$z = \frac{X - \overline{X}}{S} \qquad 4\text{-}24$$

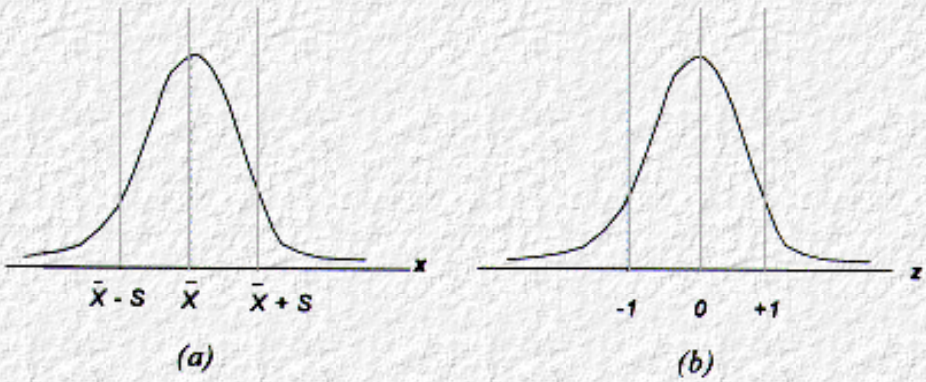


Figure 4-11. (a) Normal Probability Distribution: (b) Standard Normal Distribution

If $\overline{X}$, S, and z for a given frequency are known, then the value of X corresponding to the frequency can be computed by algebraic manipulation of Equation 4-24 :

$$X = \overline{X} + zS \qquad 4\text{-}25$$

Values of the cumulative distribution function of the standard normal distribution are tabulated in abbreviated form for selected exceedence probabilities in Table 4-8. It is important to note that these correspond to the integral of Equation 4-18A rather than the integral of Equation 4-19. Thus, the cumulative probabilities of Table 4-9 correspond to nonexceedence probabilities, not exceedence probabilities.

To illustrate, the 10-year event has an exceedence probability of 0.10 or a nonexceedence probability of 0.90. Thus, the corresponding value of z from Table 4-8 is 1.2816. If floods have a normal distribution with a mean of 120 m^3/s and a standard deviation of 35 m^3/s, then the 10-year flood for a normal distribution is computed with Equation 4-25 :

$$x = \overline{X} + zS = 120 + 1.2816(35) = 165 m^3/s$$

Table 4-8. Selected Values of the Standard Normal Deviate (z) for the Cumulative Normal Distribution

Exceedance probability %	Return period (yrs)	z
50	2	0.0000
20	5	0.8416
10	10	1.2816
4	25	1.7507
2	50	2.0538
1	100	2.3264
0.2	500	2.8782

Table 4-9. Probabilities of the Cumulative Standard Normal Distribution for Selected Values of the Standard Normal Deviate (z)

z	0.00	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
-3.4	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0002
-3.3	.0005	.0005	.0005	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0003
-3.2	.0007	.0007	.0006	.0006	.0006	.0006	.0006	.0005	.0005	.0005
-3.1	.0010	.0009	.0009	.0009	.0008	.0008	.0008	.0008	.0007	.0007
-3.0	.0013	.0013	.0013	.0012	.0012	.0011	.0011	.0011	.0010	.0010
-2.9	.0019	.0018	.0018	.0017	.0016	.0016	.0015	.0015	.0014	.0014
-2.8	.0026	.0025	.0024	.0023	.0023	.0022	.0021	.0021	.0020	.0019
-2.7	.0035	.0034	.0033	.0032	.0031	.0030	.0029	.0028	.0027	.0026
-2.6	.0047	.0045	.0044	.0043	.0041	.0040	.0039	.0038	.0037	.0036
-2.5	.0062	.0060	.0059	.0057	.0055	.0054	.0052	.0051	.0049	.0048
-2.4	.0082	.0080	.0078	.0075	.0073	.0071	.0069	.0068	.0066	.0064
-2.3	.0107	.0104	.0102	.0099	.0096	.0094	.0091	.0089	.0087	.0084
-2.2	.0139	.0136	.0132	.0129	.0125	.0122	.0119	.0116	.0113	.0110
-2.1	.0179	.0174	.0170	.0166	.0162	.0158	.0154	.0150	.0146	.0143
-2.0	.0228	.0222	.0217	.0212	.0207	.0202	.0197	.0192	.0188	.0183
-1.9	.0287	.0281	.0274	.0268	.0262	.0256	.0250	.0244	.0239	.0233
-1.8	.0359	.0351	.0344	.0336	.0329	.0322	.0314	.0307	.0301	.0294
-1.7	.0446	.0436	.0427	.0418	.0409	.0401	.0392	.0384	.0375	.0367
-1.6	.0548	.0537	.0526	.0516	.0505	.0495	.0485	.0475	.0465	.0455
-1.5	.0668	.0655	.0643	.0630	.0618	.0606	.0594	.0582	.0571	.0559
-1.4	.0808	.0793	.0778	.0764	.0749	.0735	.0721	.0708	.0694	.0681
-1.3	.0968	.0951	.0934	.0918	.0901	.0885	.0869	.0853	.0838	.0823
-1.2	.1151	.1131	.1112	.1093	.1075	.1056	.1038	.1020	.1003	.0985
-1.1	.1357	.1335	.1314	.1292	.1271	.1251	.1230	.1210	.1190	.1170
-1.0	.1587	.1562	.1539	.1515	.1492	.1469	.1446	.1423	.1401	.1379
-.9	.1841	.1814	.1788	.1762	.1736	.1711	.1685	.1660	.1635	.1611
-.8	.2119	.2090	.2061	.2033	.2005	.1977	.1949	.1922	.1894	.1867
-.7	.2420	.2389	.2358	.2327	.2296	.2266	.2236	.2206	.2177	.2148
-.6	.2743	.2709	.2676	.2643	.2611	.2578	.2546	.2514	.2483	.2451
-.5	.3085	.3050	.3015	.2981	.2946	.2912	.2877	.2843	.2810	.2776
-.4	.3446	.3409	.3372	.3336	.3300	.3264	.3228	.3192	.3156	.3121
-.3	.3821	.3783	.3745	.3707	.3669	.3632	.3594	.3557	.3520	.3483
-.2	.4207	.4168	.4129	.4090	.4052	.4013	.3974	.3936	.3897	.3859
-.1	.4602	.4562	.4522	.4483	.4443	.4404	.4364	.4325	.4286	.4247
-.0	.5000	.4960	.4920	.4880	.4840	.4801	.4761	.4721	.4681	.4641
0.0	.5000	.5040	.5080	.5120	.5160	.5199	.5239	.5279	.5319	.5359
0.1	.5398	.5438	.5478	.5517	.5557	.5596	.5636	.5675	.5714	.5753
0.2	.5793	.5832	.5871	.5910	.5948	.5987	.6026	.6064	.6103	.6141
0.3	.6179	.6217	.6255	.6293	.6331	.6368	.6406	.6443	.6480	.6517
0.4	.6554	.6591	.6628	.6664	.6700	.6736	.6772	.6808	.6844	.6879
0.5	.6915	.6950	.6985	.7019	.7054	.7088	.7123	.7157	.7190	.7224
0.6	.7257	.7291	.7324	.7357	.7389	.7422	.7454	.7486	.7517	.7549
0.7	.7580	.7611	.7642	.7673	.7704	.7734	.7764	.7794	.7823	.7852
0.8	.7881	.7910	.7939	.7967	.7995	.8023	.8051	.8078	.8106	.8133

0.9	.8159	.8186	.8212	.8238	.8264	.8289	.8315	.8340	.8365	.8389
1.0	.8413	.8438	.8461	.8485	.8508	.8531	.8554	.8577	.8599	.8621
1.1	.8643	.8665	.8686	.8708	.8729	.8749	.8770	.8790	.8810	.8830
1.2	.8849	.8869	.8888	.8907	.8925	.8944	.8962	.8980	.8997	.9015
1.3	.9032	.9049	.9066	.9082	.9099	.9115	.9131	.9147	.9162	.9177
1.4	.9192	.9207	.9222	.9236	.9251	.9265	.9279	.9292	.9306	.9319
1.5	.9332	.9345	.9357	.9370	.9382	.9394	.9406	.9418	.9429	.9441
1.6	.9452	.9463	.9474	.9484	.9495	.9505	.9515	.9525	.9535	.9545
1.7	.9554	.9564	.9573	.9582	.9591	.9599	.9608	.9616	.9625	.9633
1.8	.9641	.9649	.9656	.9664	.9671	.9678	.9686	.9693	.9699	.9706
1.9	.9713	.9719	.9726	.9732	.9738	.9744	.9750	.9756	.9761	.9767
2.0	.9772	.9778	.9783	.9788	.9793	.9798	.9803	.9808	.9812	.9817
2.1	.9821	.9826	.9830	.9834	.9838	.9842	.9846	.9850	.9854	.9857
2.2	.9861	.9864	.9868	.9871	.9875	.9878	.9881	.9884	.9887	.9890
2.3	.9893	.9896	.9898	.9901	.9904	.9906	.9909	.9911	.9913	.9916
2.4	.9918	.9920	.9922	.9925	.9927	.9929	.9931	.9932	.9934	.9936
2.5	.9938	.9940	.9941	.9943	.9945	.9946	.9948	.9949	.9951	.9952
2.6	.9953	.9955	.9956	.9957	.9959	.9960	.9961	.9962	.9963	.9964
2.7	.9965	.9966	.9967	.9968	.9969	.9970	.9971	.9972	.9973	.9974
2.8	.9974	.9975	.9976	.9977	.9977	.9978	.9979	.9979	.9980	.9981
2.9	.9981	.9982	.9982	.9983	.9984	.9984	.9985	.9985	.9986	.9986
3.0	.9987	.9987	.9987	.9988	.9988	.9989	.9989	.9989	.9990	.9990
3.1	.9990	.9991	.9991	.9991	.9992	.9992	.9992	.9992	.9993	.9993
3.2	.9993	.9993	.9994	.9994	.9994	.9994	.9994	.9995	.9995	.9995
3.3	.9995	.9995	.9995	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9997
3.4	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9998

Similarly, the frequency of a flood of 181 m^3 /s can be estimated using the transform of Equation 4-24:

$$z = \frac{X - \overline{X}}{S} = \frac{181 - 120}{35} = 1.75$$

From Table 4-8, this corresponds to an exceedence probability of 4 percent, which is the 25-year flood.

4.3.1.2 Frequency Analysis for a Normal Distribution

Arithmetic-probability paper, available commercially, has a specially transformed horizontal probability scale. The horizontal scale is transformed in such a way that the cumulative distribution function for data that follow a normal distribution will plot as straight line. If a series of peak flows that are normally distributed are plotted against the cumulative frequency function or the exceedence frequency on the probability scale, the data will plot as a straight line with the equation:

$$X = \overline{X} + KS \qquad \text{4-26}$$

where:

X is the flood flow at a specified frequency.
The value of K is the frequency factor of the distribution, for the normal distribution,

K equals z where z is taken from Table 4-8.

The procedure for developing a frequency curve for the normal distribution is as follows:

1. Compute the mean $\bar{X}$ and standard deviation S of the annual flood series.
2. Plot two points on the probability paper: (a) $\bar{X}$ + S at an exceedence probability of 0.159 (15.9%) and (b) $\bar{X}$ - S at an exceedence probability of 0.841 (84.1%)
3. Draw a straight line through these two points; the accuracy of the graphing can be checked by ensuring that the line passes through the point defined by $\bar{X}$ at an exceedence probability of 0.50 (50%).

The straight line represents the assumed normal population. It can be used either

1. to make probability estimates for given values of X or
2. to estimate values of X for given exceedence probabilities.

4.3.1.3 Plotting Sample Data

Before a computed frequency curve is used to make estimates of either flood magnitudes or exceedence probabilities, the assumed population should be verified by plotting the data. The following steps are used to plot the data:

1. Rank the flood series in descending order, with the largest flood having a rank of 1 and the smallest flood having a rank of n.
2. Use the rank (m) with a plotting position formula such as Equation 4-21, and compute the plotting probabilities for each flood.
3. Plot the magnitude X against the corresponding plotting probability.

If the data follow the trend of the assumed population line, then one usually assumes that the data are normally distributed. It is not uncommon for the sample points on the upper and lower ends to deviate from the straight line. Deciding whether or not to accept the computed straight line as the population is based on experience rather than an objective criterion.

4.3.1.4 Estimation with the Frequency Curve

Once the population line has been verified and accepted, the line can be used for estimation. While graphical estimates are acceptable for some work, it is often important to use Equation 4-24 and Equation 4-25 in estimating flood magnitudes or probabilities. To make a probability estimate p for a given magnitude, use the following procedure:

1. Use Equation 4-24 to compute the value of the standard normal deviate.
2. Enter Table 4-9 with the value of z and obtain the exceedence probability.

To make estimates of the magnitude for a given exceedence probability, use the following procedure:

1. Enter Table 4-9 with the exceedence probability and obtain the corresponding value of z.
2. Use Equation 4-25 with $\bar{X}$, S, and z to compute the magnitude X.

Example 4-6

To illustrate the use of these concepts, consider the data of Table 4-10. These data are the annual peak floods for the Medina River near San Antonio, Texas, for the period 1940-1982 (43 years of record). Table 4-10 shows the calculation of the mean flow, the standard deviation, the coefficient of variation, and the coefficient of skew for these data in accordance with Equation 4-12, Equation 4-13, Equation 4-14, and Equation 4-15. Assuming the data are normally distributed, the 10-year and 100-year floods are computed as follows:

$$X_{10} = \overline{X} + zs = 187.0 + 1.282\ (200.3) = 443.8\ m^3/s$$

and

$$X_{100} = \overline{X} + zs = 187.0 + 2.326\ (200.3) = 952.9\ m^3/s$$

When plotted on arithmetic probability paper, these two points are sufficient to establish the straight line on Figure 4-12 represented by Equation 4-26.

The measured discharges are plotted in Figure 4-12 using the Weibull plotting-position formula. The correspondence between the normal frequency curve and the actual data is poor. Obviously, the data are not normally distributed. This, however, was suspected beforehand (Table 4-10) where the sample data were found to have a large skew (G = 2.39). The normal distribution has a skew of zero.

4.3.2 Log-Normal Distribution

The log-normal distribution has the same characteristics as the normal distribution except that the dependent variable, X, is replaced with its logarithm. The characteristics of the log-normal distribution are that it is bounded on the left by zero and it has a pronounced positive skew. These are both characteristics of many of the frequency distributions that result from an analysis of hydrologic data.

If a logarithmic transformation is performed on the normal distribution function, the resulting logarithmic distribution is normally distributed. This enables the z values tabulated in Table 4-8 and Table 4-9 for a standard normal distribution to be used in a log-normal frequency analysis. A three-parameter log-normal distribution exists, which makes use of a shift parameter. Only the zero-skew log-normal distribution will be discussed.

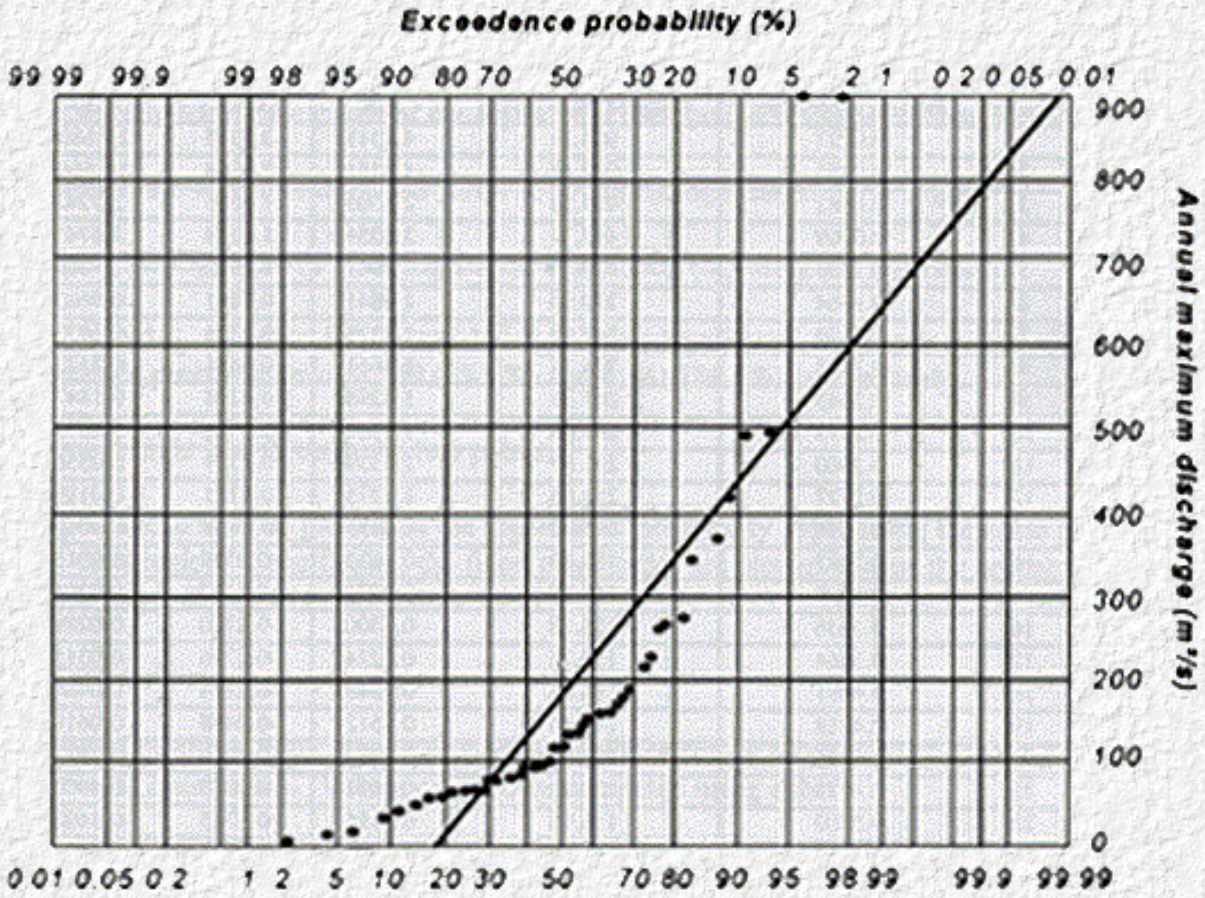


Figure 4-12. Normal Distribution Frequency Curve: Medina River

As was the case with the normal distribution, log-normal probability paper has been developed, where the plot of the cumulative distribution function is a straight line. This paper, which is available commercially, has a transformed horizontal scale based upon the probability function of the normal distribution and a logarithmic vertical scale. If the logarithms of the peak flows are normally distributed, the data will plot as a straight line on log-probability graph paper according to the equation:

$$Y = \log X = \overline{Y} + KS_y \qquad 4\text{-}27$$

where:

$\overline{Y}$ is the average of the logarithms of X and S_y is the standard deviation of the logarithms.

Table 4-10. Frequency Analysis Computations for the Normal Distribution: Medina River, TX

Year	Flow (m^3/s)	Rank	Plotting Probability	Ordered Flow (m^3/s)	$X/\overline{X}$	$(X/\overline{X})-1$	$[(X/\overline{X})-1]^2$	$[(X-\overline{X})-1]^3$
1940	71.92	1	0.0227	903.31	4.8315	3.8315	14.6806	56.2492
1941	195.10	2	0.0455	900.48	4.8164	3.8164	14.5648	55.5848
1942	495.54	3	0.0682	495.54	2.6505	1.6505	2.7242	4.4964
1943	342.63	4	0.0909	492.71	2.6354	1.6354	2.6745	4.3738
1944	56.63	5	0.1136	410.59	2.1961	1.1961	1.4308	1.7114
1945	100.24	6	0.1364	370.95	1.9841	0.9841	0.9685	0.9531
1946	900.48	7	0.1591	342.63	1.8326	0.8326	0.6933	0.5773
1947	41.63	8	0.1818	274.11	1.4661	0.4661	0.2173	0.1013
1948	58.05	9	0.2045	267.31	1.4298	0.4298	0.1847	0.0794

1949	492.71	10	0.2273	261.08	1.3964	0.3964	0.1572	0.0623
1950	160.27	11	0.2500	231.07	1.2359	0.2359	0.0556	0.0131
1951	60.88	12	0.2727	212.66	1.1375	0.1375	0.0189	0.0026
1952	22.68	13	0.2955	195.10	1.0435	0.0435	0.0019	0.0001
1953	140.4	14	0.3182	180.10	0.9633	0.0367	0.0013	0.0000
1954	24.49	15	0.3409	160.27	0.8573	-0.1427	0.0204	-0.0029
1955	33.98	16	0.3636	155.18	0.8300	-0.1700	0.0289	-0.0049
1956	49.55	17	0.3864	153.76	0.8224	-0.1776	0.0315	-0.0056
1957	146.68	18	0.4091	146.68	0.7846	-0.2154	0.0464	-0.0100
1958	261.08	19	0.4318	140.45	0.7512	-0.2488	0.0619	-0.0154
1959	94.86	20	0.4545	134.51	0.7194	-0.2806	0.0787	-0.0221
1960	90.61	21	0.4773	130.82	0.6997	-0.3003	0.0902	-0.0271
1961	86.37	22	0.5000	116.95	0.6255	-0.3745	0.1402	-0.0525
1962	112.13	23	0.5227	112.13	0.5998	-0.4002	0.1602	-0.0641
1963	25.20	24	0.5455	100.24	0.5362	-0.4638	0.2151	-0.0998
1964	60.60	25	0.5682	95.14	0.5089	-0.4911	0.2412	-0.1184
1965	153.76	26	0.5909	94.86	0.5074	-0.4926	0.2427	-0.1195
1966	61.16	27	0.6136	90.61	0.4847	-0.5153	0.2656	-0.1369
1967	155.18	28	0.6364	86.37	0.4619	-0.5381	0.2895	-0.1558
1968	370.95	29	0.6591	83.53	0.4468	-0.5532	0.3060	-0.1693
1969	77.30	30	0.6818	77.30	0.4135	-0.5865	0.3440	-0.2018
1970	95.14	31	0.7045	71.92	0.3847	-0.6153	0.3786	-0.2329
1971	83.53	32	0.7273	61.16	0.3272	-0.6728	0.4527	-0.3046
1972	180.10	33	0.7500	60.88	0.3256	-0.6744	0.4548	-0.3067
1973	903.31	34	0.7727	60.60	0.3241	-0.6759	0.4568	-0.3087
1974	274.11	35	0.7955	58.05	0.3105	-0.6895	0.4754	-0.3278
1975	116.95	36	0.8182	56.63	0.3029	-0.6971	0.4859	-0.3387
1976	212.66	37	0.8409	56.07	0.2999	-0.7001	0.4902	0.3432
1977	130.82	38	0.8636	49.55	0.2651	-0.7349	0.5401	-0.3970
1978	267.31	39	0.8864	41.63	0.2226	-0.7774	0.6043	-0.4697
1979	134.51	40	0.9091	33.98	0.1818	-0.8182	0.6695	-0.5478
1980	56.07	41	0.9318	25.20	0.1348	-0.8652	0.7486	-0.6477
1981	410.59	42	0.9545	24.49	0.1310	-0.8690	0.7551	-0.6562
1982	231.07	43	0.9773	22.68	0.1213	-0.8787	0.7721	-0.6784
Total	8039.32						48.2202	117.4390

$$\overline{X} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} X_i}{n} = \frac{8039.32}{43} = 187.0\ m^3/s \qquad S = \overline{X}\left[\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{X_i}{\overline{X}} - 1\right)^2}{n-1}\right]^{0.5} = 187\left[\frac{48.2202}{42}\right]^{0.5} = 200.3\ m^3/s$$

$$V = S/\overline{X} = 200.3/187.0 = 1.071 \qquad G = \frac{43(117.439)}{42(41)(1.071)^3} = 2.39$$

4.3.2.1 Procedure

The procedure for developing the graph of the log-normal distribution is similar to that for

the normal distribution:

1. Transform the values of the flood series X by taking logarithms: Y = log X.
2. Compute the log mean ($\overline{Y}$) and log standard deviation (S_y) using the logarithms.
3. Using $\overline{Y}$ and S_y, compute $10^{\overline{Y} + S_y}$ and $10^{\overline{Y} - S_y}$. Using logarithmic frequency paper, plot these two values at exceedence probabilities of 0.159 (15.9%) and 0.841 (84.1%), respectively.
4. Draw a straight line through the two points.

The data points can now be plotted on the logarithmic probability paper using the same procedure as outlined for the normal distribution. Specifically, the flood magnitudes are plotted against the probabilities from a plotting position formula (e.g., Equation 4-21).

4.3.2.2 Estimation

Graphical estimates of either flood magnitudes or probabilities can be taken directly from the line representing the assumed log-normal distribution. Values can also be computed using either:

$$z = \frac{Y - \overline{Y}}{S_y} \qquad 4\text{-}28$$

to obtain a probability for the logarithm of a given magnitude (Y = log X) or:

$$Y = \overline{Y} + z\, S_y \qquad 4\text{-}29$$

to obtain a magnitude for a given probability. The value computed with Equation 4-29 must be transformed:

$$X = 10^{Y} \qquad 4\text{-}30$$

Two useful relations are also available to approximate the mean and the standard deviation of the logarithms, $\overline{Q}_L$ and S_L, from $\overline{Q}$ and S of the original variables. These equations are:

$$\overline{Y} = 0.5 \log\left(\frac{\overline{X}^4}{\overline{X}^2 + S^2}\right) \qquad 4\text{-}31$$

and

$$S_y = \left[\log\left(\frac{S^2 + \overline{X}^2}{\overline{X}^2}\right)\right]^{0.5} \qquad 4\text{-}32$$

Example 4-7

The log-normal distribution will be illustrated using the 43-year record from the Medina River. Table 4-11 provides the computations of the moments:

$$\overline{Y} = 2.091, \quad S_y = 0.39409, \text{ and } G = 0.236.$$

Assuming the distribution of the logs is normal, the 10-year flood is:

$$Y = \bar{Y} + zS_y = 2.0912 + 1.282\,(0.39409) = 2.5964$$

and

$$X_{10} = 10^{2.5964} = 394.8 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$$

The 100-year flood is:

$$Y = \bar{Y} + zS_y = 2.0912 + 2.326\,(0.39409) = 3.0079$$

and

$$X_{100} = 10^{3.0079} = 1018 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$$

The measured flood data are also plotted on log-probability paper in Figure 4-13 together with the fitted log-normal distribution. (Note: When plotting X on the log scale, the actual values of X are plotted rather than their logarithms since the log-scale effectively transforms the data to their respective logarithms.) Figure 4-13 shows that the log-normal distribution fits the actual data better than the normal distribution shown in Figure 4-12.

4.3.3 Gumbel Extreme Value Distribution

The Gumbel extreme value distribution, sometimes called the double-exponential distribution of extreme values, can also be used to describe the distribution of hydrologic variables, especially peak discharges. It is based upon the assumption that the cumulative frequency distribution of the largest values of samples drawn from a large population can be described by the following equation:

$$F(X) = e^{-e^{\alpha(X-\beta)}} \qquad \text{4-33}$$

where:

$$\alpha = \frac{1.281}{S} \qquad \text{4-33a}$$

$$\beta = \bar{X} - 0.450\,S \qquad \text{4-33b}$$

Table 4-11. Frequency Analysis Computations for the Log-Normal Distribution: Medina River

Rank	Flood X, (m^3/s)	Y = Log(X)	$Y/\bar{Y}$	$[(Y/\bar{Y})-1]$	$[(Y/\bar{Y})-1]^2$	$[(Y/\bar{Y})-1]^3$	Weibull Plotting Position
1	903.3	2.9558	1.41346	.41346	.17095	.070679	0.023
2	900.5	2.9544	1.41281	.41281	.17041	.070345	0.045
3	495.5	2.6950	1.28876	.28876	.08339	.024079	0.068
4	492.7	2.6925	1.28757	.28757	.08270	.023782	0.091
5	410.6	2.6133	1.24971	.24971	.06236	.015571	0.114
6	370.9	2.5693	1.22862	.22862	.05227	.011950	0.136
7	342.6	2.5348	1.21213	.21213	.04500	.009546	0.159
8	274.1	2.4379	1.16579	.16579	.02749	.004557	0.182
9	267.3	2.4270	1.16058	.16058	.02578	.004140	0.205
10	261.1	2.4167	1.15568	.15568	.02424	.003773	0.227
11	231.1	2.3637	1.13031	.13031	.01698	.002213	0.250

12	212.7	2.3276	1.11307	.11307	.01279	.001446	0.273
13	195.1	2.2902	1.09518	.09518	.00906	.000862	0.295
14	180.1	2.2554	1.07856	.07856	.00617	.000485	0.318
15	160.3	2.2048	1.05434	.05434	.00295	.000160	0.341
16	155.2	2.1908	1.04763	.04763	.00227	.000108	0.364
17	153.8	2.1868	1.04572	.04572	.00209	.000096	0.386
18	146.7	2.1663	1.03594	.03594	.00129	.000046	0.409
19	140.6	2.1483	1.02734	.02734	.00075	.000020	0.432
20	134.5	2.1287	1.01794	.01794	.00032	.000006	0.455
21	130.8	2.1166	1.01217	.01217	.00015	.000002	0.477
22	116.9	2.0679	.98889	-.01111	.00012	-.000001	0.500
23	112.1	2.0497	.98016	-.01984	.00039	-.000008	0.523
24	100.2	2.0010	.95688	-.04312	.00186	-.000080	0.545
25	95.1	1.9783	.94604	-.05396	.00291	-.000157	0.568
26	94.9	1.9770	.94542	-.05458	.00298	-.000163	0.591
27	90.6	1.9571	.93590	-.06410	.00411	-.000263	0.614
28	86.4	1.9363	.92593	-.07407	.00549	-.000406	0.636
29	83.5	1.9218	.91901	-.08099	.00656	-.000531	0.659
30	77.3	1.8881	.90292	-.09708	.00943	-.000915	0.682
31	71.9	1.8568	.88793	-.11207	.01256	-.001407	0.705
32	61.2	1.7864	.85428	-.14572	.02124	-.003094	0.727
33	60.9	1.7844	.85331	-.14669	.02152	-.003156	0.750
34	60.6	1.7824	.85235	-.14765	.02180	-.003219	0.773
35	58.0	1.7637	.84342	-.15658	.02452	-.003839	0.795
36	56.6	1.7530	.83829	-.16171	.02615	-.004228	0.818
37	56.1	1.7486	.83621	-.16379	.02683	-.004394	0.841
38	49.5	1.6950	.81056	-.18944	.03589	-.006798	0.864
39	41.6	1.6193	.77435	-.22565	.05092	-.011489	0.886
40	34.0	1.5312	.73221	-.26779	.07171	-.019205	0.909
41	25.2	1.4014	.67014	-.32986	.10881	-.035892	0.932
42	24.5	1.3890	.66422	-.33578	.11275	-.037858	0.955
43	22.7	1.3556	.64826	-.35174	.12372	-.043518	0.977
Total		89.9201			1.49163	.063243	

$$\bar{Y} = \frac{\sum_{i-1}^{n} X_i}{n} = \frac{89.9201}{43} = 2.0912$$

$$S_y = \bar{Y}\left[\frac{\sum_{i-1}^{n} [(Y/\bar{Y})-1]^2}{n-1}\right]^{0.5}$$

$$= 2.091\left[\frac{1.49163}{42}\right]^{0.5} = 0.39409$$

$$V = S_y / \bar{Y} = 0.39409/2.0912 = 0.188$$

$$G = \frac{n\sum\left(\frac{Y_i}{\bar{Y}} - 1\right)^2}{(n-1)(n-2)V^3} = \frac{43(0.063243)}{42(41)(0.188)^3} = 0.236$$

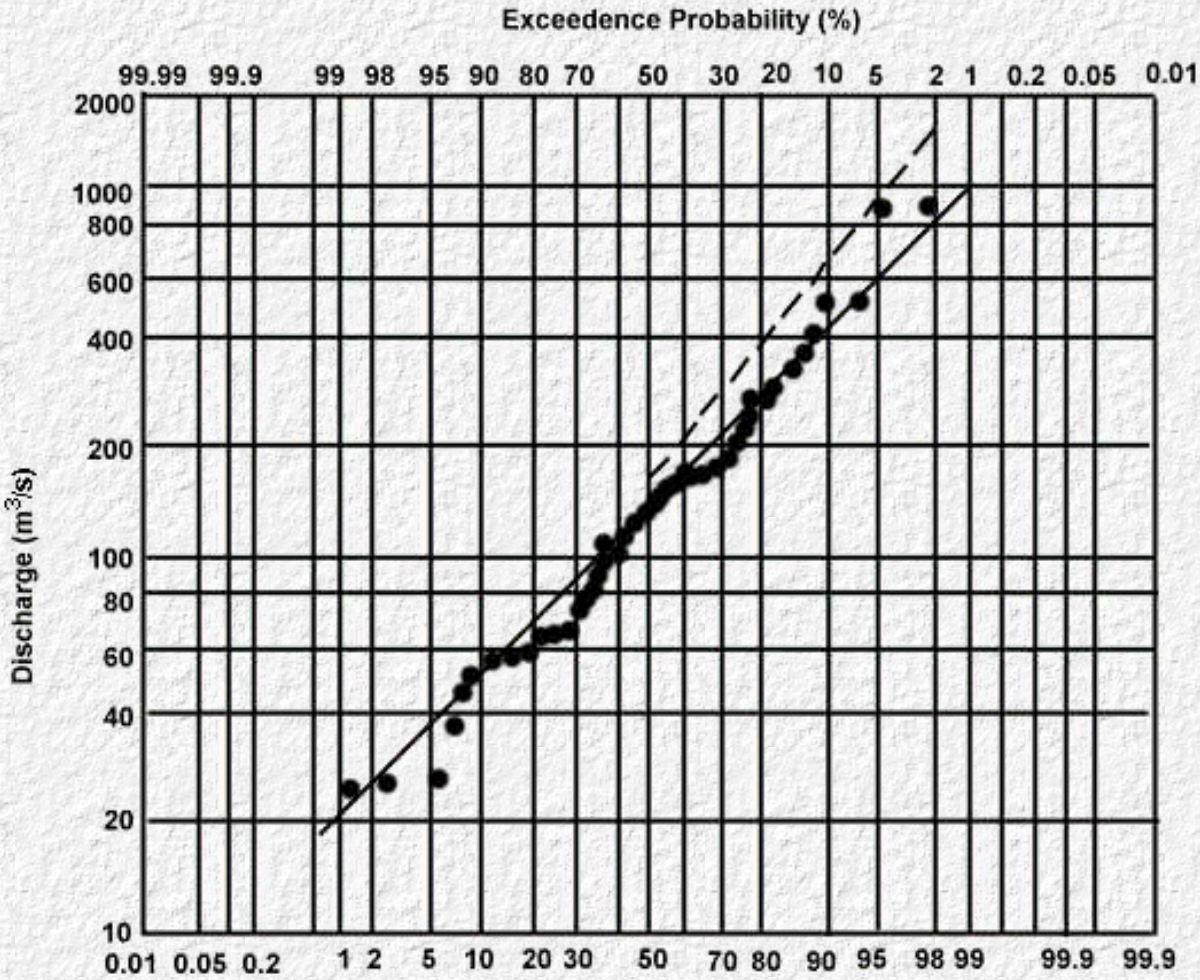


Figure 4-13. Log-Normal Distribution Frequency Curve (Solid Line) and One-Sided Upper Confidence Interval (dashed line)

In a manner analogous to that of the normal distribution, values of the distribution function can be computed from Equation 4-33. Frequency factor values K are tabulated for convenience in Table 4-12 for use in Equation 4-26.

Characteristics of the Gumbel extreme-value distribution are that the mean flow, $\bar{X}$, occurs at the return period of T_r = 2.33 years and that it has a positive skew, i.e., it is skewed towards the high flows or extreme values.

As was the case with the two previous distributions, special probability paper (called Gumbel paper) has been developed so that sample data, if it is distributed according to Equation 4-33, will plot as a straight line. This paper is not available commercially, but most USGS offices have prepared forms of this paper on which the horizontal scale has been transformed by the double-logarithmic transform of Equation 4-33.

Table 4-12. Frequency Factors (K) for the Gumble Extreme Value Distribution

	Exceedence Probability in %						
	50.0	20.0	10.0	4.0	2.0	1.0	0.2
Sample Size n		Corresponding Return Period in Years					
	2	2	5	10	25	50	500
10	-0.1355	1.0581	1.8483	2.8468	3.5876	4.3228	6.0219
15	-0.1433	0.9672	1.7025	2.6315	3.3207	4.0048	5.5857

20	-0.1478	0.9186	1.6247	2.5169	3.1787	3.8357	5.3538
25	-0.1506	0.8879	1.5755	2.4442	3.0887	3.7285	5.2068
30	-0.1525	0.8664	1.5410	2.3933	3.0257	3.6533	5.1038
35	-0.1540	0.8504	1.5153	2.3555	2.9789	3.5976	5.0273
40	-0.1552	0.8379	1.4955	2.3262	2.9426	3.5543	4.9680
45	-0.1561	0.8280	1.4795	2.3027	2.9134	3.5196	4.9204
50	-0.1568	0.8197	1.4662	2.2831	2.8892	3.4907	4.8808
55	-0.1574	0.8128	1.4552	2.2668	2.8690	3.4667	4.8478
60	-0.1580	0.8069	1.4457	2.2529	2.8517	3.4460	4.8195
65	-0.1584	0.8019	1.4377	2.2410	2.8369	3.4285	4.7955
70	-0.1588	0.7973	1.4304	2.2302	2.8236	3.4126	4.7738
75	-0.1592	0.7934	1.4242	2.2211	2.8123	3.3991	4.7552
80	-0.1595	0.7899	1.4186	2.2128	2.8020	3.3869	4.7384
85	-0.1598	0.7868	1.4135	2.2054	2.7928	3.3759	4.7234
90	-0.1600	0.7840	1.4090	2.1987	2.7845	3.3660	4.7098
95	-0.1602	0.7815	1.4049	2.1926	2.7770	3.3570	4.6974
100	-0.1604	0.7791	1.4011	2.1869	2.7699	3.3487	4.6860

Example 4-8

Peak flow data for the Medina River can be fit with a Gumbel distribution using Equation 4-26 and values of K from Table 4-12. Calculation of the mean and standard deviation are given in Table 4-10. The 10-year flood computed from the Gumbel distribution is:

$$X_{10} = \overline{X} + KS = 186.9 + 1.486\ (200.3) = 484.6\ m3/s$$

and the 100-year flood is:

$$X_{100} = \overline{X} + KS = 186.9 + 3.534\ (200.3) = 894.8\ m3/s$$

Plotted on the Gumbel graph paper in Figure 4-14 are the actual flood data and the computed frequency curve.

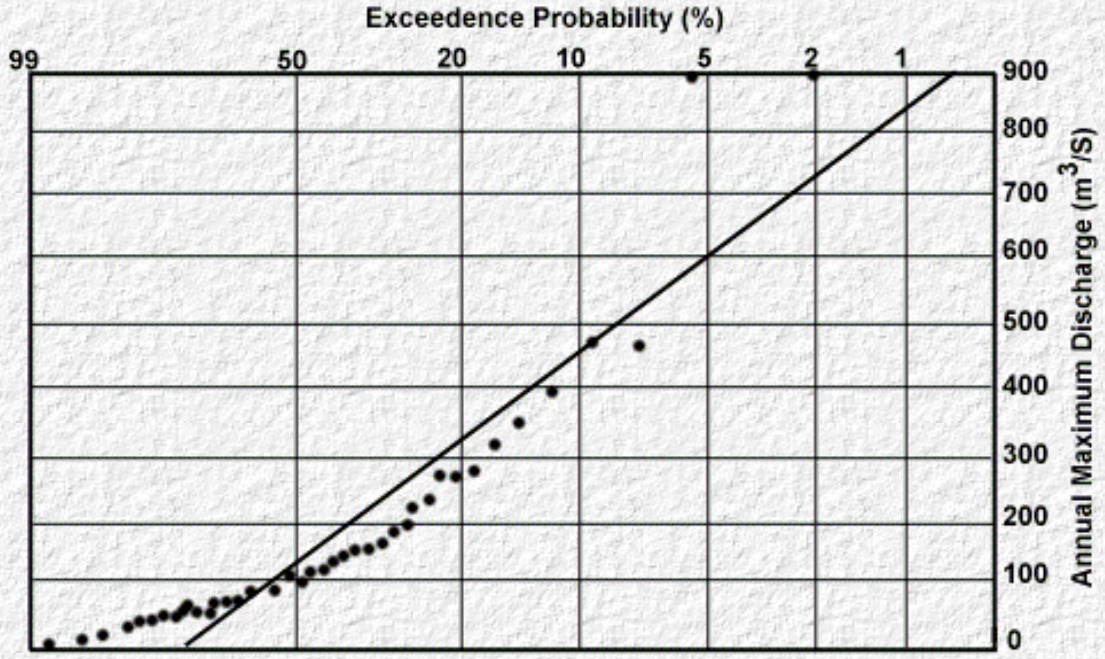


Figure 4-14. Gumbel Extreme Value Distribution Frequency Curve: Medina River

Although the Gumbel distribution is skewed positively, it does not account directly for the computed skew of the data but does predict the high flows reasonably well. However, the entire curve fit is not much better than that obtained with the normal distribution indicating this peak flow series is not distributed according to the double-exponential distribution of Equation 4-33.

4.3.4 Log-Pearson Type III Distribution

Another distribution that has found wide application in hydrologic analysis is the log-Pearson Type III distribution. The log-Pearson Type III distribution is a three-parameter gamma distribution with a logarithmic transform of the variable. It is widely used for flood analyses because the data quite frequently fit the assumed population. It is this flexibility that lead the Interagency Advisory Committee on Water Data to recommend its use as the standard distribution for flood frequency studies by all U.S. Government agencies. Thomas (1985) describes the motivation for adopting the log-Pearson Type III distribution and the events leading up to Bulletin 17B.

The log-Pearson III distribution differs from most of the distributions discussed above in that three parameters (mean, standard deviation, and coefficient of skew) are necessary to describe the distribution. By judicious selection of these three parameters, it is possible to fit just about any shape of distribution. An extensive treatment on the use of this distribution in the determination of flood frequency distributions is presented in Bulletin 17B, "Guidelines for Determining Flood Frequency" by the Interagency Advisory Committee on Water Data, revised March 1982. The Bulletin 17B procedure assumes the logarithms of the annual peak flows are Pearson Type III distributed rather than assuming, the untransformed data are log-Pearson Type III. Kite (1988) has a good description of the two approaches.

An abbreviated table of the log-Pearson III distribution function is given in Table 4-13. (Extensive tables that reduce the amount of interpolation can be found in Bulletin 17B.) Using the mean, standard deviation, and skew coefficient for any set of log-transformed annual peak flow data, in conjunction with Table 4-13, the flood with any exceedence frequency can be computed from the equation:

$$\hat{Y} = \log X = \bar{Y} + KS_y \qquad 4\text{-}34$$

where:

$\hat{Y}$ is the predicted value of log X, $\bar{Y}$, and S_y are as previously defined

K is a function of the exceedence probability and the coefficient of skew.

Again, it would be possible to develop special probability paper, so that the log-Pearson III distribution would plot as a straight line. However, the log-Pearson III distribution can assume a variety of shapes so that a separate probability paper would be required for each different shape. Since this is impractical, log-Pearson III distributions are usually plotted on log-normal probability graph paper even though the plotted frequency distribution may not be a straight line. It is a straight line only when the skew of the logarithms is zero.

4.3.4.1 Procedure

The procedure for fitting the log-Pearson type III (LP3) distribution is similar to that for the normal and log normal. The specific steps for making a basic LP3 analysis without any of the optional adjustments are as follows:

1. Make a logarithmic transform of all flows in the series ($Y_i = \log X_i$).

2. Compute the mean ($\bar{Y}$), standard deviation (S_y), and standardized skew (G) of the logarithms using Equation 4-12, Equation 4-13, and Equation 4-15, respectively. Round the skew to the nearest tenth (e.g., 0.32 is rounded to 0.3).

3. Since the LP3 curve with a nonzero skew does not plot as a straight line, it is necessary to use more than two points to draw the curve. The curvature of the line will increase as the absolute value of the skew increases, so more points will be needed for larger skew magnitudes.

4. Compute the logarithmic value for each exceedence frequency using Equation 4-34.

5. Transform the computed values of step 4 to discharges using

$$\hat{X} = 10^{\hat{Y}} \qquad 4\text{-}35$$

in which $\hat{X}$ is the computed discharge for the assumed LP3 population.

6. Plot the points of step 5 on logarithmic probability paper and draw a smooth curve through the points.

The sample data can be plotted on the paper using a plotting position formula to obtain the exceedence probability. The computed curve can then be verified, and, if acceptable, it can be used to make estimates of either a flood probability or flood magnitude.

4.3.4.2 Estimation

In addition to graphical estimation, estimates can be made with the mathematical model of Equation 4-34. To compute a magnitude for a given probability, the procedure is the

same as that in steps 3 to 5 in Section 4.3.4.1. To estimate the probability for a given magnitude X, the value is transformed using the logarithm (Y = log X) and then Equation 4-34 is algebraically transformed to compute K:

$$K = \frac{Y - \overline{Y}}{S_y} \qquad 4\text{-}36$$

The computed value of K should be compared to the K values of Table 4-13 for the standardized skew and a value of the probability interpolated from the probability values on Table 4-13; linear interpolation is acceptable.

Example 4-9

The log-Pearson Type III distribution will be illustrated using the Medina River flood data (Table 4-11). Three cases will be computed: station skew, generalized skew, and weighted skew. Table 4-13 and Equation 4-34 are used to compute values of the log-Pearson III distribution for the 10- and 100-year flood using the parameters, $\overline{Y}$, S_y, and G for the Medina River flood data. (To help define the distribution, the 2-,5-, 25-, and 50-year floods have also been computed in Table 4-14.) Rounding the station skew of 0.236 to 0.2, the log-Pearson III distribution estimates of the 100- and 10-year floods are 1163 m^3/s and 402 m^3/s, respectively. The log-Pearson III distribution (G = 0.236) together with the actual data from Table 4-11 are plotted in Figure 4-15 on log-normal probability paper.

The generalized skew coefficient for the Medina River is -0.252, which can be rounded to -0.3. Using this option, the 10- and 100-year floods for the Medina River are estimated as shown in Table 4-15. This log-Pearson III distribution (generalized skew coefficient, $\overline{G}$ = -0.252) is also plotted on Figure 4-15.

To illustrate the use of weighted skew, the station and generalized skews have already been determined to be G = 0.236 and $\overline{G}$ = -0.252, respectively. The mean-square error of $\overline{G}$, $MSE_{\overline{G}}$, is 0.302 and from Equation 4-17 MSE_G = 0.136. From Equation 4-16, the weighted skew is:

$$G_W = \frac{0.302(0.188) + 0.136(-0.252)}{0.302 + 0.136} = 0.051$$

which is rounded to 0.1 when obtaining values from Table 4-13. Values for selected return periods are given in Table 4-16.

4.3.5 Evaluation of Flood Frequency Predictions

The peak flow data for the Medina River gage have now been analyzed by four different frequency distributions, and in the case of log-Pearson III distribution by three different options of skewness. The two-parameter log-normal distribution is a special case of the log-Pearson Type III distribution, specifically when the skew is zero. The normal and Gumbel distributions assume fixed skews of zero and 1.139, respectively, for the untransformed data.

The log Pearson Type III distribution, which uses three parameters, should be superior to all three of the two-parameter distributions discussed in this document. The predicted 10-year and 100-year floods obtained by each of these methods are summarized in Table 4-17. There is considerable variation in the estimates, especially for the 100-year flood, where the values range from 653 m^3/s

to 1163 m3/s.

Table 4-13. Frequency Factors (K)
for the Log-Pearson Type III Distribution

Prob.	Skew						
	-2.0	-1.9	-1.8	-1.7	-1.6	-1.5	-1.4
0.9999	-8.21034	-7.98888	-7.76632	-7.54272	-7.31818	-7.09277	-6.86661
0.9995	-6.60090	-6.44251	-6.28285	-6.12196	-5.95990	-5.79673	-5.63252
0.9990	-5.90776	-5.77549	-5.64190	-5.50701	-5.37087	-5.23353	-5.09505
0.9980	-5.21461	-5.10768	-4.99937	-4.88971	-4.77875	-4.66651	-4.55304
0.9950	-4.29832	-4.22336	-4.14700	-4.06926	-3.99016	-3.90973	-3.82798
0.9900	-3.60517	-3.55295	-3.49935	-3.44438	-3.38804	-3.33035	-3.27134
0.9800	-2.91202	-2.88091	-2.84848	-2.81472	-2.77964	-2.74325	-2.70556
0.9750	-2.68888	-2.66413	-2.63810	-2.61076	-2.58214	-2.55222	-2.52102
0.9600	-2.21888	-2.20670	-2.19332	-2.17873	-2.16293	-2.14591	-2.12768
0.9500	-1.99573	-1.98906	-1.98124	-1.97227	-1.96213	-1.95083	-1.93836
0.9000	-1.30259	-1.31054	-1.31760	-1.32376	-1.32900	-1.33330	-1.33665
0.8000	-0.60944	-0.62662	-0.64335	-0.65959	-0.67532	-0.69050	-0.70512
0.7000	-0.20397	-0.22250	-0.24094	-0.25925	-0.27740	-0.29535	-0.31307
0.6000	0.08371	0.06718	0.05040	0.03344	0.01631	-0.00092	-0.01824
0.5704	0.15516	0.13964	0.12381	0.10769	0.09132	0.07476	0.05803
0.5000	.30685	0.29443	0.28150	0.26808	0.25422	0.23996	0.22535
0.4296	0.43854	0.43008	0.42095	0.41116	0.40075	0.38977	0.37824
0.4000	0.48917	0.48265	0.47538	0.46739	0.45873	0.44942	0.43949
0.3000	0.64333	0.64453	0.64488	0.64436	0.64300	0.64080	0.63779
0.2000	0.77686	0.78816	0.79868	0.80837	0.81720	0.82516	0.83223
0.1000	0.89464	0.91988	0.94496	0.96977	0.99418	1.01810	1.04144
0.0500	0.94871	0.98381	1.01973	1.05631	1.09338	1.13075	1.16827
0.0400	0.95918	0.99672	1.03543	1.07513	1.11566	1.15682	1.19842
0.0250	0.97468	1.01640	1.06001	1.10537	1.15229	1.20059	1.25004
0.0200	0.97980	1.02311	1.06864	1.11628	1.16584	1.21716	1.26999
0.0100	0.98995	1.03695	1.08711	1.14042	1.19680	1.25611	1.31815
0.0050	0.99499	1.04427	1.09749	1.15477	1.21618	1.28167	1.35114
0.0020	0.99800	1.04898	1.10465	1.16534	1.23132	1.30279	1.37981
0.0010	0.99900	1.05068	1.10743	1.16974	1.23805	1.31275	1.39408
0.0005	0.99950	1.05159	1.10901	1.17240	1.24235	1.31944	1.40413
0.0001	0.99990	1.05239	1.11054	1.17520	1.24728	1.32774	1.41753

Prob.	Skew						
	-1.3	-1.2	-1.1	-1.0	-0.9	-0.8	-0.7
0.9999	-6.63980	-6.41249	-6.18480	-5.95691	-5.72899	-5.50124	-5.27389
0.9995	-5.46735	-5.30130	-5.13449	-4.96701	-4.79899	-4.63057	-4.46189
0.9990	-4.95549	-4.81492	-4.67344	-4.53112	-4.38807	-4.24439	-4.10022
0.9980	-4.43839	-4.32263	-4.20582	-4.08802	-3.96932	-3.84981	-3.72957
0.9950	-3.74497	-3.66073	-3.57530	-3.48874	-3.40109	-3.31243	-3.22281
0.9900	-3.21103	-3.14944	-3.08660	-3.02256	-2.95735	-2.89101	-2.82359
0.9800	-2.66657	-2.62631	-2.58480	-2.54206	-2.49811	-2.45298	-2.40670
0.9750	-2.48855	-2.45482	-2.41984	-2.38364	-2.34623	-2.30764	-2.26790
0.9600	-2.10823	-2.08758	-2.06573	-2.04269	-2.01848	-1.99311	-1.96660

0.9500	-1.92472	-1.90992	-1.89395	-1.87683	-1.85856	-1.83916	-1.81864
0.9000	-1.33904	-1.34047	-1.34092	-1.34039	-1.33889	-1.33640	-1.33294
0.8000	-0.71915	-0.73257	-0.74537	-0.75752	-0.76902	-0.77986	-0.79002
0.7000	-0.33054	-0.34772	-0.36458	-0.38111	-0.39729	-0.41309	-0.42851
0.6000	-0.03560	-0.05297	-0.07032	-0.08763	-0.10486	-0.12199	-0.13901
0.5704	0.04116	0.02421	0.00719	-0.00987	-0.02693	-0.04397	-0.06097
0.5000	0.21040	0.19517	0.17968	0.16397	0.14807	0.13199	0.11578
0.4296	0.36620	0.35370	0.34075	0.32740	0.31368	0.29961	0.28516
0.4000	0.42899	0.41794	0.40638	0.39434	0.38186	0.36889	0.35565
0.3000	0.63400	0.62944	0.62415	0.61815	0.61146	0.60412	0.59615
0.2000	0.83841	0.84369	0.84809	0.85161	0.85426	0.85607	0.85703
0.1000	1.06413	1.08608	1.10726	1.12762	1.14712	1.16574	1.18347
0.0500	1.20578	1.24313	1.28019	1.31684	1.35299	1.38855	1.42345
0.0400	1.24028	1.28225	1.32414	1.36584	1.40720	1.44813	1.48852
0.0250	1.30042	1.35153	1.40314	1.45507	1.50712	1.55914	1.61099
0.0200	1.32412	1.37929	1.43529	1.49188	1.54886	1.60604	1.66325
0.0100	1.38267	1.44942	1.51808	1.58838	1.66001	1.73271	1.80621
0.0050	1.42439	1.50114	1.58110	1.66390	1.74919	1.83660	1.92580
0.0020	1.46232	1.55016	1.64305	1.74062	1.84244	1.94806	2.05701
0.0010	1.48216	1.57695	1.67825	1.78572	1.89894	2.01739	2.14053
0.0005	1.49673	1.59738	1.70603	1.82241	1.94611	2.07661	2.21328
0.0001	1.51752	1.62838	1.75053	1.88410	2.02891	2.18448	2.35015

Prob.	Skew						
	-0.6	-0.5	-0.4	-0.3	-0.2	-0.1	0.0
0.9999	-5.04718	-4.82141	-4.59687	-4.37394	-4.15301	-3.93453	-3.71902
0.9995	-4.29311	-4.12443	-3.95605	-3.78820	-3.62113	-3.45513	-3.29053
0.9990	-3.95567	-3.81090	-3.66608	-3.52139	-3.37703	-3.23322	-3.09023
0.9980	-3.60872	-3.48737	-3.36566	-3.24371	-3.12169	-2.99978	-2.87816
0.9950	-3.13232	-3.04102	-2.94900	-2.85636	-2.76321	-2.66965	-2.57583
0.9900	-2.75514	-2.68572	-2.61539	-2.54421	-2.47226	-2.39961	-2.32635
0.9800	-2.35931	-2.31084	-2.26133	-2.21081	-2.15935	-2.10697	-2.05375
0.9750	-2.22702	-2.18505	-2.14202	-2.09795	-2.05290	-2.00688	-1.95996
0.9600	-1.93896	-1.91022	-1.88039	-1.84949	-1.81756	-1.78462	-1.75069
0.9500	-1.79701	-1.77428	-1.75048	-1.72562	-1.69971	-1.67279	-1.64485
0.9000	-1.32850	-1.32309	-1.31671	-1.30936	-1.30105	-1.29178	-1.28155
0.8000	-0.79950	-0.80829	-0.81638	-0.82377	-0.83044	-0.83639	-0.84162
0.7000	-0.44352	-0.45812	-0.47228	-0.48600	-0.49927	-0.51207	-0.52440
0.6000	-0.15589	-0.17261	-0.18916	-0.20552	-0.22168	-0.23763	-0.25335
0.5704	-0.07791	-0.09178	-0.11154	-0.12820	-0.14472	-0.16111	-0.17733
0.5000	0.09945	0.08302	0.06651	0.04993	0.03325	0.01662	0.00000
0.4296	0.27047	0.25558	0.24037	0.22492	0.20925	0.19339	0.17733
0.4000	0.34198	0.32796	0.31362	0.29897	0.28403	0.26882	0.25335
0.3000	0.58757	0.57840	0.56867	0.55839	0.54757	0.53624	0.52440
0.2000	0.85718	0.85653	0.85508	0.85285	0.84986	0.84611	0.84162
0.1000	1.20028	1.21618	1.23114	1.24516	1.25824	1.27037	1.28155
0.0500	1.45762	1.49101	1.52357	1.55527	1.58607	1.61594	1.64485
0.0400	1.52830	1.56740	1.60574	1.64329	1.67999	1.71580	1.75069

0.0250	1.66253	1.71366	1.76427	1.81427	1.86360	1.91219	1.95996
0.0200	1.72033	1.77716	1.83361	1.88959	1.94499	1.99973	2.05375
0.0100	1.88029	1.95472	2.02933	2.10394	2.17840	2.25258	2.32635
0.0050	2.01644	2.10825	2.20092	2.29423	2.38795	2.48187	2.57583
0.0020	2.16884	2.28311	2.39942	2.51741	2.63672	2.75706	2.87816
0.0010	2.26780	2.39867	2.53261	2.66915	2.80786	2.94834	3.09023
0.0005	2.35549	2.50257	2.65390	2.80889	2.96698	3.12767	3.29053
0.0001	2.52507	2.70836	2.89907	3.09631	3.29921	3.50703	3.71902

Prob.	Skew						
	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7
0.9999	-3.50703	-3.29921	-3.09631	-2.89907	-2.70836	-2.52507	-2.35015
0.9995	-3.12767	-2.96698	-2.80889	-2.65390	-2.50257	-2.35549	-2.21328
0.9990	-2.94834	-2.80786	-2.66915	-2.53261	-2.39867	-2.26780	-2.14053
0.9980	-2.75706	-2.63672	-2.51741	-2.39942	-2.28311	-2.16884	-2.05701
0.9950	-2.48187	-2.38795	-2.29423	-2.20092	-2.10825	-2.01644	-1.92580
0.9900	-2.25258	-2.17840	-2.10394	-2.02933	-1.95472	-1.88029	-1.80621
0.9800	-1.99973	-1.94499	-1.88959	-1.83361	-1.77716	-1.72033	-1.66325
0.9750	-1.91219	-1.86360	-1.81427	-1.76427	-1.71366	-1.66253	-1.61099
0.9600	-1.71580	-1.67999	-1.64329	-1.60574	-1.56740	-1.52830	-1.48852
0.9500	-1.61594	-1.58607	-1.55527	-1.52357	-1.49101	-1.45762	-1.42345
0.9000	-1.27037	-1.25824	-1.24516	-1.23114	-1.21618	-1.20028	-1.18347
0.8000	-0.84611	-0.84986	-0.85285	-0.85508	-0.85653	-0.85718	-0.85703
0.7000	-0.53624	-0.54757	-0.55839	-0.56867	-0.57840	-0.58757	-0.59615
0.6000	-0.26882	-0.28403	-0.29897	-0.31362	-0.32796	-0.34198	-0.35565
0.5704	-0.19339	-0.20925	-0.22492	-0.24037	-0.25558	-0.27047	-0.28516
0.5000	-0.01662	-0.03325	-0.04993	-0.06651	-0.08302	-0.09945	-0.11578
0.4296	0.16111	0.14472	0.12820	0.11154	0.09478	0.07791	0.06097
0.4000	0.23763	0.22168	0.20552	0.18916	0.17261	0.15589	0.13901
0.3000	0.51207	0.49927	0.48600	0.47228	0.45812	0.44352	0.42851
0.2000	0.83639	0.83044	0.82377	0.81638	0.80829	0.79950	0.79002
0.1000	1.29178	1.30105	1.30936	1.31671	1.32309	1.32850	1.33294
0.0500	1.67279	1.69971	1.72562	1.75048	1.77428	1.79701	1.81864
0.0400	1.78462	1.81756	1.84949	1.88039	1.91022	1.93896	1.96660
0.0250	2.00688	2.05290	2.09795	2.14202	2.18505	2.22702	2.26790
0.0200	2.10697	2.15935	2.21081	2.26133	2.31084	2.35931	2.40670
0.0100	2.39961	2.47226	2.54421	2.61539	2.68572	2.75514	2.82359
0.0050	2.66965	2.76321	2.85636	2.94900	3.04102	3.13232	3.22281
0.0020	2.99978	3.12169	3.24371	3.36566	3.48737	3.60872	3.72957
0.0010	3.23322	3.37703	3.52139	3.66608	3.81090	3.95567	4.10022
0.0005	3.45513	3.62113	3.78820	3.95605	4.12443	4.29311	4.46189
0.0001	3.93453	4.15301	4.37394	4.59687	4.82141	5.04718	5.27389

Prob.	Skew						
	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4
0.9999	2.18448	-2.02891	-1.88410	-1.75053	-1.62838	-1.51752	-1.41753
0.9995	-2.07661	-1.94611	-1.82241	-1.70603	-1.59738	-1.49673	-1.40413
0.9990	-2.01739	-1.89894	-1.78572	-1.67825	-1.57695	-1.48216	-1.39408

0.9980	-1.94806	-1.84244	-1.74062	-1.64305	-1.55016	-1.46232	-1.37981
0.9950	-1.83660	-1.74919	-1.66390	-1.58110	-1.50114	-1.42439	-1.35114
0.9900	-1.73271	-1.66001	-1.58838	-1.51808	-1.44942	-1.38267	-1.31815
0.9800	-1.60604	-1.54886	-1.49188	-1.43529	-1.37929	-1.32412	-1.26999
0.9750	-1.55914	-1.50712	-1.45507	-1.40314	-1.35153	-1.30042	-1.25004
0.9600	-1.44813	-1.40720	-1.36584	-1.32414	-1.28225	-1.24028	-1.19842
0.9500	-1.38855	-1.35299	-1.31684	-1.28019	-1.24313	-1.20578	-1.16827
0.9000	-1.16574	-1.14712	-1.12762	-1.10726	-1.08608	-1.06413	-1.04144
0.8000	-0.85607	-0.85426	-0.85161	-0.84809	-0.84369	-0.83841	-0.83223
0.7000	-0.60412	-0.61146	-0.61815	-0.62415	-0.62944	-0.63400	-0.63779
0.6000	-0.36889	-0.38186	-0.39434	-0.40638	-0.41794	-0.42899	-0.43949
0.5704	-0.29961	-0.31368	-0.32740	-0.34075	-0.35370	-0.36620	-0.37824
0.5000	-0.13199	-0.14807	-0.16397	-0.17968	-0.19517	-0.21040	-0.22535
0.4296	0.04397	0.02693	0.00987	-0.00719	-0.02421	-0.04116	-0.05803
0.4000	0.12199	0.10486	0.08763	0.07032	0.05297	0.03560	0.01824
0.3000	0.41309	0.39729	0.38111	0.36458	0.34772	0.33054	0.31307
0.2000	0.77986	0.76902	0.75752	0.74537	0.73257	0.71915	0.70512
0.1000	1.33640	1.33889	1.34039	1.34092	1.34047	1.33904	1.33665
0.0500	1.83916	1.85856	1.87683	1.89395	1.90992	1.92472	1.93836
0.0400	1.99311	2.01848	2.04269	2.06573	2.08758	2.10823	2.12768
0.0250	2.30764	2.34623	2.38364	2.41984	2.45482	2.48855	2.52102
0.0200	2.45298	2.49811	2.54206	2.58480	2.62631	2.66657	2.70556
0.0100	2.89101	2.95735	3.02256	3.08660	3.14944	3.21103	3.27134
0.0050	3.31243	3.40109	3.48874	3.57530	3.66073	3.74497	3.82798
0.0020	3.84981	3.96932	4.08802	4.20582	4.32263	4.43839	4.55304
0.0010	4.24439	4.38807	4.53112	4.67344	4.81492	4.95549	5.09505
0.0005	4.63057	4.79899	4.96701	5.13449	5.30130	5.46735	5.63252
0.0001	5.50124	5.72899	5.95691	6.18480	6.41249	6.63980	6.86661

Prob.	Skew					
	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	1.9	2.0
. 9999	-1.32774	-1.24728	-1.17520	-1.11054	-1.05239	-.99990
.9995	-1.31944	-1.24235	-1.17240	-1.10901	-1.05159	-.99950
.9990	-1.31275	-1.23805	-1.16974	-1.10743	-1.50568	-.99900
.9980	-1.30279	-1.23132	-1.16534	-1.10465	-1.04898	-.99800
.9950	-1.28167	-1.21618	-1.15477	-1.09749	-1.04427	-.99499
.9900	-1.25611	-1.19680	-1.14042	-1.08711	-1.03695	-.98995
.9800	-1.21716	-1.16584	-1.11628	-1.06864	-1.02311	-.97980
.9750	-1.20059	-1.15229	-1.10537	-1.06001	-1.01640	-.97468
.9600	-1.15682	-1.11566	-1.07513	-1.03543	-.99672	-.95918
.9500	-1.13075	-1.09338	-1.05631	-1.01973	-.98381	-.94871
.9000	-1.01810	-.99418	-.96977	-.94496	-.91988	-.89464
.8000	-.82516	-.81720	-.80837	-.79868	-.78816	-.77686
.7000	-.64080	-.64300	-.64436	-.64488	-.64453	-.64333
.6000	-.44942	-.45873	-.46739	-.47538	-.48265	-.48917
.5704	-.38977	-.40075	-.41116	-.42095	-.43008	-.43854
.5000	-.23996	-.25422	-.26808	-.28150	-.29443	-.30685
.4296	-.07476	-.09132	-.10769	-.12381	-.13964	-.15516

.4000	.00092	-.01631	-.03344	-.05040	-.06718	-.08371
.3000	.29535	.27740	.25925	.24094	.22250	.20397
.2000	.69050	.67532	.65959	.64335	.62662	.60944
.1000	1.33330	1.32900	1.32376	1.31760	1.31054	1.30259
.0500	1.95083	1.96213	1.97227	1.98124	1.98906	1.99573
.0400	2.14591	2.16293	2.17873	2.19332	2.20670	2.21888
.0250	2.55222	2.58214	2.61076	2.63810	2.66413	2.68888
.0200	2.74325	2.77964	2.81472	2.84848	2.88091	2.91202
.0100	3.33035	3.38804	3.44438	3.49935	3.55295	3.60517
.0050	3.90973	3.99016	4.06926	4.14700	4.22336	4.29832
.0020	4.66651	4.77875	4.88971	4.99937	5.10768	5.21461
.0010	5.23353	5.37087	5.50701	5.64190	5.77549	5.90776
.0005	5.79673	5.95990	6.12196	6.28285	6.44251	6.60090
.0001	7.09277	7.31818	7.54272	7.76632	7.98888	8.21034

Table 4-14. Calculation of Log Pearson Type III Discharges for Medina River Using Station Skew

(1) Return period (yrs)	(2) Exceedence probability	(3) K	(4) Y	(5) X (m^3/s)
2	0.50	-0.03325	2.0781	119.7
5	.20	0.83044	2.4185	262.1
10	0.10	1.30105	2.6039	401.7
25	0.04	1.81756	2.8075	641.9
50	0.02	2.15935	2.9422	875.3
100	0.01	2.47226	3.0655	1162.8

(3) from Table 4-13 for G = 0.2 (rounded from 0.236)

(4) $Y = \overline{Y} + KS_y = 2.0912 + 0.39409\ K$

(5) $X = 10^Y$

Table 4-15. Calculation of Log Pearson Type III Discharges for Medina River Using Generalized Skew

(1) Return period (yrs)	(2) Exceedence probability	(3) K	(4) Y	(5) X (m^3/s)
2	0.50	0.04993	2.1109	129.1
5	0.20	0.85285	2.4273	267.5
10	0.10	1.24516	2.5819	381.9
25	0.04	1.64329	2.7388	548.0
50	0.02	1.88959	2.8359	685.3
100	0.01	2.10394	2.9203	832.4

(3) from Table 4-13 for G_W = -0.3 (rounded from -0.252)

(4) $Y = \overline{Y} + KS_y = 2.0912 + 0.39409\ K$

(5) $X = 10^Y$

Table 4-16. Calculation of Log Pearson Type III Discharges for Medina River using Weighted Skew

(1) Return period (yrs)	(2) Exceedence probability	(3) K	(4) Y	(5) X (m^3/s)
2	0.50	-0.01662	2.0847	121.5
5	0.20	0.83639	2.4208	263.5
10	0.10	1.29178	2.6003	398.4
25	0.04	1.78462	2.7945	623.0
50	0.02	2.10697	2.9215	834.7
100	0.01	2.39961	2.0369	1088.6
500	0.002	2.99978	3.2734	1876.7

(3) from Table 4-13 for G_W = 0.1 (rounded from 0.084)

(4) $Y = \overline{Y} + KS_y = 2.0912 + 0.39409\ K$

(5) $X = 10^Y$

Table 4-17. Summary of 10- and 100-year Discharges for Selected Probability Distributions

Distribution	Estimated flow (m^3/s)	
	10-yr.	**100-yr.**
Normal	444	653
Log-normal	395	1018
Gumbel	485	895
Log-Pearson III		
Station Skew (G = 0.2)	402	1163
Generalized Skew ($\overline{G}$ = -0.3)	382	832
Weighted Skew (G_W = 0.1)	398	1089

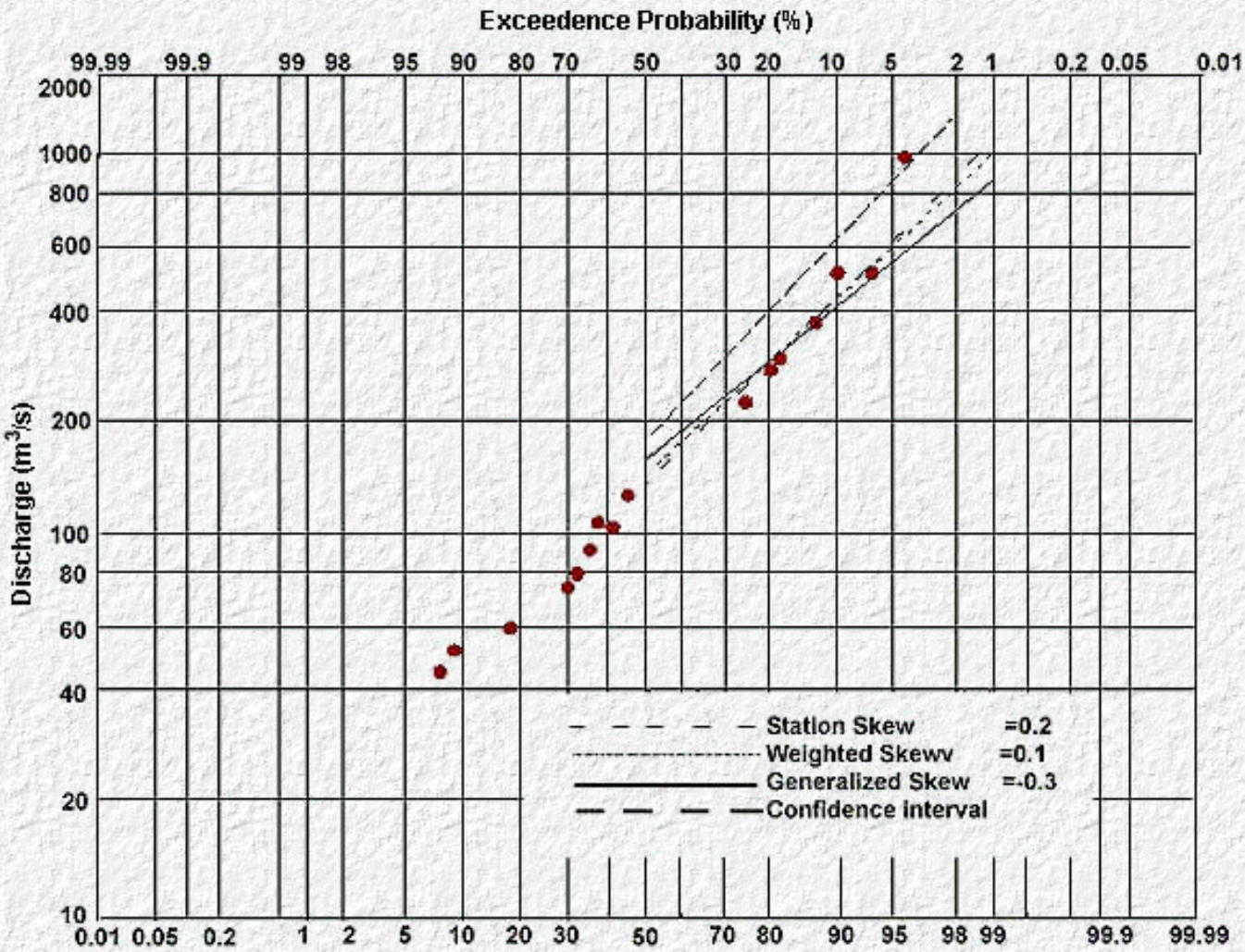


Figure 4-15. Log-Pearson Type III Distribution Frequency Curve: Medina River

The highway designer is faced with the obvious question of which is the appropriate distribution to use for the given set of data. Considerable insight into the nature of the distribution can be obtained by ordering the flood data, computing the mean, standard deviation, and coefficient of skew for the sample and plotting the data on standard probability graph paper. Based on this preliminary graphical analysis, as well as judgment, some standard distributions might be eliminated before the frequency analysis is begun.

Often times, more than one distribution, or in the case of the log-Pearson III, more than one skew option will seem to fit the data fairly well. Some quantitative measure is needed to determine whether one curve or distribution is better than another. Several different techniques have been proposed for this purpose. Two of the most common are the standard error of estimate and confidence limits, both of which are discussed below.

4.3.5.1 Standard Error of Estimate

A common measure of statistical reliability is the standard error of estimate or the root-mean square error. Beard (1962) gives the standard error of estimate for the mean, standard deviation, and coefficient of skew as:

$$Mean: \quad S_{TM} = \frac{S}{n^{0.5}}$$

$$\textit{Standard Deviation:} \quad S_{TS} = \frac{S}{(2n)^{0.5}} \qquad 4\text{-}38$$

$$\textit{Coefficient of Skew:} \quad S_{TG} = \left[\frac{6n(n-1)}{(n-2)(n+1)(n+3)}\right]^{0.5} \qquad 4\text{-}39$$

These equations show that the standard error of estimate is inversely proportional to the square root of the period of record. In other words, the shorter the record, the larger the standard errors. For example, standard errors for a short record will be approximately twice as large as those for a record four times as long.

The standard error of estimate is actually a measure of the variance that could be expected in a predicted T-year event if the event were estimated from each of a very large number of equally good samples of equal length. Because of its critical dependence on the period of record, the standard error is difficult to interpret, and a large value may be a reflection of a short record.

Using the Medina River annual flood series as an example, the standard errors for the parameters of the log-Pearson III computed from Equation 4-37, Equation 4-38, and Equation 4-39 for the logarithms are:

$S_{TM} = 0.39409/\sqrt{43} = 0.060$

$S_{TS} = 0.39409/(2(43))^{0.5} = 0.0425$

$S_{TG} = [6(43)(42)/((41)(44)(46))]^{0.5} = 0.361$

The standard error for the skew coefficient of 0.361 is relatively large. The 43-year period of record is statistically of insufficient length to properly evaluate the station skew, and the potential variability in the prediction of the 100-year flood is reflected in the standard error of estimate of the skew coefficient. For this reason, some hydrologists prefer confidence limits for evaluating the reliability of a selected frequency distribution.

4.3.5.2 Confidence Limits

Confidence limits are used to estimate the uncertainties associated with the determination of floods of specified return periods from frequency distributions. Since a given frequency distribution is only a sample estimate of a population, it is probable that another sample taken at the same location and of equal length but taken at a different time would yield a different frequency curve. Confidence limits, or more correctly, confidence intervals, define the range within which these frequency curves could be expected to fall with a specified confidence level.

Bulletin 17B outlines a method for developing upper and lower confidence intervals. The general forms of the confidence limits are:

$$U_{p,c}(Q) = \overline{Q} + S\,K^{U}_{p,c} \qquad 4\text{-}40$$

and

$$L_{p,c}(Q) = \overline{Q} + S\,K^{L}_{p,c} \qquad 4\text{-}41$$

where:

$U_{p,c}$ (Q) and $L_{p,c}$ (Q) are the upper and lower confidence limits for a flow, Q, at a level of confidence, c, and exceedence probability, p; and $KU_{p,c}$ and $KL_{p,c}$ are the upper and lower confidence coefficients at the specified values of p and c. Values of $KU_{p,c}$ and $KL_{p,c}$ for the normal distribution are given in Table 4-18 for the commonly used confidence levels of 0.05 and 0.95. Bulletin 17B, from which Table 4-18 was abstracted, contains a more extensive table covering other confidence levels.

Confidence limits defined in this manner and with the values of Table 4-18 are called one-sided because each defines the limit on just one side of the frequency curve; for 95 percent confidence only one of the values should be computed. The one-sided limits can be combined to form a two-sided confidence interval such that the combination of 95 percent and 5 percent confidence limits define a two-sided 90 percent confidence interval. Practically, this means that at a specified exceedence probability or return period, there is a 5 percent chance the flow will exceed the upper confidence limit and a 5 percent chance the flow will be less than the lower confidence limit. Stated another way, it can be expected that 90 percent of the time, the specified frequency flow will fall within the two confidence limits.

When the skew is non-zero, Bulletin 17B gives the following approximate equations for estimating values of $KU_{p,c}$ and $KL_{p,c}$ in terms of the value of $K_{G,p}$ for the given skew and exceedence probability:

$$K^{U}_{P,C} = \frac{K_{G,P} + (K^2_{G,P} - ab)^{0.5}}{a} \qquad \text{4-42a}$$

and

$$K^{L}_{P,C} = \frac{K_{G,P} - (K^2_{G,P} - ab)^{0.5}}{a} \qquad \text{4-42b}$$

where

$$a = 1 - \frac{Z_c^2}{2(n-1)} \qquad \text{4-42c}$$

$$b = K^2_{G,P} - \frac{Z_c^2}{n} \qquad \text{4-42d}$$

and where Z_c is the standard normal deviate (zero-skew Pearson Type III deviate) with exceedence probability of (1-c).

Confidence intervals were computed for the Medina River flood series using the Bulletin 17B procedures for both the log-normal and the LP3 distributions. The weighted skew of 0.1 was used with the LP3 analysis. The computations for the confidence intervals are given in Table 4-19 (log-normal) and Table 4-20 (LP3). The confidence intervals for the log-normal and log-Pearson Type III are shown in Figure 4-13 and Figure 4-15, respectively.

It appears that a log-Pearson III would be the most acceptable distribution for the Medina River data. The actual data follow the distribution very well, and all the data fall within the confidence intervals. Based on this analysis, the log-Pearson Type III would be the preferred standard distribution with the log-normal also acceptable. The normal

and Gumbel distributions are unsatisfactory for this particular set of data.

Table 4-18. Confidence Limit Deviate Values for Normal and Log-Normal Distributions (from Bulletin 17B)

Confidence Level	Systematic Record n	Exceedence Probability								
		0.002	0.010	0.020	0.040	0.100	0.200	0.500	0.800	0.990
0.05	10	4.862	3.981	3.549	3.075	2.355	1.702	0.580	-0.317	-1.563
	15	4.304	3.520	3.136	2.713	2.068	1.482	0.455	-0.406	-1.677
	20	4.033	3.295	2.934	2.534	1.926	1.370	0.387	-0.460	-1.749
	25	3.868	3.158	2.809	2.425	1.838	1.301	0.342	-0.497	-1.801
	30	3.755	3.064	2.724	2.350	1.777	1.252	0.310	-0.525	-1.840
	40	3.608	2.941	2.613	2.251	1.697	1.188	0.266	-0.556	-1.896
	50	3.515	2.862	2.542	2.188	1.646	1.146	0.237	-0.592	-1.936
	60	3.448	2.807	2.492	2.143	1.609	1.116	0.216	-0.612	-1.966
	70	3.399	2.765	2.454	2.110	1.581	1.093	0.199	-0.629	-1.990
	80	3.360	2.733	2.425	2.083	1.559	1.076	0.186	-0.642	-2.010
	90	3.328	2.706	2.400	2.062	1.542	1.061	0.175	-0.652	-2.026
	100	3.301	2.684	2.380	2.044	1.527	1.049	0.166	-0.662	-2.040
0.95	10	1.989	1.563	1.348	1.104	0.712	0.317	-0.580	-1.702	-3.981
	15	2.121	1.677	1.454	1.203	0.802	0.406	-0.455	-1.482	-3.520
	20	2.204	1.749	1.522	1.266	0.858	0.460	-0.387	-1.370	-3.295
	25	2.264	1.801	1.569	1.309	0.898	0.497	-0.342	-1.301	-3.158
	30	2.310	1.840	1.605	1.342	0.928	0.525	-0.310	-1.252	-3.064
	40	2.375	1.896	1.657	1.391	0.970	0.565	-0.266	-1.188	-2.941
	50	2.421	1.936	1.694	1.424	1.000	0.592	-0.237	-1.146	-2.862
	60	2.456	1.966	1.722	1.450	1.022	0.612	-0.216	-1.116	-2.807
	70	2.484	1.990	1.745	1.470	1.040	0.629	-0.199	-1.093	-2.765
	80	2.507	2.010	1.762	1.487	1.054	0.642	-0.186	-1.076	-2.733
	90	2.526	2.026	1.778	1.500	1.066	0.652	-0.175	-1.061	-2.706
	100	2.542	2.040	1.791	1.512	1.077	0.662	-0.166	-1.049	-2.684

Table 4-19. Computation of One-sided, 95 Percent Confidence Interval for the Log-Normal Analysis of the Medina River Annual Maximum Series

(1) Return period (yrs)	(2) Exceedence probability	(3) K^u	(4) U	(5) Q^u (m^3/s)	(6) z	(7) 10^z (m^3/s)
2	0.5	0.2573	2.1926	155.8	0.0	123.4
5	0.2	1.1754	2.5544	358.4	0.8416	264.8
10	0.1	1.6817	2.7539	567.5	1.2816	394.7
25	0.04	2.2321	2.9708	935.1	1.7507	604.1
50	0.02	2.5917	3.1126	1295.9	2.0538	795.4
100	0.01	2.9173	3.2409	1741.3	2.3264	1018.6
500	0.002	3.5801	3.5021	3177.5	2.8782	1680.6

(3) interpolated from Table 9-1 of Bulletin 17B for a record length of 43 years

(4) $U = \bar{Y}_L + S_L K_U = 2.0912 + 0.39409 K_U$

(5) $X_U = 10^U$ (from Equation 4-35)

(6) from Table 4-8

Go to Chapter 4, Part III

Chapter 4 : HDS 2

Frequency Analysis of Gaged Data
Part III

Go to Chapter 5

4.3.6 Other Data Considerations in Frequency Analysis

In the course of performing frequency analyses for various watersheds, the designer will undoubtedly encounter situations where further adjustments to the data are indicated. Additional analysis may be necessary due to outliers, inclusion of historical data, incomplete records or years with zero flow, and mixed populations. Some of the more common methods of analysis are discussed in the following paragraphs.

4.3.6.1 Outliers

Outliers, which may be found at either or both ends of a frequency distribution, are measured values that occur, but appear to be from a longer sample or different population. This is reflected when one or more data points do not follow the trend of the remaining data.

Bulletin 17B presents criteria based on a one-sided test to detect outliers at a 10 percent significance level. If the station skew is greater than 0.4, tests are applied for high outliers first; and if less than -0.4, low outliers are considered first. If the station skew is between ± 0.4, both high and low outliers are tested before any data are eliminated. The detection of high and low outliers is obtained with the following equations, respectively:

$$Y_L = \bar{Y} + K_N S_y \qquad 4\text{-}43$$

and

$$Y_L = \bar{Y} - K_N S_y \qquad 4\text{-}44$$

where

Y_L is the log of the high or low outlier limit

$\bar{Y}$ is the mean of the log of the sample flows

S_y is the standard deviation of the sample

K_N is the critical deviate taken from Table 4-21.

Table 4-20. Computation of One-sided, 95 Percent Confidence Interval for the LP3 Analysis of the Medina River Annual Maximum Series with Weighted Skew

(1) Return period yrs	(2) Exceedence probability	(3) K	(4) b	(5) K^U	(6) U	(7) Q_U (m^3/s)	(8) Q (m^3/s)
2	0.5	-0.01662	-0.07955	0.23670	2.1845	152.9	121.5
5	0.2	0.83639	0.77346	1.17049	2.5525	356.8	263.5
10	0.1	1.29178	1.22885	1.66562	2.7476	559.2	398.4
25	0.04	1.78462	1.72169	2.12870	2.9301	851.3	623.0
50	0.02	2.10697	2.04404	2.54791	3.0953	1245.4	834.7
100	0.01	2.39961	2.33668	2.86362	3.2197	1658.5	1088.6
500	0.002	2.99978	2.93685	3.50976	3.4744	2981.0	1876.7

(3) from Appendix 3 of Bulletin 17B for skew G = 0.1

(4) from Equation 4-42d

$$b = K^2 - \frac{z_c^2}{n} = K^2 - \frac{(1.645)^2}{43} = K^2 - 0.06293$$

(5) from Equation 4-42a

$$K^U = \frac{K + (K^2 - ab)^{0.5}}{a} = \frac{K + (K^2 - 0.96779\,b)^{0.5}}{9.96779}$$

(6) from Equation 4-40

$$U = \overline{Y_L} + S_L K^U = 2.0912 + 0.39409\,K^U$$

(7) from Equation 4-35

$$X_U = 10^U$$

Table 4-21. Outlier Test Deviates (K_N) at 10 Percent Significance Level (from Bulletin 17B)

Sample size	K_N value	Sample size	K_N value	Sample size	K_N value	Sample size	K_N value
10	2.036	45	2.727	80	2.940	115	3.064
11	2.088	46	2.736	81	2.945	116	3.067
12	2.134	47	2.744	82	2.949	117	3.070
13	2.165	48	2.753	83	2.953	118	3.073
14	2.213	49	2.760	84	2.957	119	3.075
15	2.247	50	2.768	85	2.961	120	3.078
16	2.279	51	2.775	86	2.966	121	3.081
17	2.309	52	2.783	87	2.970	122	3.083
18	2.335	53	2.790	88	2.973	123	3.086
19	2.361	54	2.798	89	2.977	124	3.089
20	2.385	55	2.804	90	2.989	125	3.092
21	2.408	56	2.811	91	2.984	126	3.095
22	2.429	57	2.818	92	2.889	127	3.097
23	2.448	58	2.824	93	2.993	128	3.100
24	2.467	59	2.831	94	2.996	129	3.102
25	2.487	60	2.837	95	3.000	130	3.104
26	2.502	61	2.842	96	3.003	131	3.107
27	2.510	62	2.849	97	3.006	132	3.109
28	2.534	63	2.854	98	3.011	133	3.112
29	2.549	64	2.860	99	3.014	134	3.114
30	2.563	65	2.866	100	3.017	135	3.116
31	2.577	66	2.871	101	3.021	136	3.119
32	2.591	67	2.877	102	3.024	137	3.122
33	2.604	68	2.883	103	3.027	138	3.124
34	2.616	69	2.888	104	3.030	139	3.126
35	2.628	70	2.893	105	3.033	140	3.129
36	2.639	71	2.897	106	3.037	141	3.131
37	2.650	72	2.903	107	3.040	142	3.133
38	2.661	73	2.908	108	3.043	143	3.135
39	2.671	74	2.912	109	3.046	144	3.138

40	2.682	75	2.917	110	3.049	145	3.140
41	2.692	76	2.922	111	3.052	146	3.142
42	2.700	77	2.927	112	3.055	147	3.144
43	2.710	78	2.931	113	3.058	148	3.146
44	2.720	79	2.935	114	3.061	149	3.148

If the sample is found to contain high outliers, the peak flows should be checked against historical data and data from nearby stations. Bulletin 17B recommends that high outliers be adjusted for historical information or retained in the sample as a systematic peak. The high outlier should not be discarded unless the peak flow is shown to be seriously in error. If a high outlier is adjusted based on historical data, the mean and standard deviation of the log distribution should be recomputed for the adjusted data before testing for low outliers.

To test for low outliers, the low outlier threshold Y_L of Equation 4-44 is computed. The corresponding discharge $X_L = 10^{Y_L}$ is then computed. If any discharges in the flood series are less than X_L, then they are considered to be low outliers and should be deleted from the sample. The moments should be recomputed and the conditional probability adjustment of Section 9.1 applied.

Example 4-10

To illustrate this criteria for outlier detection, Equation 4-43 and Equation 4-44 are applied to the 43-year record for the Medina River, which has a log mean of 2.0912 and a log standard deviation of 0.3941. From Table 4-21, K_N = 2.710. Testing first for high outliers

$$Y_L = 2.0912 + 2.710(0.3941) = 3.1592$$

and

$$X_L = 10^{3.1592} = 1443 \ m^3/s$$

No flows in the sample exceed this amount, so there are no high outliers.

Now testing for low outliers, Equation 4-44 gives

$$Y_L = 2.0912 - 2.710(0.3941) = 1.0232$$

and

$$X_L = 10^{1.0232} = 11 \ m^3/s$$

There are no flows in the Medina River sample that are less than this critical value. Therefore, the entire sample should be used in the log-Pearson III analysis.

4.3.6.2 Historical Data

When reliable information indicates that one or more large floods occurred outside the period of record, the frequency analysis should be adjusted to account for these events. Although estimates of unrecorded historical flood discharges may be inaccurate, they should be incorporated into the sample because the error in estimating the flow is small in relation to the random variability in the peak flows from year to year. If, however, there is evidence these floods resulted under different watershed conditions or from situations that differ from the sample, the large floods should be adjusted to reflect present watershed conditions.

Bulletin 17B provides methods to adjust for historical data based on the assumption that "the data from the systematic (station) record is representative of the intervening period between the systematic and historic record lengths." Two sets of equations for this adjustment are given in Bulletin 17B. The first is applied directly to the log-transformed station data including the historical events. The floods are reordered, assigning the largest historic flood a rank of one. The order number is then weighted giving a weight of 1.00 to the historic event, and weighting the order of the station data by a value determined from the equation:

$$W = \frac{H - Z}{n + L} \qquad 4\text{-}45$$

where

W is the weighting factor
H is the length of the historic period of years
Z is the number of historical events included in the analysis
L is the number of low outliers excluded from the analysis.

The properties of the historically extended sample are then computed according to the equations:

$$\overline{Q}_L' = \frac{W \Sigma Q_L + \Sigma Q_{L,Z}}{H - WL} \qquad 4\text{-}46$$

$$(S_L')^2 = \frac{W \Sigma (Q_L - Q_L')^2 + \Sigma (Q_{L,Z} - \overline{Q}_L')^2}{H - WL - 1} \qquad 4\text{-}47$$

and

$$G_L' = \frac{H - WL}{(H - WL - 1)(H - WL - 2)} \left[\frac{W \Sigma (Q_L - \overline{Q}_L')^3 + \Sigma (Q_{L,Z} - \overline{Q}_L')^3}{(S_L')^3} \right] \qquad 4\text{-}48$$

where:

$\overline{Q}_L$ ' is the historically adjusted mean log transform of the flows
Q_L is the log transform of the flows contained in the sample record
$Q_{L,Z}$ is the log of the historic peak flow
S_L' is the historically adjusted standard deviation
G_L' is the historically adjusted skew coefficient.
All other values are as previously defined.

In the case where the sample properties were previously computed such as were done for the Medina River, Bulletin 17B gives the following adjustments that can be applied directly:

$$\overline{Q}_L' = \frac{Wn\overline{Q}_L + \Sigma Q_{L,Z}}{H - WL} \qquad 4\text{-}49$$

$$(S_L')^2 = \frac{W(n - 1)\ S_L^2 + Wn(\overline{Q}_L - \overline{Q}_L')^2 + \Sigma (Q_{L,Z} - \overline{Q}_L')^2}{H - WL - 1} \qquad 4\text{-}50$$

$$G'_L = \frac{H - WL}{(H - WL - 1)(H - WL - 2)(S'_L)^3} \bullet$$

$$\left[\frac{W(n-1)(n-2)S_L^3 G_L}{n} + 3W(n-1)(\overline{Q}_L - \overline{Q}'_L)S_L^2 + Wn(\overline{Q}_L - \overline{Q}'_L)^3 + \sum(Q_{LZ} - \overline{Q}'_L)^3\right] \quad 4\text{-}51$$

Once the adjusted statistical parameters are determined, the log-Pearson III distribution is determined by Equation 4-27 using the Weibull plotting position formula:

$$P = \frac{m'}{H + 1} \quad 4\text{-}52$$

where m' is the adjusted order number of the floods including historical events, where

m' = m	for $1 \le m \le Z$
m' = Wm - (W - 1)(Z + 0.5)	for $(Z + 1) \le m \le (Z + nL)$

Detailed examples illustrating the computations for the historic adjustment are contained in Bulletin 17B and the designer should consult this reference for further information.

4.3.6.3 Incomplete Records and Zero Flows

Streamflow records are often interrupted for a variety of reasons. Gages may be removed for some period of time, there may be periods of zero flow which are common in the arid regions of the United States, and there may be periods when a gage is inoperative either because the flow is too low to record or it is too large and causes a gage malfunction.

If the break in the record is not flood related, such as the removal of a gage, no special adjustments are needed and the segments of the interrupted record can be combined together to produce a record equal to the sum of the length of the segments. When a gage malfunctions during a flood, it is usually possible to estimate the peak discharge from highwater marks or slope-area calculations. The estimate is made a part of the record, and a frequency analysis performed without further adjustment.

Zero flows or flows that are too low to be recorded present more of a problem since in the log transform, these flows produce undefined values. In this case, Bulletin 17B presents an adjustment based on conditional probability that is applicable if not more than 25 percent of the sample is eliminated.

The adjustment for zero flows also is applied only after all other data adjustments have been made. The adjustment is made by first calculating the relative frequency, P_a, that the annual peak will exceed the level below which flows are zero, or not considered (the truncation level):

$$P_a = \frac{M}{n} \quad 4\text{-}53$$

where

M is the number of flows above the truncated level
n is the total period of record.

The exceedence probabilities, P, of selected points on the frequency curve are recomputed as a conditional probability as follows:

$$P = P_a * P_d \quad 4\text{-}54$$

where P_d is the selected probability.

$$\overline{Q}_s = \log(Q_{0.50}) - K_{0.50}(S_s) \qquad 4\text{-}55$$

Since the frequency curve adjusted by Equation 4-54 has unknown statistics, its properties, synthetic values, are computed by the equations:

$$S_s = \frac{\log(Q_{0.01}/Q_{0.50})}{K_{0.01} - K_{0.50}} \qquad 4\text{-}56$$

and

$$G_s = -2.50 + 3.12\left[\frac{\log(Q_{0.01}/Q_{0.10})}{\log(Q_{0.10}/Q_{0.50})}\right] \qquad 4\text{-}57$$

where:

$\overline{Q}_s$, S_s, and G_s are the mean, standard deviation, and skew of the synthetic frequency curve, $Q_{0.01}$, $Q_{0.10}$ and $Q_{0.50}$ are discharges with exceedence probabilities of 0.01, 0.10 and 0.50, respectively,$K_{0.01}$ and $K_{0.50}$ are the log-Pearson III deviates for exceedence probabilities of 0.01 and 0.50, respectively. The values of $Q_{0.01}$, $Q_{0.10}$ and $Q_{0.50}$ must usually be interpolated since probabilities computed with Equation 4-53 are not normally those needed to compute the properties of the synthetic or truncated distribution.

The log-Pearson III distribution can then be computed in the conventional manner using the synthetic statistical properties. Bulletin 17B recommends the distribution be compared with the observed flows since data adjusted for conditional probability may not follow a log-Pearson III distribution.

A more complete discussion of zero-flow-year adjustments is given in Section 9.1.

4.3.6.4 Mixed Populations

In some areas of the United States, floods are caused by combinations of events, e.g., rainfall and snowmelt in mountainous areas or rainfall and hurricane events along the Gulf and Atlantic coasts. Records from such combined events are said to be mixed populations. These records are often characterized by very large skew coefficients and when plotted suggest that two different distributions might be applicable.

Such records should be divided into two separate records according to their respective causes, with each record analyzed separately by an appropriate frequency distribution. The two separate frequency curves can then be combined through the concept of the addition of the probabilities of two events as follows:

$$Pr\left(Q \text{ or } Q_m\right) = Pr(Q) + Pr(Q_m) - [Pr(Q)Pr(Q_m)] \qquad 4\text{-}58$$

4.3.6.5 Two-Station Comparison

The objective of this method is to improve the mean and standard deviation of the logarithms at a short-record station (Y) using the statistics from a nearby long-record station (X). The method is from Appendix 7 of Bulletin 17B. The steps of the procedure

depend on the nature of the records. Specifically, there are two cases:

1. The entire short record occurred during the duration of the long-record station, and
2. Only part of the short record occurred during the duration of the long-record station.

The following notation applies to the procedure:

N_x = record length at long-record station
N_1 = number of years when flows were concurrently observed at X and Y
N_2 = number of years when flows were observed at the long-record station but not observed at the short-record station
N_3 = record length at short-record station
S_y = Standard deviation of the logarithm of flows for the extended period at the short-record station
Sx_1 = Standard deviation of logarithm of flows at the long-record station during the concurrent period
Sx_2 = Standard deviation of logarithm of flows at the long-record station for the period when flows were not observed at the short-record station
Sy_1 = Standard deviation of the logarithm of flows at the short-record station for the concurrent period
Sy_3 = Standard deviation of logarithm of flows for the entire period at the short-record station
X_1 = Logarithms of flows for the long-record station during the concurrent period
$\bar{X}_1$ = Mean logarithm of flows at the long-record station for the concurrent period
$\bar{X}_2$ = Mean logarithm of flows at the long-record station for the period when flow records are not available at the short-record station
$\bar{X}_3$ = Mean logarithm of flows for the entire period at the long-record station
Y_1 = Logarithms of flows for the short-record station during the concurrent period
$\bar{Y}$ = Mean logarithm of flows for the extended period at the short-record station
$\bar{Y}_1$ = Mean logarithm of flows for the period of observed flow at the short-record station (concurrent period)
$\bar{Y}_3$ = Mean logarithm of flows for the entire period at the short-record station

Case 1 is where N_1 equals N_3. Case 2 is where N_3 is greater than N_1.

The following procedure is used:

Step 1a. Compute the regression coefficient, b:

$$b = \frac{\sum X_1 Y_1 - \sum X_1 \sum Y_1 / N_1}{\sum X_1^2 - (\sum X_1)^2 / N_1} \qquad 4\text{-}59$$

b. Compute the correlation coefficient, r:

$$r = b\frac{S_{x_1}}{S_{y_1}} \qquad 4\text{-}60$$

Step 2. If Case 1 applies, then go to step 4; however, if case 2 applies, then begin at step 3.

Step 3a. Compute the variance of the adjusted mean ($\overline{Y}$):

$$Var(\overline{Y}) = \frac{(S_{y_1})^2}{N_1}\left[1 - \frac{N_2}{N_1 + N_2}\left(r^2 - \frac{(1 - r^2)}{(N_1 - 3)}\right)\right] \qquad 4\text{-}61$$

b. Compute S_{y3}^2:

$$S_{y3}^2 = \frac{1}{N_3 - 1}\sum_{i=1}^{N_3}(Y_i - \overline{Y}_3)^2 \qquad 4\text{-}62$$

c. Compute the variance of the mean $_3$ of the entire record at the short-record station:

$$var(\overline{Y}_3) = \frac{(S_{y_1})^2}{N_3} \qquad 4\text{-}63$$

d. Compare Var($\overline{Y}$) and Var($\overline{Y}_3$). If Var($\overline{Y}$) < Var($\overline{Y}_3$), then go to step 4; otherwise, go to step 3e.

e. Compute $\overline{Y}_3$, which should be used as the best estimate of the mean:

$$\overline{Y}_3 = \frac{1}{N_3}\sum_{i=1}^{N_3} Y_i \qquad 4\text{-}64$$

f. go to step 5

Step 4a. Compute the critical correlation coefficient r_c:

$$r_c = \frac{1}{(N_1 - 2)^{0.5}} \qquad 4\text{-}65$$

b. If r > r_c, then adjust the mean:

$$\overline{Y} = \overline{Y}_1 + \frac{N_2}{N_1 + N_2}[b(\overline{X}_2 - \overline{X}_1)] \qquad 4\text{-}66a$$

or

$$\overline{Y} = \overline{Y}_1 + b(\overline{X}_3 - \overline{X}_1) \qquad 4\text{-}66b$$

and go to step 5

c. If r $\leq$ r $_c$, then use $\overline{Y}_1$ for Case 1 or $\overline{Y}_3$ for Case 2 and go to step 5

Step 5. If Case 1 applies, then go to step 7; however, if Case 2 applies, then begin at step 6

Step 6a. Compute the variance of the adjusted variance S_y^2 :

$$var(S_y^2) = \frac{2(S_{y,})^4}{N_1 - 1} + \frac{N_2(S_{y,})^4}{(N_1 + N_2 - 1)^2}[Ar^4 + Br^2 + C] \qquad 4\text{-}67$$

where

$$A = \frac{(N_2 + 2)(N_1 - 6)(N_1 - 8)}{(N_1 - 3)(N_1 - 5)} - \frac{8(N_1 - 4)}{(N_1 - 3)} - \frac{2N_2(N_1 - 4)^2}{(N_1 - 3)^2} + \frac{N_1N_2(N_1 - 4)^2}{(N_1 - 3)^2(N_1 - 2)} + \frac{4(N_1 - 4)}{(N_1 - 3)} \qquad 4\text{-}68a$$

$$B = \frac{6(N_2+2)(N_1-6)}{(N_1-3)(N_1-5)} + \frac{2(N_1^2-N_1-14)}{(N_1-3)} + \frac{2N_2(N_1-4)(N_1-5)}{(N_1-3)^2} - \frac{2(N_1-4)(N_1+3)}{(N_1-3)} - \frac{2N_1N_2(N_1-4)^2}{(N_1-3)^2(N_1-2)} \qquad 4\text{-}68b$$

$$C = \frac{2(N_1+1)}{N_1-3} + \frac{3(N_2+2)}{(N_1-3)(N_1-5)} - \frac{(N_1+1)(2N_1+N_2-2)}{N_1-1} + \frac{2N_2(N_1-4)}{(N_1-3)^2} + \frac{2(N_1-4)(N_1+1)}{(N_1-3)} + \frac{N_1N_2(N_1-4)^2}{(N_1-3)^2(N_1-2)} \qquad 4\text{-}68c$$

b. Compute the variance of the variance (S_{y3}^2) of the entire record at the short-record station:

$$Var(S_{y3}^2) = \frac{2(S_{y3}^2)^2}{N_3 - 1} \qquad 4\text{-}69$$

c. If $Var(S_{y3}^2) > Var(S_y^2)$, then go to step 7; otherwise, go to step 6d.

d. Use S_{y3} as the best estimate of the standard deviation.

e. Go to step 8.

Step 7a. Compute the critical correlation coefficient r_a:

$$r_a = \left[\frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A}\right]^{1/2} \qquad 4\text{-}70$$

where A, B, and C are defined in step 6a.

b. If $|r| > r_a$, then adjust the variance:

$$S_y^2 = \frac{1}{N_1 + N_2 - 1}\left[(N_1-1)S_{y1}^2 + (N_2-1)b^2S_{x2}^2 + \frac{N_2(N_1-4)(N_1-1)}{(N_1-3)(N_1-2)}(1-r^2)S_{y1}^2 + \frac{(N_1N_2)}{N_1+N_2}b^2(\overline{X}_2-\overline{X}_1)^2\right] \qquad 4\text{-}71$$

and go to step 8.

c. If $|r| < r_a$, then use S_{y1}^2 for Case 1 or S_{y3}^2 for Case 2 and go to step 8.

Step 8. The adjusted skew coefficient should be computed by weighting the generalized skew with the skew computed from the short-record station as described in Bulletin 17B.

Example 4-11

Table 4-22 contains flood series for two stations. Forty-seven years of record are available at the base station (1912-1958). Thirty years of record are available at the short-record station (1929-1958). The logarithms of the flows are also given in Table 4-22.

The statistics of logarithms are: $\bar{X}_1 = 2.7411$, $S_{X1} = 0.39791$, $\bar{Y}_1 = 2.1176$, $S_{Y1} = 0.30307$, $\bar{X}_T = 2.721$, $S_{xt} = 0.3573$, $\bar{X}_2 = 2.6849$, $S_{X2} = 0.2791$. The correlation coefficient for the concurrent period was computed from Equation 4-59 as 0.8293. Since all of the short-record length is within the concurrent period, the analysis is performed as an example of Case 1.

The variance of the adjusted variance is computed using Equation 4-61:

$$Var(\bar{Y}) = \frac{(0.30307)^2}{30-1}\left[1-\frac{17}{30+17}\left((0.8293)^2 - \frac{(1-(0.8293)^2)}{30-3}\right)\right] = 0.002393$$

The variance S_{y3}^2 equals S_{y1}^2, which is 0.09185. Since Var($\bar{Y}$) is less then S_{y3}^2, then it is worthwhile making the two-station adjustment of the mean. The critical correlation coefficient of Equation 4-65 is 0.189. Since the sample value based on the two stations is larger (0.8293 vs. 0.1890), the adjusted mean is computed from Equation 4-65:

$$\bar{Y} = 2.1176 + \left(\frac{17}{30+17}\right)(0.6316)(2.6849-2.7411) = 2.1048 \qquad 4\text{-}72$$

The variance of the adjusted variance is computed using Equation 4-66A:

$$\text{var}(S_y^2) = \frac{2(0.30307)^2}{30-1} + \frac{17(0.30307)^2}{(30+17-1)^2}\left[-3.6277(0.8293)^4 + 0.4406(0.8293)^2 + 0.01471\right]$$

$$= 0.005303$$

This should be compared (step 6c) with S_{y3}^2 (i.e., 0.09185). Since it is smaller, it is worthwhile making the two-station adjustment of the variance. The critical correlation coefficient is computed with Equation 4-69:

$$r_a = \left[\frac{-0.44056 \pm ((0.44056)^2 - 4(-3.6277)(0.01472))^{0.5}}{2(-3.6277)}\right] = 0.1488$$

Since r is greater than r_a, then the adjusted variance is computed using Equation 4-70 and equals 0.07957, which yields $S_y = 0.2821$. Thus, adjusted values for the period from 1912 to 1928 using a log mean of 2.1048 (Equation 4-72) and a log standard deviation 0.2821. A weighted skew can be used to obtain the log-Pearson deviates K.

Table 4-22. Data for Two-Station Adjustment

	Long-record station		Short-record station	
Year	Flow (m^3/s)	Log flow	Flow (m^3/s)	Log flow
1912	129.4	2.112		
1913	219.7	2.342		
1914	917.5	2.963		
1915	778.7	2.891		
1916	538.0	2.731		
1917	679.6	2.832		
1918	373.8	2.573		
1919	438.9	2.642		
1920	288.8	2.461		
1921	399.3	2.601		
1922	419.1	2.622		
1923	297.3	2.473		
1924	325.6	2.513		
1925	778.7	2.891		
1926	504.0	2.702		
1927	1027.9	3.012		
1928	1914.2	3.282		
1929	155.7	2.192	43.0	1.634
1930	722.1	2.859	169.9	2.230
1931	157.7	2.198	42.5	1.628
1932	282.6	2.451	154.0	2.188
1933	144.4	2.160	30.6	1.485
1934	314.3	2.497	74.5	1.872
1935	722.1	2.859	113.6	2.055
1936	1081.7	3.034	124.0	2.094
1937	224.3	2.351	93.7	1.972
1938	2633.5	3.421	651.3	2.814
1939	91.5	1.961	35.7	1.552
1940	1704.7	3.232	322.8	2.509
1941	858.0	2.933	345.5	2.538
1942	993.9	2.997	311.5	2.493
1943	1537.6	3.187	197.4	2.295
1944	239.6	2.379	91.2	1.960
1945	809.9	2.908	91.5	1.961
1946	623.0	2.794	175.0	2.243
1947	504.0	2.702	115.2	2.062
1948	470.1	2.672	207.3	2.317
1949	173.9	2.240	109.6	2.040
1950	506.9	2.705	125.4	2.098
1951	1421.5	3.153	109.6	2.040
1952	594.7	2.774	149.5	2.175
1953	1132.7	3.054	218.3	2.339
1954	648.5	2.812	139.0	2.143
1955	167.1	2.223	70.2	1.846
1956	2945.0	3.469	259.9	2.415

1957	926.0	2.967	173.9	2.240
1958	1112.9	3.046	194.8	2.290

4.3.7 Sequence of Flood Frequency Calculations

The above sections have discussed several standard frequency distributions and a variety of adjustments to test or improve on the predictions and/or to account for unusual variations in the data. In most cases, not all the adjustments are necessary, and generally only one or two may be indicated. Whether the adjustments are even made may well depend on the size of the project and the purpose for which the data may be used. For some of the adjustments, there is a preferred sequence of calculation. Some adjustments must be made before others can be made.

Unless there is compelling reasons not to use the log-Pearson Type III distribution, it should be used when making a flood frequency analysis. Bulletin 17B presents a flow chart outlining a path through the frequency calculations and adjustments. This outline forms the basis for many of the available log-Pearson Type III computer programs.

The SCS Handbook (1972) [47] also outlines a sequence for flood frequency analysis which is summarized as follows:

1. Obtain site information, the systematic station data, and historic information. This data should be examined for changes in watershed conditions, gage datum, flow regulation, etc. It is in this initial step that missing data should be estimated if indicated by the project.

2. Order the flood data, determine the plotting position, and plot the data on selected probability graph paper (usually log-probability). Examine the data trend to select the standard distribution that best describes the population from which the sample is taken. Use a mixed-population analysis if indicated by the data trend and the watershed information.

3. Compute the sample statistics and the frequency curve for the selected distribution. Plot the frequency curve with the station data to determine how well the flood data are distributed according to the selected distribution.

4. Check for high and low outliers. Adjust for historic data, retain or eliminate outliers, and recompute the frequency curve.

5. Adjust data for missing low flows and zero flows and recompute the frequency curve.

6. Check the resulting frequency curve for reliability.

4.3.8 Other Methods for Estimating Flood Frequency

The techniques of fitting an annual series of flood data by the standard frequency distributions described above are all samples of the application of the method of moments. Population moments are estimated from the sample moments with the mean taken as the first moment about the origin, the variance as the second moment about the mean, and the skew as the third moment about the mean.

Three other recognized methods are used to determine frequency curves. They include the method of maximum likelihood, the L-moments or probability weighted moments, and a graphical method. The method of maximum likelihood is a statistical technique based on the principle that the values of the statistical parameters of the sample are maximized so that the probability of obtaining an observed event is as high as possible. The method is somewhat more efficient for highly skewed distributions, if in fact efficient estimates of the statistical parameters exist. On the other hand, the

method is very complicated to use and its practical use in highway design is not justified in view of the wide acceptance and use of the method of moments for fitting data with standard distributions. The method of maximum likelihood is described in detail by Kite (1977) and appropriate tables are presented from which the standard distributions can be determined.

Graphical methods involve simply fitting a curve to the sample data by eye. Typically the data are transformed by plotting on probability or log-probability graph paper so that a straight line can be obtained. This procedure is the least efficient, but as noted in Sanders (1980) some improvement is obtained by ensuring that the maximum positive and negative deviations from the selected line are equal and that the maximum deviations are made as small as possible. This is, however, an expedient method by which highway designers can obtain a frequency distribution estimate.

4.3.9 Low-flow Frequency Analysis

While instantaneous maximum discharges are used for flood frequency analyses, hydrologists are frequently interested in low flows. Low-flow frequency analyses are needed as part of water-quality studies and the design of culverts where fish passage is a design criterion. For low-flow frequency analyses, it is common to specify both a return period and a flow duration. For example, a low-flow frequency curve may be computed for a 7-day duration. In this case, the 10-year event would be referred to as the 7-day, 10-year low flow.

A data record to make a low-flow analysis is compiled by identifying the lowest mean flow rate in each year of record for the given duration. For example, if the 21-day low-flow frequency curve is needed, then the record for each year is analyzed to find the 21-day period in which the mean flow is the lowest. A moving-average smoothing analysis with a 21-day smoothing interval could be used to identify this flow. For a record of N years, such an analysis will yield N low flows for the needed duration.

The computational procedure for making a low-flow frequency analysis is very similar to that for a flood frequency analysis. It is first necessary to specify the probability distribution. The log-normal distribution is most commonly used, although another distribution could be used.

To make a log-normal analysis, a logarithmic transform of each of the N low flows is made. The mean and standard deviation of the logarithms are computed. Up to this point, the analysis is the same as for an analysis of peak flood flows. However, for a low-flow analysis, the governing equation is as follows:

$$\log Y = \overline{Y_L} - zS_L \qquad \text{4-73}$$

in which $\overline{Y}_L$ and S_L are the logarithmic mean and standard deviation, respectively, and z is the standard normal deviate. Note that Equation 4-73 includes a minus sign rather than the plus sign of Equation 4-27. Thus, the low-flow frequency curve will have a negative slope rather than the positive slope that is typical of peak-flow frequency curves. Also, computed low flows for the less frequent events (e.g., the 100-year low flow) will be less than the mean. For example, if the logarithmic statistics for a 7-day low-flow record are $\overline{Q}_L = 1.1$ and $S_L = 0.2$, then the 7-day, 50-year low flow is:

$$\log Y = 1.1 - 2.054(0.2) = 0.6892$$
$$Q = 4.9\ m^3/s \qquad \text{4-74}$$

To plot the data points so they can be compared with the computed population curve, the low flows are ranked from smallest to largest (not largest to smallest as with a peak-flow analysis). The smallest flow is given a rank of 1 and the largest flow is given a rank of N. Then a plotting position formula (Equation 4-21) can be selcted to compute the probabilities. Each magnitude is plotted against the corresponding probability. The probability is plotted on the upper horizontal axis and is interpreted as the probability that the flow in any one time period will be less than the value on the

frequency curve. For the calculation provided above, there is a 2 percent chance that the 7-day mean flow will be less than 4.9 m^3/s in any one year.

4.4 Risk Assessment

A measured flood record is the result of rainfall events that are considered randomly distributed. As such, the same rainfall record will not repeat itself and so future floods will be different from past floods. However, if the watershed remains unchanged, future floods are expected to be from the same population as past floods and, thus, have the same characteristics. The variation of future floods from past floods is referred to as sampling uncertainty.

Even if the true or correct probability distribution and the correct parameter values to use in computing a flood frequency curve were known, there is no certainty about the occurrence of floods over the design life of an engineering structure. A culvert might be designed to pass the 10-year flood (i.e., the flood having an exceedence probability of 0.1), but over any period of 10 years, the capacity may be reached as many as 10 times or not at all. A coffer dam constructed to withstand up to the 50-year flood may be exceeded shortly after being constructed, even though the dam will only be in place for one year. These are chance occurrences that are independent of the lack of knowledge of the true probability distribution. That is, the risk would occur even if we knew the true population of floods. Such risk of failure, or design uncertainty, can be estimated using the concept of binomial risk.

4.4.1 Binomial Distribution

The binomial distribution is used to define probabilities of discrete events; it is applicable to random variables that satisfy the following four assumptions:

1. There are *n* occurrences, or trials, of the random variable.
2. The n trials are independent.
3. There are only two possible outcomes for each trial.
4. The probability of each outcome is constant from trial to trial.

The probabilities of occurrence of any random variable satisfying these four assumptions can be computed using the binomial distribution. For example, if the random variable is defined as the annual occurrence or nonoccurrence of a flood of a specified magnitude, then the binomial distribution is applicable. There are only two possible outcomes: the flood either occurs or does not occur. For the design life of a project of n years, there will be n possible occurrences and the n occurrences are independent of each other, i.e., flooding this year is independent of flooding in other years, and the probability remains constant from year to year.

Two outcomes, denoted as A and B, have the probability of A occurring equal to p and the probability of B occurring equal to (1 - p), which is denoted as q (i.e., q = 1 - p). If x is the number of occurrences of A, then B occurs (n - x) times in n trials. One possible sequence of x occurrences and A and n - x occurrences of B would be:

$$AAAA \bullet \bullet \bullet A\,BBBB \bullet \bullet \bullet B$$

Since the trials are independent, the probability of this sequence is the product of the probabilities of the n outcomes:

$$ppp \bullet \bullet \bullet p(1-p)(1-p) \bullet \bullet \bullet (1-p)$$

which is equal to

$$p^x(1-p)^{n-x} = p^x q^{n-x}$$

There are many other possible sequences x occurrences of A and n - x occurrences of B, e.g.,

$$AAA \bullet \bullet \bullet A\ BA\ BBB \bullet \bullet \bullet B$$

It would be easy to show that the probability of this sequence occurring is also given by Equation 4-74. In fact, any sequence involving x occurrences of A and (n - x) occurrences of B would have the probability given by Equation 4-74. Thus it is only necessary to determine how many different sequences of x occurrences of A and (n - x) occurrences of B are possible. It can be shown that the number of occurrences is:

$$\frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!} \qquad 4\text{-}75$$

where n! is read "n factorial" and equals

$$n! = n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots(2)(1)$$

Computational, the value of Equation 4-75 can be found from

$$\frac{n(n-1)\bullet\ \bullet\ \bullet(n-x+1)}{x!}$$

The quantity given by Equation 4-75 is computed so frequently that it is often abbreviated by $\binom{n}{x}$ and called the binomial coefficient. It represents the number of ways that sequences involving events A and B occur with x occurrences of A and (n -x) occurrences of B. Combining Equation 4-74 and Equation 4-75 gives the probability of getting exactly x occurrences of A in n trials, given the probability of event A occurring on any trial is p;

$$b(x;n,p) = \binom{n}{x} p^x(1-p)^{n-x} \quad for\ x = 0,1,2,\ldots,n \qquad 4\text{-}76$$

This is a binomial probability, and the probabilities defined by Equation 4-76 represent the distribution of binomial probabilities. It is denoted as b(x; n, p), which is read "the probability of getting exactly x occurrences of a random variable in n trials when the probability of the event occurring on any one trial is p."

For example, if n equals 4 and x equals 2, Equation 4-75 would suggest six possible sequences:

$$\frac{4!}{2!(4\ \ 2)!} = \frac{4(3)(2)(1)}{2(1)(2)(1)} = 6 \qquad 4\text{-}77$$

The six possible sequences are (AABB), (ABBA), (ABAB), (BAAB), (BABA), and (BBAA). Thus if the probability of A occurring on any one trial is 0.3, then the probability of exactly two occurrences in four trials is:

$$b(2;\ 4,\ 0.3) = \binom{4}{2}(0.3)^2(1-0.3)^{4-2} = 0.2646$$

Similarly, if p equals 0.5, the probability of getting exactly two occurrences of event A would be

$$b(2;\ 4,\ 0.5) = \binom{4}{2}(0.5)^2(1-0.5)^{4-2} = 0.375$$

It is easy to show that for four trials there is only one way of getting either zero or four occurrences of A, there are four ways of getting either one or three occurrences of A, and there are six ways of getting two occurrences of A. Thus with a total of 16 possible outcomes, the value given by Equation 4-77 for the number of ways of getting two occurrences divided by the total of 16 possible outcomes supports the computed probability of 0.375.

Example 4-12

A coffer dam is to be built on a river bank so that a bridge pier can be built. The dam is designed to prevent flow from the river from interfering with the construction of the pier. The cost of the dam is related to the height of the dam; as the height increases, the cost increases. But as the height is increased, the potential for flood damage decreases. The level of flow in the stream varies weekly and can be considered as a random variable. However, the design engineer is interested only in two states, the overtopping of the dam during a one-workweek period or the non-overtopping. If construction of the pier is to require 2 years for completion, the time period consists of 104 independent "trials." If the probability of the flood that would cause overtopping remains constant (p), the problem satisfies the four assumptions required to use the binomial distribution for computing probabilities.

If x is defined as an occurrence of overtopping and the height of the dam is such that the probability of overtopping during any 1-week period is 0.05, then for a 104-week period (n = 104), the probability that the dam will not be overtopped (x = 0) is computed using Equation 4-76:

$$p(no\ \ overtopping) = b(0;104,0.05) = \binom{104}{0}(0.05)^0(0.95)^{104} = 0.0048$$

The probability of exactly one overtopping is

$$b(1;104,0.05) = \binom{104}{1}(0.05)^1(0.95)^{103} = 0.0264$$

Thus the probability of more than one overtopping is

$$1-b(0;104,0.05)-b(1;104,0.05) = 0.9688$$

The probability of the dam not being overtopped can be increased by increasing the height of the dam. If the height of the dam is increased so that the probability of overtopping in a 1-week period is decreased to 0.02, the probability of no overtoppings increases to

$$(no\ \ overtopping) = b(0;104,0.02) = \binom{104}{0}(0.02)^0(0.98)^{104} = 0.1223$$

Thus the probability of no overtopping during the 104-week period increased 25 times when the probability of overtopping during one week was decreased from 0.05 to 0.02.

4.4.2 Flood Risk

The probability of nonexceedence of Q_1 given in Equation 4-4 can now be written in terms of the return period as:

$$P_r(\text{not } Q_1) = 1 - P_r(Q_1) = 1 - \frac{1}{T_r} \qquad \text{4-78}$$

By expanding Equation 4-6, the probability that Q_1 will not be exceeded for n successive years is given by:

$$P_r(\text{not } Q_1)\, P_r(\text{not } Q_1) \bullet \bullet \bullet P_r(\text{not } Q_1) = [P_r(\text{not } Q_1)]^n = (1 - \frac{1}{T_r})^n \qquad \text{4-79}$$

Risk, R, is defined as the probability that Q_1 will be exceeded at least once in n years:

$$R = 1 - [P_r(\text{not } Q_1)]^n = 1 - (1 \ \frac{1}{T_r})^n \qquad \text{4-80}$$

Equation 4-80 was used for the calculations of Table 4-23, which gives the risk of failure as a function of the project design life, n, and the design return period, T_r.

Example 4-13

The use of Equation 4-80 or Table 4-23 is illustrated by the following example. What is the risk that the design flood will be equaled or exceeded in the first two years on a frontage road culvert designed for a 10-year flood? From Equation 4-80, the risk is calculated as:

$$R = 1 - (1 - \frac{1}{T_r})^n = 1 - (1 - \frac{1}{10})^2 = 0.19$$

In other words, there is about a 20 percent chance that this structure will be subjected to a 10-year flood in the first two years of its life.

Table 4-23. Risk of Failure (R) as a Function of Project Life (n) and Return Period (T_r)

	Return period (T_r)					
n	2	5	10	25	50	100
1	0.500	0.200	0.100	0.040	0.020	0.010
3	0.875	0.488	0.271	0.115	0.059	0.030
5	0.969	0.672	0.410	0.185	0.096	0.049
10	0.999	0.893	0.651	0.335	0.183	0.096
20		0.988	0.878	0.558	0.332	0.182
50			0.995	0.870	0.636	0.395
100				0.983	0.867	0.634

Go to Chapter 5

Chapter 5 : HDS 2

Peak Flow Determination for Ungaged Sites

Go to Chapter 6, Part I

At many stream crossings of interest to the highway engineer, there may be insufficient stream gaging records, or often no records at all, available for making a flood frequency analysis, such as a log-Pearson III analysis. In these cases, data from nearby watersheds with comparable hydrologic and physiographic features must be utilized. Such procedures are often referred to as regional analyses and include regional regression equations and index-flood equations. For peak discharge estimates at ungaged locations, empirical methods such as the rational formula and the SCS Graphical method are widely used. If an engineer has an interest in the magnitude of measured maximum floodflows, peak discharge envelope curves can be used. The National Flood Frequency Program provides the means for computing a peak discharge for any place in the United States.

5.1 Regional Regression Equations

Regional regression equations are commonly used for estimating peak flows at ungaged sites or sites with insufficient data. Regional regression equations relate either the peak flow or some other flood characteristic at a specified return period to the physiographic, hydrologic, and meteorologic characteristics of the watershed.

5.1.1 Analyses Procedure

The typical multiple regression model utilized in regional flood studies uses the power model structure:

$$Y_T = aX_1^{b_1}X_2^{b_2}\bullet\bullet\bullet X_p^{b_p} \qquad 5\text{-}1$$

where

Y_t is the dependent variable
$X_1, X_2,..., X_p$ are independent variables
a is the intercept coefficient
$b_1, b_2,..., b_p$ are regression coefficients.

The dependent variable is usually the peak flow for a given return period T or some other property of the particular flood frequency, and the independent variables are selected to characterize the watershed and its meteorologic conditions.

The parameters a, $b_1, b_2,..., b_p$ are determined using a regression analysis. Regression analysis is described in detail by Sanders (1980), Riggs (1968), and McCuen (1993). The general procedure for making a regional regression analysis is as follows:

1. Obtain the annual maximum flood series for each of the gaged sites in the region.

2. Perform a separate flood frequency analysis (e.g., log-Pearson type III) on each of the flood series of step 1 and determine the peak discharges for selected return periods (e.g., the 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50, 100-, and 500-year discharges are commonly selected).

3. Determine the values of watershed and meteorological characteristics for each watershed for which a flood series was collected in step 1.

4. Form an (n x p) data matrix of all the data collected in step 3, where n is the number of watersheds of step 1 and p is the number of watershed characteristics obtained for step 3.

5. Form a one-dimensional vector with n peak discharges for the specific return period selected.

6. Regress the vector of n peak discharges of step 5 on the data matrix of step 4 to obtain the prediction equation.

If more than one return period is of interest, the procedure can be repeated for each return period, with a separate equation developed for each return period. In this case, it is also important to review closely the regression coefficients to ensure that they are rational and consistent across the various return periods. Because of sampling variation it is possible for the regression analyses to produce a set of coefficients that, under certain sets of values for the predictor variables, result in the computed 10-year discharge, for example, being greater than the computed 25-year discharge. In such cases, the irrational predictions can be eliminated by smoothing the coefficients. If the coefficients need to be smoothed, the goodness-of-fit statistics should be recomputed using the smoothed coefficients. The problem can usually be prevented by using the same predictor variables for all of the equations.

The most important watershed characteristic is usually the drainage area and almost all regression formulas include drainage area above the point of interest as an independent variable. The choice of the other watershed characteristics is much more varied and can include measurements of channel slope, length, and geometry, shape factors, watershed perimeter, aspect, elevation, basin fall, land use, and others. Meteorological characteristics that are often considered as independent variables include various rainfall parameters, snowmelt, evaporation, temperature, and wind.

As many independent variables as desired can be used in a regression analysis although it would be unlikely that more than one measure of any particular characteristic would be included. The statistical significance of each independent variable can be determined and those that are statistically insignificant at a specified level of significance, e.g., 5 percent, can be eliminated. In addition to statistical criteria, it is also important for all coefficients to be rational.

The specific predictor variables to be included in a regression equation are usually selected using a stepwise regression analysis (McCuen, 1989). While a 5 percent level of significance is sometimes used to make the decision, it is better to select only those variables that are easily obtained and necessary to provide both a reasonable level of accuracy and rational coefficients. When stepwise regression analysis is used to select variables for a set of equations for different return periods, the same independent variables should be used in all of the equations. In a few cases, this may cause some equations in the set to have less accuracy than would be possible, but it is usually necessary to ensure

consistency across the set of equations.

5.1.2 USGS Regression Equations

In a series of studies by the USGS, the Federal Highway Administration, and State Highway Departments, statewide regression equations have now been developed throughout the United States (see Section 5.5). The highway community has made a significant contribution to acquiring additional streamflow data through funding USGS stream gaging station studies throughout the country since the 1960's. Highway interests have supported these research endeavors with expenditures of $14 million. These equations permit peak flows to be estimated for return periods varying from 2 to 500 years. The published equations (Jennings et al., 1994) are included in the National Flood Frequency Program (see Section 5.5).

Typically, each state is divided into regions of similar hydrologic, meteorologic, and physiographic characteristics as determined by various hydrological and statistical measures. Using a combination of measured data and rainfall-runoff simulation models such as that of Dawdy et al. (1972) long-term records of peak annual flow were synthesized for each of several watersheds in a defined region. Each record was subjected to a log-Pearson Type III frequency analysis, adjusted as required for loss of variance due to modeling, and the peak flow for various frequencies determined.

Multiple regression was then used on the logarithmically transformed values of the variables to obtain regression equations of the form of Equation 5-1 for peak flows of selected frequencies. Only those independent variables that were statistically significant at a predetermined level of significance were retained in the final equations.

Example 5-1

To illustrate the use of regional regression equations for estimating peak flows, consider the following example.

It is desired to renovate a bridge at a highway crossing of the Seco Creek at D'Hanis, TX. The site is ungaged and the design return period is 25 years. The site lies in Region 5 as defined by Schroeder and Massey (1977). The equations have the following form:

$$Q_T = aA^{b_1}S^{b_2} \qquad 5\text{-}2$$

where

Q_T is the peak annual flow for the specified return periods in m^3/s
A is the drainage area contributing surface runoff above the site in km^2
S is the average slope of the streambed between points 10 and 85 percent of the distance along the main stream channel from the site to the watershed divide in m/km.

The coefficients of Equation 5-2 are given in Table 5-1. The range of application of the above equations was specified as:

$2.80 < \text{Drainage Area } (km^2) < 5042$

$1.734 < \text{Slope } (m/km) < 14.55$

By planimetering the drainage area above the site from a topographic map, the area A is found to be 545.5 km^2 and the channel slope between the 10 and 85 percent points is 2.833 m/km. Using Equation 5-2 and the coefficients of Table 5-1, the 25-year peak flow is:

$$Q_{25} = 6.1278\, A^{0.776}\, S^{0.554}$$
$$= 6.1278(545.5)^{0.776}\,(2.833)^{0.554}$$
$$= 1451\ m^3/s$$

Table 5-1. Example of Regression Equation*: $Q_T = aA^{b_1} S^{b_2}$

(1) Return period, T (years)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5) Standard error (%)
	Regression Coefficients			
	a	b_1	b_2	
2	0.3186	0.799	0.966	62.1
5	1.5957	0.776	0.706	46.6
10	3.1488	0.776	0.622	42.6
25	6.1278	0.776	0.554	41.3
50	8.9564	0.778	0.522	42.0
100	12.2842	0.782	0.497	44.1

*A = drainage area (km^2) and S = slope (m/km)
(5) Standard errors were computed using the logarithmic regression and are given as a percentage of the mean.

5.1.2.1 Assessing Prediction Accuracy

In most cases, regional regression equations are given with associated standard errors, which are indicators of how accurately the regression equation predicts the observed data used in their development. The standard error of estimate is a measure of the deviation of the observed data from the corresponding predicted values and is given by the basic equation:

$$S_e = \left[\frac{\Sigma(\hat{Q}_i - Q_i)^2}{n - q}\right]^{0.5} \qquad 5\text{-}3$$

where

Q_i is the observed value of the dependent variable (discharge)

$\hat{Q}_I$ is the corresponding value predicted by the regression equation

n is the number of watersheds used in developing the regression equation

q is the number of regression coefficients (i.e., a, b_1, . . . , b_p).

In a manner analogous to the variance, the standard error can be expressed as a percentage by dividing the standard error S_e by the mean value ($\overline{Q}_T$) of the dependent variable:

$$V_e = \frac{S_e}{\bar{Q}_T} * 100$$

where:

V_e is the coefficient of error variation.
V_e of Equation 5-4 has the form of the coefficient of variation of Equation 4-14.

The standard error of regression S_e has a very similar meaning to that of the standard deviation, Equation 4-13, for a normal distribution in that approximately 68 percent of the observed data should be contained within ±1 standard error of the regression line.

When S_e is computed for regional regression equations, it is usually computed using the logarithms of the flows. Thus, $\hat{Q}_I$ and Q_i of Equation 5-3 are logarithms of the corresponding flows. This is believed to be necessary because the errors (i.e., $\hat{Q}_I$ - Q_i) have a constant variance when expressed from the logarithms.

5.1.2.2 Comparison with Gaged Estimates

Because of the extensive use now being made of USGS regression equations, it is of interest to compare peak discharges estimated from these equations with results obtained from a formal flood frequency analysis as described in Chapter 4. A direct comparison cannot be made with the previously used Medina River data because of some storage and regulation upstream of the gage.

Since regression equations apply only to totally unregulated flow, Station 08179000, Medina River near Pipe Creek, Texas, has been selected for comparison. This gage has 43 years of record, drains an area of 1228 km^2, is totally unregulated, and has station and generalized skews of -0.005 and -0.234, respectively. The data were analyzed with a log-Pearson III distribution, and the 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year peak discharges estimated using the Bulletin 17B weighted skew option (G_L = -0.227). These values together with peak flows determined from a frequency curve through the systematic record are summarized in Table 5-2.

The Pipe Creek gage is located in Region 5 in Texas and the regression equations given for the Seco Creek example above are applicable. The watershed has an average slope of 3.07 m per km between 10 and 85 percent points along the main stream channel. The corresponding peak flows calculated from the appropriate regression equations are also summarized in Table 5-2.

The peak discharges estimated from the regression equations are all substantially higher than the comparable values determined from the log-Pearson III analysis, although all are within the Bulletin 17B, upper 95-percent confidence limits. Further review of the data at this station indicates

that a frequency curve constructed using the systematic record plots above the log Pearson III distribution curves at least over the range of frequencies considered in the above comparison. This is partially a result of a peak flow in 1978 in excess of 7958 m^3/s, which according to the log-Pearson III analysis is an event approaching the 500-year peak flow.

It has been suggested by some experienced hydrologists that regression equations may give better estimates of peak flows of various frequencies than formal statistical frequency analyses. They reason that regression equations more nearly reflect the potential or capacity of the watershed to experience a peak flow of given magnitude, whereas a frequency analysis is biased by what has been recorded at the gage. Some justification exists for this argument as there are many examples throughout the country of adjacent watersheds of comparable size and physiographic and hydrologic characteristics experiencing the same storm patterns but wherein only one has recorded major floods. This is obviously a function of where the storm occurs, but frequency analyses of gaged data from the different watersheds may give very different peak flows for the same frequencies. On the other hand, regression equations will give comparable flood magnitudes at the same frequencies for each watershed, all other factors being approximately equal.

This is not to suggest that regional regression equations should take precedence over frequency analysis especially when sufficient data are available. Regression equations, however, do serve as a basis for comparison of statistically determined peak flows of specified frequencies and provide for further evaluation of the results of a frequency analysis. They may be used to add credence to historical flood data or may indicate that historical records should be sought out and incorporated into the analysis. Regression equations can also provide insight into the treatment of outliers beyond the purely statistical methods discussed in Section 4.3.6.1. As demonstrated by the above discussion, comparison of the peak flows obtained by different methods may indicate the need to review data from other comparable watersheds within a region and the desirability of transposing or extending a given record using data from other gages.

Table 5-2. Comparison of Peak Flows from Log-Pearson Type III Distribution and USGS Regional Regression Equation

Peak Discharge (m^3/s)			
Return Period (yrs)	**Log Pearson III frequency**	**Systematic record**	**USGS regression equations**
10	1,208	1,424	1,763
25	1,950	2,521	2,846
50	2,632	3,645	4,070
100	3,424	5,078	5,581

5.1.2.3 Considerations in Application

Several points should be kept in mind when using regional regression equations. For the most part, the state regional equations are developed for

unregulated, natural, nonurbanized watersheds. They separate out mixed populations, i.e., rain produced floods from snowmelt floods or hurricane associated storms. The equations are regionalized so that it is incumbent on the user to carefully define the hydrologic region and to define the dependent and independent variables in the exact manner prescribed for each set of regional equations. The designer is also cautioned to apply these equations within or close to the range of independent variables utilized in the development of the equations.

Although not a serious problem, the designer should be alert to any discrepancies in results from regression equations when applied at regional boundaries and especially near state boundaries. Within-state regional boundaries generally define hydrologic regions with similar characteristics, and regression equations may not give comparable results near regional boundaries.

Hydrologic regions also may cross state boundaries, and regression equations for adjacent regions in different states can give substantially different peak flows for the same frequency. When working near within-state regional and state boundaries, regression equations for adjacent regions should be checked and any serious discrepancies reconciled.

Separate urban studies have been conducted in some metropolitan areas, and thus, they present more applicable regression equations than those discussed above. Urbanization is discussed in more detail in Chapter 8.

5.1.3 FHWA Regression Equations

In 1977, the Federal Highway Administration published a two-volume report by Fletcher et al. (1977) that presents nationwide regression equations for predicting runoff from small rural watersheds (<130 km^2). This method is not the equivalent of the USGS regression equations. While it was used rather widely at first, it is rarely used today. The procedure is similar in concept to that of Potter (1961). It was developed using frequency analyses of data in over 1000 small watersheds throughout the United States and Puerto Rico to relate peak flows to various hydrographic and physiographic characteristics. Three-, five-, and seven-parameter regression equations were developed for the 10-year peak runoff for each of 24 hydrophysiographic regions. Since the standard errors of estimate were found to be approximately the same for each regression equation option, the following discussion is limited to the three-parameter equations only.

If a drainage structure is to be designed to carry the probable maximum flood peak, $Q_{p(max)}$ in m^3/s, Fletcher et al. (1977) give the equation

$$Q_{p(max)} = 10^{[2.031 + 0.8389 \log A - 0.0325 (\log A)^2]} \qquad 5\text{-}5$$

where

log A is the base-10 logarithm of the drainage area in square kilometers
$Q_{p(max)}$ is the discharge in cubic meters per second.

If it is feasible to construct a very large drainage structure to handle this probable maximum flow, the hydrologic analysis is essentially complete. Similarly, if a minimum size drainage

structure is specified, and its carrying capacity is greater than $Q_{p(max)}$, no further analysis is required.

A more common problem in highway drainage is that the structure must be designed to handle a flow of specified frequency. This can be accomplished with the three-parameter FHWA regression equations. The basic form of these equations is:

$$\hat{q}_{10} = a\ A^{b_3}\ R^{b_2}\ E_c^{b_1} \qquad 5\text{-}6$$

where:

$\hat{Q}_{10}$ is the 10-year peak discharge in m^3/s
A is the drainage area in km^2
R is the isoerodent factor defined as the product of the mean annual rainfall kinetic energy and the maximum respective 30-minute annual maximum rainfall intensity
E_c is the difference in elevation measured along the main channel from the drainage structure site to the drainage basin boundary in meters
a, b_1, b_2, and b_3 are obtained from the regression analysis.

Values of the drainage area and elevation difference are readily determined from topographic maps and R is taken from individual state isoerodent maps given by Fletcher et al. (1977).

Two options are available to use the three-parameter regression equations. The first involves the application of an equation of the same form as Equation 5-6 for a specific hydrophysiographic zone. Twenty-four zones are defined covering the United States and Puerto Rico and each has its own regression equation for q_{10}. The second option involves the use of an all-zone equation developed from all of the data. The all-zone, three-parameter equation for the 10-year peak discharge, $q_{10(3AZ)}$, is:

$$\hat{q}_{10(3AZ)} = 0.02598\ A^{0.56172}\ R^{0.94356}\ E_c^{0.16887} \qquad 5\text{-}7$$

For each of the 24 hydrophysiographic zones, there is a correction equation presented to adjust Equation 5-7 for zonal bias. These correction equations have the form:

$$\hat{q}_{10} = a_1\ \hat{q}_{10(3AZ)}^{b_1} \qquad 5\text{-}8$$

where:

a_1 and b_1 are regression coefficients.

If the surface area of surface water storage is more than about 4 percent of the total drainage area, it is recommended that the value of q_{10} computed from an individual zone equation or the corrected all-zone equation be further adjusted with a storage-correction multiplier given with the equations.

Fletcher et al. (1977) presented the following equations from which a frequency curve can be drawn on any appropriate probability paper:

$$Q_{2.33} = 0.47329\ \tilde{q}_{10}^{1.00243} \quad (5\text{-}9)$$

$$q_{50} = 1.58666\ \tilde{q}_{10}^{1.02342} \quad (5\text{-}10)$$

$$q_{100} = 1.82393\ \tilde{q}_{10}^{1.02918} \quad (5\text{-}11)$$

where:

$Q_{2.33}$ is the mean annual peak flow taken at a return period of 2.33 years
Q_{50} and Q_{100} are the 50- and 100-year peak flows, respectively.

From this curve, the flow for any other selected design frequency can be determined.

The concept of risk can also be incorporated into the FHWA regression equations. Recall that risk is the probability that one or more floods will exceed the design discharge within the life of the project. Methods presented by Fletcher et al. (1977) permit the return period of the design flood to be adjusted according to the risk the designer can accept. The concept of the probable maximum peak flow is also useful because it represents the upper limit of flow that might be expected. It can, therefore, have application to situations where the consequences of failure are very large or unacceptable.

5.2 Index Flood Method

Other methods exist for determining peak flows for various exceedence frequencies using regional methods where no data are available. The USGS index-flood method is representative of this group.

5.2.1 Procedure for Analysis

The index-flood method of regional analysis described by Dalrymple (1960) was used extensively in the 1960's and early 1970's. This method utilizes statistical analyses of data at meteorologically and hydrologically similar gages to develop a flood frequency curve at an ungaged site. There are two parts to the index-flood method. The first consists of developing the basic dimensionless ratio of a specified frequency flow to the index flow (usually the mean annual flood) and the second involves developing the relation between the drainage basin characteristics (usually the drainage area) and the mean annual flood.

The following steps are used to develop a regional flood frequency curve by the index-flood method:

- Step 1. Tabulate annual peak floods for all gages within the hydrologically similar region.
- Step 2. Select the base period of record. This is usually taken as the longest period of record.
- Step 3. Estimate floods for missing years by correlation with other data.
- Step 4. Assign an order to all floods (actual and estimated) at each station, compute the plotting positions, and compute and plot frequency curves using the best standard

distribution fit for each gage.

Step 5. Determine the mean annual flood for each gage as the discharge with a return period of 2.33 years. This is a graphical mean, which is more stable than the arithmetic mean, and its value is not affected as much by the inclusion or exclusion of major floods. It also gives a greater weight to the median floods than to the extreme floods where sampling errors may be larger. In some cases, the 2- or 10-year flood is used as the index flood.

Step 6. Test the data for homogeneity. This is accomplished in the following manner:

a. For each gage, compute the ratio of the flood with a 10-year return period, Q_{10}, to the station mean, $Q_{2.33}$. (Both of these values are obtained from the frequency analysis.)

b. Compute the arithmetic average of the ratio $Q_{10}/Q_{2.33}$ for all the gages considered.

c. For each gage, compute $Q_{2.33}$ $(Q_{10}/Q_{2.33})_{avg}$ and the corresponding return period.

d. Plot the values of return period obtained in step c against the effective length of record, L_E, for each gage

e. Test for homogeneity by also plotting on this graph, envelope curves determined from Table 5-3, taken from Dalrymple (1960). This table gives the upper and lower limits, T_u and T_L, as a function of the effective length of record. (Table 5-3 applies only to homogeneity tests of the 10-year floods.) This homogeneity test is illustrated in Figure 5-1 on Gumbel probability paper. Return periods that fail this homogeneity test should be eliminated from the regional analysis.

Step 7. Using actual flood data, compute the ratio of each flood to the index flood, $Q_{2.33}$, for each record.

Step 8. Compute the median flood ratios of the stations retained in the regional analysis for each rank or order m, and compute the corresponding return period by the Weibull formula, $T_r = (n+1)/m$. (It is suggested that the median ratio be determined after eliminating the highest and lowest $Q/Q_{2.33}$ values for each ordered series of data.)

Step 9. Plot the median-flood ratio against the return period on probability paper.

Step 10. Plot the logarithm of the mean annual flood for each gage, $Q_{2.33}$ against the logarithm of the corresponding drainage area. This curve should be nearly a straight line.

Step 11. Determine the flood frequency curve for any stream site in the watershed as follows:

a. Determine the drainage area above the site.

b. From step 10, determine the value of $Q_{2.33}$.

c. For selected return periods, multiply the median-flood ratio in step 9 by the value of $Q_{2.33}$ from step 11b.

d. Plot the regional frequency curve.

Table 5-3. Upper and Lower Limit Coordinates of Envelope Curve for Homogeneity Test (Dalrymple, 1960)

Return Period Limits, T_r (yrs)		
Effective Length of Record, L_E (Yrs)	Upper Limit	Lower Limit
5	160	1.2
10	70	1.85
20	40	2.8
50	24	4.4
100	18	5.6

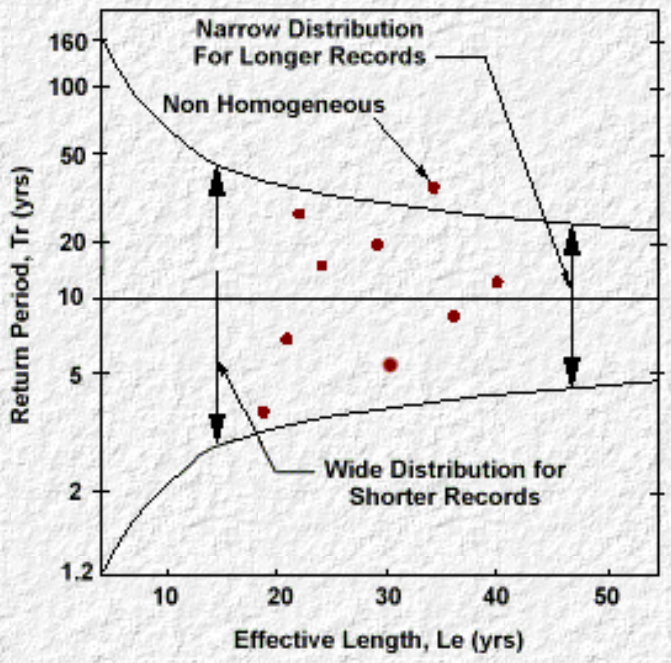


Figure 5-1. Hydrologic Homogeneity Test

5.2.2 Other Considerations

Example problems illustrating the index-flood method are contained in Dalrymple (1960), Sanders (1980), and numerous hydrology textbooks.

As pointed out by Benson (1962), the index-flood method has some limitations that affect its reliability. The most significant is that there may be large differences in the index or mean annual floods throughout a region. This can lead to considerable variations in the various flood ratios even for watersheds of comparable size. Another shortcoming of the method is that homogeneity is established at the 10-year level, whereas at the higher levels the test may not be sustained. Still another deficiency pointed out by Benson is that all sizes of drainage areas (except the very largest) are included in the index-flood regional analysis.

As discussed in Chapter 2, the larger the drainage area, the flatter the frequency curve will be. This effect is most noticeable at the higher return periods.

With the development of regional regression equations for peak-flow in most states, there is only limited application of the index-flood method today. It is used primarily as a check on other solution techniques and for those situations where other techniques are inapplicable or not available.

5.3 Peak-Discharge Equations for Ungaged Locations

5.3.1 Rational Formula

One of the most commonly used equations for the calculation of peak discharges from small areas is the rational formula. The rational formula is given as:

$$Q = \frac{CiA}{360} \qquad 5\text{-}12$$

where

Q is the peak flow in m^3/s
I is the rainfall intensity for the design storm in mm/h
A is the drainage area in hectares
C is a dimensionless runoff coefficient assumed to be a function of the cover of the watershed and often the frequency of the flood being estimated.
The quotient, 1/360, is a unit conversion that can be approximated as 0.00278

5.3.1.1 Assumptions

The assumptions in the rational formula are as follows:

1. The drainage area should be smaller than 80 hectares
2. The peak discharge occurs when all of the watershed is contributing.
3. A storm that has a duration equal to T_c produces the highest peak discharge for this frequency.
4. The rainfall intensity is uniform over a time duration equal to the time of concentration, T_c. The time of concentration is the time required for water to travel from the most remote point of the basin to the outlet or point of interest.
5. The frequency of the computed peak flow is equal to the frequency of the rainfall intensity. In other words, the 10-year rainfall intensity, I, is assumed to produce the 10-year peak discharge.

5.3.1.2 Estimating Input Requirements

The runoff coefficient, C, is a function of ground cover. Some tables of C provide for variation due to slope, soil, and the return period of the design discharge.

Actually, C is a volumetric coefficient that relates the peak discharge to the "theoretical peak" or 100 percent runoff, occurring when runoff matches the net rain rate. Hence C is also a function of infiltration and other hydrologic abstractions. Some typical values of C for the rational formula are given in Table 5-4. Should the basin contain varying amounts of different covers, a weighted runoff coefficient for the entire basin can be determined as:

$$Weighted\ C = \frac{\sum C_i A_i}{A} \qquad 5\text{-}13$$

where

C_i is the runoff coefficient for cover type I that covers area A_i, and A is the total area.

Table 5-4. Runoff Coefficients for Rational Formula (ASCE, 1960)[2]

Type of Drainage Area	Runoff Coefficient
Business:	
Downtown area	0.70-0.95
Neighborhood areas	0.50-0.70
Residential:	
Single-family areas	0.30-0.50
Multi-units, detached	0.40-0.60
Multi-units, attached	0.60-0.75
Suburban	0.25-0.40
Apartment dwelling areas	0.50-0.70
Industrial:	
Light areas	0.50-0.80
Heavy areas	0.60-0.90
Parks, cemeteries	0.10-0.25
Playgrounds	0.20-0.40
Railroad yard areas	0.20-0.40
Unimproved areas	0.10-0.30
Lawns:	
Sandy soil, flat, < 2%	0.05-0.10
Sandy soil, average, 2 to 7%	0.10-0.15
Sandy soil, steep, > 7%	0.15-0.20
Heavy soil, flat, < 2%	0.13-0.17
Heavy soil, average 2 to 7%	0.18-0.22
Heavy soil, steep, > 7%	0.25-0.35
Streets:	
Asphaltic	0.70-0.95
Concrete	0.80-0.95
Brick	0.70-0.85
Drives and walks	0.75-0.85

Roofs	0.75-0.95

Example 5-2

A flooding problem exists along a farm road near Memphis, Tennessee. A low-water crossing is to be replaced by a culvert installation to improve road safety during rainstorms. The drainage area above the crossing is 43.7 hectares. The return period of the design storm is to be 25 years as determined by local authorities. The engineer must determine the maximum discharge that the culvert must pass for the indicated design storm.

The current land use consists of 21.8 ha of parkland, 1.5 ha of commercial property that is 100 percent impervious, and 20.4 ha of single-family residential housing. The principal flow path includes 30 m of short grass at 2 percent slope, 300 m of grassed waterway at 2 percent slope, and 650 m of grassed waterway at 1 percent slope. The following steps are used to compute the peak discharge with the rational method:

Step 1. Compute a Weighted Runoff Coefficient: The tabular summary below uses runoff coefficients from Table 5-4. The average value is used for the parkland and the residential areas, but the highest value is used for the commercial property because it is completely impervious.

Description	C Value (Table 5-4)	Area (hectares)	C_iA_i
Park	0.20	21.8	4.36
Commercial (100% Impervious)	0.95	1.5	1.43
Single-Family	0.40	20.4	8.16
		43.7	13.95

Equation 5-13 is used to compute the weighted C:

$$Weighted\ \ C = \frac{\Sigma C_i A_i}{A} = \frac{13.95}{43.7} = 0.32 \qquad 5\text{-}14$$

Step 2. Intensity: The 25-year intensity is taken from an intensity-duration-frequency curve for Memphis. To obtain the intensity, the time of concentration, T_c, must first be estimated. In this example the velocity method for T_c is used to compute T_c:

Flow Path	Slope (%)	Length (m)	Velocity (m/s)
Overland(short grass)	2	90	0.30
Grassed Waterway	2	300	0.65
Grassed Waterway	1	650	0.46

The time of concentration is estimated as:

$$T_c = \Sigma\left(\frac{L}{V}\right) = \frac{90\ m}{0.3\ m/s} + \frac{300\ m}{0.65\ m/s} + \frac{650\ m}{0.46\ m/s}$$
$$= 2175\ s = 36.2\ min = 0.60\ h$$

The intensity is obtained from the IDF curve for the locality using a duration equal to the time of concentration:

$$i = 85\,mm/h$$

- **Step 3. Area (A):** Total area of drainage basin, A = 43.7 hectares

- **Step 4. Peak Discharge (Q):**

$$Q = \frac{1}{360}CIA = \frac{(0.32)(85)(43.7)}{360}$$

$$= 3.3m^3/s$$

5.3.2 SCS Graphical Peak Discharge Method

For many peak discharge estimation methods, the input includes variables to reflect the size of the contributing area, the amount of rainfall, the potential watershed storage, and the time-area distribution of the watershed. These are often translated into input variables such as the drainage area, the depth of rainfall, an index reflecting land use and soil type, and the time of concentration. The SCS Graphical peak discharge method is typical of many peak discharge methods that are based on input such as that described.

5.3.2.1 Runoff Depth Estimation

The volume of storm runoff can depend on a number of factors. Certainly, the volume of rainfall will be an important factor. For very large watersheds, the volume of runoff from one storm event may depend on rainfall that occurred during previous storm events. However, when using the design storm approach, the assumption of storm independence is quite common.

In addition to rainfall, other factors affect the volume of runoff. A common assumption in hydrologic modeling is that the rainfall available for runoff is separated into three parts: direct (or storm) runoff, initial abstraction, and losses. Factors that affect the split between losses and direct runoff include the volume of rainfall, land cover and use, soil type, and antecedent moisture conditions. Land cover and land use will determine the amount of depression and interception storage.

In developing the SCS rainfall-runoff relationship, the total rainfall was separated into three components: direct runoff (Q), actual retention (F), and the initial abstraction (I_a). The retention F was assumed to be a function of the depths of rainfall and runoff and the initial abstraction. The development of the equation yielded:

$$Q = \frac{(P - I_a)^2}{(P - I_a) + S} \qquad 5\text{-}15$$

in which

P is the depth of precipitation (mm)
I_a is the initial abstraction (mm)
S is the maximum potential retention (mm)
Q is the depth of direct runoff (mm).

Given Equation 5-15, two unknowns need to be estimated, S and I_a. The retention S should be a function of the following five factors: land use, interception, infiltration, depression storage, and antecedent moisture.

Empirical evidence resulted in the following equation for estimating the initial abstraction:

$$I_a = 0.2\,S \qquad 5\text{-}16$$

If the five factors above affect S, they also affect I_a. Substituting Equation 5-16 into Equation 5-15 yields the following equation, which contains the single unknown S:

$$Q = \frac{(P - 0.2\,S)^2}{P + 0.8\,S} \qquad 5\text{-}17$$

Equation 5-17 represents the basic equation for computing the runoff depth, Q, for a given rainfall depth, P. It is worthwhile noting that while Q and P have units of depth, Q and P reflect volumes and are often referred to as volumes because it is usually assumed that the same depths occurred over the entire watershed.

Additional empirical analyses were made to estimate the value of S. The studies found that S was related to soil type, land cover, and the hydrologic condition of the watershed. These are represented by the runoff curve number (CN), which is used to estimate S by:

$$S = 25.4\left[\frac{1000}{CN} - 10\right] \qquad 5\text{-}18$$

A curve number is an index that represents the combination of a hydrologic soil group and a land use and treatment class. Empirical analyses suggested that the CN was a function of three factors: soil group, the cover complex, and antecedent moisture conditions.

5.3.2.2 Soil Group Classification

SCS developed a soil classification system that consists of four groups, which are identified by the letters A, B, C, and D. Soil characteristics that are associated with each group are as follows:

Group A: deep sand, deep loess; aggregated silts

Group B: shallow loess; sandy loam

Group C: clay loams; shallow sandy loam; soils low in organic content; soils usually high in clay

Group D: soils that swell significantly when wet; heavy plastic clays; certain saline soils

The SCS soil group can be identified at a site using either soil characteristics or county soil surveys. The soil characteristics associated with each group are listed above and provide one means of identifying the SCS soil group. County soil surveys, which are made available by Soil Conservation Districts, give detailed descriptions of the soils at locations within a county; these surveys are usually the better means of identifying the soil group. Many of the more recent reports actually categorize the soils into these four groups.

5.3.2.3 Cover Complex Classification

The SCS cover complex classification consists of three factors: land use, treatment or practice, and hydrologic condition. Many different land uses are identified in the tables for estimating runoff curve numbers. Agricultural land uses are often subdivided by treatment or practices, such as contoured or straight row; this separation reflects the different hydrologic runoff potential that is associated with variation in land treatment. The hydrologic condition reflects the level of land management; it is separated into three classes: poor, fair, and good. Not all of the land uses are separated by treatment or condition.

5.3.2.4 Curve Number Tables

Table 5-5 shows the SCS CN values for the different land uses, treatments, and hydrologic conditions; separate values are given for each soil group. For example, the CN for a wooded area with good cover and soil group B is 55; for soil group C, the CN would increase to 70. If the cover (on soil group B) is poor, the CN will be 66.

5.3.2.5 Estimation of CN Values for Urban Land Uses

The CN table (Table 5-5) includes CN values for a number of urban land uses. For each of these, the CN is based on a specific percentage of imperviousness. For example, the CN values for commercial land use are based on an imperviousness of 85 percent. Curve numbers for other percentages of imperviousness can be computed using a weighted CN approach, with a CN of 98 used for the impervious areas and the CN for open space (good condition) used for the pervious portion of the area. Thus CN values of 39, 61, 74, and 80 are used for hydrologic soil groups A, B, C, and D, respectively. These are the same CN values for pasture in good condition. Thus the following equation can be used to compute a weighted CN:

$$CN_w = CN_p (1 - f) + f(98)$$

in which:

f is the fraction (not percentage) of imperviousness.

To show the use of Equation 5-19, the CN values for commercial land use with 85 percent imperviousness are:

A soil: 39(0.15) + 98(0.85) = 89
B soil: 61(0.15) + 98(0.85) = 92
C soil: 74(0.15) + 98(0.85) = 94
D soil: 80(0.15) + 98(0.85) = 95

These are the same values shown in Table 5-5.

Equation 5-19 can be placed in graphical form (see Figure 5-2a). By entering with the percentage of imperviousness on the vertical axis at the center of the figure and moving horizontally to the pervious area CN, the composite CN can be read. The examples above for commercial land use can be used to illustrate the use of Figure 5-2a for an 85 percent imperviousness. For a commercial land area with 60 percent imperviousness of a B soil, the composite CN would be:

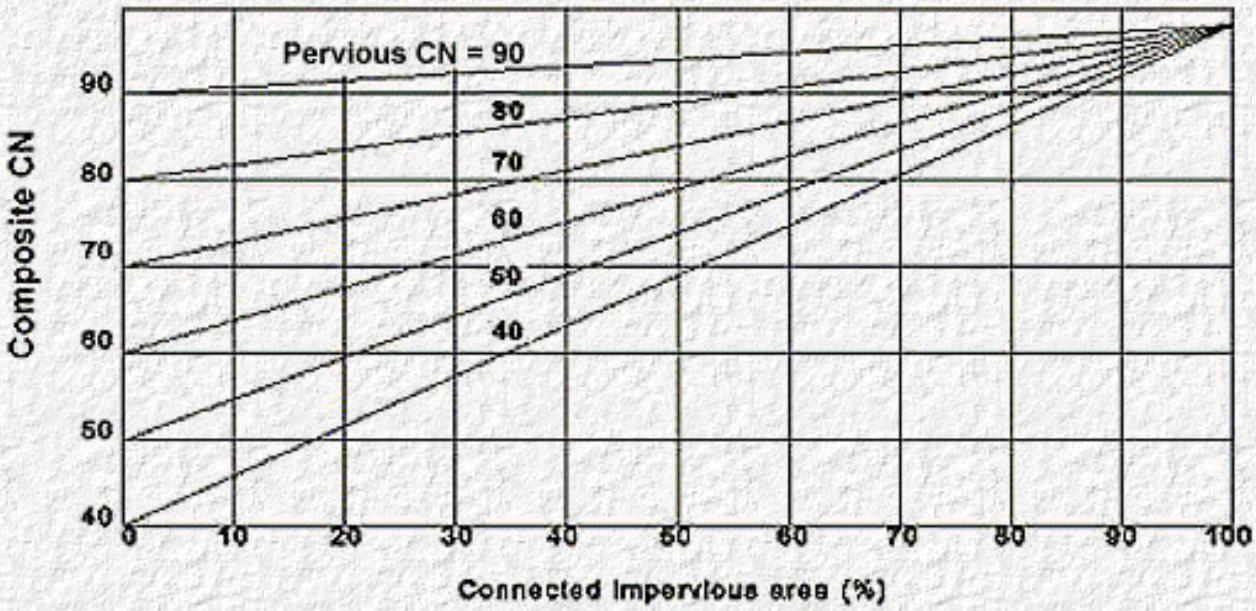
$$CN_w = 61(0.4) + 98(0.6) = 83$$

The same value can be obtained from Figure 5-2a.

5.3.2.6 Effect of Unconnected Impervious Area on Curve Numbers

Many local drainage policies are requiring runoff that occurs from certain types of impervious land cover (i.e., rooftops, driveways, patios) to be directed to pervious surfaces rather than being connected to storm drain systems. Such a policy is based on the belief that disconnecting these impervious areas will require smaller and less costly drainage systems and lead both to increased ground water recharge and to improvements in water quality. If disconnecting some impervious surfaces will reduce both the peak runoff rates and volumes of direct flood runoff, credit should be given in the design of drainage systems. The effect of disconnecting impervious surfaces on runoff rates and volumes can be accounted for by modifying the CN.

There are three variables involved in the adjustment: the pervious area CN, the percentage of impervious area, and the percentage of the imperviousness that is unconnected. Because Figure 5-2a for computing composite CN values is based on the pervious area CN and the percentage of imperviousness, a correction factor was developed to compute the composite CN. The correction is a function of the percentage of unconnected imperviousness, which is shown in Figure 5-2b. The use of the correction is limited to drainage areas having percentages of imperviousness that are less than 30 percent.



(a)

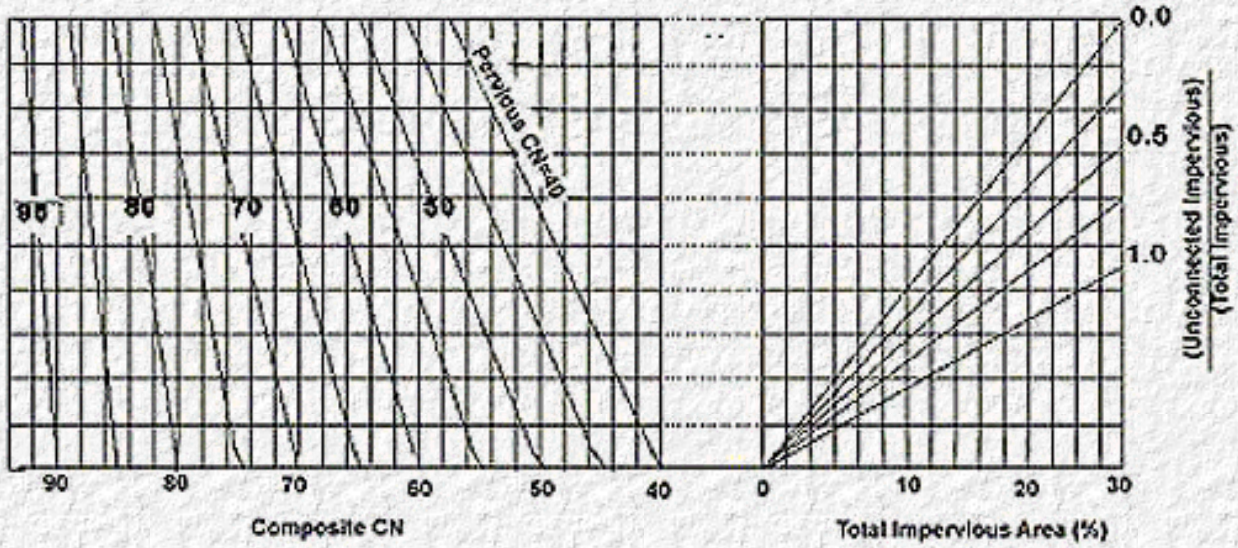


Figure 5-2. Composite Curve Number Estimation. (a) All Imperviousness Area Connected to Storm Drains. (b) Some Imperviousness Area Not Connected to Storm Drain

Table 5-5. Runoff Curve Numbers
(Average Watershed Condition, $I_a = 0.2S$)(after SCS, 1986)[49]

Cover Type	Curve Numbers for Hydrologic Soil Group			
	A	B	C	D
Fully developed urban areas[a] (vegetation established)				
Lawns, open spaces, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, etc.				
Good condition; grass cover on 75% or more of the area	39	61	74	80
Fair condition; grass cover on 50% to 75% of the area	49	69	79	84
Poor condition; grass cover on 50% or less of the area	68	79	86	89
Paved parking lots, roofs, driveways, etc. (excl. right-of-way)	98	98	98	98
Streets and roads				

Paved with curbs and storm sewers (excl. right-of-way)		98	98	98	98
Gravel (incl. right-of-way)		76	85	89	91
Dirt (incl. right-of-way)		72	82	87	89
Paved with open ditches (incl. right-of-way)		83	89	92	93
	Average % impervious[b]				
Commercial and business areas	85	89	92	94	95
Industrial districts	72	81	88	91	93
Row houses, town houses, and residential with lots sizes 0.05 ha or less	65	77	85	90	92
Residential: average lot size					
0.1 ha	38	61	75	83	87
0.135 ha	30	57	72	81	86
0.2 ha	25	54	70	80	85
0.4 ha	20	51	68	79	84
0.8 ha	12	46	65	77	82
Western desert urban areas:					
Natural desert landscaping (pervious areas only)		63	77	85	88
Artificial desert landscaping (impervious weed barrier, desert shrub with 25- to 50-mm sand or gravel mulch and basin borders		96	96	96	96
Developing urban areas[c] (no vegetation established) **Newly graded area**		77	86	91	94

			Curve Numbers for Hydrologic Soil Group			
Cover Type		HydrologicCondition[d]	A	B	C	D
Cultivated Agricultural Land: Fallow						
Straight row or bare soil			77	86	91	94
Conservation tillage		Poor	76	85	90	93
		Good	74	83	88	90
Row crops	Straight row	Poor	72	81	88	91
		Good	67	78	85	89
	Conservation tillage	Poor	71	80	87	90
		Good	64	75	82	85
	Contoured	Poor	70	79	84	88
		Good	65	75	82	86
	Contoured and tillage	Poor	69	78	83	87
		Good	64	74	81	85
	Contoured and terraces	Poor	66	74	80	82
		Good	62	71	78	81
	Contoured and terraces and conservation tillage	Poor	65	73	79	81
		Good	61	70	77	80
Small grain	Straight row	Poor	65	76	84	88
		Good	63	75	83	87

	Conservation tillage	Poor	64	75	83	86
		Good	60	72	80	84
	Contoured	Poor	63	74	82	85
		Good	61	73	81	84
	Contoured and tillage	Poor	62	73	81	84
		Good	60	72	80	83
	Contoured and terraces	Poor	61	72	79	82
		Good	59	70	78	81
	Contoured and terraces and conservation tillage	Poor	60	71	78	81
		Good	58	69	77	80
Close-seeded or broadcast legumes or rotation meadows[e]	Straight row	Poor	66	77	85	89
		Good	58	72	81	85
	Contoured	Poor	64	75	83	85
		Good	55	69	78	83
	Contoured and terraces	Poor	63	73	80	83
		Good	57	67	76	80
Noncultivated agricultural land						
Pasture or range	No Mechanical treatment	Poor	68	79	86	89
		Fair	49	69	79	84
		Good	39	61	74	80
	Contoured	Poor	47	67	81	88
		Fair	25	59	75	83
		Good	6	35	70	79
Meadow - continuous grass, protected from grazing and generally mowed for hay			30	58	71	78

Cover Type	Hydrologic condition[d]	Curve Numbers for Hydrologic Soil Group			
		A	B	C	D
Forestland - grass or orchards - evergreen or deciduous	Poor	55	73	82	86
	Fair	44	65	76	82
	Good	32	58	72	79
Brush - brush-weed-grass mixture with brush the major element[h]	Poor	48	67	77	83
	Fair	35	56	70	77
	Good	30[f]	48	65	73
Woods	Poor	45	66	77	83
	Fair	36	60	73	79
	Good	30[f]	55	70	77
Woods - grass combination (orchard or tree farm)[g]	Poor	57	73	82	86
	Fair	43	65	76	82
	Good	32	58	72	79
Farmsteads		59	74	82	86
Forest-range					
Herbaceous - mixture of grass, weeds, and low-growing brush, with brush the minor element	Poor		80	87	93

	Fair		71	81	89
	Good		62	74	85
Oak-aspen - mountain brush mixture of oak brush, aspen, mountain mahogany, bitter brush, maple and other brush	Poor		66	74	79
	Fair		48	57	63
	Good		30	41	48
Pinyon - juniper - pinyon, juniper, or both (grass understory)	Poor		75	85	89
	Fair		58	73	80
	Good		41	61	71
Sage-grass	Poor		67	80	85
	Fair		51	63	70
	Good		35	47	55
Desert shrub - major plants include saltbush, greasewood, creosotebush, blackbrush, bursage, palo verde, mesquite, and cactus	Poor	63	77	85	88
	Fair	55	72	81	86
	Good	49	68	79	84

[a] For land uses with impervious areas, curve numbers are computed assuming that 100 percent of runoff from impervious areas is directly connected to the drainage system. Pervious areas (lawn) are considered to be equivalent to lawns in good condition and the impervious areas have a CN of 98.

[b] Includes paved streets.

[c] Use for the design of temporary measures during grading and construction. Impervious area percent for urban areas under development vary considerably. The user will determine the percent impervious. Then using the newly graded area CN, the composite CN can be computed for any degree of development.

[d] For conservation tillage poor hydrologic condition, 5 to 20 percent of the surface is covered with residue (less than 850 kg/hectare row crops or 350 kg/hectare small grain). For conservation tillage good hydrologic condition, more than 20 percent of the surface is covered with residue (greater than 850 kg/hectare row crops or 350 kg/hectare small grain.

[e] Close-drilled or broadcast.
For noncultivated agricultural land:
Poor hydrologic condition has less than 25 percent ground cover density.
Fair hydrologic condition has between 25 and 50 percent ground cover density.
Good hydrologic condition has more than 50 percent ground cover density.
For forest-range.
Poor hydrologic condition has less than 30 percent ground cover density.
Fair hydrologic condition has between 30 and 70 percent ground cover density.
Good hydrologic condition has more than 70 percent ground cover density.

[f] Actual curve number is less than 30: use CN = 30 for runoff computations.

[g] CN's shown were computed for areas with 50 percent woods and 50 percent grass (pasture) cover. Other combinations of conditions may be computed from the CN's for woods and pasture.

[h] Poor: < 50 percent ground cover.
Fair: 50 to 75 percent ground cover.
Good: > 75 percent ground cover.

[i] Poor: < 50 percent ground cover or heavily grazed with no mulch.

Fair: 50 to 75 percent ground cover and not heavily grazed.
Good: > 75 percent ground cover and lightly or only occasionally grazed.

As an alternative to Figure 5-2b, the composite curve number (CN_c) can be computed by:

$$CN_c = CN_p + (P_i/100)\,(98 - CN_p)\,(1 - 0.5R) \text{ for } P_i \leq 30\% \qquad \text{5-19a}$$

in which

P_i is the percent imperviousness
R is the ratio of unconnected impervious area to the total impervious area.

Equation 5-19a, like Figure 5-2b, is limited to cases where the total imperviousness (P_i) is less than 30 percent.

5.3.2.7 I_a/P Parameter

I_a/P is a parameter that is necessary to estimate peak discharge rates. I_a denotes the initial abstraction, and P is the 24-hour rainfall depth for a selected return period. The I_a/P value can be obtained from Table 5-6 for a given CN and P. For a given 24-hour rainfall distribution, I_a/P represents the fraction of rainfall that must occur before runoff begins.

5.3.2.8 Peak Discharge Estimation

The following equation can be used to compute a peak discharge with the SCS method:

$$q_p = q_u\, A\, Q \qquad \text{5-20}$$

in which

q_p is the peak discharge in m^3/s
q_u the unit peak discharge $m^3/s/km^2/mm$ of runoff
A is the drainage area in square kilometers
Q is the depth of runoff in mm.

The unit peak discharge is obtained from the following equation, which requires the time of concentration (T_c) in hours and the initial abstraction/rainfall (I_a/P) ratio as input:

$$q_u = 0.000431 * 10^{C_0 + C_1 \log T_c + C_2 [\log (T_c)]^2} \qquad \text{5-21}$$

in which the values of C_o, C_1, and C_2 are given in Table 5-7 for various I_a/P ratios. The runoff depth (Q) is obtained from Equation 5-17 and is a function of the depth of rainfall P and the runoff CN. The I_a/P ratio is obtained either directly by I_a = 0.2S or from Table 5-6; the ratio is a function of the CN and the depth of rainfall.

The peak discharge obtained from Equation 5-20 assumes that the topography is such that surface flow into ditches, drains, and streams is relatively unimpeded. Where ponding or swampy areas occur in the watershed, a considerable amount of the surface runoff may be retained in temporary storage. The peak discharge rate should be reduced to reflect this condition of increased storage. Values of the pond and swamp adjustment factor (F_p) are provided in Table 5-8. The adjustment factor values in Table 5-8 are a function of the percent of the total watershed area in ponds and swamps (PPS). If the watershed includes significant portions of pond and swamp storage, then the peak discharge of Equation 5-20 can be adjusted using the following:

$$q_a = q_p F_p \qquad 5\text{-}22$$

in which q_a is the adjusted peak discharge in m^3/s.

Table 5-6. I_a/P for Selected Rainfall Depths and Curve Numbers

	Curve Number											
Rainfall (mm)	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
10	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	.27
20	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	.45	.28	.13
30	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	.42	.30	.19	+
40	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	.42	.32	.22	.14	+
50	*	*	*	*	*	*	.44	.34	.25	.18	.11	+
60	*	*	*	*	*	.46	.36	.28	.21	.15	+	+
70	*	*	*	*	.48	.39	.31	.24	.18	.13	+	+
80	*	*	*	*	.42	.34	.27	.21	.16	.11	+	+
90	*	*	*	.46	.38	.30	.24	.19	.14	.10	+	+
100	*	*	*	.42	.34	.27	.22	.17	.13	+	+	+
110	*	*	.46	.38	.31	.25	.20	.15	.12	+	+	+
120	*	*	.42	.35	.28	.23	.18	.14	.11	+	+	+
130	*	.48	.39	.32	.26	.21	.17	.13	.10	+	+	+
140	*	.44	.36	.30	.24	.20	.16	.12	+	+	+	+
150	*	.41	.34	.28	.23	.18	.15	.11	+	+	+	+
160	.48	.39	.32	.26	.21	.17	.14	.11	+	+	+	+
170	.45	.37	.30	.24	.20	.16	.13	.10	+	+	+	+
180	.42	.34	.28	.23	.19	.15	.12	+	+	+	+	+
190	.40	.33	.27	.22	.18	.14	.11	+	+	+	+	+
200	.38	.31	.25	.21	.17	.14	.11	+	+	+	+	+
210	.36	.30	.24	.20	.16	.13	.10	+	+	+	+	+
220	.35	.28	.23	.19	.15	.12	.10	+	+	+	+	+
230	.33	.27	.22	.18	.15	.12	+	+	+	+	+	+
240	.32	.26	.21	.17	.14	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+
250	.30	.25	.20	.17	.14	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+
260	.29	.24	.20	.16	.13	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+
270	.28	.23	.19	.15	.13	.10	+	+	+	+	+	+
280	.27	.22	.18	.15	.12	.10	+	+	+	+	+	+

290	.26	.21	.18	.14	.12	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
300	.25	.21	.17	.14	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
310	.25	.20	.16	.13	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
320	.24	.19	.16	.13	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
330	.23	.19	.15	.13	.10	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
340	.22	.18	.15	.12	.10	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
350	.22	.18	.15	.12	.10	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
360	.21	.17	.14	.12	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
370	.21	.17	.14	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
380	.20	.16	.13	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
390	.20	.16	.13	.11	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
400	.19	.16	.13	.10	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+

* signifies that I_a/P = 0.50 should be used
+ signifies that I_a/P = 0.10 should be used

Table 5-7. Coefficients for SCS Peak Discharge Method (Equation 5-21)

Rainfall type	I_a/P	C_0	C_1	C_2
I	0.10	2.30550	-0.51429	-0.11750
	0.20	2.23537	-0.50387	-0.08929
	0.25	2.18219	-0.48488	-0.06589
	0.30	2.10624	-0.45695	-0.02835
	0.35	2.00303	-0.40769	0.01983
	0.40	1.87733	-0.32274	0.05754
	0.45	1.76312	-0.15644	0.00453
	0.50	1.67889	-0.06930	0.0
Rainfall type	**I_a/P**	**C_0**	**C_1**	**C_2**
IA	0.10	2.03250	-0.31583	-0.13748
	0.20	1.91978	-0.28215	-0.07020
	0.25	1.83842	-0.25543	-0.02597
	0.30	1.72657	-0.19826	0.02633
	0.50	1.63417	-0.09100	0.0
Rainfall type	**I_a/P**	**C_0**	**C_1**	**C_2**
II	0.10	2.55323	-0.61512	-0.16403
	0.30	2.46532	-0.62257	-0.11657
	0.35	2.41896	-0.61594	-0.08820
	0.40	2.36409	-0.59857	-0.05621
	0.45	2.29238	-0.57005	-0.02281
	0.50	2.20282	-0.51599	-0.01259
Rainfall type	**I_a/P**	**C_0**	**C_1**	**C_2**
III	0.10	2.47317	-0.51848	-0.17083

	0.30	2.39628	-0.51202	-0.13245
	0.35	2.35477	-0.49735	-0.11985
	0.40	2.30726	-0.46541	-0.11094
	0.45	2.24876	-0.41314	-0.11508
	0.50	2.17772	-0.36803	-0.09525

Table 5-8. Adjustment Factor (F_p) for Pond and Swamp Areas that Are Spread Throughout the Watershed

Area of pond and swamp(%)	F_p
0	1.00
0.2	0.97
1.0	0.87
3.0	0.75
5.0	0.72

The SCS method has a number of limitations. When these conditions are not met, the accuracy of estimated peak discharges decreases. The method should be used on watersheds that are homogeneous in CN; where parts of the watershed have CNs that differ by 5, the watershed should be subdivided and analyzed using a hydrograph method, such as TR-20. The SCS method should be used only when the CN is 50 or greater and the T_c is greater than 0.1 hour and less than 10 hours. Also, the computed value of I_a/P should be between 0.1 and 0.5. The method should be used only when the watershed has one main channel or when there are two main channels that have nearly equal times of concentration; otherwise, a hydrograph method should be used. Other methods should also be used when channel or reservoir routing is required, or where watershed storage is either greater than 5 percent or located on the flow path used to compute the T_c.

Example 5-3

A small watershed (17.6 ha) is being developed and will include the following land uses: 10.6 ha of residential (0.1 ha lots), 5.2 ha of residential (0.2 ha lots), 1.2 ha of commercial property (85 percent impervious), and 0.4 ha of woodland. The development will necessitate upgrading of the drainage of a local roadway at the outlet of the watershed. The peak discharge for a 10-year return period is determined using the SCS Graphical method.

The weighted CN is computed using the CN values of Table 5-5:

Land Cover	Area A (ha)	Soil Group	CN	A*CN
Residential (0.2 ha lots)	5.2	B	70	364
Residential (0.1 ha lots)	4.6	B	75	345
Residential (0.1 ha lots)	6.0	C	83	498
Commercial (85% Imp.)	1.2	C	94	113
Woodland (Good Condition)	0.6	C	70	42
	17.6			1362

The weighted CN is:

$$CN_w = \frac{\sum A * CN}{\sum A} = \frac{1362}{17.6} = 77.4 \text{ (use 77)}$$

The time of concentration is computed using the velocity method for conditions along the principal flowpath:

Land Cover	Slope (%)	Length (m)	k for V = KS $^{0.5}$	V (m/s)	T_i (h)
Woodland (overland)	2.3	25	0.152	0.231	0.030
Grassed Waterway	2.1	275	0.457	0.662	0.115
Grassed Waterway	1.8	250	0.457	0.613	0.113
Concrete-Lined Channel	1.8	50	--	4.62	0.003
		600			0.261

The velocity was computed for the concrete-lined channel using Manning's equation, with n = 0.013 and hydraulic radius of 0.3 m. The sum of the travel times for the principal flowpath is 0.261 hours.

The rainfall depth is obtained from an IDF curve for the locality using a duration of 24 hours and a 10-year return period. (Note that the T_c is not used to find the rainfall depth when using the SCS Graphical method. A duration of 24 hours is used.) For this example, a 10-year rainfall depth of 122 mm is assumed. For a CN of 77, S equals 75.9 mm and I_a equals 15.2 mm. Thus, I_a/P is 0.12. The rainfall depth is computed with Equation 5-17:

$$Q = \frac{(P - 0.2S)^2}{P + 0.8S} = \frac{(122 - 0.2(75.9))^2}{122 + 0.8(75.9)} = 62.4 \text{ mm}$$

The unit peak discharge is computed with Equation 5-21:

$$q_u = 0.000431 * 10^{2.553 - 0.6151 \log(0.261) - 0.164 [\log(0.261)]^2}$$
$$= 0.3094 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} / \text{km}^2 / \text{mm}$$

Thus, the peak discharge is:

$$q_p = q_u AQ = 0.3094 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} / \text{km}^2 / \text{mm} (0.176 \text{ km}^2) (62.4 \text{ mm})$$
$$= 3.40 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$$

5.3.3 Other Peak Flow Methods

Many other methods for estimating peak flow for gaged and ungaged watersheds are available. These include graphical methods, formulas, tables, and combinations thereof. In most cases, these methods include empirically determined coefficients and exponents. They are highly regionalized, often applying only to a single watershed and to a limited range of flood peaks, and consequently have limited application. Therefore, the above discussions have been limited to the more generalized procedures that have been used throughout the United States and that have proven to be reliable.

Other accepted methods for estimating peak flow include design hydrographs that give a complete time history of the passage of a flood at a particular site. Hydrographs and their development for gaged and ungaged watershed are discussed in Chapter 6.

5.4 Peak Discharge Envelope Curves

Design storms are hypothetical constructs and have never occurred. Many design engineers like to have some assurance that a design peak discharge is unlikely to occur over the design life of a project. This creates an interest in comparing the design peak to actual peaks of record.

Crippen and Bue (1977) developed envelope curves for the conterminous United States, with 17 regions delineated as shown in Figure 5-3. Maximum floodflow data from 883 sites that have drainage areas less than 25,900 km^2 were plotted versus drainage area and upper envelope curves constructed. The curves for the 17 regions and the nationwide data were fit to the following logarithmic polynomial model:

$$q_p = 10^{b_0 + b_1 \log A + b_2 (\log A)^2 + b_3 (\log A)^3} \qquad 5\text{-}23$$

in which

A is the drainage area (square kilometers), q_p is the maximum floodflow (m^3/s). Table 5-9 gives the values of the coefficients (b_o, b_1, b_2, and b_3 of Equation 5-23) and the upper limit on the drainage area for each region. The curves are valid for drainage areas greater than 0.25 square kilometers; the smallest area used for the nationwide curve was 0.75 square kilometers. Crippen and Bue did not assign an exceedence probability to the floodflows used to fit the curves, so a probability cannot be given to values estimated from the curves.

Figure 5-3. Map of the Conterminous United States Showing Flood-Region Boundaries

5.5 National Flood Frequency Program

Regional regression equations were discussed in Section 5.1. Because of the common usage of the USGS equations developed for individual states and regions, the USGS has developed software called the National Flood Frequency Program (Jennings, Thomas, and Riggs, 1994). The following is a summary of the program abstracted from the NFF report.

5.5.1 Background

The USGS, in cooperation with the Federal Highway Administration and the Federal Emergency Management Agency, has compiled all of the current (as of September 1993) statewide and metropolitan area regression equations into a microcomputer program titled the National Flood Frequency Program. This program summarizes regression equations for estimating flood-peak discharges and techniques for estimating a typical flood hydrograph for a given recurrence interval or exceedence probability peak discharge for unregulated rural and urban watersheds. The report summarizes the statewide regression equations for rural watersheds in each State, summarizes the applicable metropolitan area or Statewide regression equations for urban watersheds, describes the National Flood Frequency software for making these computations, and provides much of the reference information and input data needed to run the computer program.

Since 1973, regression equations for estimating flood-peak discharges for rural, unregulated watersheds have been published, at least once, for every State and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico. For some areas of the Nation, however, data are still inadequate to define flood-frequency characteristics. Regression equations for estimating urban flood-peak discharges for several metropolitan areas in at least 13 states are also available. Typical flood hydrographs corresponding to a given rural and urban peak discharge can also be estimated by procedures described in the NFF report.

Information on computer specifications and the computer program are given in appendices of the report. Instructions for installing NFF on a personal computer are also given. A description of the NFF program and the associated data base of regression statistics is also given.

Table 5-9. Coefficients for Peak Discharge Envelope Curves

		Coefficients			
Region	Upper limit (km²)	b_o	b_1	b_2	b_3
1	26000	3.203865	.8049163	-.0394382	-.0029757
2	7800	3.470923	.7472908	-.0551780	-.0000965
3	26000	3.330746	.8443124	-.0642062	-.0021362
4	26000	3.258400	.8906783	-.0870959	.0022803
5	26000	3.726412	.7964721	-.0899000	.0022744
6	26000	3.500489	.9123848	-.1013380	.0049614
7	26000	3.326333	.8503960	-.0998747	.0042129
8	26000	3.236183	.9193289	-.0947436	.0029486
9	26000	3.503734	.8054884	-.0890172	.0018961

10	2600	3.314692	1.0386350	-.0597463	-.0042542
11	26000	3.231389	.8867450	-.1020535	.0045531
12	18100	3.596209	.8806263	-.0747598	.0000138
13	26000	3.461373	.8519276	-.1094456	.0058948
14	26000	3.073497	.9718339	-.0617496	-.0057110
15	50	3.451746	.9718339	-.0617496	-0.057110
16	2600	3.565536	.9699340	-.0649503	-.0034776
17	26000	3.389030	.9445212	-.0678131	-.0027647
Nationwide	2600	3.743026	.7918884	.0244991	-.0192899

5.5.2 Applicability and Limitations

The regression equations in NFF are applicable and representative of data used to derive them. Since the user of NFF is responsible for the assessment and interpretation of the computed frequency results, the following limitations of NFF should be observed:

1. The rural equations in NFF should only be used for rural areas and should not be used in urban areas unless the effects of urbanization are insignificant.

2. NFF should not be used where dams, flood-detention structures, and other human-made works have a significant effect on peak discharges.

3. The user is cautioned that the magnitude of the standard errors can be larger than the reported errors if the equations in NFF are used to estimate flood magnitudes for streams with variables outside the ranges for the necessary input variables as identified in NFF.

4. Drainage area must always be determined, as NFF requires a value. Although a hydrologic region might not include drainage area as a variable in the prediction equation to compute a frequency curve, NFF requires the use of the drainage area for other computations, such as determining the maximum flood envelope discharge from Crippen and Bue (1977) and Crippen (1982), weighting of curves for watersheds in more than one region, etc.

5. Frequency curves for watersheds contained in more than one region cannot be computed if the regions involved do not have corresponding T-year equations. Failure to observe this limitation of NFF will lead to erroneous results. Frequency curves are weighted by the percentage of drainage area in each region. No provision is provided for weighting frequency curves for watersheds in two different States.

6. In some instances, the maximum flood envelope value might be less than some T-year computed peak discharges for a given watershed. The T-year peak discharge is the discharge that will be exceeded as an annual maximum peak discharge, on average, once every T years. The user should carefully determine which maximum flood-region contains the watershed being analyzed and is encouraged to consult Crippen and Bue (1977) and Crippen (1982) for guidance and interpretations.

7. NFF allows the weighting of estimated and observed peak discharges for frequency curve calculations. However, because very few 500-year peak discharge estimates have been published, NFF does not allow the user to enter observed values for the 500-year peak discharge to be less than some of the other less extreme T-year peak discharges.

8. The user should be cautioned that some hydrologic regions do not have prediction equations for peak discharges as large as the 100-year peak discharge. The user is responsible for the assessment and interpretation of any interpolated or any extrapolated T-year peak discharge. Examination of plots of the frequency curves computed by NFF is highly desirable.

9. Hydrographs of flood flows, computed by procedures in NFF, are not applicable to watersheds whose flood hydrographs are typically derived from snowmelt runoff, or watersheds that typically exhibit double-peaked hydrographs. Furthermore, the flood hydrograph estimation procedure might not be applicable to watersheds in the semiarid/arid regions of the Nation because the procedure is based on data from Georgia. Future versions of NFF will include flood hydrograph estimation procedures for different regions of the country.

5.5.3 Hydrologic Flood Regions

In most statewide flood-frequency reports, the analysts divided their States into separate hydrologic regions. Regions of homogeneous flood characteristics were generally determined by using major watershed boundaries and an analysis of the areal distribution of the regression residuals, which are the differences between regression and station (observed) T-year estimates. In some instances, the hydrologic regions were also defined by the mean elevation of the watershed or by statistical tests such as the Wilcoxon signed-rank test.

Regression equations are defined for 210 hydrologic regions throughout the Nation, indicating that, on average, there are about four regions per State. Figure 5-3 gives the NFF statewide results for Maine, which is used to illustrate the content for one of the 210 regions. Some areas of the Nation, however, have inadequate data to define flood-frequency regions. For example, there are regions of undefined flood frequency in Florida, Texas, and Nevada. For the State of Hawaii, regression equations are only provided for the Island of Oahu. Regression equations for estimating flood-peak discharges for the other islands were computed as part of a nationwide network analysis but are not included in NFF since that study was not specifically oriented to flood-frequency analysis.

5.5.4 Local Urban Equations

The NFF program includes additional equations for some cities and metropolitan areas that were developed for local use in those designated areas only. These local urban equations can be used in lieu of the nationwide urban equations, or they can be used for comparative purposes. It would be highly coincidental for the local equations and the nationwide equations to give identical results. Therefore, the user is advised to compare results of the two (or more) sets of urban equations, and to also compare the urban results to the

equivalent rural results. Ultimately, it is the user's decision as to which urban results to use.

Local urban equations are available in NFF for the following cities, metropolitan areas, or States:

Alabama	Statewide Urban
Florida	Tampa Urban
	Leon County Urban
Georgia	Atlanta Urban
	Statewide Urban
Missouri	Statewide Urban
North Carolina	Piedmont Province Urban
Ohio	Statewide Urban
Oregon	Portland Urban
Tennessee	Memphis Urban
Texas	Austin Urban
	Dallas-Ft. Worth Urban
Wisconsin	Statewide Urban

In addition, some of the rural reports contain estimation techniques for urban watersheds. Several of the rural reports suggest the use of the nationwide equations given by Sauer and others (1983).

Summary

Maine is considered to be a single hydrologic region. The regression equations developed for the state are for estimating peak discharges (QT) having recurrence intervals T that range from 2 to 100 years. The explanatory basin variables used in the equations are drainage area (A), in square miles; Channel slope (S), in feet per mile; and storage (St), which is the area of lakes and ponds in the basin in percentage of total area. The constant 1 is added to St in the computer application of the regression equations. the user should enter the actual value of St. All variables can be measured from topographic maps. The regression equations were developed from peak discharge records through 1974 for 60 sites with records of at least 10 years in length. The regression equations apply to streams having drainage areas greater than 1 square mile and virtually natural flood flows. Standard errors estimate of the regression equations range from 31 to 49 percent.

Procedure

Topographic maps and the following equations are used to estimate the needed peak discharges QT, in cubic feet per second, having selected recurrence intervals T.

$$Q_2 = 14.0A^{0.962}S^{0.268}ST^{-0.212}$$

$$Q_5 = 21.2A^{0.946}S^{0.298}ST^{-0.289}$$

$$Q_{10} = 26.9A^{0.936}S^{0.315}ST^{-0.252}$$

$$Q_{25} = 35.6A^{0.923}S^{0.333}ST^{-0.266}$$

$$Q_{50} = 42.7A^{0.915}S^{0.346}ST^{-0.275}$$

$$Q_{100} = 50.9A^{0.907}S^{0.358}ST^{-0.282}$$

Reference

Morrill, R.A., 1975, A technique for estimating the magnitude and frequency of floods in Maine: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report No. 75-292, 43 p.

Figure 5-4. Description of NFF Regression Equations for Rural Watersheds in Maine (Jennings

Go to Chapter 6, Part I

Chapter 6 : HDS 2

Determination of Flood Hydrographs
Part I

Go to Chapter 6, Part II

In discussing the concept of hydrographs, it is instructive to discuss the issue in terms of a fundamental concept of systems theory. A system can be viewed as consisting of three functions: the input function, the transfer function, and the output function. The rainfall hyetograph is the input function and the total runoff hydrograph is the output function. In this chapter, the transfer function will be represented by a unit hydrograph.

A purpose of hydrograph analysis is to analyze measured rainfall and runoff data to obtain an estimate of the transfer function. Once the transfer function has been developed, it can be used with both design storms and measured rainfall hyetographs to compute (synthesize) the expected runoff. The resulting runoff hydrograph can then be used for design purposes. Unit hydrographs (UH) can be developed for a specific watershed or for general use on watersheds where data are not available to develop a unit hydrograph specifically for that watershed; those of the latter type are sometimes referred to as synthetic unit hydrographs.

While a number of conceptual frameworks are available for hydrograph analysis, the one presented herein will involve the following:

1. the separation of the rainfall hyetograph into three parts
2. the separation of the runoff hydrograph into two parts
3. the identification of the unit hydrograph as the transfer function.

The rainfall hyetograph is separated into three time-dependent functions: the initial abstraction, the loss function, and the rainfall excess; these are shown in Figure 6-1 using a standard convention of inverting the hyetograph. The initial abstraction is that part of the rainfall that occurs prior to the start of direct runoff (which is defined below). The rainfall excess is that part of the rainfall that appears as direct runoff. The loss function is that part of the rainfall that occurs after the start of direct runoff but does not appear as direct runoff. It might be worthwhile adding that the process is sometimes conceptualized as a two-part separation of the rainfall, with the initial abstraction being included as part of the loss function. The three components are used here for clarity and to emphasize the differences between the important processes of the hydrologic cycle.

The runoff hydrograph is conceptually separated into two parts: direct runoff and baseflow; this is also shown in Figure 6-1. The direct runoff is the storm runoff that results from rainfall excess; the volumes of rainfall excess and direct runoff must be equal. The transfer function, or unit hydrograph, is the function that transforms the rainfall excess into the direct runoff. For the purpose of our conceptual framework, baseflow is the runoff that has resulted from an accumulation of water in the watershed from past storm events and would appear as streamflow even if the rain for the current storm event had not occurred. It also includes increases to ground-water discharge that occurs during and after storm events.

Having completed the analysis phase through the development of a unit hydrograph, the results of the analysis can be used to synthesize hydrographs at ungaged locations, i.e., at locations where data to conduct analyses are not available. In the synthesis phase, a rainfall excess hyetograph and a unit hydrograph are used to compute a direct runoff hydrograph. The process of transforming the rainfall excess into direct runoff using the unit hydrograph is called convolution. The rainfall hyetograph can be either a synthetic design storm or a measured storm event.

In summary, in the analysis phase, the hyetograph and hydrograph are known and the unit hydrograph is estimated. In the synthesis phase, a hyetograph is used with a unit hydrograph to compute a runoff hydrograph.

In performing a hydrograph analysis for a basin with gaged rainfall and runoff data, it is common to begin by separating the baseflow from the total runoff hydrograph. This is usually the first step because baseflow is usually a smooth function and it can probably be estimated more accurately than the loss function. The direct runoff hydrograph equals the difference between the total hydrograph and the baseflow.

Having computed the baseflow and direct runoff hydrographs, the volume of direct runoff can be computed as the volume under the direct runoff hydrograph. Then the initial abstraction is delineated, if the initial abstraction is to be handled separately from the other losses. Finally, the losses are separated from the total rainfall hyetograph such that the volume of rainfall excess equals the volume of direct runoff.

6.1 Unit Hydrograph Analysis

In Chapter 2, it was shown that the rainfall-surface runoff relationship of a watershed is the result of the interaction of the hydrologic abstraction processes and the hydraulic conveyance of the primary and secondary drainage system. To accurately model this relationship mathematically and to predict the response of a watershed to any precipitation event is not totally possible at this time. There has been some success in this area through the use of sophisticated computer simulations but these require large amounts of data for calibration to be accurate. These techniques are outside the normal level of effort justified in typical highway drainage design. A more practical tool is necessary. Highway designers can use unit hydrograph techniques to approximate the rainfall-runoff response of typical watersheds. These methods do not require as much data and are usually sufficiently accurate for highway stream-crossing design.

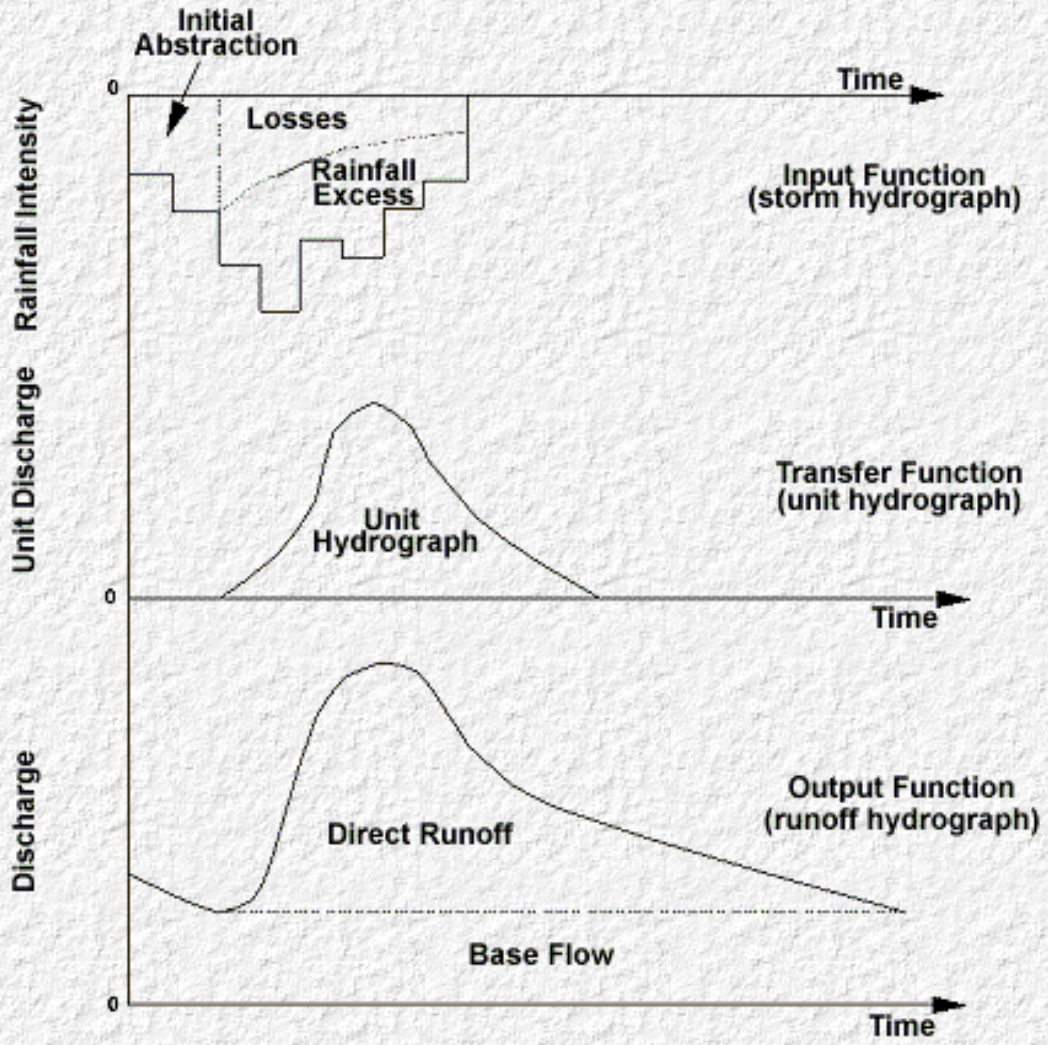


Figure 6-1. Rainfall/Runoff as the System Process

6.1.1 Assumptions

A stage hydrograph is a plot or tabulation of the water level versus time. A runoff hydrograph is a plot of discharge rate versus time. Since direct runoff results from excess rainfall, the runoff hydrograph is a plot of the response of a watershed to some rainfall event. If, for example, a rainfall event lasted for 1 hour, then the corresponding runoff hydrograph would be the response of the given watershed to a 1-hour storm. Figure 6-2 illustrates the direct runoff hydrograph from a rainfall of 1-hour duration. The duration of the runoff, which is called the time base of the hydrograph, is 4.25 hours, which is much greater than the duration of rainfall excess.

Suppose that the same watershed was subjected to another storm that was the same in all respects except that the rainfall excess was twice as intense. The unit hydrograph technique assumes that the time base of the runoff hydrograph remains unchanged for equal duration storms and that the ordinates are directly proportional to the amount of rainfall excess. In this particular case, the ordinates are twice as high as for the previous storm (see Figure 6-3). This illustrates the linearity assumption that underlies unit hydrograph theory. The amount of direct runoff is directly proportional to the amount of rainfall excess.

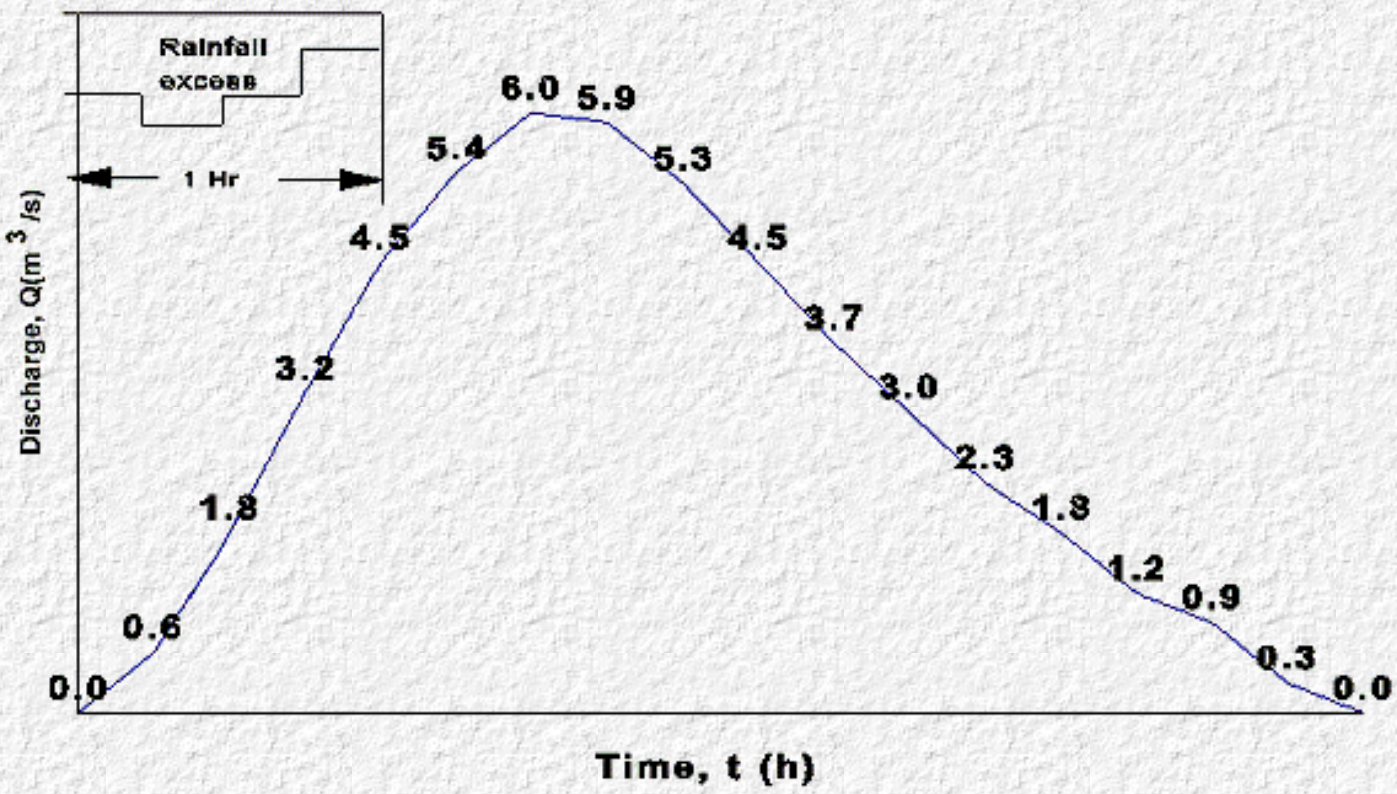


Figure 6-2. Runoff Hydrograph for 1-Hour Storm

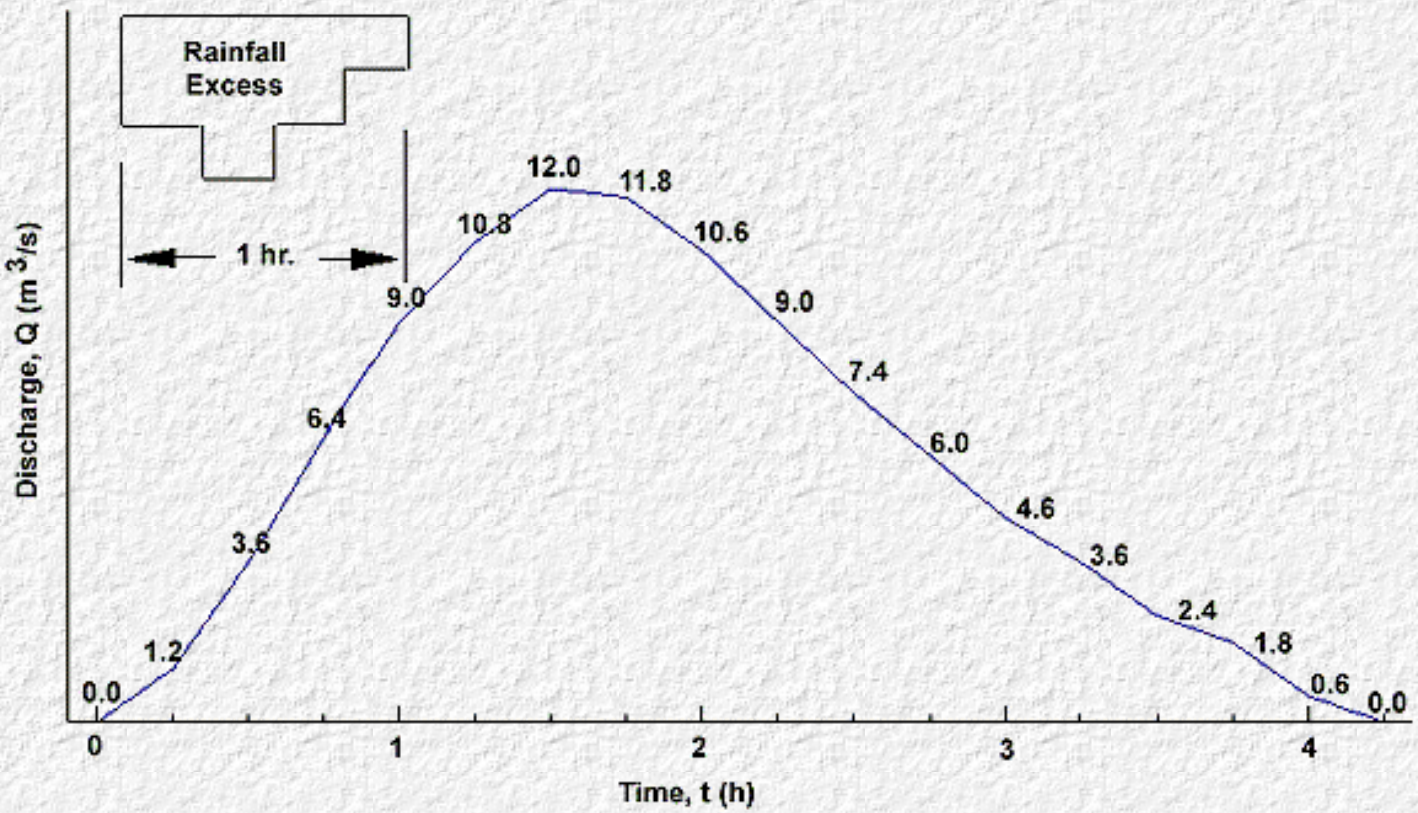


Figure 6-3. Runoff Hydrograph for a 1-Hour Storm with Twice the Intensity

Now suppose that immediately after the 1-hour storm shown in Figure 6-2, another 1-hour storm of exactly the same intensity and spatial distribution occurred. Unit hydrograph theory assumes that the second storm by itself would produce an identical direct runoff hydrograph that is independent of antecedent conditions. It would be exactly the same as the first hydrograph and would be additive to the first except lagged by one hour. The resulting total direct runoff hydrograph would be as illustrated in Figure 6-4. The time base of the resulting hydrograph is 5.25 hours.

The above examples serve to illustrate the underlying assumptions applicable to unit hydrograph techniques. It is instructive to summarize the assumptions that are fundamental to unit hydrograph theory. Johnston and Cross (1949) list the three basic assumptions:

1. For a given drainage basin, the duration of direct runoff is essentially constant for all uniform-intensity storms of the same duration, regardless of differences in the total volume of the direct runoff.

2. For a given drainage basin, two distributions of rainfall excess that have the same duration but different volumes will produce distributions of direct runoff that are of the same duration but with ordinates that are proportional to the volumes of rainfall excess.

3. The time distribution of direct runoff from a given storm duration is independent of concurrent runoff from antecedent storms.

6.1.2 Unit Hydrograph Definitions

A unit hydrograph is defined as the direct runoff hydrograph resulting from a rainfall event that has uniform temporal and spatial distributions and the volume of direct runoff represented by the area under the unit hydrograph is equal to one centimeter of direct runoff from the drainage area. It is important to note that unit hydrographs in the English System have a depth of 1 inch, while metric unit hydrographs have a depth of 1 mm. Thus, when a unit hydrograph is shown with units of cubic meters per second (m^3/s), it is implied that the ordinates are $m^3/s/mm$ of direct runoff.

A different unit hydrograph exists for each duration of rainfall. In all probability, the unit hydrograph for a 1-hour storm will be quite different from the unit hydrograph for a 6-hour storm. The unit hydrograph is also affected by the temporal and spatial distributions of the actual rainfall excess. In other words, two rainfall events with different distributions over the drainage area may give different unit hydrographs even if their respective durations are identical. Variations of the temporal and spatial distributions of rainfall contribute to variations in computed unit hydrographs for different storm events on the same watershed.

Several types of unit hydrographs can be developed. A D-hour (or D-minute) unit hydrograph is the hydrograph that results from a storm with a constant rainfall excess of 1 mm spread uniformly over a duration of D hours (or D minutes). An instantaneous unit hydrograph (IUH) is a special case of the D-hour UH with the duration of rainfall excess being infinitesimally small; for such a UH to have a volume of 1 mm, the intensity of the instantaneous UH is obviously not finite. The dimensionless unit hydrograph, which is a third form, is a direct runoff hydrograph whose ordinates are given as ratios of the peak discharge and whose time axis is defined as the ratio of the time to peak, i.e., a dimensionless UH with an axis system of q/q_p versus t/t_p, where q_p is the discharge rate at the time to peak t_p. Before a dimensionless UH can be used it must be converted to a D-hour UH.

The key to analyzing unit hydrographs is to select the correct rainfall events. The chosen storms must be representative of the temporal and spatial distribution of rainfall that is characteristic of storms resulting in peak discharges of the magnitudes and frequency selected for design.

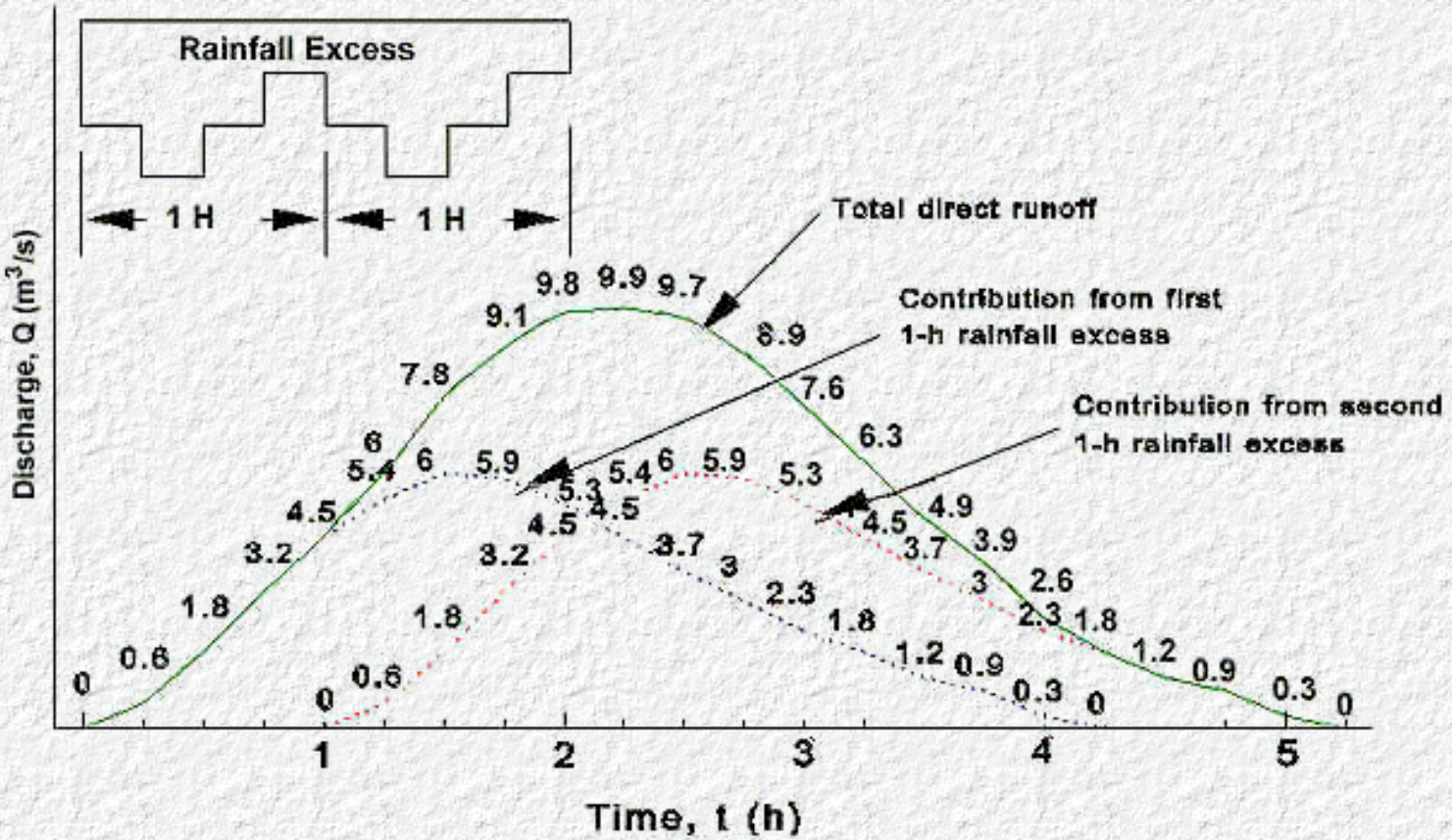


Figure 6-4. Runoff Hydrograph for Two Successive 1-Hour Storms

---

6.1.3 Convolution

The process by which the design storm is combined with the unit hydrograph to produce the direct runoff hydrograph is called convolution. Conceptually, it is a process of multiplication, translation with time, and addition. That is, the first burst of rainfall excess of duration D is multiplied by the ordinates of the unit hydrograph (UH), the UH is then translated a time length of D, and the next D-hour burst of rainfall excess is multiplied by the UH. After the UH has been translated for all D-hour bursts of rainfall excess, the results of the multiplications are summed for each time interval. This process of multiplication, translation, and addition is the means of deriving a design runoff hydrograph from the rainfall excess and the UH.

The convolution process is best introduced using some simple examples that illustrate the multiplication-translation-addition operations. First, consider a burst of rainfall excess of 1 mm that occurs over a period D. Assuming that the UH consists of two ordinates, 0.4 and 0.6, the direct runoff is computed by multiplying the rainfall excess burst by the UH; this is presented graphically as in Figure 6-5a. It is important to note that the volume of direct runoff equals the volume of rainfall excess, which in this case is 1 mm. Thus, the runoff hydrograph from the

1-mm storm in Figure 6-5a is the D-hour unit hydrograph.

If 2 mm of rainfall excess occurs over a period of D, the direct runoff volume must be 2 mm. Using the same UH as the previous example, the resulting runoff hydrograph is shown in Figure 6-5b. In both this example and the previous example, computation of the runoff hydrograph consisted solely of multiplication; the translation and addition parts of the convolution process were not necessary because the rainfall excess occurred over a single time interval of D.

To illustrate the multiplication-translation-addition operation, consider 2 mm of rainfall excess that occurs uniformly over a period 2D (Figure 6-5c). In this case, the direct runoff will have a volume of 2 mm, but the time distribution of direct runoff will differ from that of the previous problem because the time distribution of rainfall excess is different. Figure 6-5c shows the multiplication-translation-addition operation. In this case, the time base of the runoff hydrograph is 3 time units (i.e., 3D). In general, the time base of the runoff (t_{bRO}) is given by:

$$t_{bRO} = t_{bPE} + t_{bUH} - 1 \qquad \text{6-1}$$

in which

t_{bPE} and t_{bUH} are the time bases of the rainfall excess and unit hydrograph, respectively.

For the example above, both t_{bPE} and t_{bUH} equal 2D, and therefore, according to Equation 6-1 t_{bRO} equals 3D time units.

One more example should illustrate the convolution process. In Figure 6-5d the volume of rainfall excess equals 3 mm with 2 mm occurring in the first time unit. The computation of the runoff hydrograph is shown in Figure 6-5d. In this case, the second ordinate of the runoff hydrograph is the sum of 2 mm times the second ordinate of the UH and 1 mm times the first ordinate of the translated UH:

$$2(0.6) + 1(0.4) = 1.6$$

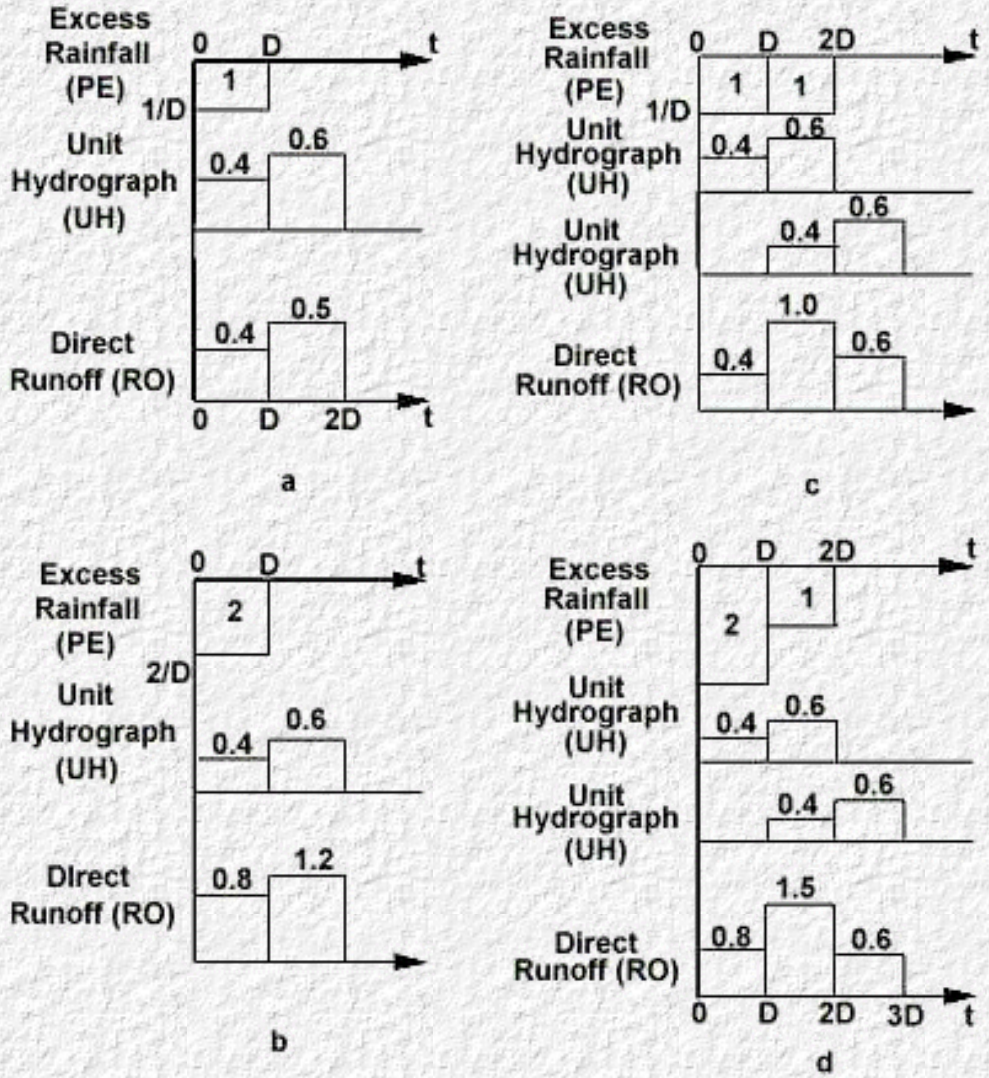


Figure 6-5. Convolution: A Process of Multiplication-Translation-Addition

For the case where t_{bUH} = 5 and t_{bPE} = 3, convolution can be presented by the following equations for computing the direct runoff Q(i) from the rainfall excess P(i) and the unit hydrograph U(i):

Q(1) = P(1)U(1)
Q(2) = P(1)U(2) + P(2)U(1)
Q(3) = P(1)U(3) + P(2)U(2) + P(3)U(1)
Q(4) = P(1)U(4) + P(2)U(3) + P(3)U(2)
Q(5) = P(1)U(5) + P(2)U(4) + P(3)U(3)
Q(6) = P(2)U(5) + P(3)U(4)
Q(7) = P(3)U(5)

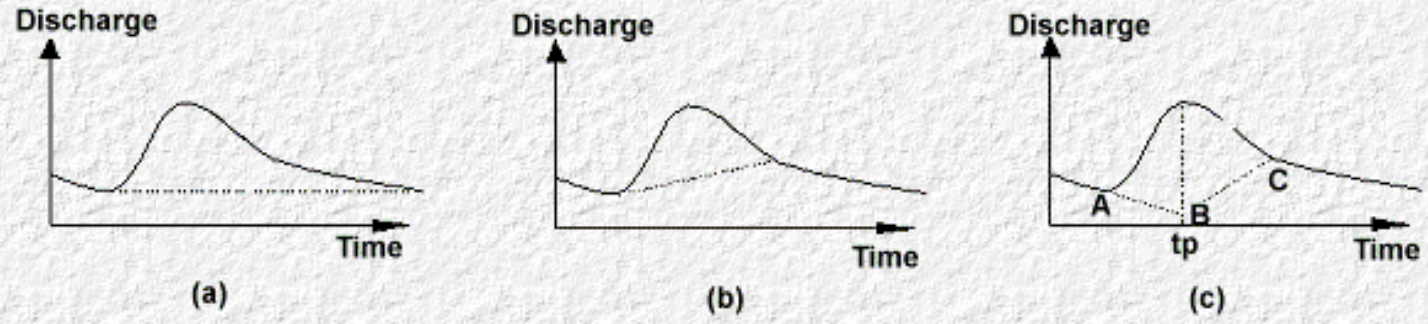


Figure 6-6. Alternative Base Flow Seperation Methods: (a) Constant-Discharge, (b) Straight-Line and, (c) Convex Methods

The number of ordinates in the direct runoff distribution is computed with an equation similar to Equation 6-1:

$$t_{bro} = t_{bPE} + t_{bUH} - 1 = 3 + 5 - 1 = 7$$

Example 6-1

Convolution can be illustrated using a 15-minute unit hydrograph for a 2.268 km^2 watershed. The duration of rainfall excess is 45 minutes, with intensities of 40, 80, and 60 mm/h for the three 15-minute increments. The unit hydrograph has a time base of 2 hours, with 15-minute ordinates of (0.0, 0.12, 0.55, 0.67, 0.63, 0.29, 0.18, 0.08) m^3/s. To show that this is a unit hydrograph with an equivalent depth of 1 mm, the trapezoidal rule can be used to compute the depth:

$$1mm = \Delta t \sum_{i=1}^{n} U_i$$

$$= 0.25h * (0 + 0.12 + 0.55 + 0.67 + 0.63 + 0.29 + 0.18 + 0.08)\frac{m^3}{s}$$

$$* \frac{3600\ s}{h} * \frac{1}{2.268\ km^2} * \frac{1\ km^2}{10^6\ m^2} * \frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m}$$

Before the rainfall excess is convolved with the unit hydrograph, the ordinates must be converted from intensities (mm/h) to depths (mm) by multiplying the intensities by the time increment of 0.25 hours. Thus, the ordinates of the rainfall excess expressed as depths are 10, 20, and 15 mm. Since there are three ordinates of rainfall excess and

seven non-zero ordinates on the unit hydrograph, Equation 6-1 would indicate that the direct runoff hydrograph will have nine nonzero ordinates. The convolution is performed as follows:

$Q_1 = P_1U_1$	$= 10\ (0.12)$	$= 1.20$
$Q_2 = P_1U_2 + P_2U_1$	$= 10\ (0.55) + 20\ (0.12)$	$= 7.90$
$Q_3 = P_1U_3 + P_2U_2 + P_3U_1$	$= 10\ (0.67) + 20\ (0.55) + 15\ (0.12)$	$= 19.50$
$Q_4 = P_1U_4 + P_2U_3 + P_3U_2$	$= 10\ (0.63) + 20\ (0.67) + 15\ (0.55)$	$= 27.95$
$Q_5 = P_1U_5 + P_2U_4 + P_3U_3$	$= 10\ (0.29) + 20\ (0.63) + 15\ (0.67)$	$= 25.55$
$Q_6 = P_1U_6 + P_2U_5 + P_3U_4$	$= 10\ (0.18) + 20\ (0.29) + 15\ (0.63)$	$= 17.05$
$Q_7 = P_1U_7 + P_2U_6 + P_3U_5$	$= 10\ (0.08) + 20\ (0.18) + 15\ (0.29)$	$= 8.75$
$Q_8 = P_2U_7 + P_3U_6$	$= 20\ (0.08) + 15\ (0.18)$	$= 4.30$
$Q_9 = P_3U_7$	$= 15\ (0.08)$	$= 1.20$
		113.40

in which Q_i is the ith ordinate of the direct runoff hydrograph, P_i is the ith ordinate of the rainfall excess, and U_i is the ith ordinate of the unit hydrograph. The sum of the ordinates of the direct runoff hydrograph is 113.4. Thus, the depth of direct runoff is:

$$\Delta t \sum_{i=1}^{9} Q_i = 0.25\ h * 113.4 \frac{m^3}{s} * \frac{3600\ s}{h} * \frac{1}{2.268\ km^2} * \frac{1\ km^2}{10^6\ m^2} * \frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m}$$

$$= 45\ mm$$

Since the rainfall excess has a depth of 45 mm, then the direct runoff hydrograph must have a depth of 45 mm. The volume of direct runoff equals the depth of 45 mm times the drainage area.

6.1.4 Analysis of Unit Hydrographs

Unit hydrographs are either determined from gaged data or they are derived using empirically based synthetic unit hydrograph procedures. This section deals with the derivation of unit hydrographs from data. It would be fortunate indeed if there were a continuous streamflow gage exactly at or near the site where there is need to design a highway crossing. This, however, is seldom the case. The unit hydrograph approach would, therefore, seem to have limited application, but unit hydrographs can be transposed within hydrologically similar regions. A unit hydrograph can be developed at a location where the necessary data are available and then transposed to the design site, so long as the distances are not too great and the watersheds are similar.

The first step in deriving a unit hydrograph is the collection of the necessary data. Data collection and sources were discussed in Chapter 3. It would be beneficial to keep a directory of all recording stream gages and associated precipitation stations within a region. This would facilitate data collection and streamline the process when a

hydrograph design was required.

The data needed for a unit hydrograph analysis are rainfall hyetographs and runoff hydrographs for one or more storm events. Ideally, continuous streamflow records for storms that are of a recurrence interval close to the anticipated design recurrence interval would be available. It is not reasonable to expect that the response of a watershed will be the same for a 2-year storm as for a 50-year storm. Ideally, the hydrograph should have a single peak and the rainfall excess should be isolated and uniform in time and space over the watershed. In addition, the entire basin should be contributing runoff and the storm should be sufficiently large so that the runoff hydrograph is well defined. If the deviation from these criteria is too extreme, it might be better to resort to a synthetic unit hydrograph procedure. Assuming that the data are usable, then the following procedure is used to derive a unit hydrograph.

6.1.4.1 Base Flow Separation

The first step in developing a unit hydrograph is to plot the measured hydrograph and separate base flow from the total runoff hydrograph. Figure 6-6 illustrates three methods of separating base flow. Prior to the occurrence of the storm, the flow in the stream is from ground-water depletion and is referred to as base flow. After the passage of the flood, the discharge in the stream returns to the base flow. The base flow is assumed to be unrelated to the storm runoff and, therefore, must be separated from the total runoff to determine the direct-runoff hydrograph.

A number of techniques have been proposed for separating the base flow from the flood hydrograph. Since the base flow is usually small in relation to the flood discharges, the convex separation method (see Figure 6-6c) described below is adequate for most highway design purposes.

To apply the convex method, two points are identified, the lowest discharge at the start of the rising limb of the hydrograph (point A in Figure 6-6c) and the inflection point on the recession limb (point C in Figure 6-6c). The inflection point occurs at the time when there is a noticeable decrease in the slope of the recession. Starting at point A, a straight line is drawn that has the same slope as that of the hydrograph just prior to the start of the rising limb. The line is extended until the time-to-peak of the hydrograph (point B in Figure 6-6c). A straight line is connected between points B and C. The convex method is applicable where ground-water recharge and possible subsequent increases in base flow are not significant. This would commonly be the case for smaller watersheds and intense storms. For larger watersheds or for long-duration storms, some judgment may be required for locating point C.

6.1.4.2 Determination of the Unit Hydrograph

The direct runoff hydrograph is obtained by subtracting the base flow from the total flood hydrograph. The total volume of direct runoff is the area under the direct runoff hydrograph and can be planimetered,

digitized, or computed numerically with either the trapezoidal or Simpson's rule. This area represents a volume of runoff. The volume is next converted to an equivalent depth of rainfall spread uniformly over the entire drainage basin by dividing the volume by the area of the drainage basin. The ordinates of the unit hydrograph are computed by dividing the ordinates of the direct runoff hydrograph by the computed depth of direct runoff. This will yield a unit hydrograph that has a depth of 1 mm or a volume of one area-mm, where area is the area of the drainage basin.

6.1.4.3 Estimation of Losses

Losses consist of rainfall that does not contribute to direct runoff. They are the difference between the total rainfall hyetograph and the rainfall-excess hyetograph. Losses can consist of an initial abstraction and losses that occur over the duration of the hyetograph following the start of direct runoff. In many cases, the initial abstraction is considered separately from the other losses. When the computational procedure includes an initial abstraction, it typically consists of all rainfall prior to the start of direct runoff. The remaining losses are separated from the total hyetograph so that the volume of rainfall excess equals the volume of direct runoff.

Any one of several methods can be used to separate losses. The phi-index method is commonly used because of its simplicity. Another method assumes that the losses are a constant proportion of the hyetograph with the proportion set so that the volumes of rainfall excess and direct runoff are equal. The SCS rainfall-runoff equation (Equation 5-17) is also used to separate losses and rainfall excess; this method includes an initial abstraction function defined by Equation 5-16.

By definition the phi index (ϕ) equals the average rainfall intensity above which the volume of rainfall excess equals the volume of direct runoff. Thus the value of ϕ is adjusted so that the volumes of rainfall excess and direct runoff are equal. The procedure for computing the phi index from rainfall and runoff data is:

- Step 1. Compute the depths of rainfall (V_p) and direct runoff (V_d).
- Step 2. Make an initial estimate of the phi index:

$$\phi = \frac{V_p - V_d}{D} \qquad 6\text{-}2$$

in which D is the duration of rainfall (excluding that part separated as initial abstraction) and f is an intensity with dimensions of length per unit time.

- Step 3. a. Compute the loss function, L(t):

$$L(t) = \begin{cases} \phi & \text{if } \phi \le P(t) \\ p(t) & \text{if } \phi > p(t) \end{cases}$$ 6-3a 6-3b

where P(t) is the ordinate of the rainfall intensity hyetograph at time t.

b. Compute the depth of losses, V_L:

$$V_L = \sum_{t=0}^{D} L(t) * \Delta t$$ 6-4

Step 4. Compute PE(t) = P(t) - L(t) for all ordinates in the rainfall hyetograph (excluding initial abstraction).

Step 5. Compare V_L and $V_p - V_d$:

a. If $V_L = V_p - V_d$, go to step 6

b. If $V_L < V_p - V_d$, compute the phi-index correction, $\Delta\Phi$:

$$\Delta\phi = \frac{V_p - V_d - V_L}{D_1}$$ 6-5

in which D_1 is the time duration over which PE(t) of step 4 is greater than zero.

c. Adjust the phi index:

$$\phi_{new} = \phi_{old} + \Delta\phi$$ 6-6

d. Return to step 3.

Step 6. Use the latest value of ϕ to define losses.

If a large number of storm events are available for analysis, then it may be possible to develop a loss function that can be used in hydrograph synthesis and design. For example, if a phi index is computed for each storm event analyzed, then an average phi index may be computed. If values of the phi index are available for numerous watersheds, then it may be possible to relate these to soil and/or land cover characteristics. This would enable a loss function to be adopted for an ungaged watershed.

6.1.4.4 Rainfall Excess Hyetograph and Duration

Once the initial abstraction and other losses have been determined, they can be subtracted from the total rainfall hyetograph to determine the rainfall-excess hyetograph. The volume of rainfall excess will equal the volume of direct runoff. The duration of the rainfall excess is especially important because it defines the duration of the corresponding unit hydrograph. For example, if a 5-hour storm produces a 3-hour rainfall-excess hyetograph, then a unit hydrograph computed with the corresponding direct runoff hydrograph would be referred to as a 3-hour unit hydrograph.

6.1.4.5 Illustration of the UH Analysis Process

A hypothetical example will be used to illustrate each of the steps of the UH analysis process. Figure 6-7 shows a 1-hour rainfall intensity hyetograph. The total volume of rainfall is:

$$P = \sum_{j=1}^{4} i_j \Delta t = \Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{4} i_j = \frac{15 \ \ min}{60 \ \ min/h}(6 + 12 + 13 + 3) = 8.5 \ \ mm$$

The total runoff hydrograph is also shown in Figure 6-7.

The first step is to compute the baseflow. The convex method of Section 6.1.4.1 will be used. Since the runoff begins to increase at the start of the second interval, the initial slope of the base flow function will equal the slope in the first 15-minute interval: 0.01 m^3/s per 15 minutes. Since the peak of the hydrograph occurs at a storm time of 75 minutes, the initial portion of the base flow function will be extended from a storm time of 15 minutes to a time of 75 minutes. Using the decrease of 0.01 m^3/s per 15 minutes produces the base flow rates shown in column 3 of Table 6-1. Since there is a noticeable change of slope on the falling limb of the total runoff hydrograph at a storm time of 135 minutes, this will be used as the inflection point; direct runoff will end at a time of 135 minutes. Thus, the second leg of the base flow function can be represented by a linear segment between storm times of 75 and 135 minutes with a slope of:

$$slope = \frac{(0.20 - 0.08) m^3/s}{(135 - 75) \ \text{min}} = 0.002 \ m^3/s \ \textit{per minute}$$

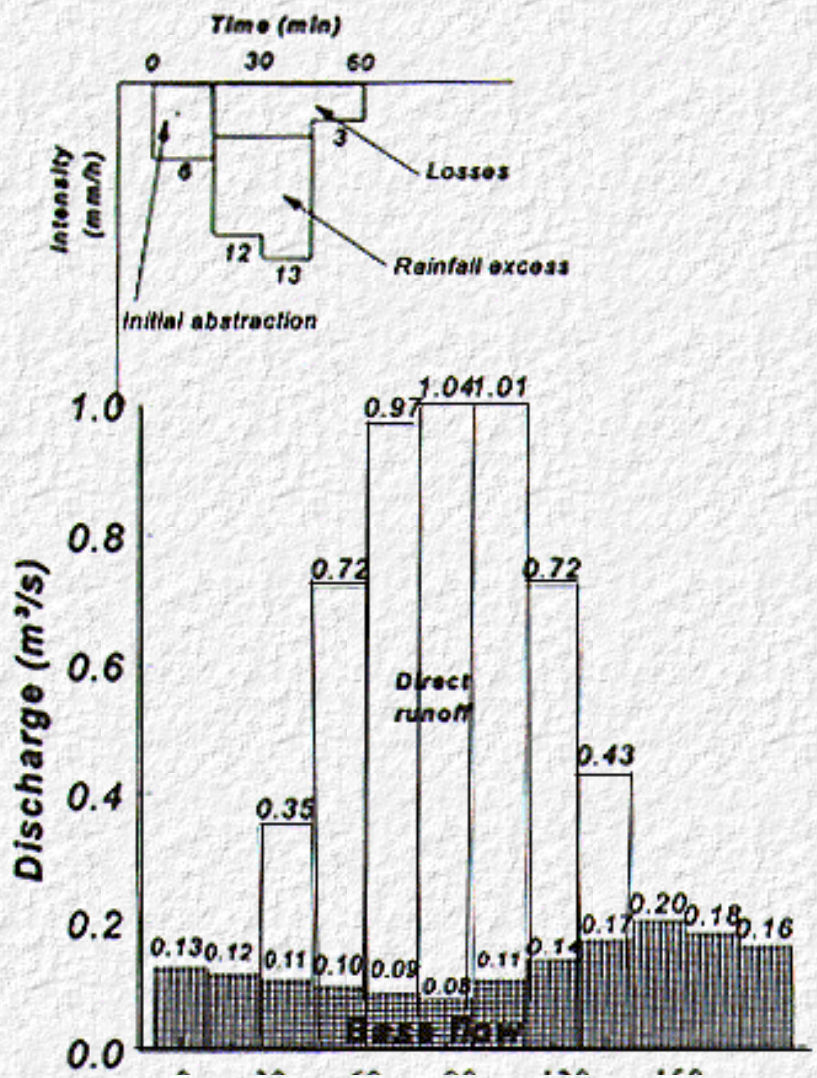
or 0.03 m^3/s per 15-minute interval. Because the inflection point has a higher discharge than the base flow at the time to peak, the slope is positive. This slope is used to compute the base flow function for the interval from 75 to 135 minutes. Beyond the inflection point, all of the total runoff is assumed to be base flow. Values for the base flow are given in column 3 of Table 6-1.

The base flow is subtracted from the total runoff to give the direct-runoff hydrograph (column 4 of Table 6-1). The volume of direct runoff can be computed using the trapezoidal rule:

$$V = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \Delta t \left(\frac{q_i + q_{i+1}}{2} \right)$$

where Δt is the time interval, n is the number of ordinates on the direct runoff hydrograph, and q_i are the ordinates of the direct runoff hydrograph. For the values given in column 4 of Table 6-1 the volume is:

$$V = \frac{15 \text{ min } (60 \text{ min}/h)}{2} [0+2(0.24)+2(0.62)+2(0.88)+2(0.96)$$
$$+2(0.90)+2(0.58)+2(0.26)+0] = 3996 \ m^3$$



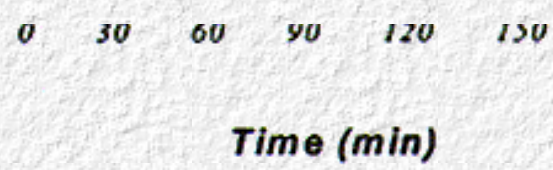


Figure 6-7. Application of Unit Hydrograph Analysis Process

If the area of the watershed is 1 km^2, then the average depth of direct runoff is:

$$d = \frac{V}{A} = \frac{3996\ m^3\left(10^{-6}\ km^2\ /\ m^2\right)\left(1000\ mm\ /\ m\right)}{1\ km^2} = 4\ mm$$

Therefore, the ordinates of the unit hydrograph will be 0.25 times the ordinates of the direct runoff hydrograph (see column 5 of Table 6-1). The trapezoidal rule can be used to show that the unit hydrograph represents an average depth of 1 mm:

$$d = \frac{15\ min(60\ s\ /\ min)(1.110\ m^3/s)(1000\ mm\ /\ m)}{1\ km^2\ (10^6\ m^2\ /\ km^2)} = 1\ mm$$

The rainfall intensity hyetograph must be analyzed to find the unit duration of the unit hydrograph. Because the depth of direct runoff, 4 mm, is less than the depth of rainfall, 8.5 mm, losses must be subtracted. Because direct runoff did not begin until the second time interval, all rainfall prior to this (1.5 mm) will be considered an initial abstraction (see column 3 of Table 6-2). The depth of the remaining rainfall is:

$$\phi = \frac{(7-4)\ mm}{0.75\ h} = 4\frac{mm}{h}$$

Table 6-1. Calculation of Base Flow, Direct Runoff, and Unit Hydrograph

(1) Time (min)	(2) Total runoff (m^3/s)	(3) Base flow (m^3/s)	(4) Direct runoff (m^3/s)	(5) Unit hydrograph (m^3/s)
0	0.13	0.13	0	-
15	0.12	0.12	0	0
30	0.35	0.11	0.24	0.060

45	0.72	0.10	0.62	0.155
60	0.97	0.09	0.88	0.220
75	1.04	0.08	0.96	0.240
90	1.01	0.11	0.90	0.225
105	0.72	0.14	0.58	0.145
120	0.43	0.17	0.26	0.065
135	0.20	0.20	0	0
150	0.18	0.18	0	-
165	0.16	0.16	0	-
				sum = 1.110

Table 6-2. Calculation of Phi-Index Loss Function and Rainfall-Excess Hyetograph

(1) Time interval	(2) Rainfall intensity (mm/h)	(3) Initial abstraction (mm/h)	(4) Losses: trial 1 (mm/h)	(5) Losses: trial 2 (mm/h)	(6) Rainfall excess (mm/h)
1	6	6	-	-	0
2	12	0	4	4.5	7.5
3	13	0	4	4.5	8.5
4	3	0	3	3.0	0

in which a time duration of 0.75 hours is used because the first 15-minutes time interval was devoted to initial abstraction. Using Equation 6-3 the losses are 4 mm/h for the second and third time intervals, but only 3 mm/h for the fourth time interval. Thus, the volume of losses is 2.75 mm, which is 0.25 mm less than that necessary to have equal depths of rainfall excess and direct runoff. The phi index can be adjusted using Equation 6-5:

$$\Delta\phi = \frac{(7 - 4 - 2.75)mm}{0.5\ h} = 0.5\frac{mm}{h}$$

Therefore, Equation 6-6 gives a revised estimate of phi:

$$\phi_{new} = \phi_{old} + \Delta\phi = 4 + 0.5 = 4.5\ mm/h$$

Thus, the new loss function would use 4.5 mm/h when the rainfall exceeds the losses; this is shown in column 5 of Table 6-2. Using the trapezoidal rule, the depth of losses is 3 mm, which is the amount necessary for the depths of direct runoff and rainfall excess to be equal.

The rainfall-excess hyetograph is computed by subtracting both the initial abstraction and the loss function

from the rainfall intensity hyetograph. The rainfall excess is given in column 6 of Table 6-2. While the storm event had a duration of 1 hour, the rainfall excess has a duration of 30 minutes. Thus, the unit hydrograph in column 5 of Table 6-1 is defined to be a 30-minute UH. For unit durations other than 30 minutes, the ordinates of the UH would have to be adjusted using the S-hydrograph method.

6.1.5 Derivation of a Unit Hydrograph From a Complex Storm

The method for developing a unit hydrograph given in Section 6.1.4 assumes that the rainfall excess and direct runoff distributions have a simple structure. The convolution process can be reversed with a rainfall-excess hyetograph and a direct-runoff hydrograph to compute a D-hour unit hydrograph for a complex storm.

The analysis procedure consists simply of setting up the equations for computing the n_{ro} ordinates of the direct runoff hydrograph. Since there is only one unknown in the first equation, it can be solved for the first ordinate of the unit hydrograph. The second equation has two unknowns (U_1 and U_2), so the value of U_1 from the solution of the first equation can be used with the second equation to solve for the second ordinate of the unit hydrograph. The process is continued until all of the ordinates have been computed. A problem with this approach is that any round-off error from each computation can accumulate and distort the ordinates of the recession of the unit hydrograph. The problem will be illustrated with an example.

Consider the case where the rainfall excess hyetograph, $P_e(t)$, and the direct runoff hydrograph, Q(t), are as follows:

$$P_e(t) = (8, 12)\ mm/h$$

$$Q(t) = (3.5,\ 17.1,\ 28.6,\ 22.4,\ 11.4,\ 3.4)\ m^3/s$$

Assume the measurements were recorded on a 2-hour time increment for a watershed with an area of 15.5 km^2. The task is to find the 2-hour unit hydrograph. The hyetograph ordinates can be converted from intensities to depths:

$$P(t) = (16,\ 24)\ mm$$

The number of ordinates in the unit hydrograph is found from a form of Equation 6-1:

$$t_{bUH} = t_{bro} - t_{bPE} + 1 = 6 - 2 + 1 = 5$$

Thus, the equations based on convolution are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q(1) &= P(1)U(1) &&= 3.5 \quad = 16\,U(1)\\
Q(2) &= P(1)U(2) + P(2)U(1) &&= 17.1 = 16\,U(2) + 24\,U(1)\\
Q(3) &= P(1)U(3) + P(2)U(2) &&= 28.6 = 16\,U(3) + 24\,U(2)\\
Q(4) &= P(1)U(4) + P(2)U(3) &&= 22.4 = 16\,U(4) + 24\,U(3)\\
Q(5) &= P(1)U(5) + P(2)U(4) &&= 11.4 = 16\,U(5) + 24\,U(4)\\
Q(6) &= P(2)U(5) &&= 3.4 \quad = 24\,U(5)
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving the first equation for U(1) yields 0.219 m^3/s. Substituting this value into the second equation and solving for U(2) yields 0.741 m^3/s. Values for U(3), U(4), and U(5) are found from the next three equations. The sixth equation is not used. The 2-hour unit hydrograph for this example is:

$$U(t) = (0.219,\ 0.741,\ 0.677,\ 0.385,\ 0.135)\ m^3/s$$

The reader should confirm this by convolving this unit hydrograph with the original storm to see that the measured runoff is reproduced.

Using the trapezoidal rule, the computed depth of the unit hydrograph is:

$$\Delta t \sum U_i = 2\,h * 2.157\,\frac{m^3}{s} * \frac{3600\,s}{h} * \frac{1000\,mm}{1\,m} * \frac{1}{15.5\,km^2} * \frac{1\,km^2}{10^6\,m^2} = 1\,mm$$

Note: If the sixth equation had been used to compute U(5), the value would have been 0.142 m^3/s rather than 0.135 m^3/s. The difference between the two estimates represents the round-off error that accumulates from estimating previous ordinates.

Example 6-2

The direct runoff hydrograph for a 2.332 km^2 watershed given in Table 6-3 is the result of a rainfall excess that consists of three 15-minute periods of equal duration of uniform excess rainfall of 12.4 mm per hour, 7.4 mm per hour, and 2.3 mm per hour. If it is assumed that the direct-runoff hydrograph is the composite of three separate hydrographs, each produced by one of the 15-minute periods that have excess rainfall, then it is possible to work backwards and derive a 15-minute unit hydrograph for a uniform excess-rainfall intensity of 40 mm per hour (this would result in a direct runoff volume of 1 mm).

These calculations are illustrated below and the resulting unit hydrograph is computed in Table 6-3 and plotted in Figure 6-8. The following symbols are used: Q_i = direct runoff hydrograph ordinate (m^3/s), R_i = excess rainfall intensity (mm/hour), and U_i = 15-minute unit hydrograph ordinate (m^3/s). For each value of the direct runoff hydrograph determined from the gage data, an equation can be written as shown in column 2 of Table 6-3. For the first ordinate of the direct runoff hydrograph, only the first ordinate of the unit hydrograph is used. Thus, the solution of the equation

($0.17 = 12.4\ U_1$) yields $U_1 = 0.0137$ (see column 4).

Table 6-3. Derivation of Unit Hydrograph from a Complex Storm

(1) Direct runoff hydrograph (m^3/s)	(2) Convolution Equations	(3) Equations for Application	(4) Solution	(5) Volume (m^3)	(6) Unit Hydrograph (m^3/s)	(7) Volume (m^3)
$Q_1 = 0.17$	$= R_1U_1$	$= 12.4\ U_1$	$U_1 = 0.0137$	12.3	0.0558	50.2
$Q_2 = 0.51$	$= R_1U_2 + R_2U_1$	$= 12.4\ U_2 + 7.4\ U_1$	$U_2 = 0.0329$	29.6	0.1341	120.7
$Q_3 = 0.91$	$= R_1U_3 + R_2U_2 + R_3U_1$	$= 12.4\ U_3 + 7.4\ U_2 + 2.3\ U_1$	$U_3 = 0.0512$	46.1	0.2087	187.8
$Q_4 = 1.25$	$= R_1U_4 + R_2U_3 + R_3U_2$	$= 12.4\ U_4 + 7.4\ U_3 + 2.3\ U_2$	$U_4 = 0.0641$	57.7	0.2612	235.1
$Q_5 = 1.53$	$= R_1U_5 + R_2U_4 + R_3U_3$	$= 12.4\ U_5 + 7.4\ U_4 + 2.3\ U_3$	$U_5 = 0.0756$	68.0	0.3081	277.3
$Q_6 = 1.70$	$= R_1U_6 + R_2U_5 + R_3U_4$	$= 12.4\ U_6 + 7.4\ U_5 + 2.3\ U_4$	$U_6 = 0.0801$	72.1	0.3264	293.8
$Q_7 = 1.67$	$= R_1U_7 + R_2U_6 + R_3U_5$	$= 12.4\ U_7 + 7.4\ U_6 + 2.3\ U_5$	$U_7 = 0.0729$	65.6	0.2971	267.4
$Q_8 = 1.50$	$= R_1U_8 + R_2U_7 + R_3U_6$	$= 12.4\ U_8 + 7.4\ U_7 + 2.3\ U_6$	$U_2 = 0.0626$	56.3	0.2551	229.6
$Q_9 = 1.28$	$= R_1U_9 + R_2U_8 + R_3U_7$	$= 12.4\ U_9 + 7.4\ U_8 + 2.3\ U_7$	$U_9 = 0.0523$	47.1	0.2131	191.8
$Q_{10} = 1.08$	$= R_1U_{10} + R_2U_9 + R_3U_8$	$= 12.4\ U_{10} + 7.4\ U_9 + 2.3\ U_8$	$U_{10} = 0.0443$	39.9	0.1805	162.4
$Q_{11} = 0.85$	$= R_1U_{11} + R_2U_{10} + R_3U_9$	$= 12.4\ U_{11} + 7.4\ U_{10} + 2.3\ U_9$	$U_{11} = 0.0324$	29.2	0.1320	118.8
$Q_{12} = 0.65$	$= R_1U_{12} + R_2U_{11} + R_3U_{10}$	$= 12.4\ U_{12} + 7.4\ U_{11} + 2.3\ U_{10}$	$U_{12} = 0.0249$	22.4	0.1015	91.4
$Q_{13} = 0.51$	$= R_1U_{13} + R_2U_{12} + R_3U_{11}$	$= 12.4\ U_{13} + 7.4\ U_{12} + 2.3\ U_{11}$	$U_{13} = 0.0203$	18.3	0.0827	74.4
$Q_{14} = 0.34$	$= R_1U_{14} + R_2U_{13} + R_3U_{12}$	$= 12.4\ U_{14} + 7.4\ U_{13} + 2.3\ U_{12}$	$U_{14} = 0.0107$	9.6	0.0436	39.2
$Q_{15} = 0.26$	$= R_2U_{14} + R_3U_{13}$	$= + 7.4\ U_{14} + 2.3\ U_{13}$				
$Q_{16} = 0.09$	$= R_3U_{14}$	$= 2.3\ U_{14}$				
				Sum = 572.2		Sum = 2339.9

In the equation for Q_2, the value of U_1 from the solution of the first equation is used so that a value can be computed for U_2:

$$U_2 = \frac{1}{12.4}(0.51 - 7.4\ U_1) = \frac{1}{12.4}[0.51 - 7.4(0.0137)] = 0.0329$$

A value can be computed for U_3 using the equation for Q_3 and the computed values of U_1 and U_2:

$$U_3 = \frac{1}{12.4}[0.91 - 7.4(0.0329) - 2.3(0.0137)] = 0.0512$$

The process is repeated for U_4 through U_{14} as shown in Table 6-3.

Having computed the ordinates, the volume of the hydrograph of U_i values is computed by dividing the ordinate of column 4 by the drainage area and adjusting the units (see column 5). The sum of the ordinates is 572.2 m^3. Transforming this to a depth yields:

$$\frac{572.2\ m^3}{2.332\ km^2} * \frac{1\ km^2}{10^6\ m^2} * \frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m} = 0.2454\ mm$$

Dividing the values of U_i in column 4 by 0.2454 mm yields the unit hydrograph of column 6. The depth is computed by summing the individual volumes of the unit hydrograph (see column 7).The total of 2339.9 is the equivalent of 1 mm over the entire watershed and differs from the expected value by 79 m^3 (about 0.3 percent). This difference is the result of round-off error.

6.1.6 Averaging Storm-Event Unit Hydrographs

Unit hydrographs analyzed from different storm events on the same watershed will have widely different shapes even if the durations of rainfall excess are similar. These differences are illustrated in Figure 6-9 and can be due to differences in storm patterns, storm volumes, storm-cell movement, and antecedent watershed conditions.

The following steps are used to average two or more unit hydrographs computed from different storm events on the same watershed:

1. Compute the average peak discharge of the unit hydrographs;
2. Compute the average time to peak;
3. Plot each of the storm-event UH's on a single graph;
4. Locate the point defined by the average peak discharge and average time to peak from steps 1 and 2;
5. Sketch a unit hydrograph that represents an average of the shapes of the storm-event UH's and passes through the point defined in step 4;
6. Read off the ordinates of the average unit hydrograph sketched in step 5 and compute the volume of the average UH; and
7. Adjust the ordinates of the sketched UH so that it has a volume of 1 area-mm; the adjustments are usually made in the recession of the UH.

This averaging method assumes that all of the storm-event UH's have approximately the same unit duration. If they

do not, they should be adjusted using the S-hydrograph method (see Section 6.3.1) prior to averaging.

It is important to emphasize that it is incorrect to compute an average of the ordinates for each time. If this were done, the watershed-average UH would have a low peak discharge and the shape would not be representative of the true unit hydrograph.

Example 6-3

Figure 6-9 shows unit hydrographs for five storm events on White Oak Bayou, TX; the data were adapted from graphs provided by Hare (1970). The ordinates are given in Table 6-4a. White Oak Bayou has a drainage area of 238.3 km^2. The peak discharge and time to peak are given in Table 6-4b for each storm UH; the averages are also given. The point defined by $\bar{q}_p$ and $\bar{t}_p$ is located on Figure 6-9 with the five storm-event UH's. A smooth distribution was sketched through the point, with consideration given to the shapes of the five storm-event unit hydrographs. The ordinates at 2-hour intervals were taken from the initial sketch of the average UH and the volume under the curve computed using the trapezoidal rule. The ordinates were adjusted because the volume of the initially sketched UH was greater than 1 area-mm. The sum of the ordinates for the final UH are shown in Table 6-4a. The volume is, thus:

$$32.181\ \frac{m^3}{s} * 2\ h * \frac{3600\ s}{h} * \frac{1000\ mm}{1\ m} * \frac{1}{238.3\ km^2} * \left(\frac{1\ km}{1000\ m}\right)^2 = 0.972\ mm$$

The difference of 0.028 mm is assumed to be the volume in the recession of the UH beyond a storm time of 60 hours.

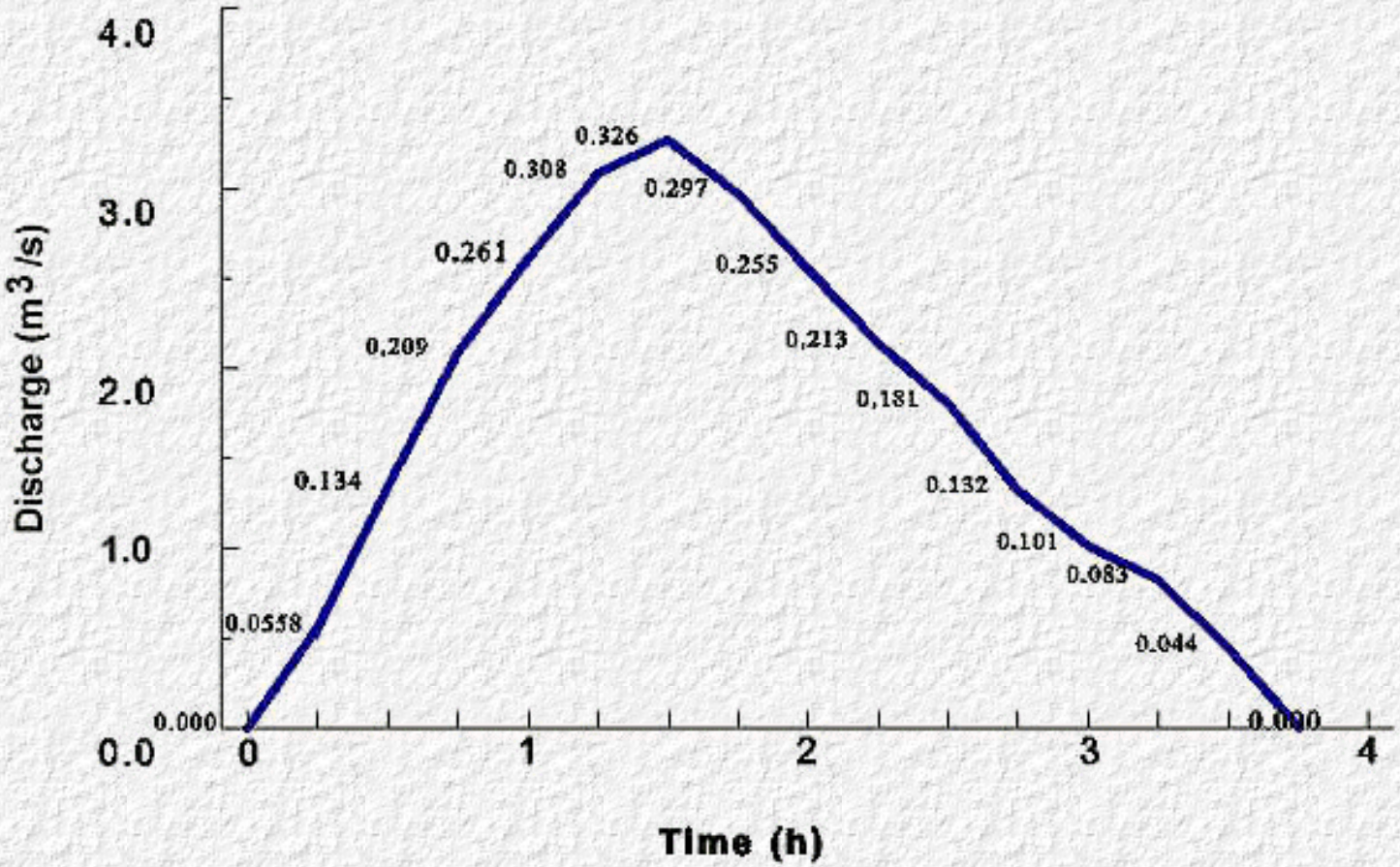


Figure 6-8. Unit Hydrograph from Table 6-3

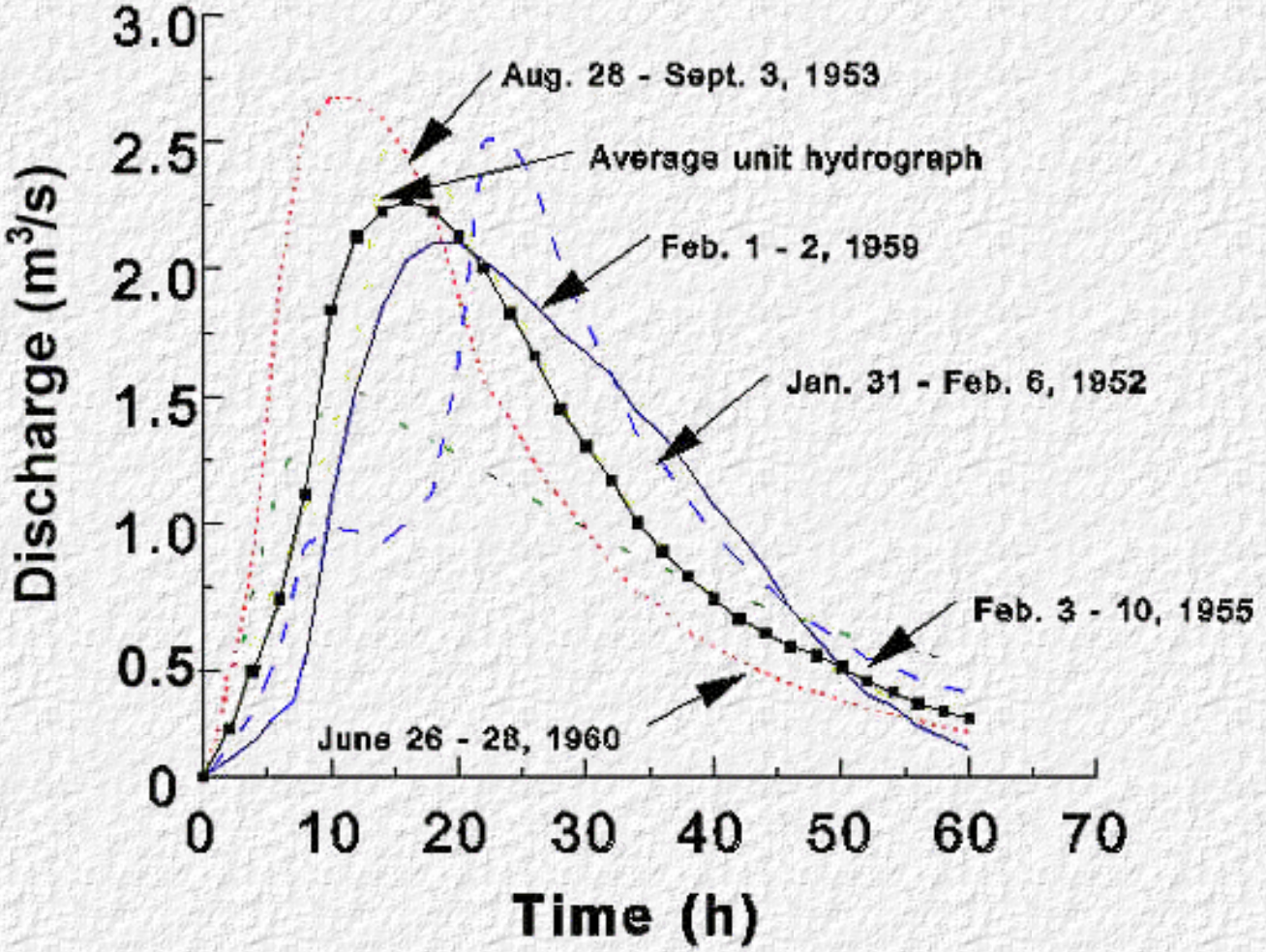


Figure 6-9. Observed Unit Hydrographs - White Oak Bayou

Go to Chapter 6, Part II

Go to Chapter 7

6.2 Development of a Design Storm

The volume, duration, frequency, and intensity of storms have been discussed. Some design problems only require either the volume of rainfall or an average intensity for a specified duration and frequency. For example, the rational method uses the rainfall intensity for a specified return period. However, for many problems in hydrologic design, it is necessary to show the variation of the rainfall volume with time. That is, some hydrologic design problems require the storm input to the design method to be expressed as a hyetograph and not just as a total volume for the storm. Characteristics of a hyetograph that are important are the peak, the time to peak, the distribution, and the volume, duration, and frequency. Design methods most often use a synthetic design storm rather than an actual storm hyetograph.

Table 6-4. Computing a Watershed Unit Hydrograph from Five Storm-Event Unit Hydrographs, White Oak, Bayou, TX: (a) Dimensionless UH, and (b) Characteristics of Storm-Event Unit Hydrographs

	Discharge (m^3/s) for UH of					Average UH	Dimensionless UH	
Time (h)	1952	1953	1955	1959	1960	(m^3/s)	q/q_p	t/t_p
0	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0	0
2	0.067	0.212	0.234	0.111	0.312	0.189	0.083	0.125
4	0.145	0.580	0.758	0.268	0.892	0.424	0.186	0.250
6	0.251	0.791	1.182	0.502	1.973	0.702	0.309	0.375
8	0.446	1.059	1.360	0.914	2.564	1.115	0.490	0.500
10	1.081	1.349	1.471	0.981	2.675	1.839	0.809	0.625
12	1.527	1.694	1.527	0.970	2.675	2.129	0.936	0.750
14	1.850	2.486	1.460	0.925	2.597	2.229	0.980	0.875
16	2.040	2.475	1.371	1.003	2.452	2.274	1.000	1.000
18	2.107	2.419	1.326	1.126	2.240	2.229	0.980	1.125
20	2.107	2.240	1.271	1.639	1.895	2.129	0.936	1.250
22	2.034	2.040	1.204	2.508	1.561	2.006	0.882	1.375
24	1.951	1.873	1.148	2.508	1.416	1.828	0.804	1.500
26	1.862	1.683	1.092	2.341	1.237	1.661	0.730	1.625
28	1.750	1.471	1.025	2.018	1.092	1.449	0.637	1.750
30	1.672	1.326	0.981	1.795	0.981	1.304	0.574	1.875
32	1.583	1.193	0.925	1.583	0.836	1.170	0.515	2.000
34	1.438	1.025	0.869	1.349	0.725	1.003	0.441	2.125
36	1.349	0.914	0.825	1.237	0.669	0.892	0.392	2.250
38	1.215	0.803	0.780	1.092	0.568	0.791	0.348	2.375
40	1.070	0.702	0.725	0.947	0.513	0.702	0.309	2.500
42	0.959	0.624	0.702	0.858	0.457	0.624	0.275	2.625
44	0.825	0.557	0.669	0.758	0.412	0.568	0.250	2.750
46	0.669	0.490	0.635	0.669	0.368	0.513	0.225	2.875
48	0.546	0.457	0.602	0.602	0.334	0.479	0.211	3.000
50	0.435	0.412	0.568	0.535	0.301	0.435	0.191	3.125
52	0.323	0.357	0.535	0.468	0.268	0.379	0.167	3.250
54	0.279	0.312	0.513	0.435	0.245	0.334	0.147	3.375

56	0.201	0.279	0.490	0.390	0.223	0.290	0.127	3.500
58	0.156	0.245	0.468	0.357	0.201	0.256	0.113	3.625
60	0.111	0.223	0.457	0.334	0.178	0.234	0.103	3.750
sum	32.047	32.292	27.176	31.222	32.861	32.181		
depth (mm)	0.968	0.976	0.821	0.943	0.993	0.972		

Storm dates	UH peak discharge (m^3/s)	Time to peak (h)
Jan. 31 - Feb. 6, 1952	2.11	19.0
Aug. 28 - Sept. 3, 1953	2.49	14.8
Feb 3-10, 1955	1.55	11.4
Feb. 1-2, 1959	2.54	23.4
June 26-28, 1960	2.68	10.9

In developing a design storm hyetograph for any region, empirical analyses of measured rainfall records are made to determine the most likely arrangement of the ordinates of the hyetograph. Some storm events will have an early peak (i.e., front loaded), some a late peak (i.e., rear loaded), some will peak in the center of the storm (i.e., center loaded), and some will have more than one peak. The empirical analysis of measured rainfall hyetographs at a location will show the most likely of these possibilities, and this finding can be used to develop the design storm.

6.2.1 Constant-Intensity Design storm

A design storm that is used frequently for hydrologic designs on very small urban watersheds is the constant-intensity storm. It is quite common to assume that the critical cause of flooding is the short-duration, high-intensity storm. In most cases, it has been shown that the largest peak runoff rate occurs when the entire drainage area is contributing and so, it is common to set the duration of the design storm equal to the time of concentration of the watershed. The intensity of the storm is obtained from an intensity-duration-frequency curve for the location, using the frequency specified by the design standard; the storm depth is the intensity multiplied by the time of concentration.

Example 6-4

To illustrate the constant-intensity design storm, assume the following conditions:

1. the design standard specifies a 10-year return period for design,
2. the watershed time of concentration is 15 minutes, and
3. the watershed is located in Baltimore, Maryland.

The rainfall intensity for a 10-year return period and a duration of 15 minutes is 140 mm/h, which yields a storm depth of 35 mm. The resulting design storm is shown in Figure 6-10.

6.2.2 The SCS 24-Hour Storm Distributions

The SCS developed four dimensionless rainfall distributions using the Weather Bureau's Rainfall Frequency Atlases. The rainfall frequency data for areas less than 1050 km^2, for durations to 24 hours, and for frequencies from 1 to 100 years were used. Data analyses indicated four major regions, and the resulting rainfall distributions were labeled type I, IA, II, and III. The locations where these design storms should be used are shown in Figure 6-11.

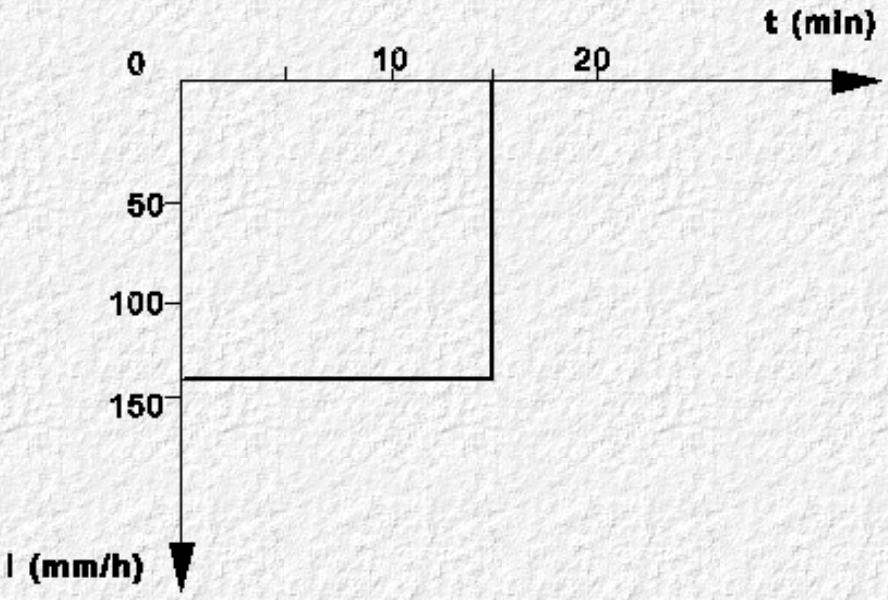


Figure 6-10. Constant-Intensity Design Storm for a 15-Minute Time of Concentration and a 10-Year Return Period (Baltimore, MD)

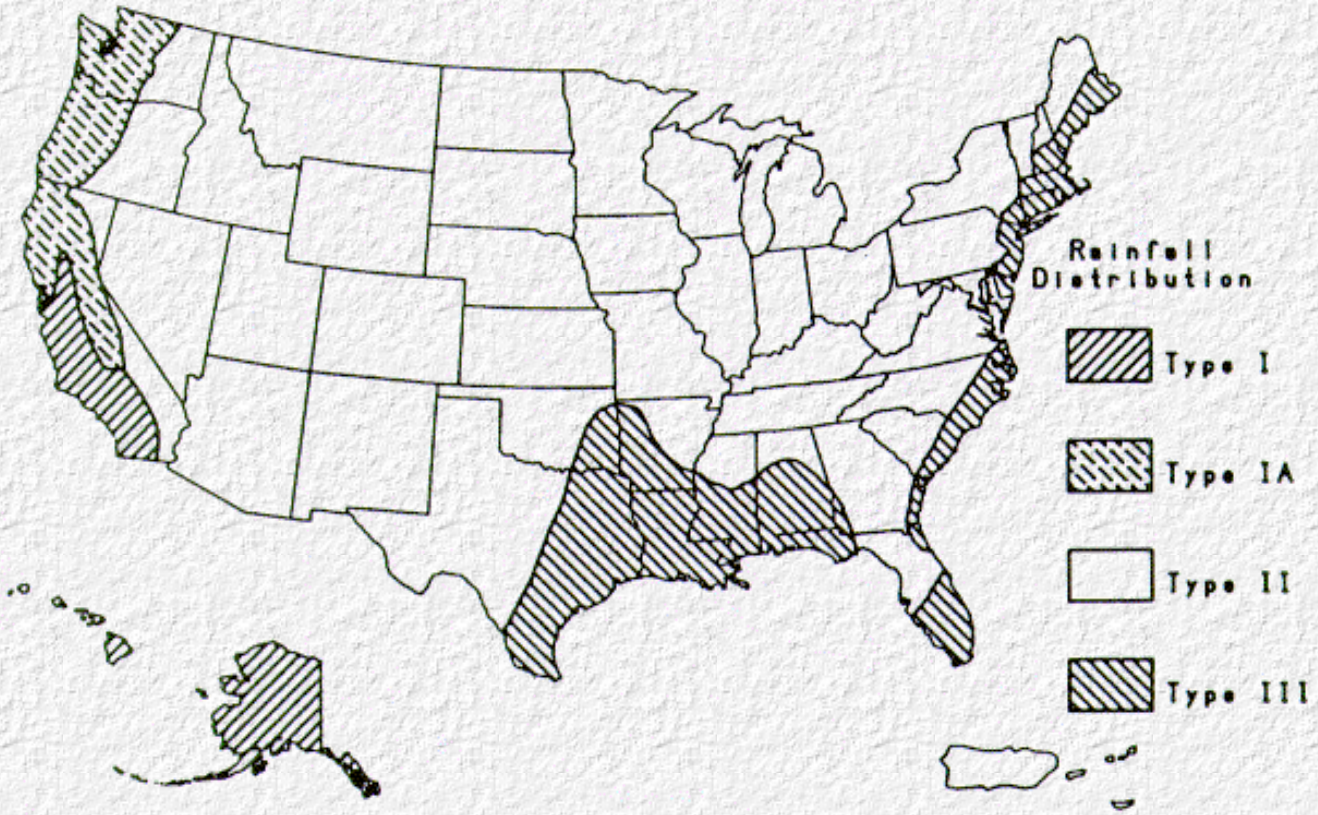


Figure 6-11. Approximate Geographic Areas for SCS Rainfall Distribution

The distributions are based on the generalized rainfall volume-duration-frequency relationships shown in technical publications of the Weather Bureau. Rainfall depths for durations from 6 minutes to 24 hours were obtained from the volume-duration-frequency information in these publications and used to derive the storm distributions. Using increments of 6 minutes, incremental rainfall depths were determined. For example, the maximum 6-minute depth was subtracted from the maximum 12-minute depth and this 12-minute depth was subtracted from the maximum 18-minute depth, and so on to 24 hours. The

distributions were formed by arranging these 6-minute incremental depths such that for any duration from 6 minutes to 24 hours, the rainfall depth for that duration and frequency will be represented as a continuous sequence of 6-minute depths.

The location of the peak was found from the analysis of measured storm events to be location dependent. For the regions with type I and IA storms, the peak intensity occurred at a storm time of about 8 hours, while for the regions with type II and III storms, the peak was found to occur at the center of the storm. Therefore for type II and III storm events, the greatest 6-minute depth is assumed to occur at about the middle of the 24-hour period, the second largest 6-minute incremental depth in the next 6 minutes and the third largest in the 6-minute interval preceding the maximum intensity. This continues with each incremental rainfall depth to be of decreasing order of magnitude. Thus the smaller increments fall at the beginning and end of the 24-hour storm.

This procedure results in the maximum 6-minute depth being contained within the maximum l-hour depth, the maximum l-hour depth is contained within the maximum 6-hour depth, and so on. Because all of the critical storm depths are contained within the storm distributions, the distributions are appropriate for designs on both small and large watersheds.

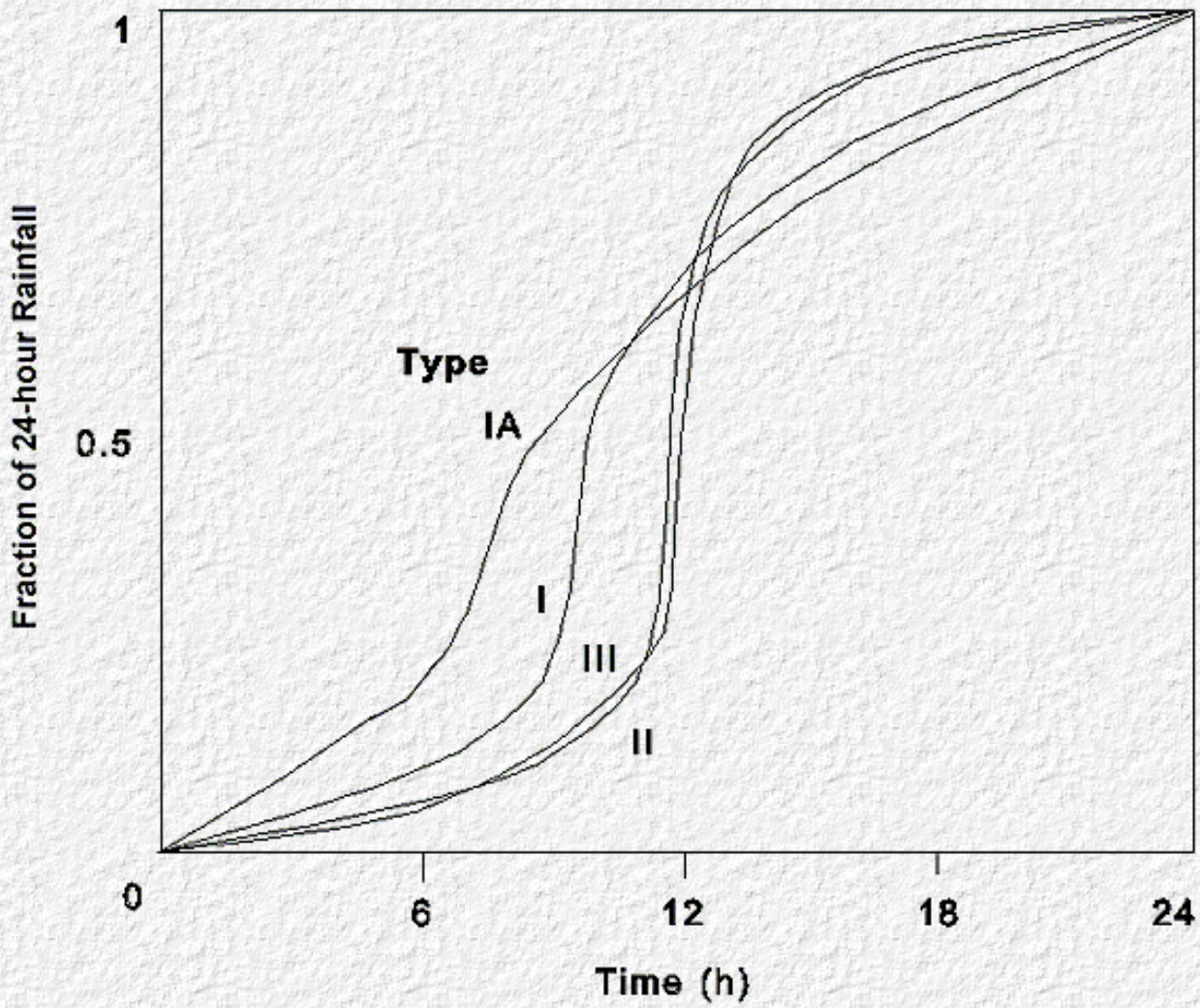


Figure 6-12. SCS 24-Hour Rainfall Distributions (Not to Scale)

The resulting distributions (Figure 6-12) are most often presented with the ordinates given on a dimensionless scale. The SCS type I and type II dimensionless distributions plot as a straight line on log-log paper. Although they do not agree exactly with IDF values from all locations in the region for which they are intended, the differences are within the accuracy of the rainfall depths read from the Weather Bureau atlases. The ordinates are given in Table 6-5 and shown in Figure 6-12 for the four SCS synthetic design storms.

Example 6-5

The procedure used to form a design storm can be illustrated with a simplified example. The design storm will have the following characteristics: duration, 6 hours; frequency, 50 years; time increment, 1 hour; location, Baltimore. The Baltimore intensity-duration-frequency curve was used to obtain the rainfall intensities for durations of 1 to 6 hours in increments of 1 hour; these intensities are given in column 3 of Table 6-6. The depth (i.e., duration times intensity) is given in column 4, with the incremental depth (column 5) being set equal to the difference between the depths for durations 1 hour apart. A center-loaded storm distribution is assumed. The incremental depths are used to form the 50-year design storm, which is given in column 6, by placing the largest incremental depth in hour 3 and the second largest incremental depth in hour 4; the remaining incremental depths are positioned by alternating their location before and after the maximum incremental depth. The maximum three hours of the design storm has a depth of 99 mm which is the depth for a 3-hour duration from the Baltimore IDF curve; this will be true for any storm duration from 1 to 6 hours. The cumulative form of the design storm is given in column 7 of Table 6-6.

Table 6-5. SCS Cumulative, Dimensionless One-Day Storms

Time (h)	Type I Storm	Type IA Storm	Type II Storm
0	0	0	0
0.5	0.008	0.010	0.0053
1.0	0.017	0.020	0.0108
1.5	0.026	0.035	0.0164
2.0	0.035	0.050	0.0223
2.5	0.045	0.067	0.0284
3.0	0.055	0.082	0.0347
3.5	0.065	0.098	0.0414
4.0	0.076	0.116	0.0483
4.5	0.087	0.135	0.0555
5.0	0.099	0.156	0.0632
5.5	0.112	0.180	0.0712
6.0	0.126	0.206	0.0797
6.5	0.140	0.237	0.0887
7.0	0.156	0.268	0.0984
7.5	0.174	0.310	0.1089
8.0	0.194	0.425	0.1203
8.5	0.219	0.480	0.1328
9.0	0.254	0.520	0.1467
9.5	0.303	0.550	0.1625
10.0	0.515	0.577	0.1808
10.5	0.583	0.601	0.2042
11.0	0.624	0.624	0.2351
11.5	0.655	0.645	0.2833
12.0	0.682	0.664	0.6632
12.5	0.706	0.683	0.7351
13.0	0.728	0.701	0.7724
13.5	0.748	0.719	0.7989
14.0	0.766	0.736	0.8197
14.5	0.783	0.753	0.8380
15.0	0.799	0.769	0.8538
15.5	0.815	0.785	0.8676
16.0	0.830	0.800	0.8801
16.5	0.844	0.815	0.8914

17.0	0.857	0.830	0.9019
17.5	0.870	0.844	0.9115
18.0	0.882	0.858	0.9206
18.5	0.893	0.871	0.9291
19.0	0.905	0.844	0.9371
19.5	0.916	0.896	0.9446
20.0	0.926	0.908	0.9519
20.5	0.936	0.920	0.9588
21.0	0.946	0.932	0.9653
21.5	0.956	0.944	0.9717
22.0	0.965	0.956	0.9777
22.5	0.974	0.967	0.9836
23.0	0.983	0.978	0.9892
23.5	0.992	0.989	0.9947
24.0	1.000	1.000	1.0000

A dimensionless design storm can be developed by transforming the cumulative design storm of column 7 of Table 6-6 by dividing it by the total depth of 117.6 mm. The dimensionless cumulative design storm derived from the 50-year intensities is shown in column 8 of Table 6-6. The calculation of a dimensionless design storm for a 2-year frequency is shown in the lower part of Table 6-6.

In comparing the 50-year and 2-year dimensionless design storms, it should be apparent that a cumulative design storm could be developed for any design frequency by multiplying the 6-hour rainfall depth for that frequency by the average ordinates of the dimensionless cumulative design storms of Table 6-6, which is approximately [0.05, 0.14, 0.78, 0.90, 0.97, 1.00]. Based on this dimensionless cumulative design storm (see Figure 6-13a), the 10-year cumulative design storm, which has a 6-hour depth of 88.2 mm (14.7 mm/h from the Baltimore IDF curve multiplied by 6 hours), would be [4.4, 12.3, 68.8, 79.4, 85.6, 88.2 mm], which is also shown in Figure 6-13a. Thus the 10-year design storm would be [4.4, 7.9, 56.5, 10.6, 6.2, 2.6 mm/h]. The 10-year, 6-hour design storm is shown in Figure 6-13b with ordinates expressed as intensities.

6.2.3 Depth-Area Adjustments

The rainfall depths from IDF curves represent estimates for small areas. For designs on areas larger than a few square kilometers, the point rainfall estimates obtained from IDF curves must be adjusted. The point estimates represent extreme values. As the spatial extent of a storm increases, the depth of rainfall decreases; storms have a spatial pattern as well as a temporal variation. Figure 6-14 shows a design storm rainfall pattern that is used in estimating probable maximum floods. Rainfall depths, which depend on the total rainfall and the depth-area relationship used at the location, decrease with increasing area. In Figure 6-14, the greatest depth would be for the innermost isohyet.

Table 6-6. Development of 6-hour Dimensionless Cumulative Design Storms for Baltimore

(1) T (yr.)	(2) Duration (h)	(3) Intensity (mm/h)	(4) Depth (mm)	(5) Incremental depth (mm)	(6) Design storm (mm)	(7) Cumulative design storm (mm)	(8) Dimensionless cumulative design storm
50	1	76.2	76.2	76.2	6.2	6.2	0.053
	2	44.5	89.0	12.8	10.0	16.2	0.138
	3	33.0	99.0	10.0	76.2	92.4	0.786
	4	26.7	106.8	7.8	12.8	105.2	0.895
	5	22.6	113.0	6.2	7.8	113.0	0.961
	6	19.6	117.6	4.6	4.6	117.6	1.000
2	1	34.3	34.3	34.3	2.7	2.7	0.049

	2	20.8	41.6	7.3	4.9	7.6	0.139
	3	15.5	46.5	4.9	34.3	41.9	0.767
	4	12.7	50.8	4.3	7.3	49.2	0.901
	5	10.7	53.5	2.7	4.3	53.5	0.980
	6	9.1	54.6	1.1	1.1	54.6	1.000

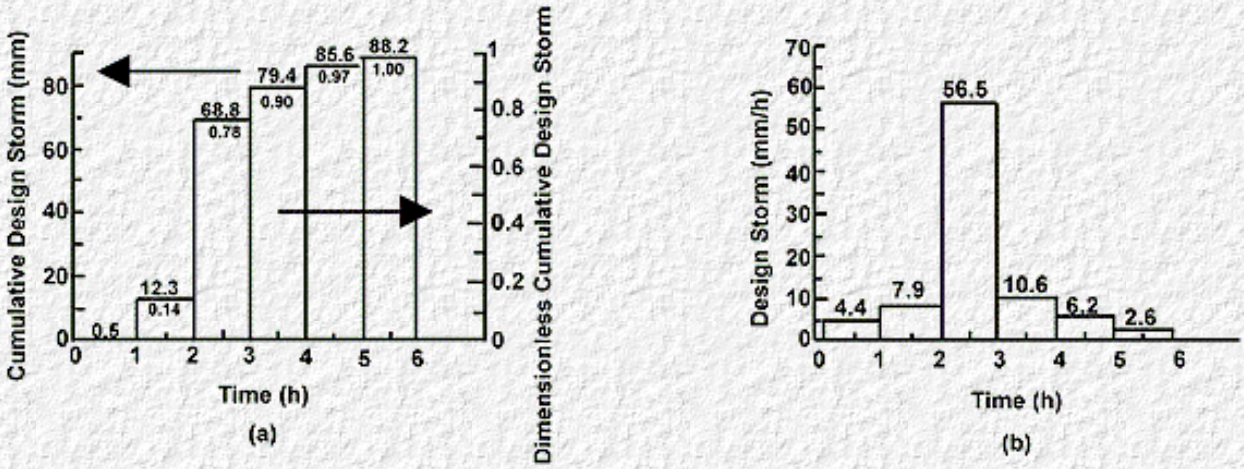


Figure 6-13. 6-Hour Storms for Example 6-5: (a) Dimensionless Cumulative Design Storm and the Cumulative Design Storm and (b) the Design Storm

When selecting a point rainfall to apply uniformly over a watershed, the point value should be reduced to account for the areal extent of the storm. The reduction is made using a depth-area adjustment factor. The factor is a function of the drainage area (square kilometers) and the rainfall duration. Figure 6-15 shows the depth-area adjustment factors based on Weather Bureau Technical Paper No. 40. This set of curves can be used unless specific curves derived from regional analyses are available. Figure 6-15 shows that the adjustment factor decreases from 100 percent as the watershed area increases and as the storm duration decreases. Beyond a drainage area of 800 km^2 the adjustment factor shows little change.

6.2.4 Design Storm from Measured Storm Data

Several characteristics of design storms have already been defined in conjunction with construction of unit hydrographs. The design storms should be simple, individually occurring events with near uniform distribution over the period D of rainfall excess. In addition, the storms should be uniform over the entire drainage area and be of sufficient intensity and duration to produce a measurable hydrograph.

The preferred method of determining an appropriate design storm is to analyze precipitation and runoff records for flood events of the magnitudes with which the designer is concerned. Storms that produce floods of the desired frequency could be used to develop hyetographs. Records need not necessarily be for the specific drainage basin nor do they need to all be from the same watershed. Instead it is the characteristics of storms that produce large flood events that are sought. What are the durations and time variations of intensities? Are these storms characteristic of short, intense, convective storms or longer, more uniformly distributed cyclonic storms? Such information can help in generalizing the duration and intensity variation into a typical pattern to be used for design.

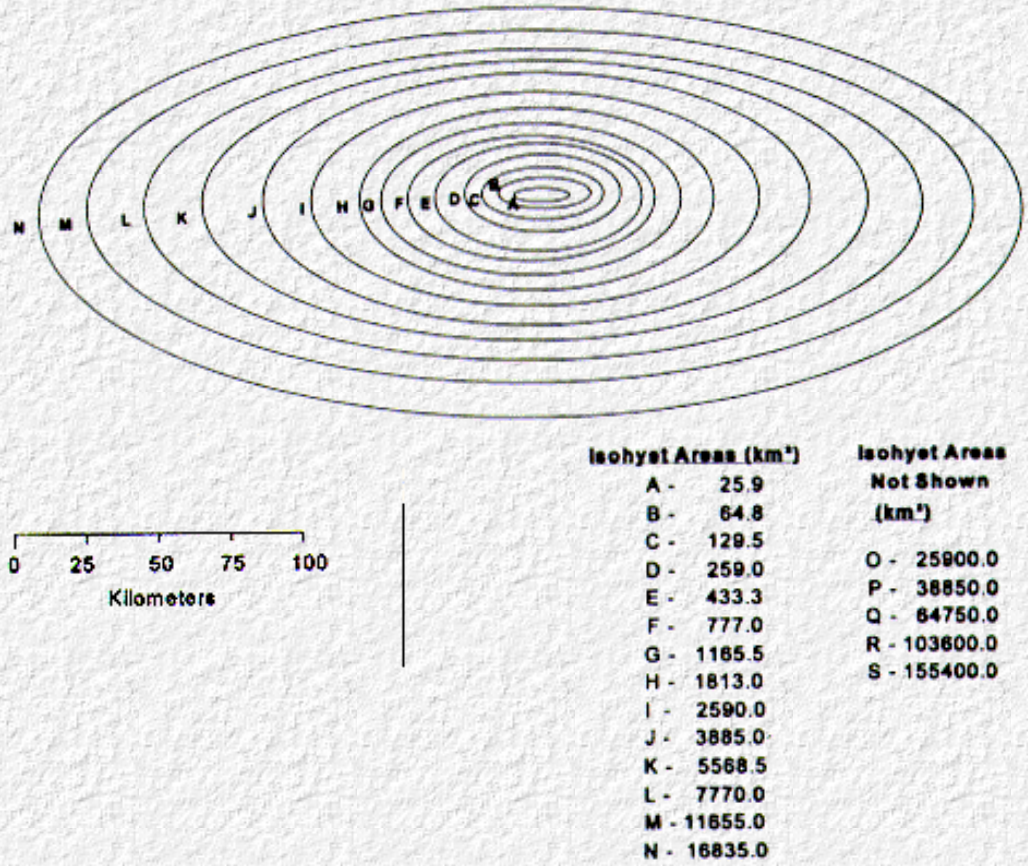


Figure 6-14. Standard Isohyetal Pattern

6.2.5 Design Storm by Triangular Hyetograph

In 1983, Yen and Chow developed a method for approximating a design storm hyetograph by a triangular distribution for watersheds smaller than 50 km^2. Their approach recognizes that a rainfall hyetograph, being a geometric figure, can be characterized by its moment with respect to the beginning of precipitation. Since no two rainstorms are alike, the statistical means of the moments of many rainstorms can be used as the average characteristics of an expected storm.

The triangular representation used by Yen and Chow (1983) is illustrated in Figure 6-16. The important geometric characteristics are the peak intensity, h, the time to peak, a, and the time dimension, b, equal to the duration t_d, minus the time to peak intensity. The hyetograph is then normalized as shown in Figure 6-17 using the duration of the storm, t_d, and the total depth of rainfall, D, in mm. Once the normalized value of the time to peak is known, the remaining values of the triangular hyetograph can be calculated from geometrics. The depth of rainfall depends on the duration and return period and typically would be specified by design practice or determined through a risk analysis or other economic evaluation. The critical duration of the design storm is assumed to equal the time of concentration so that the entire watershed would be contributing to the flow at the point of interest.

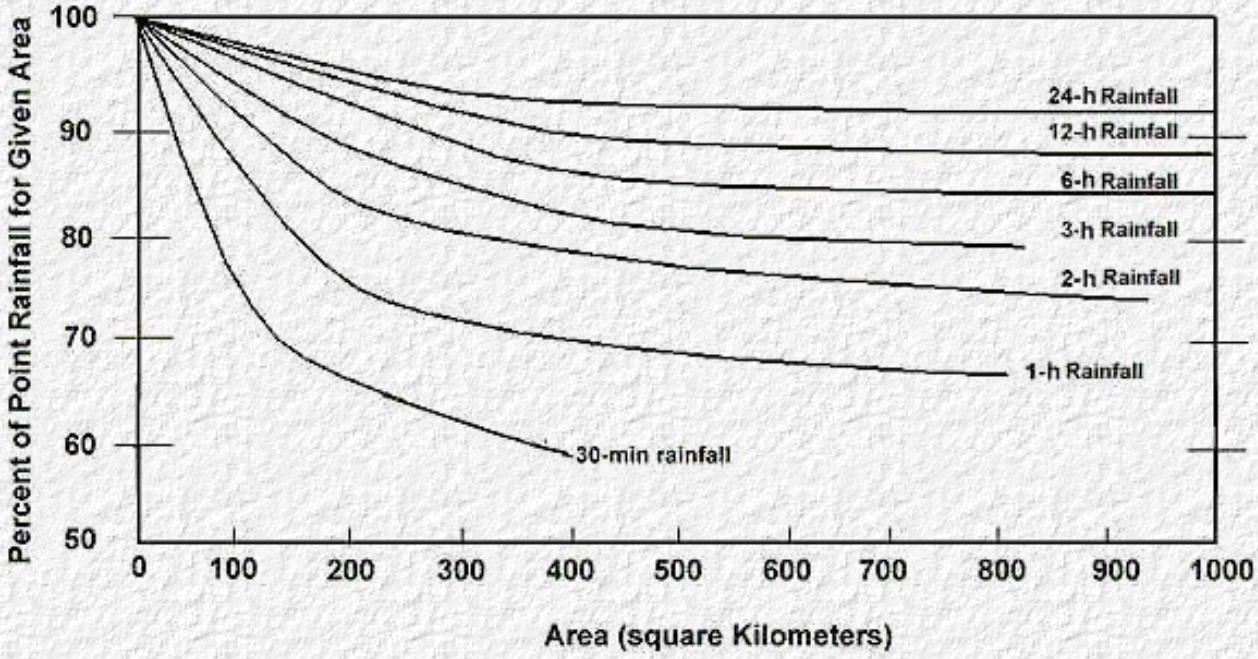


Figure 6-15. Depth-Area Curves for Adjusting Point Rainfalls

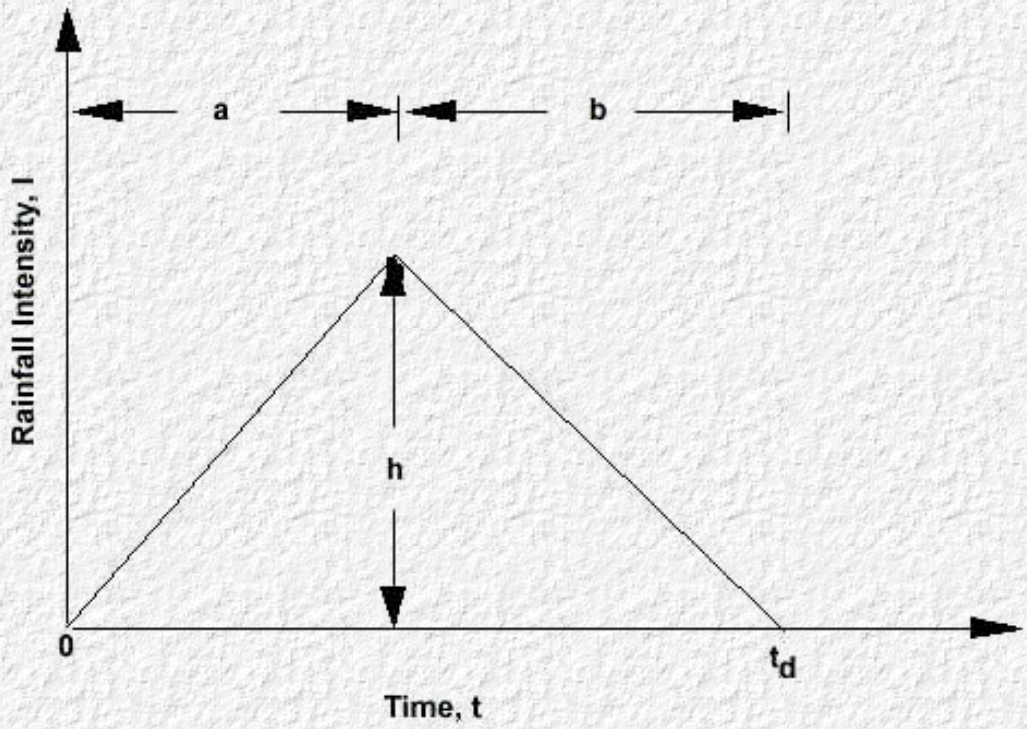


Figure 6-16. Triangular Hyetograph

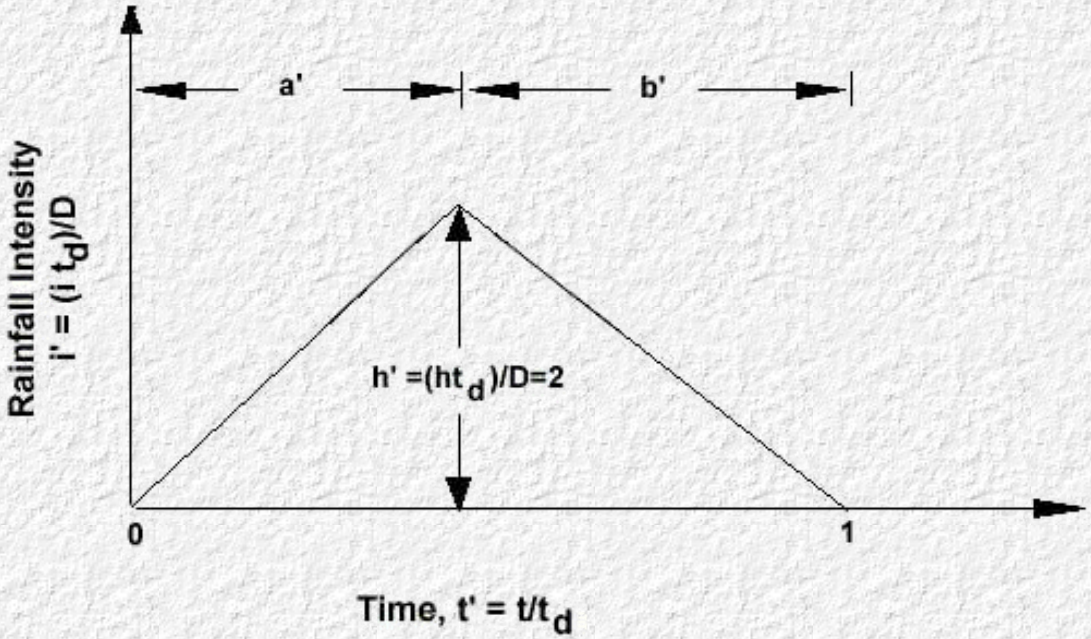


Figure 6-17. Normalized Triangular Hyetograph

Yen and Chow (1983) analyzed 293,946 storms from 222 National Weather Stations (NWS) and 13 Agricultural Research Service (ARS) raingage stations to determine the statistical values of the normalized hyetograph parameters. They presented the results in a series of maps with point values of the normalized time to peak intensity reported throughout the country for the NWS storms with durations of 2, 3, 4, and 5 hours and for durations of 10 to 20 minutes and 1, 2, and 4 hours for the 13 ARS raingage stations. A national map of the peak rain time of the triangular hyetograph is also presented which is suitable for use in highway design for heavy rainstorms.

6.3 Design Hydrograph Synthesis

For basins without measured data, synthetic methods can be used to develop unit hydrographs. These methods tend to be somewhat inflexible in that they use standard shapes for the unit hydrographs.

The United States covers a broad spectrum of geographical and climatic regimes. Consequently, no one nationwide synthetic unit hydrograph method is applicable throughout the country. Therefore, a number of different synthetic unit hydrograph procedures have evolved. Two of the most widely used are the Snyder method (Section 6.3.2) and the SCS method (Section 6.3.3).

As the name suggests, a design hydrograph is a hydrograph that has characteristics that are believed to represent the flood conditions at the limit considered acceptable. The design hydrograph is usually generated using a design-storm hyetograph and a unit hydrograph. However, the design hydrograph could also be an actual storm hydrograph that was experienced at the design location. In either case, the design hydrograph may have an exceedence frequency associated with it. In the case of design-storm modeling, it is common to assume that the frequency of the runoff hydrograph is the same as the frequency of the design hyetograph.

If precipitation and streamflow records are available for a particular design site, the development of the design hydrograph is a straightforward procedure. Unit hydrographs can be determined from the data using the methods described in Section 6.1. Rainfall records can be readily analyzed to determine the design hyetograph. Using the convolution process the unit hydrograph and the rainfall excess produce the direct-runoff hydrograph.

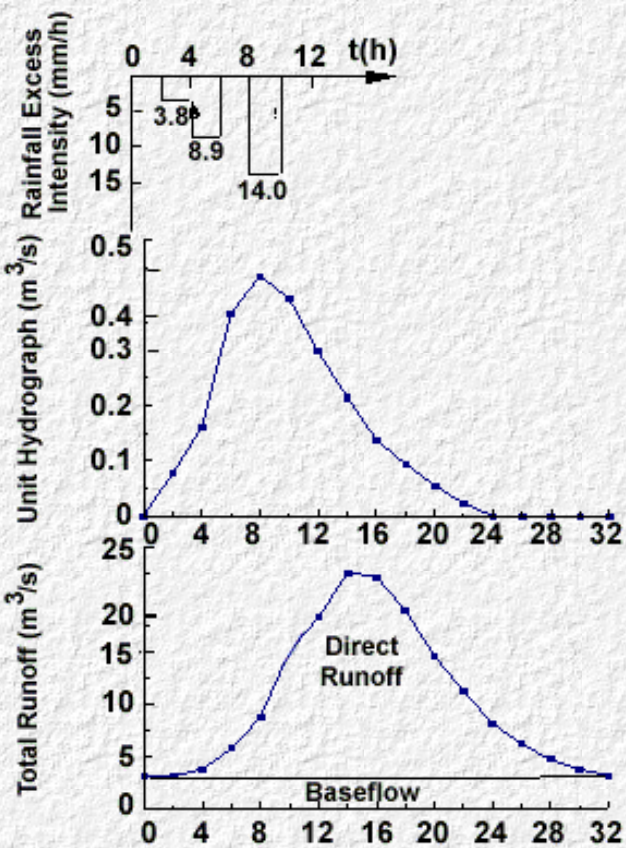


Figure 6-18. Example of Hydrograph Synthesis

Example 6-7

Sanders (1990) provides an example of developing a design hydrograph. In this example the unit hydrograph ordinates have been determined for a 2-hour duration, and it is desired to compute the flood hydrograph for a complex storm over a 10-hour period. Figure 6-18 shows the rainfall excess hyetograph (mm/h) and the unit hydrograph. The UH ordinates are given in column 2 of Table 6-7. The intensities must be converted to depths prior to convolution. Since the intensities have units of mm/h and the time interval is two hours, then the rainfall-excess depths are 7.6, 17.8, and 28.0 mm. The two periods in which there was no rainfall excess must be considered and the appropriate translation made when performing the convolution process. The base flow, which was initially separated out before determining the unit hydrograph, is added back to the direct runoff in order to determine the design hydrograph. This is shown in columns 8 and 9 of Table 6-7.

6.3.1 S-Hydrograph Method

Based on the unit hydrograph assumptions, it is possible to transform a unit hydrograph of specified duration into one with a different duration. The method of making the transform is called the S-hydrograph method; it is often referred to as the S-curve or S-graph method.

Suppose it is desired to find a 6-hour unit hydrograph from an existing 3-hour unit hydrograph (1 mm of excess rainfall in 3 hours). Assuming independence of antecedent conditions, a second 3-hour unit graph is lagged or displaced 3 hours from the first as illustrated in Figure 6-19. The ordinates are then added which yields 2 mm of runoff in 6 hours. Dividing these ordinates by 2 gives the 6-hour unit hydrograph also shown in Figure 6-19. The division by 2 is necessary because the sum of the two 3-hour unit hydrographs produces a hydrograph with a depth of 2 mm. To transform it to a UH with a volume of 1 mm, the 2-mm hydrograph must be divided by 2. It is important to recognize that the peak discharge of the 6-hour UH is lower than the peak of the 3-hour UH and that the time to peak is longer. This procedure is valid only when doubling the duration of a UH. In general, the S-hydrograph method should be used.

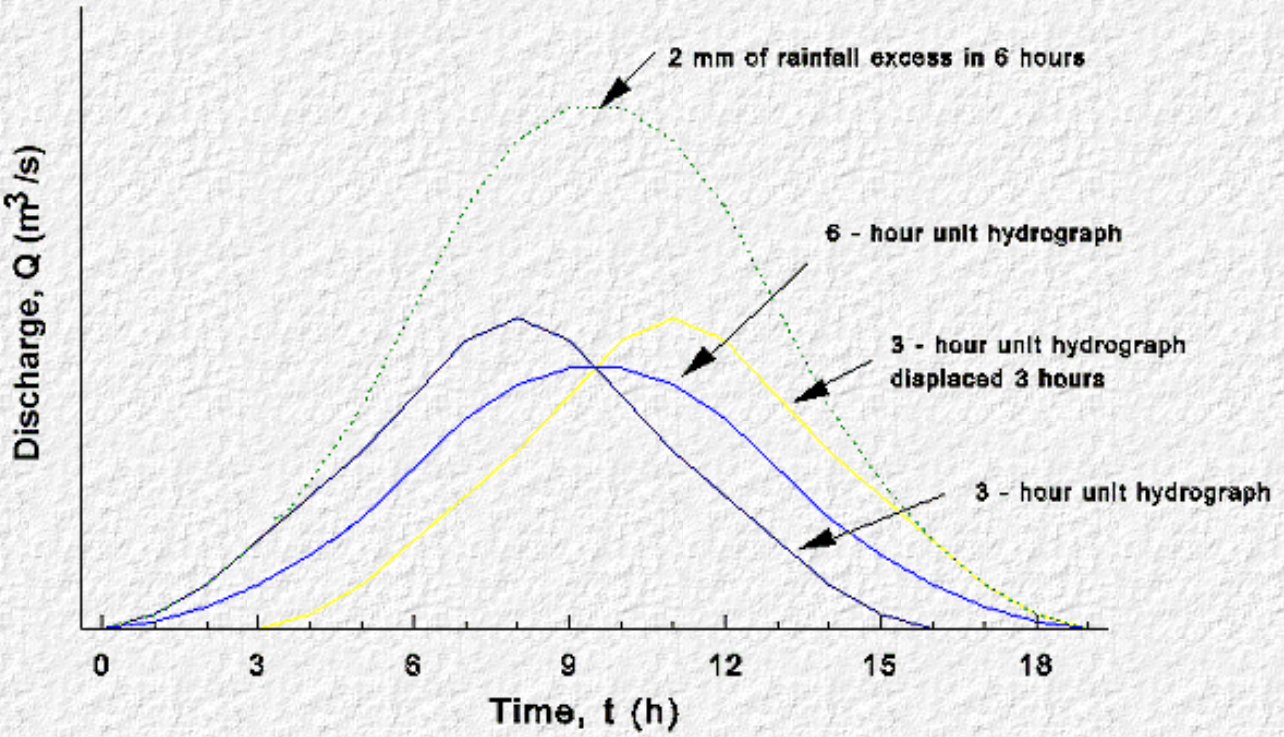


Figure 6-19. Development of a 6-Hour Unit Hydrograph from a 3-Hour Unit Hydrograph

Table 6-7. Calculation of Total Runoff by Convolving Rainfall Excess with the Unit Hydrograph

(1) Time (h)	(2) Unit hydrograph (m³/s)	(3) UH* 0.0	(4) UH* 7.6	(5) UH* 17.8	(6) UH* 0.0	(7) UH* 28.0	(8) Baseflow (m³/s)	(9) Total runoff (m³/s)
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3.12	3.12
2	0.077	0	0	0	0	0	3.12	3.12
4	0.160	0	0.59	0	0	0	3.12	3.71
6	0.366	0	1.22	1.37	0	0	3.12	5.71
8	0.434	0	2.78	2.85	0	0	3.12	8.75
10	0.393	0	3.30	6.51	0	2.16	3.12	15.09
12	0.297	0	2.99	7.73	0	4.48	3.12	18.32
14	0.214	0	2.26	7.00	0	10.25	3.12	22.63
16	0.137	0	1.63	5.29	0	12.15	3.12	22.19
18	0.094	0	1.04	3.81	0	11.00	3.12	18.97
20	0.055	0	0.71	2.44	0	8.32	3.12	14.59
22	0.022	0	0.42	1.67	0	5.99	3.12	11.20
24	0	0	0.17	0.98	0	3.84	3.12	8.11
26			0	0.39	0	2.63	3.12	6.14
28				0	0	1.54	3.12	4.66
30					0	0.62	3.12	3.74
32						0	3.12	3.12

To change the unit hydrograph from a longer duration to a shorter duration or to any duration that is not a multiple of the shorter duration it is necessary to develop the S-curve (summation curve). The S-curve is the summation of an infinite number of unit hydrographs of specified duration, each lagged from the preceding one by the duration of rainfall excess as shown in Figure 6-20. The S-curve approaches a constant value of the discharge equal to (1-mm) * (drainage area)/ duration in consistent units, so practically it is necessary to include only enough lagged unit hydrographs to define the S-curve up to this level.

The unit hydrograph for a new unit duration is obtained by lagging the S-curve by the new unit duration, subtracting the two S-curves from one another and multiplying the resulting hydrograph ordinates by the

ratio of the unit duration of the unit hydrograph used to construct the S-curve to the unit duration of the unit hydrograph being developed. For example, if a 3-hour unit hydrograph is to be developed from a 6-hour unit hydrograph, the ordinates are multiplied by two (2) to obtain a volume equal to 1 mm. Similarly, in going from 6 hours to 15 hours, the multiplier is 6/15 or 0.4.

Example 6-8

The ordinates of a 3-hour unit hydrograph are given in column 2 of Table 6-8. The peak of 15.2 m^3/s occurs at the storm time of 12 hours. Assuming that a 6-hour UH is wanted, the S-curve is computed by forming the cumulative hydrograph (column 3). Since the desired 6-hour unit hydrograph has a unit duration of twice the unit duration of the 3-hour unit hydrograph, the S-curve is offset by two time intervals, or six hours (see column 4). (If a 9-hour unit hydrograph was needed, then the offset would be three time intervals or nine hours.) The difference between the S-curve (column 3) and the offset S-curve (column 4) is a 6-hour hydrograph (column 5) that has a volume of 2-mm. (If a 9-hour unit hydrograph was needed, then the 9-hour hydrograph would have a volume of 3 mm.) A 6-hour unit hydrograph that has a volume of 1 mm (column 6) is computed by dividing the 6-hour hydrograph of column 5 by 2 mm.

Assuming that the drainage area of the watershed is 1242 km^2, the volume of the unit hydrograph can be computed with the trapezoidal rule:

$$115\ \frac{m^3}{s} * 3\ h * \frac{3600\ s}{h} * \frac{1000\ mm}{m} * \frac{1}{1242\ km^2} * \frac{1\ km^2}{10^6 m^2} = 1\ mm$$

It is of interest to note that the peak of the 6-hour unit hydrograph is smaller than the peak of the 3-hour UH (i.e., 14.95 vs 15.2 m^3/s). The longer duration of rainfall excess is associated with greater smoothing or attenuation of the runoff, thus the smaller peak. The peak of the 6-hour UH also occurs 3 hours later than that of the 3-hour UH.

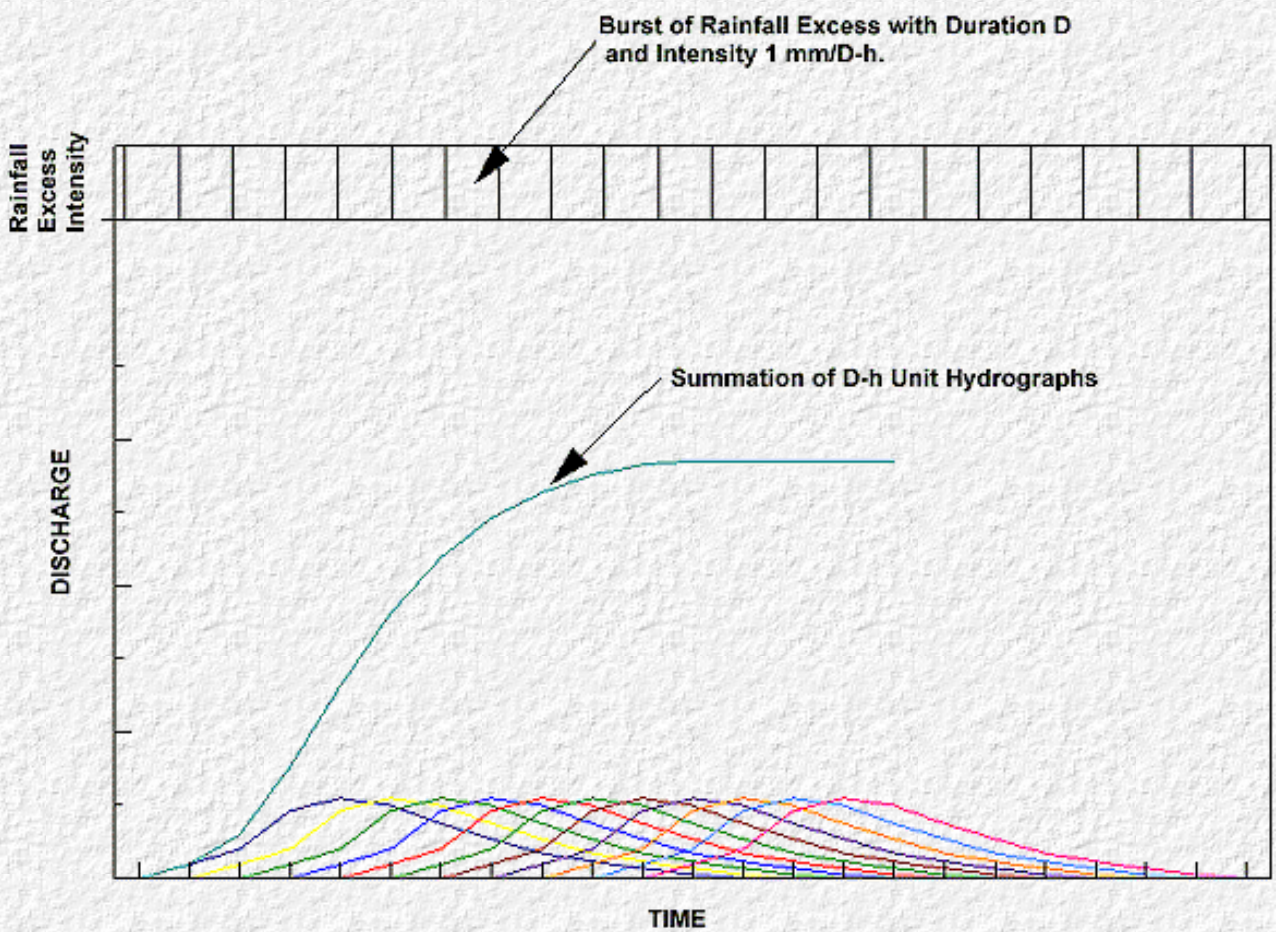


Figure 6-20. Graphical Illustration of the S-Curve Construction

Table 6-8. Computation of a 6-hour Unit Hydrograph from a 3-hour Unit Hydrograph Using the S-curve Method

(1) Time (h)	(2) 3-hour UH (m^3/s)	(3) S-Curve (m^3/s)	(4) Offset S-curve (m^3/s)	(5) 6-hour Hydrograph (m^3/s)	(6) 6-hour UH (m^3/s)
0	0	0	0	0	0
3	3.7	3.7	0	3.7	1.85
6	9.6	13.3	0	13.3	6.65
9	13.1	26.4	3.7	22.7	11.35
12	15.2	41.6	13.3	28.3	14.15
15	14.7	56.3	26.4	29.9	14.95
18	13.3	69.6	41.6	28.0	14.00
21	11.8	81.4	56.3	25.1	12.55
24	9.4	90.8	69.6	21.2	10.60
27	7.9	98.7	81.4	17.3	8.65
30	6.0	104.7	90.8	13.9	6.95
33	4.5	109.2	98.7	10.5	5.25
36	3.1	112.3	104.7	7.6	3.80
39	1.9	114.2	109.2	5.0	2.50
42	0.8	115.0	112.3	2.7	1.35
45	0.0	115.0	114.2	0.8	0.40
48	0.0	115.0	115.0	0.0	0.00
					sum = 115.00

6.3.2 Snyder Unit Hydrograph

This method developed in 1938 has been used extensively by the Corps of Engineers. In the Snyder method, two empirically defined terms, C_t and C_p, and the physiographic characteristics of the drainage basin are used to determine a D-hour unit hydrograph. The entire time distribution of the unit hydrograph is not explicitly determined using this method but seven points are given through which a smooth curve can be drawn.

Certain key parameters of the unit hydrograph are evaluated and from these a characteristic unit hydrograph is constructed. The key parameters are the lag time, the unit hydrograph duration, the peak discharge, and the hydrograph time widths at 50 percent and 75 percent of the peak discharge. With these points a characteristic unit hydrograph is sketched. The volume of this hydrograph is then checked to ensure it equals 1 mm of runoff. If it does not, the ordinates are adjusted accordingly. A typical Snyder hydrograph is shown in Figure 6-21.

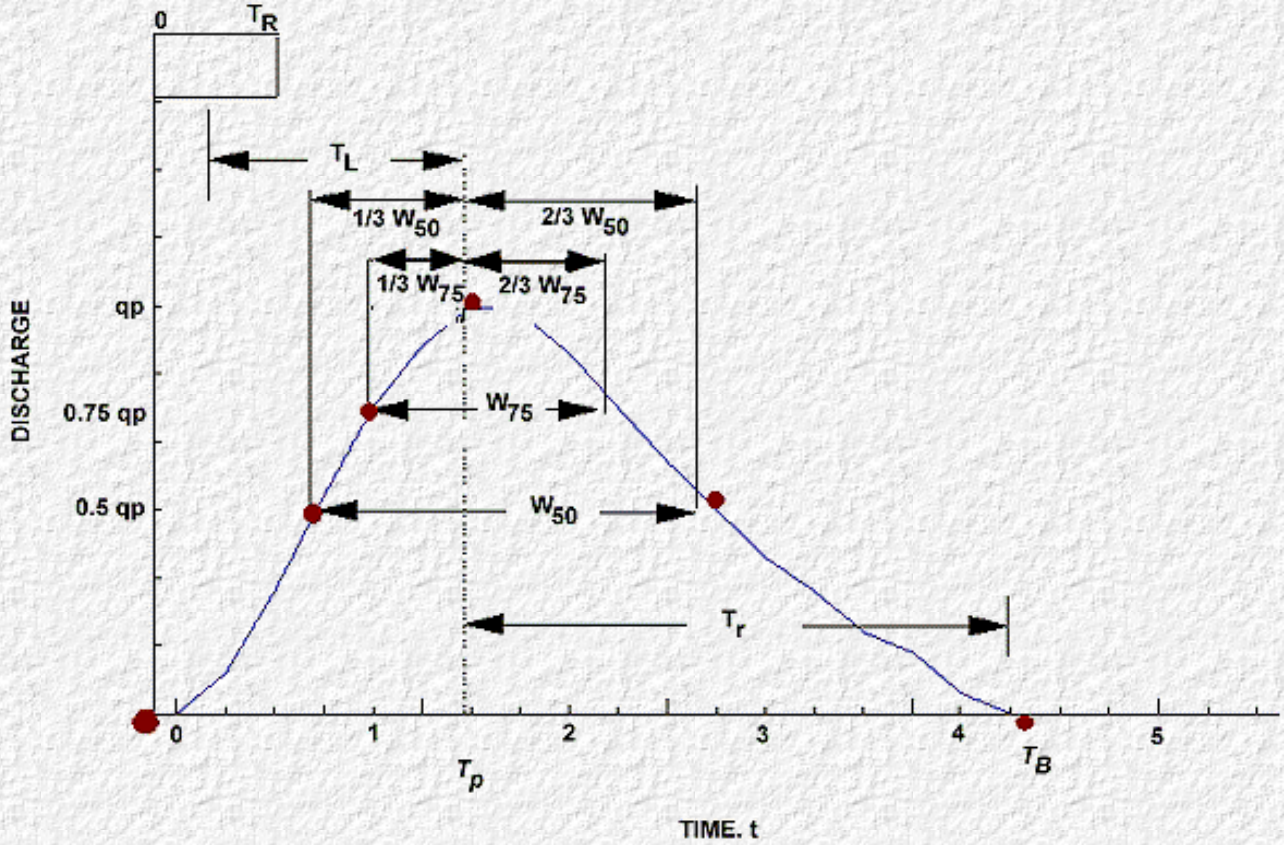


Figure 6-21. Snyder Synthetic Unit Hydrograph Definition

A step-by-step procedure to develop the Snyder unit hydrograph is presented as follows:

Step 1. Data Collection and Determination of Physiographic Constants

Snyder developed his method using data for watersheds in the Appalachian Highlands and consequently the values derived for the constants C_t and C_p are characteristic of this area of the country. However, the general method has been successfully applied throughout the country by appropriate modification of these empirical constants. Values for C_t and C_p need to be determined for the watershed under consideration. These can be obtained from other studies and textbooks or by analyzing unit hydrographs derived for gaged streams in the same general area. Another source of information is the Corps of Engineers, District Offices. C_t is a coefficient that represents the variation of unit hydrograph lag time with watershed slope and storage. In his Appalachian Highlands study, Snyder found C_t to vary from 1.8 to 2.2. Further studies have shown that extreme values of C_t vary from 0.4 in Southern California to 8.0 in the Eastern Gulf of Mexico. C_p is a coefficient that represents the variation of the unit hydrograph peak discharge with watershed slope, storage, lag time, and effective area. Values of C_p range between 0.4 and 0.94.

In addition to these empirical coefficients, the watershed area, A, in km^2, the length along the main channel from the outlet to the divide, L in km, and the length along the main channel to a point opposite the watershed centroid, L_{ca} in km, needs to be determined from available topographic maps.

Step 2. Determination of Lag Time

The next step is to determine the lag time, T_L, of the unit hydrograph. The lag time is the time from the centroid of the excess rainfall to the hydrograph peak. The following empirical equation is used to estimate the lag time:

$$T_L = 0.7543\ C_t (L\ L_{ca})^{0.3} \qquad 6\text{-}8$$

where:

T_L is the lag time in hours
C_t is the empirical coefficient defined above
L is the length along main channel from outlet to divide in kilometers
L_{ca} is the length along main channel from outlet to a point opposite the watershed centroid in kilometers.

Step 3. Determine Unit Duration of the Unit Hydrograph

The relationship developed by Snyder for the unit duration of the excess rainfall, T_R in hours, is a function of the lag time computed above, namely

$$T_R = \frac{T_L}{5.5} \qquad 6\text{-}9$$

Equation 6-9 provides an initial value of T_R.

A relationship has been developed to adjust the computed lag time for other unit durations. This is necessary because the equation above may result in inconvenient values of the unit duration. The adjustment relationship is:

$$T_{L\ (adj.)} = T_L + 0.25(T'_R - T_R) \qquad 6\text{-}10$$

where $T_{L(adj.)}$ is the adjusted lag time for the new duration in hours, T_L is the original lag time as computed above in hours, T_R is the original unit duration (i.e., Equation 6-9) in hours, and T_R' is the desired unit duration in hours.

As an example, if the originally computed lag time, T_L, was 12.5 hours, then the corresponding unit duration would be (12.5/5.5) or 2.3 hours. It would be more convenient to have a unit duration of 2.0 hours, so the lag time is adjusted as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} T_{L\ (adj.)} &= T_L + 0.25\,(T'_R - T_R) \\ &= 12.5 + 0.25(2.0 - 2.3) \\ &= 12.43\ h \end{aligned}$$

An alternative procedure would be to use the S-curve method (Section 6.3.1) to convert the 2.3-hour UH to a 2.0-hour UH, but the above empirical procedure is much simpler.

Step 4. Determine Peak Discharge

The peak discharge for the unit hydrograph is determined from the following equation:

$$Q_p = \frac{C_p A}{3.6\ T_{L(adj.)}} \qquad 6\text{-}11$$

where Q_p is the peak discharge in m^3/s, C_p is the empirical coefficient defined above, and A is the watershed area in square kilometers.

Step 5. Determine Time Base of Unit Hydrograph

The time base, T_B, of the unit hydrograph was determined by Snyder to be

approximately equal to

$$T_B = 3 + \frac{T_{L(adj.)}}{8} \qquad 6\text{-}12$$

where:

T_B is the time of the synthetic unit hydrograph in days.

This relationship, while reasonable for larger watersheds, may not be applicable for smaller watersheds. A more realistic value for smaller watersheds is to use 3 to 5 times the time to peak as a base for the unit hydrograph. The time to peak is the time from the beginning of the rising limb of the hydrograph to the peak.

Step 6. Estimate W_{50} and W_{75}

The time widths of the unit hydrograph at discharges equal to 50 percent and 75 percent of the peak discharges, W_{50} and W_{75}, respectively, have been found to be approximated by the following equations:

$$W_{50} = 0.177 \left(\frac{Q_p}{A}\right)^{-1.075} \qquad 6\text{-}13$$

and

$$W_{75} = 0.1044 \left(\frac{Q_p}{A}\right)^{-1.075} \qquad 6\text{-}14$$

where:

both W_{50} and W_{75} are measured in hours, Q_p is in m^3/s, and A is in km^2.

Step 7. Construct Unit Hydrograph

Using the values computed in the previous steps, the unit hydrograph can now be sketched, remembering that the total depth of runoff must equal 1 millimeter. A rule of thumb to assist in sketching the unit hydrograph is that the W_{50} and W_{75} time widths should be apportioned with one-third to the left of the peak and two-thirds to the right of the peak.

Example 6-9

A synthetic unit hydrograph is to be constructed for a watershed of 2266 km^2, where L is measured to be 133.6 km and L_{ca} is 65 km. For this region, average values of C_t = 1.32 and C_p = 0.63 have been found to apply. Therefore, T_L and T_R are:

$$T_L = 0.7543\ C_t\ (L\,L_{ca})^{0.3}$$

$$= 0.7543 * 1.32\ (133.6 * 65)^{0.3} = 15.1\ h$$

$$T_R = \frac{T_L}{5.5} = 2.75\ h\ (use\ 3\ h)$$

A 3-hour unit hydrograph is desired:

$$T_{L\,(adj.)} = T_L + 0.25(T'_R - T_R) = 15.1 + 0.25(3 - 2.75) = 15.2h$$

$$Q_P = \frac{C_p A}{3.6 T_{L\,(adj.)}} = \frac{(0.63)2266}{3.6(15.2)} = 26.1 m^3/s$$

$$T_B = 3 + \frac{T_{L\,(adj.)}}{8} = 3 + \frac{15.2}{8} = 4.9 days = 117.6h$$

$$W_{50} = 0.177\left(\frac{Q_p}{A}\right)^{-1.075} = 0.177\left(\frac{26.1}{2226}\right)^{-1.075} = 21.5h (use 21h)$$

$$W_{75} = 0.1044\left(\frac{Q_p}{A}\right)^{-1.075} = 0.1044\left(\frac{26.1}{2226}\right)^{-1.075} = 12.7h (use 12h)$$

Compared to the hydrograph widths at 50 and 75 percent of the peak flow, a time base of 117.6 hours is very long. To obtain a more realistic value, it is assumed that the time base is 4.5 times the time to peak, or:

$$T_B = 4.5(T_{L\,(adj.)} + \frac{1}{2}T_R) = 4.5\left[15.2 + \frac{1}{2}(2.75)\right] = 74.6 \;\; h \;\; (use \;\; 75 \;\; h)$$

These points are plotted in Figure 6-22, and a smooth hydrograph shape is fitted with the key dimensions. The volume under the unit hydrograph is then computed using the trapezoidal rule:

$$\Delta t \sum_{1=0}^{25} U_i = 178.8 \frac{m^3}{s} * 3 \;\; h * \frac{3600 \;\; s}{h} * \frac{1}{2266 \;\; km^2} * \frac{1 \;\; km^2}{10^6 \;\; m^2} * \frac{1000 \;\; mm}{m}$$

$$= 0.8522 \;\; mm$$

with the discharge ordinates being scaled from the figure and listed in Column 2 of Table 6-9. The total volume is 0.8522 mm, which is less than the required 1 mm. The volume must be increased to 1 mm in a reasonable and systematic way. The procedure described below is recommended for the following reasons:

1. The time to peak and peak discharge are preserved
2. The bulk of the volume is added to the recession limb of the hydrograph, which is more uncertain than the rest of the hydrograph
3. The time base is affected, but is only approximated by the Equation 6-12.

Since the first estimate of the unit hydrograph was approximately 15 percent less than the necessary 1 mm, a second approximation was sketched (see Figure 6-22) with the ordinates given in column 3 of Table 6-9. The depth was computed using the trapezoidal rule:

$$\Delta t \sum_{i=0}^{25} U_i = 202.8 \frac{m^3}{s} * 3h * \frac{3600 \;\; s}{h} * \frac{1}{2266 \;\; km^2} * \frac{1 \;\; Km^2}{10^6 \;\; m^2} * \frac{1000 \;\; mm}{m}$$

$$= 0.967 \;\; mm$$

Thus, the second approximation is about 3.5 percent less than the required 1 mm. The ordinates on the rising and recession limbs were modified by systematically adding to the ordinates, with the resulting unit hydrograph given in column 4 of Table 6-9. The resulting unit hydrograph has a depth of 1 mm.

The final unit hydrograph (see Figure 6-22 and Table 6-9) is a 3-hour unit hydrograph for the 2266 square

kilometer watershed. It can be used in the same manner as a unit hydrograph derived from gage records.

6.3.3 SCS Unit Hydrograph

The Soil Conservation Service Handbook (1972) presents a synthetic unit hydrograph procedure that has been widely used in their conservation and flood control work. The unit hydrograph used by the SCS is based upon an analysis of a large number of natural unit hydrographs from a broad cross section of geographic locations and hydrologic regions. This method is easy to apply. The input parameters are the peak discharge, the area of the watershed, and the time to peak. With these parameters, a standard unit hydrograph is constructed.

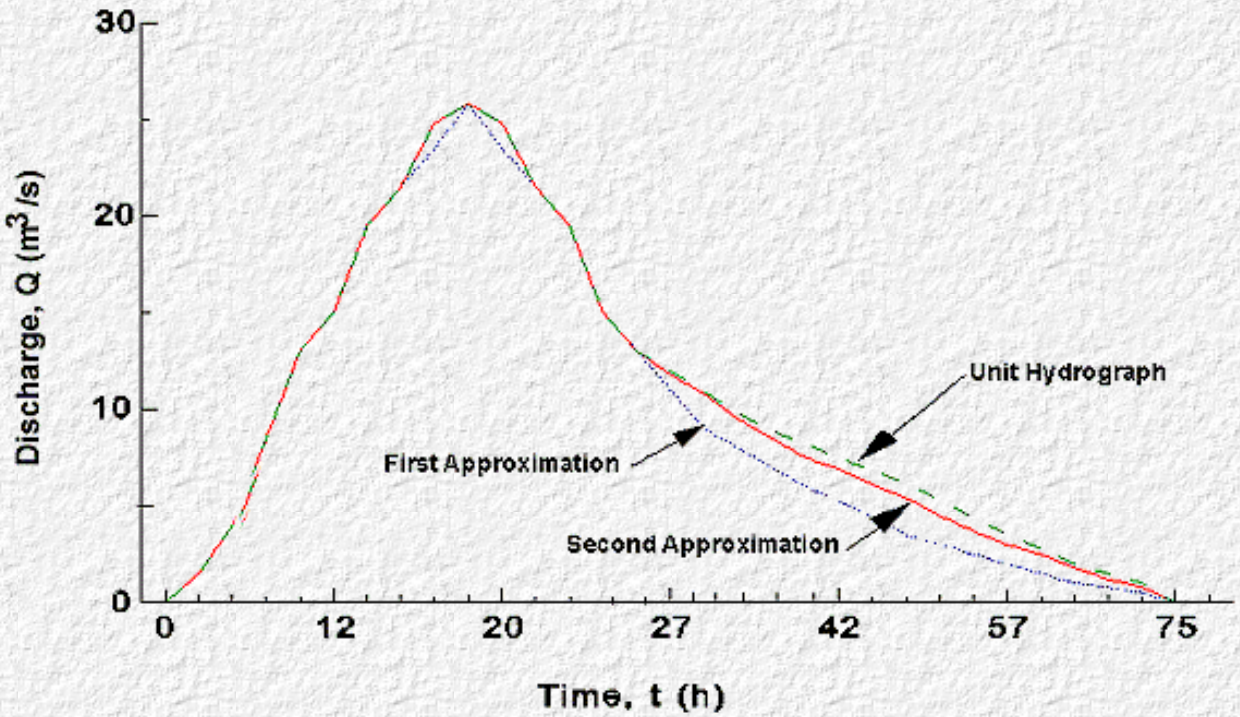


Figure 6-22. Unit Hydrograph Analysis

Table 6-9. Adjustment of Ordinates of Snyder's Unit Hydrograph

(1) Time (h)	(2) Initial hydrograph (m^3/s)	(3) Second hydrograph (m^3/s)	(4) Third hydrograph (m^3/s)
0	0	0	0
3	1.7	2.3	2.4
6	4.0	5.2	5.4
9	8.5	9.9	10.1
12	15.3	15.3	15.4
15	21.5	23.0	23.0
18	25.9	25.9	25.9
21	21.5	22.4	22.4
24	15.0	15.0	15.0
27	11.0	11.8	11.9
30	9.2	10.6	10.8
33	7.9	9.4	9.7
36	6.8	8.5	8.9
39	6.0	7.6	8.1
42	5.2	6.8	7.4
45	4.4	6.1	6.8
48	3.7	5.3	6.1

51	3.0	4.5	5.2
54	2.4	3.8	4.4
57	1.9	3.0	3.5
60	1.4	2.4	2.8
63	1.0	1.7	2.0
66	0.7	1.1	1.3
69	0.5	0.8	0.9
72	0.3	0.4	0.4
75	0	0	0
	178.8	202.8	209.8

The SCS methods use dimensionless unit hydrographs that are based on an extensive analysis of measured data. Unit hydrographs were evaluated for a large number of actual watersheds and then made dimensionless by dividing all discharge ordinates by the peak discharge and the time ordinates by the time to peak. An average of these dimensionless unit hydrographs (UH) was computed. The time base of the dimensionless UH was approximately 5 times the time to peak, and approximately 3/8 of the total volume occurred before the time to peak; the inflection point on the recession limb occurs at approximately 1.7 times the time to peak, and the UH has a curvilinear shape. The average dimensionless UH is shown in Figure 6-23 and the discharge ratios for selected values of the time ratios are given in Table 6-10.

For purposes of comparison, the curvilinear unit hydrograph can be approximated by a triangular UH that has similar characteristics; Figure 6-24 shows a comparison of the two dimensionless unit hydrographs. It is important to recognize that the triangular UH is not a substitute for the curvilinear UH. The curvilinear UH is always used in hydrologic computations. The triangular unit hydrograph is only used to develop an expression for computing the peak discharge of the curvilinear unit hydrograph. While the time base of the triangular UH is only 8/3 of the time to peak (compared to 5 for the curvilinear UH), the areas under the rising limbs of the two UHs are the same (i.e., 37.5 percent).

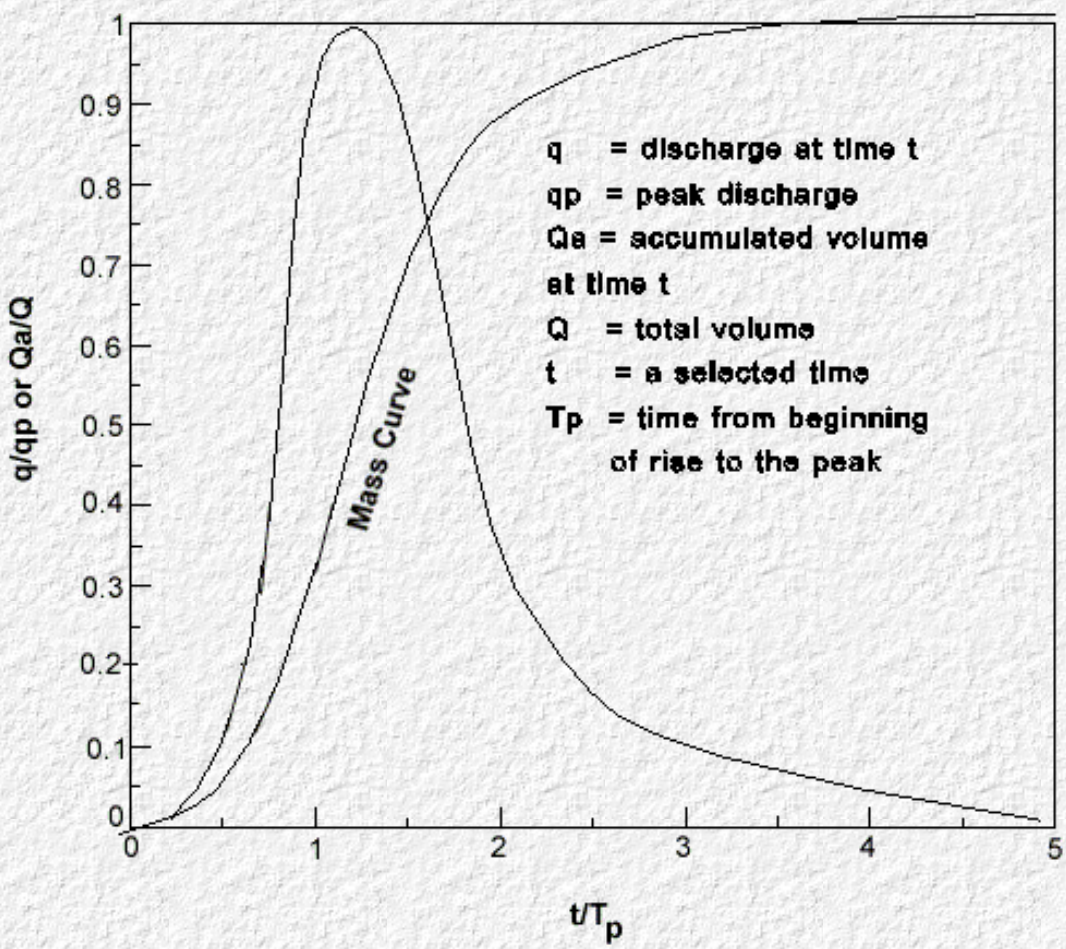


Figure 6-23. Dimensionless Unit Hydrograph and Mass Curve

Table 6-10. Ratios for Dimensionless Unit Hydrograph and Mass Curve

Time Ratios t/T_p	Discharge Ratios q/q_p	Mass Curve Ratios Q_a/Q
0	0.000	0.000
0.1	0.030	0.001
0.2	0.100	0.006
0.3	0.190	0.012
0.4	0.310	0.035
0.5	0.470	0.065
0.6	0.660	0.107
0.7	0.820	0.163
0.8	0.930	0.228
0.9	0.990	0.300
1.0	1.000	0.375
1.1	0.990	0.450
1.2	0.930	0.522
1.3	0.860	0.589
1.4	0.780	0.650
1.5	0.680	0.700
1.6	0.560	0.751
1.7	0.460	0.790
1.8	0.390	0.822
1.9	0.330	0.849
2.0	0.280	0.871
2.2	0.207	0.908
2.4	0.147	0.934
2.6	0.107	0.953
2.8	0.077	0.967
3.0	0.055	0.977
3.2	0.040	0.984
3.4	0.029	0.989
3.6	0.021	0.993
3.8	0.015	0.995
4.0	0.011	0.997
4.5	0.005	0.999
5.0	0.000	1.000

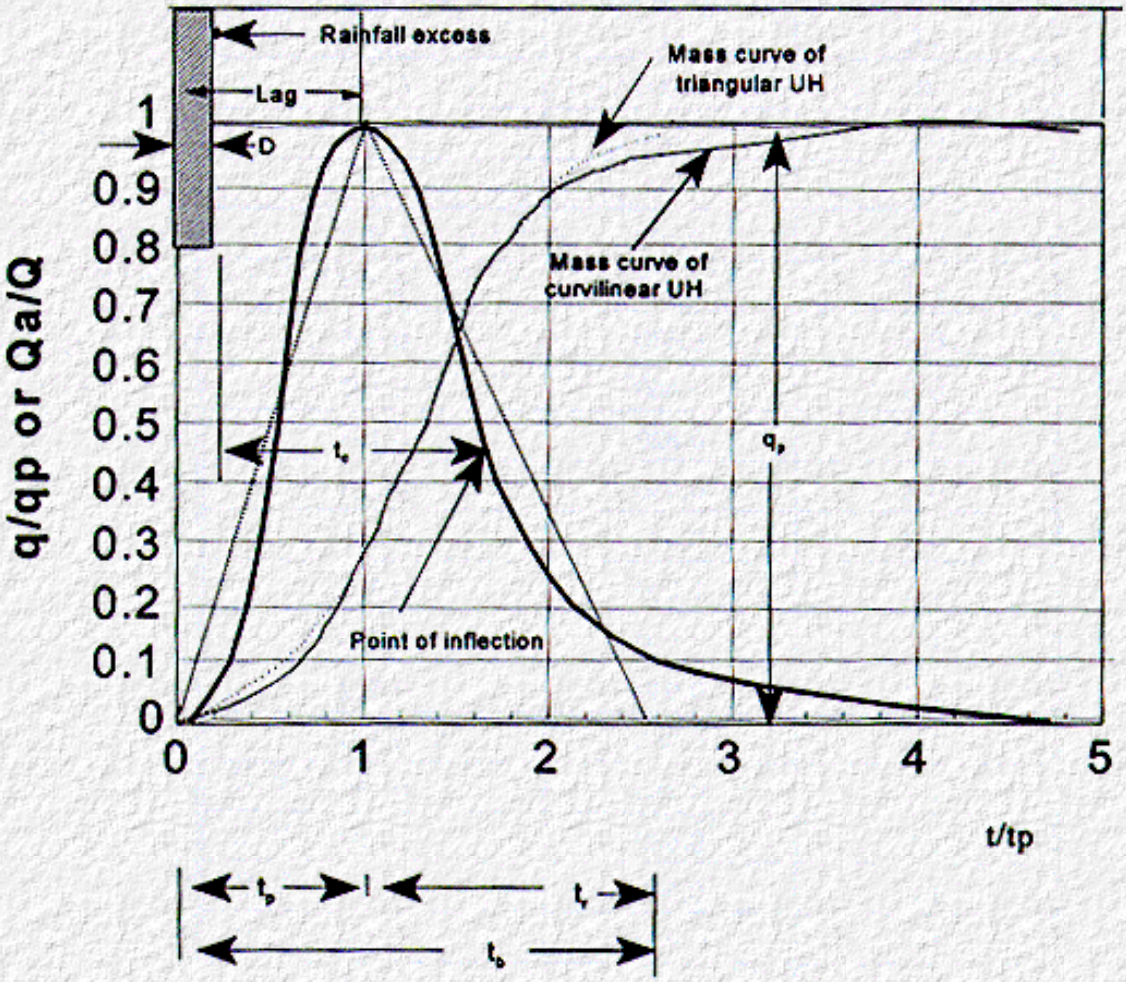


Figure 6-24. Dimensionless Curvilinear Unit Hydrograph and Equivalent Triangular Hydrograph

The area under a hydrograph equals the depth of direct runoff Q, which is 1 mm for a unit hydrograph; based on geometry the runoff volume is related to the characteristics of the triangular unit hydrograph by:

$$Q = \frac{1}{2} q_p (t_p + t_r) \qquad 6\text{-}15$$

in which t_p and t_r are the time to peak and the recession time, respectively; and q_p is the peak discharge. Solving Equation 6-15 for q_p and rearranging yields:

$$q_p = \frac{Q}{t_p}\left[\frac{2}{1 + t_r / t_p}\right] \qquad 6\text{-}16$$

Letting K replace the contents within the brackets yields:

$$q_p = \frac{KQ}{t_p} \qquad 6\text{-}17$$

Because $t_r = 1.67t_p$, q_p in m^3/s, t_p in hours, and Q in mm, it is necessary to divide q_p by the area A in km^2. Adjusting for the units of the variables, Equation 6-17 becomes:

$$q_p = \frac{2.5\,AQ}{12\,t_p} = \frac{0.2083\,AQ}{t_p} \qquad 6\text{-}18$$

The constant 0.2083 reflects a unit hydrograph that has 3/8 of its area under the rising limb. For mountainous watersheds the fraction could be expected to be greater than 3/8, and therefore the constant

of Equation 6-18 may be near 0.26. For flat, swampy areas the constant may be on the order of 0.13.

The time to peak of Equation 6-18 can be expressed in terms of the unit duration of the rainfall excess and the time of concentration. Figure 6-24 provides the following two relationships:

$$t_c + D = 1.7 t_p \qquad 6\text{-}19$$

and if the lag equals 0.6 t_c, then

$$\frac{D}{2} + 0.6 t_c = t_p \qquad 6\text{-}20$$

Solving Equation 6-19 and Equation 6-20 for D yields:

$$D = 0.133 t_c \qquad 6\text{-}21$$

Therefore, t_p can be expressed in terms of t_c:

$$t_p = \frac{D}{2} + 0.6 t_c = \frac{2}{3} t_c \qquad 6\text{-}22$$

Expressing Equation 6-18 in terms of t_c rather than t_p yields:

$$q_p = \frac{0.3125\, AQ}{t_c} \qquad 6\text{-}23$$

For a unit hydrograph, the depth of runoff Q would equal 1 mm.

Example 6-10

The objective is to determine the curvilinear UH for a 1.2 km^2 watershed that has been commercially developed. The flow length is 1982 m, the slope is 1.3 percent, and the soil is of group B. Assume that a time of concentration of 1.34 hours was computed.

For commercial land use and soil group B, the watershed CN is 92 (see Table 5-5). For 1 mm of rainfall excess, Equation 6-23 provides a peak discharge of:

$$q_p = \frac{0.3125\,(1.2\ km^2)(1\ mm)}{(1.34\ h)} = 0.28\ m^3/s$$

The time to peak is:

$$t_p = \frac{2}{3}\, t_c = 0.893\ h$$

and the time base of the UH is:

$$t_b = 5\, t_p = 4.5\ h$$

The ordinates of the SCS curvilinear UH can be determined using the values of Table 6-10. The curvilinear UH will be approximated for selected values of t/t_p; the SCS TR-20 computer program uses all of the values shown in Table 6-10. For selected values of t/t_p, the curvilinear UH is computed in Table 6-11 shown in Figure 6-25. The curvilinear UH can be considered a D-hour UH, with D computed by Equation 6-21 as:

$$D = 0.133 t_c = 0.178\ h$$

Thus the UH should be reported on an interval of 0.178 hour, or about 0.2 hour, and all computations performed at that interval.

Table 6-11. Calculation of SCS Curvilinear Unit Hydrograph

t/t_p	q/q_p	t (h)	q (m^3/s)
0.0	0.000	0	0
0.4	0.310	0.357	0.087
0.7	0.820	0.625	0.230
1.0	1.000	0.893	0.280
1.5	0.680	1.340	0.190
2.0	0.280	1.786	0.078
3.0	0.055	2.679	0.015
4.0	0.011	3.572	0.003
5.0	0.000	4.465	0

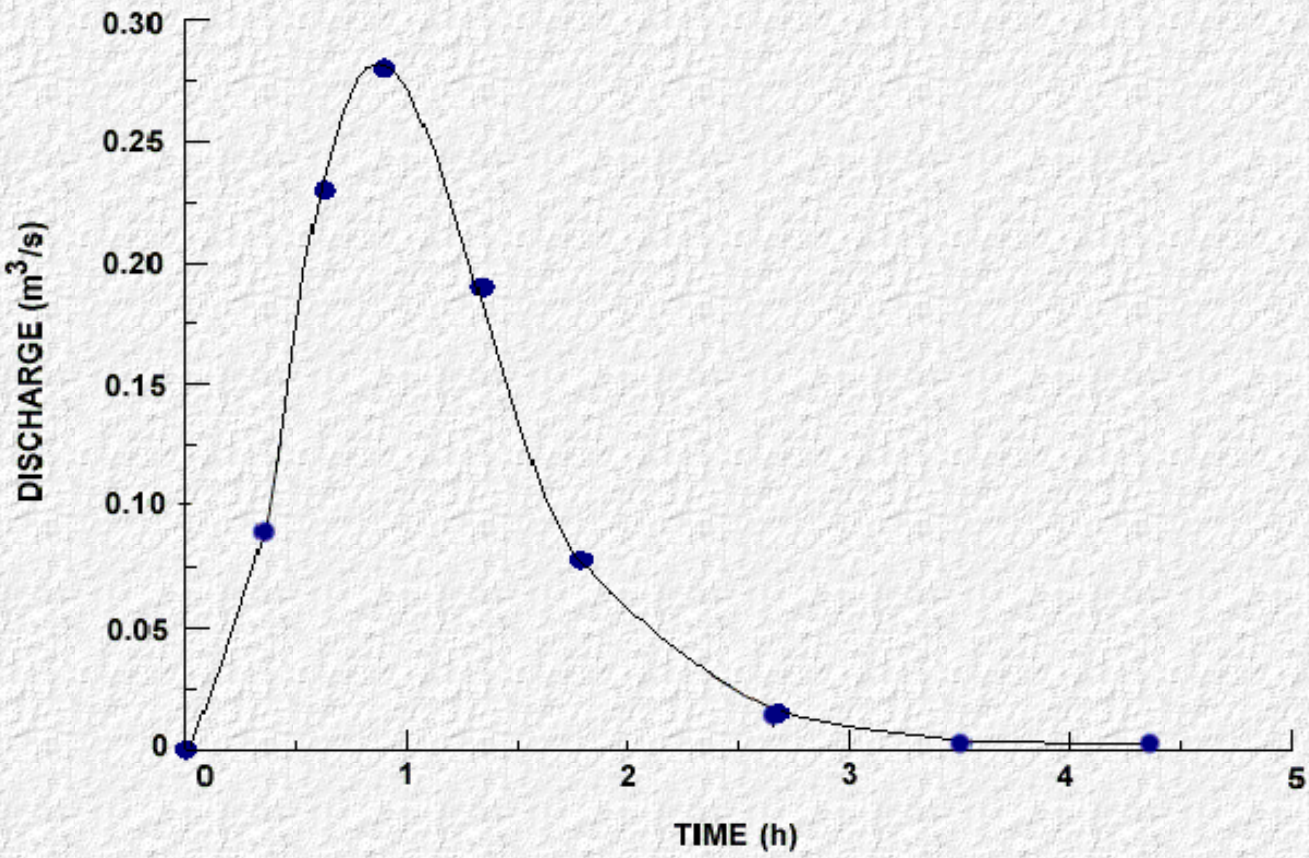


Figure 6-25. Example: SCS Curvillinear Unit Hydrograph

6.3.4 Rainfall Excess Determination: SCS Method

In Section 6.1.4.3, the phi-index method was introduced for estimating loss functions. In hydrograph synthesis where the hyetograph is a design storm, it is necessary to extract losses to produce the rainfall-excess hyetograph. When developing a design hydrograph for a watershed on which unit hydrograph analyses have been made, it might be appropriate to use the mean of the phi-index values computed for the storm events used in the analysis phase. Some attempts have been made to relate mean values of the phi-index to soil characteristics but there are no generally accepted values.

SCS uses their rainfall-runoff equation (Equation 5-17) to compute a loss function that is applied to their design storms. Specifically, the procedure is as follows:

1. Determine the weighted curve number for the watershed.
2. Determine the 24-hour rainfall depth (mm) at the design exceedence frequency from the

local intensity-duration-frequency curve, where depth equals the product of intensity and duration.

3. Multiply the 24-hour rainfall depth and each ordinate of the appropriate cumulative SCS design storm, which produces a cumulative 24-hour design storm.

4. For each ordinate of the design storm, use the cumulative precipitation as P in Equation 5-17 to compute the depth of rainfall excess Q. The difference between the cumulative P and cumulative Q is the loss function.

In this case, the rainfall excess is computed directly from the total rainfall hyetograph rather than computing a loss function and then subtracting it from the hyetograph to get the distribution of rainfall excess.

Example 6-11

In practice, the computations are made for a 24-hour duration on a time increment as small as 1 minute. While this is easily done by a computer program, a much simpler example will be used to illustrate the steps of the procedure given above.

To illustrate the process, a 12-hour dimensionless design storm with the following 2-hour ordinates is assumed: 0.087, 0.239, 0.543, 0.804, 0.935, 1.000. The design CN is 80, and the design rainfall depth is 92 mm. For a CN of 80, Equation 5-18 gives S = 63.5 mm and Equation 5-16 gives an initial abstraction of 12.7 mm. Thus, the initial abstraction consists of all of the rainfall in the first two hours (i.e., 8.0 mm) and 4.7 mm in the second 2-hour period (see columns 4 and 5 of Table 6-12). For those increments where the cumulative rainfall exceeds I_a, the cumulative rainfall excess is computed using Equation 5-17. For example, at a storm time of 6 hours, the cumulative rainfall is 50 mm (column 3 of Table 6-12). Thus, the cumulative rainfall excess is

$$Q = \frac{(P - I_a)^2}{P + S - I_a} = \frac{(50 - 12.7)^2}{50 + 63.5 - 12.7} = 13.8 \ mm \qquad 6\text{-}24$$

The rainfall excess for the other cumulative rainfall depths are given in column 6 of Table 6-12. The rainfall excess hyetograph, given in column 7, is computed by subtracting adjacent values of the cumulative rainfall-excess function. The separation of the hyetograph into rainfall excess, initial abstraction, and other losses is shown in Figure 6-26. The proportion of the total rainfall that appears as either losses or initial abstraction is given in column 11 of Table 6-12. The proportion of losses decreases with time while the proportion going to rainfall excess increases.

6.4 Other Considerations

Linear unit hydrograph analyses assume that the rainfall is constant over the duration of the storm. Therefore, for a storm duration equal to the time of concentration, the entire watershed will be contributing to the runoff at the end of the storm. For storms of shorter duration all of the drainage area will not be contributing, which suggests that the peak discharge rate would be less than when the entire area contributes. For storms with durations longer than the time of concentration, the design intensity will be smaller, and thus the peak discharge will probably be smaller. If the rainfall intensity is assumed to be constant over the storm duration and the rain falls uniformly over the watershed, watershed characteristics are the major determinants of the time distribution of runoff.

Table 6-12. Computation of Rainfall-Excess Hyetograph Using SCS Rainfall-Runoff Equation

Time (h)	Cumulative dimensionless hyetograph	Cumulative design hyetograph (mm)	Design hyetograph (mm)	Cumulative initial abstraction (mm)	Incremental initial abstraction (mm)	Cumulative rainfall excess (mm)	Rainfall excess hyetograph (mm)	Other Losses (mm)	Cumulative other losses (mm)	Total loss function (mm)
2	0.087	8	8	8.0	8.0	0	0	0	0	10.0
4	0.239	22	14	12.7	4.7	1.2	1.2	8.1	8.1	9.1

6	0.543	50	28	-	-	13.8	12.6	15.4	23.5	5.5
8	0.804	74	24	-	-	30.1	16.3	7.7	31.2	3.2
10	0.935	86	12	-	-	39.3	9.2	2.8	34.0	2.3
12	1.000	92	6	-	-	44.0	4.7	1.3	35.3	2.2
Sum			92		12.7		44.0	35.3		

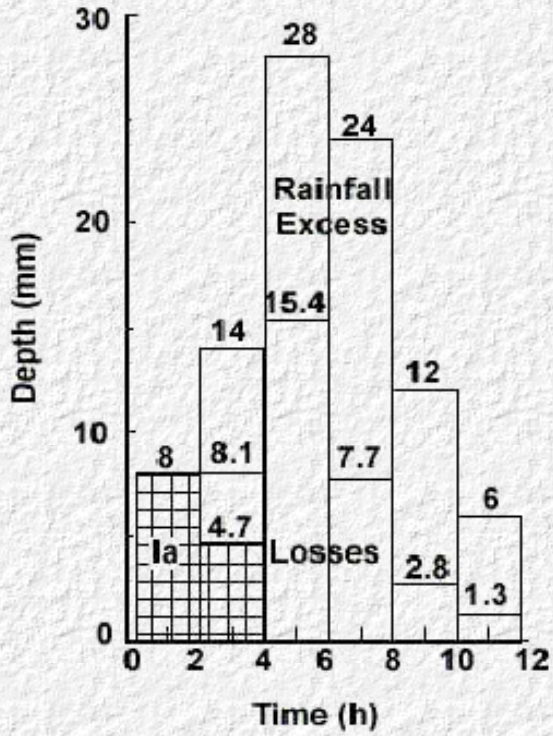


Figure 6-26. Separation of Losses and Initial Abstraction From a Design-Storm Hyetograph Using the SCS Method

---

6.4.1 Unit Hydrograph Limitations

Because of the assumptions made in the development of unit hydrograph procedures, a designer should be familiar with several limitations and sources of error. Uniformity of rainfall intensity and duration over the drainage basin is a requirement that is seldom met. For this reason it is best to use large storms covering a major portion of the drainage area when developing unit hydrographs. If the basin is only partially covered, a routing problem may be involved. To minimize the effects of non-uniform distribution of rainfall, an average unit hydrograph of a specified unit duration might be considered from several major storms. This average unit hydrograph should be developed from the average peak flow, the time base, and the time to peak, with the shape of the final unit hydrograph adjusted to a depth of 1-mm of runoff.

The lack of stations with recording rain gages makes it very difficult to obtain accurate rainfall distribution data. Even bucket-type gages may have limitations because they are read only periodically, e.g., every 24 hours. Thus, a single reading in a 24-hour period would introduce serious error in the rainfall intensity if, in fact, all the precipitation occurred in the first 6 hours. Inadequate rainfall intensity data will introduce errors in both the peak flow and time to peak of the unit hydrograph.

Storm movement is still another consideration in the development of unit hydrographs, especially for basins that are relatively narrow and long. Generally, storms moving down the basin will result in hydrographs with higher peak flows and longer times to peak than comparable storms moving up the basin.

Finally, it should be remembered that the unit hydrograph will be no more accurate than the data from which it is developed. In contrast to frequency analysis where documented historical peak flows are

estimated and included in the analysis with little error, the reliability of hydrograph analyses is directly impacted by the lack of continuous records or gage malfunction.

In order to overcome some of these limitations, unit hydrograph development should be limited to drainage areas less than 2,500 km^2 (250,000 hectares).

6.4.2 Time-Area Unit Hydrograph

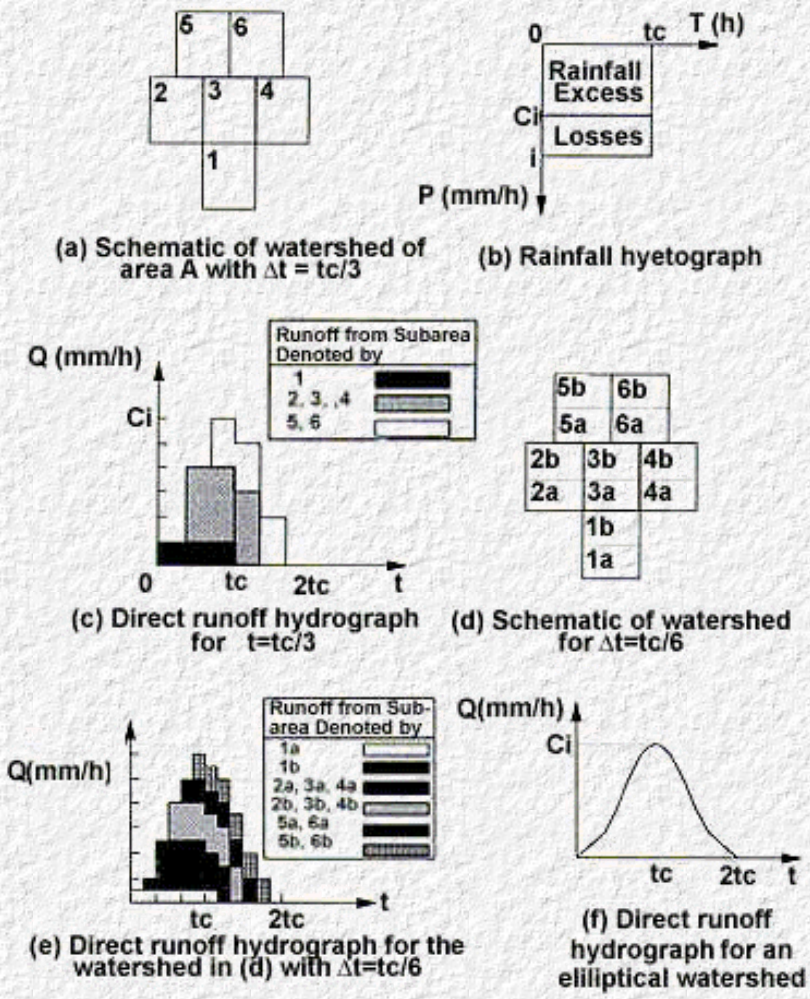
Time-area analysis assumes that the drainage area and factors that affect the timing of runoff can be used to develop an S-hydrograph. A time-area diagram is the relationship between runoff travel time and the portion of the watershed that contributes runoff for that travel time. The development of a time-area diagram is best illustrated using an example.

Assume that a watershed consists of six equal subareas, as shown in Figure 6-27a, and that the rainfall hyetograph is as shown in Figure 6-27b. The rainfall duration equals the time of concentration for the watershed and has an intensity i. The distribution of rainfall excess is also shown in Figure 6-27b, with a magnitude of Ci, where C is a runoff coefficient such as that for the rational method; thus the loss function is constant with a magnitude of i(1 - C), and the initial abstraction is assumed to be zero.

Based on the assumption that the rainfall is uniformly distributed over the watershed, the depth of rainfall excess Ci is assumed to fall on each subarea of the watershed. At the end of time $t_c/3$ runoff from only subarea 1 will be appearing at the watershed outlet. Assuming that runoff from subareas 2, 3, and 4 have equal travel times, which equal $2t_c/3$, then at the end of time $2t_c/3$ subareas 1 to 4 will be contributing runoff at the outlet. This is shown in the hydrograph of Figure 6-27c. At time $2t_c/3$ rain that fell on subareas 5 and 6 are not contributing to direct runoff at the outlet. At time t_c all six subareas are contributing to runoff at the outlet, but the storm has reached its duration. During the time interval from t_c to $4t_c/3$ rain that fell during the time interval $t_c/3$ to $2t_c/3$ is still contributing runoff at the outlet from subareas 5 and 6 and rain that fell during the time interval $2t_c/3$ to t_c is contributing runoff from subareas 2, 3, and 4. Thus the runoff ordinate equals 5 units. Rain that fell during the time interval from $2t_c/3$ to t_c on subareas 5 and 6 appears as runoff at the outlet in the time interval $4t_c/3$ to $5t_c/3$. It is also important to observe that the depth of rainfall excess, Cit_c, equals the depth of direct runoff; the depths can be converted to volumes by multiplying by the drainage area, A.

The time-area analysis above is somewhat misleading because the rainfall excess and direct runoff are used with a relatively large, discrete time interval, $t_c/3$. The last particle of rainfall excess falling at the upper end of subarea 5 or 6 at time t_c will require a travel time to the outlet of t_c, which means that it will appear as runoff at the outlet of time $2t_c$. The runoff hydrograph of Figure 6-27c suggests that this particle of rainfall reaches the outlet at $5t_c/3$. The difference is due to the discretizing of the calculations. If the time interval, Δt, goes from $t_c/3$ to an infinitesimally small time, the time-area analysis will yield a hydrograph with a shape similar to that of Figure 6-27e but with a time base equal to $2t_c$. The peak still equals Ci and occurs at time t_c. This can be shown empirically by using successively smaller time increments. For a time increment of $t_c/6$, which is one-half of the time increment used above, we separate the watershed as shown in Figure 6-27d. This produces the direct runoff hydrograph shown in Figure 6-27e. In this case, the time base of the direct runoff hydrograph is $11t_c/6$; this supports the statement that the time base will approach $2t_c$ as Δt goes to zero.

For a rectangular watershed of length L and width W, the direct runoff hydrograph will have the shape of an isosceles triangle, with a peak Ci and a time base of $2t_c$. Actual watersheds do not have square edges like the schematic Figure 6-27a, and they are not rectangular. Instead, they appear more elliptical. In such a case, the hydrograph will have a shape such as that shown in Figure 6-27f.



(a) Schematic of watershed of area A with $\Delta t = tc/3$

(b) Rainfall hyetograph

(c) Direct runoff hydrograph for t=tc/3

(d) Schematic of watershed for Δt=tc/6

(e) Direct runoff hydrograph for the watershed in (d) with Δt=tc/6

(f) Direct runoff hydrograph for an elliptical watershed

Figure 6-27. Time-Area Analysis

6.4.3 Hydrograph Development Using Assumptions Inherent in the Rational Method.

The rational method was previously introduced as a method for estimating peak discharges. The development of the rational method made several assumptions:

1. the rainfall intensity, i, is constant over the storm duration;
2. the rainfall is uniformly distributed over the watershed;
3. the maximum rate of runoff will occur when runoff is being contributed to the outlet from the entire watershed;
4. the peak rate of runoff equals some fraction of the rainfall intensity; and
5. the watershed system is linear.

The same assumptions that underlie the rational formula of Equation 5-12 can be used to develop a hydrograph. One of several possible assumptions can be made to formulate the hydrograph. The easiest solution would be as follows:

1. Estimate the peak discharge of the runoff hydrograph from Equation 5-12.

2. Assume that the runoff hydrograph is an isosceles triangle with a time to peak equal to t_c and a time base $2t_c$.

This method would produce a hydrograph with 50 percent of the volume under the rising limb of the hydrograph and a total volume of $CiAt_c/360$. The assumption of an isosceles triangle would probably be reasonable for most design problems on small urban watersheds. To obtain a more realistic description of

the runoff hydrograph, the shape of the hydrograph can be determined from the time-area curve, as suggested in the previous section.

Regardless of the assumption about the shape of the hydrograph, the use of a hydrograph based on the rational equation has advantages and disadvantages. Certainly, it is subject to the limitations of the rational equation. However, it is easy to develop, and the accuracy should be sufficient for designs on small, highly urbanized watersheds.

A t_c-h unit hydrograph is inherent in the rational method. Since the depth of the unit hydrograph must equal 1 mm, the ordinates of the UH can be determined by multiplying each ordinate of the direct runoff hydrograph of the rational equation by the conversion factor K:

$$K = \frac{1}{Cit_c} \qquad 6\text{-}25$$

in which:

i and t_c are in mm/h and hours, respectively. Thus the peak discharge of the unit hydrograph will be Kq_p. For example, if C = 0.4, i = 60 mm/h, A = 14 hectares, and t_c = 0.25 h, the direct runoff would have a peak discharge of 0.926 m^3/s, the conversion factor K would equal 0.1679, and the peak discharge of the 0.25-h unit hydrograph would be 0.156 m^3/s. For a 14-hectare watershed and a UH with a time base of 0.5 hour and a peak discharge of 0.156 m^3/s, the volume is 1 mm.

6.4.4 Design Hydrographs by Transposition

Another method that can be used to develop a unit hydrograph at an ungaged site is to transpose unit hydrographs from other hydrologically homogeneous watersheds. The four basic factors needed to identify a hydrograph are the peak flow, time to peak, duration of flow or time base, and the volume of runoff.

In transposing hydrographs, time to peak is defined by the lag or the time from the midpoint of the excess rainfall duration to the time of the peak flow. Lag can be estimated by the equation

$$Lag = C\left(\frac{L\ L_{ca}}{Y^{0.5}}\right)^K \qquad 6\text{-}26$$

where:

L is the length of the longest watercourse, km
L_{ca} is the length along the longest watercourse from the outlet to a point opposite the centroid of the basin, km
Y is the slope of the longest watercourse in percent, and C and K are coefficients to be determined from the hydrologically homogeneous areas.

The coefficients in Equation 6-26 and the lag for the ungaged site can be determined from a full logarithmic plot of lag vs. ($LL_{ca}/Y^{0.5}$). The peak flow of the unit hydrograph can be determined in the same manner by logarithmically correlating peak flow with drainage area.

The duration of flow is best determined by converting each unit hydrograph into a dimensionless form by dividing the flows and times by the respective peak flow and lag for each basin. These dimensionless hydrographs can then be plotted to obtain an average value for the time base. The shape of the unit graph is then estimated from the transposed hydrographs and the volume checked to ensure it represents 1-mm of runoff from the basin of interest. If not, the shape is adjusted until the volume is reasonably close to 1 mm.

Often the designer is confronted with a case where streamflow and rainfall data are not available for a particular site but may exist at points upstream or in adjacent or nearby watersheds. If a design hydrograph can be developed at an upstream point in the same watershed, the procedures described in

Chapter 7 can be used to route the design hydrograph to the point of interest. When the data for developing unit hydrographs exist in nearby hydrologically similar watersheds, the transposition method can be used to obtain a design hydrograph.

Go to Chapter 7

Chapter 7 : HDS 2
Hydrograph Routing

Go to Chapter 8

Two of the more common uses for routing of design hydrographs are to analyze the effects of a channel modification on peak discharge and to design drainage structures taking detention storage into account. Other uses for routing of design hydrographs include the design of pumping stations and the determination of the time of overtopping for highway embankments. These applications can be grouped into two categories, namely channel routing and reservoir routing. Channel routing techniques are used to calculate outflow from a stream reach given inflow and channel characteristics. Reservoir routing techniques are used to calculate outflow given inflow and storage characteristics. These two techniques are discussed more fully in the following sections.

7.1 Channel Routing

Channel routing is a procedure by which a hydrograph at any downstream point is determined from a known hydrograph at some upstream point. As a flood hydrograph moves down a channel, its shape is modified due to flow resistance along the channel boundaries and the storage of water in the channel and floodplain. An example of inflow and outflow hydrographs from a stream reach is provided in Figure 7-1. Note that the hydrograph is attenuated and translated as it moves downstream.

The general equation for channel routing is based on continuity and represents an accounting of all flow within a reach. Mathematically, the continuity of mass can be written in terms of storage as:

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = I - O \qquad \text{7-1}$$

where

I is the inflow (m^3/s)
O is the outflow (m^3/s)
t is time (s)
S represents channel storage (m^3).

Clearly, Equation 7-1 does not account for lateral or tributary inflow.

A number of techniques are available for routing hydrographs through channels. Four commonly used methods are presented in this chapter: Muskingum, kinematic wave, Muskingum-Cunge, and the modified Att-Kin method. In Section 7.1.5, an example is presented in which an inflow hydrograph is routed through a stream reach using each of these methods.

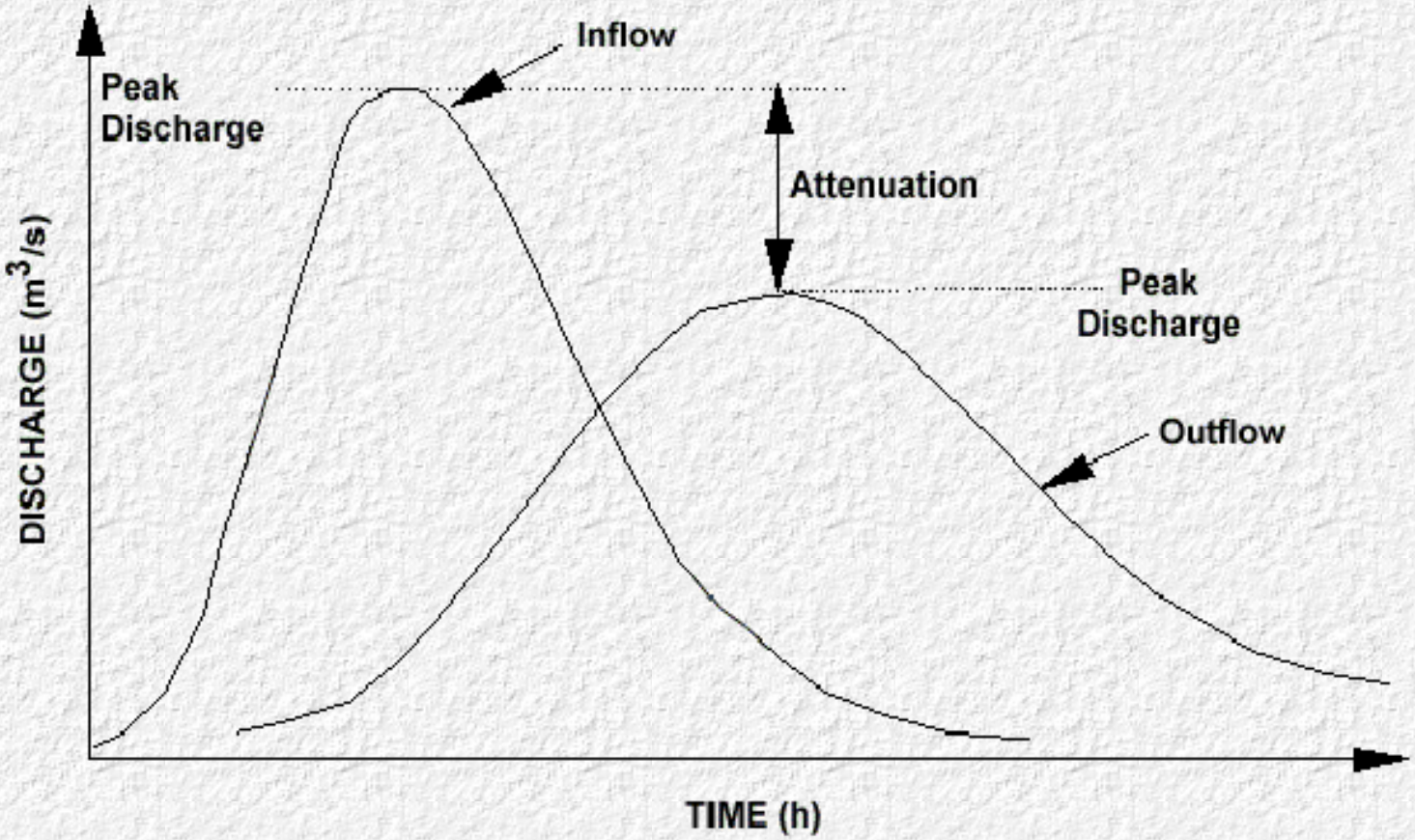


Figure 7-1. Inflow and Outflow Hydrographs from a Stream Reach

---

7.1.1 Muskingum Routing Method

In the Muskingum routing method, the attenuation of the hydrograph as it moves downstream is assumed to be due to storage within the channel. The channel storage is composed of two parts: the prismatic storage, which is the water in the channel when inflow and outflow are equal, and the wedge storage, which is proportional to the difference between inflow and outflow. The Muskingum method is based upon the assumption that the storage within a given reach of river is given by:

$$S = K[XI + (1 - X)O] \qquad 7\text{-}2$$

where:

S is the storage in m^3
K is an empirical constant usually set equal to the average travel time through the reach
X is another empirical constant that weights the relative importance of inflow versus outflow in determining the storage (varies between 0 and 0.5)
I is the inflow to the reach in m^3/s, and O is the outflow from the reach in m^3/s.

As a first step, the inflow hydrograph is divided into successive time periods, Δt, of finite duration. This duration is known as the routing period and must be smaller than the travel time through the reach so that the wave crest does not completely pass through the reach during one routing period. The finite difference form of the continuity equation, Equation

7-1, can be rewritten in terms of the routing period as:

$$\frac{1}{2}(I_1+I_2) - \frac{1}{2}(O_1+O_2) = \frac{(S_2-S_1)}{\Delta t} \qquad 7\text{-}3$$

If the known quantities of Equation 7-3 are placed on one side of the equal sign and the unknowns on the other side, Equation 7-3 becomes:

$$I_1 + I_2 + \frac{2\ S_1}{\Delta t} - O_1 = \left(\frac{2\ S_1}{\Delta t} + O_2\right) \qquad 7\text{-}4$$

where the subscripts 1 and 2 represent values of the parameters at the beginning and ending of a time period. Substituting Equation 7-2 into Equation 7-4 yields the following relation:

$$O_2 = C_o I_2 + C_1 I_1 + C_2 O_1 \qquad 7\text{-}5$$

where:

$$C_O = \frac{-KX + 0.5\Delta t}{K - KX + 0.5\Delta t} \qquad 7\text{-}6$$

$$C_1 = \frac{KX + 0.5\Delta t}{K - KX + 0.5\Delta t} \qquad 7\text{-}7$$

$$C_2 = \frac{K - KX - 0.5\Delta t}{K - KX + 0.5\Delta t} \qquad 7\text{-}8$$

and

$$C_o + C_1 + C_2 = 1 \qquad 7\text{-}9$$

and O_2 is the outflow at the end of t in m^3/s, O_1 is the outflow at the beginning of t in m^3/s, I_2 is the inflow at the end of t in m^3/s, and I_1 is the inflow at the beginning of t in m^3/s.

The application of Equation 7-5 to routean inflow hydrograph through a reach of stream is fairly straightforward. The difficulty lies in the determination of reasonable values for K and X. The preferred method is to estimate K and X using measured pairs of inflow and outflow hydrographs; however, such data are rarely available so more approximate methods are employed.

Values of K and X are determined from data by a trial-and-error process as follows:

1. For each point in time, compute the storage S_2 by rearranging Equation 7-3:

$$S_2 = S_1 + \Delta t\left(\frac{I_1+I_2}{2} - \frac{O_1+O_2}{2}\right) \qquad 7\text{-}10$$

S_1 is usually assumed to be zero for the initial condition.

2. Using a trial value of X, compute [XI + (1 - X)O] for each point in time.

3. Plot the computed storage S from step 1 versus [XI + (1 - X)O] from step 2 for each point in time. This will result in a closed loop.

4. Revise the value of X and repeat steps 1 to 3 until the plot shows a minimum amount of deviation from a straight line drawn through the center of the loop.

5. Use the slope of the line as the best estimate of K and the value of X that produced the minimum deviation line in step 4 as the estimate of X.

Because K an X are calibrated for a specific stream reach, these values are valid only for that stream reach for which the calibration data were taken.

When data are not available, K is estimated to be the average travel time through the reach, which is determined from Manning's equation. The discharge used in determining a value for K is the average discharge for the hydrograph. The value of X must be between 0 and 0.5. If X > 0.5, the hydrograph is amplified as it moves downstream, which does not make physical sense. In the absence of any other data, X is usually assumed to be between 0.2 and 0.3.

7.1.2 Kinematic Wave Method

A kinematic wave is a wave for which inertia and pressure (flow depth) gradient terms are assumed to be negligible compared to the friction and gravity terms (Ponce 1989). Neglecting these terms from the momentum (or dynamic) equation reduces the dynamic equation to

$$S_o = S_f \qquad \text{7-11}$$

where:

S_o is channel bottom slope
S_f is the friction or energy slope

The equation for a kinematic wave is then derived from the equation of continuity:

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial t} + c\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} = 0 \qquad \text{7-12}$$

in which:

Q = flow rate
x = distance along the channel bottom
t = time
c = wave celerity = dQ/dA.

Equation 7-12 assumes no lateral inflow. Using Manning's equation to derive an expression for celerity dQ/dA and assuming a wide channel, then c = βV, where V = flow velocity and β = 5/3. Three important properties that distinguish kinematic wave routing

(Roesner et al. 1988) are:

1. Kinematic waves travel only in the downstream direction.

2. The wave shape does not change, and there is no attenuation of the wave height, only translation.

3. The wave speed is c = dQ/dA.

The kinematic wave equation (Equation 7-12) is a nonlinear, first-order partial differential equation. It is nonlinear because the celerity is a function of velocity, which varies with discharge. If the nonlinearity is mild, the celerity can be approximated by a constant. The kinematic wave equation can then be discretized using a linear numerical scheme. Using central differences and a simplified form, Equation 7-12 becomes (Ponce 1989):

$$O_2 = C_o I_2 + C_1 I_1 + C_2 O_1 \qquad \text{7-13}$$

where:

$$C_o = \frac{C-1}{1+C} \qquad \text{7-14}$$

$$C_1 = 1 \qquad \text{7-15}$$

$$C_2 = \frac{1-C}{1+C} \qquad \text{7-16}$$

and C is the Courant number

$$C = \beta V \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \qquad \text{7-17}$$

where:

V is the average channel velocity.

The Courant number must be equal or close to 1 to avoid numerical dispersion, which causes errors in the numerical solutions. The solution will vary with the chosen grid size, Δx. Therefore, care must be taken when using the kinematic wave model that the Courant number be as close to 1 as possible, but not greater than 1. This means that if Δt, β, and V are specified, then Δx must be chosen such that the Courant number criterion is satisfied. Since the kinematic wave method can only translate a hydrograph, any attenuation of the inflow hydrograph is produced by numerical dispersion.

The kinematic wave equation is appropriate for steep channels with little or no downstream control. It is not appropriate for mild or flat slopes because significant attenuation of the hydrograph occurs on these slopes, which is not accounted for in the kinematic wave model. Input for the model is primarily in the form of a discharge-area relationship.

7.1.3 Muskingum-Cunge Method

The Muskingum-Cunge routing method has gained popularity in recent years as a method that, while similar to the Muskingum method, does not require extensive hydrologic data for calibration. The method is considered a "hybrid" routing method; it is like hydrologic methods, but contains more physical information typical of hydraulic routing methods. The coefficients are functions of the physical parameters of the channel. The model physically accounts for the diffusion that is present in most natural channels.

The diffusion wave equation is derived from the equations of continuity and momentum. The Muskingum-Cunge method is one method of solution of the diffusion equation. The computational equation is the same as the Muskingum equation (Equation 7-5):

$$O_2 = C_o I_2 + C_1 I_1 + C_2 O_1 \qquad \text{7-18}$$

However, the computation of C_i differs:

$$C_o = \frac{-1+C+D}{1+C+D} \qquad \text{7-19}$$

$$C_1 = \frac{1+C-D}{1+C+D} \qquad \text{7-20}$$

$$C_2 = \frac{1-C+D}{1+C+D} \qquad \text{7-21}$$

and

$$C = c\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \qquad \text{7-22}$$

and

$$D = \frac{q_o}{S_o c \Delta x} \qquad \text{7-23}$$

where:

t is time (s),
x is distance along the channel (m),
c is celerity (m/s), q_o is discharge per unit channel width (m^2/s), and
S_o is slope.

Celerity c is obtained from a rating curve as βV, as in the kinematic wave method, with velocity V based on the peak discharge. The unit discharge, q_o, is based on a reference discharge, typically the peak flow. As in the Muskingum method, $C_o + C_1 + C_2 = 1$.

Several guidelines produce the best results when using the Muskingum-Cunge method. First, the sum of C and D should be greater than or equal to 1. Second, C_1 and C_2 can be positive or negative, unlike the Muskingum method. Third, C should be kept close to 1,

but not greater than 1, to avoid numerical dispersion. Fourth, the ratio of the time to peak of the flood wave to the time interval Δt should be greater than or equal to 5.

The Muskingum-Cunge method is appropriate for use on most stream channels. It accounts for diffusion of the flood wave; however, if there are significant backwater effects caused by upstream or downstream controls, then this method should not be used (actually, only the full dynamic equation can account for backwater effects). The main advantage of using the Muskingum-Cunge over the Muskingum routing method is that the Muskingum-Cunge method is physically based and requires minimal streamflow data. The parameters are based on the rating curve and slope. Therefore, this method is ideal for use in ungaged streams.

7.1.4 Modified Att-Kin Method

The modified Att-Kin method transforms the continuity-of-mass relationship of Equation 7-1 to the following:

$$I_1 - \frac{O_2 + O_1}{2} = \frac{S_2 - S_1}{\Delta t} \qquad 7\text{-}24$$

Substituting S = KO into Equation 7-24 and solving for O_2 yields the following:

$$O_2 = \left(\frac{2\Delta t}{2K + \Delta t}\right) I_1 + \left(1 - \frac{2\Delta t}{2K + \Delta t}\right) O_1 \qquad 7\text{-}25a$$

$$= C_m I_1 + (1 - C_m)\, O_1 \qquad 7\text{-}25b$$

in which C_m is the routing coefficient for the modified Att-Kin method. The value of K is assumed to be given by:

$$K = \frac{L}{mV} \qquad 7\text{-}26$$

in which L is the reach length and V is the velocity, defined by the continuity equation:

$$V = \frac{q}{A} \qquad 7\text{-}27$$

in which A is related to q by the rating curve equation:

$$q = xA^m \qquad 7\text{-}28$$

Equation 7-28 corresponds directly to the stage-discharge relationship $O = ah^b$ since A is a function of h. If the discharge is derived using Manning's equation, then:

$$q = \frac{1.0}{n} R_h^{2/3} A S^{1/2} = \frac{1.0}{n} S^{1/2} A \left(\frac{A}{P}\right)^{2/3} = \frac{S^{1/2}}{nP^{2/3}} A^{5/3} \qquad 7\text{-}29$$

Comparing Equation 7-28 and Equation 7-29 indicates that:

$$m = \frac{5}{3} \qquad \text{7-30a}$$

and

$$x = \frac{S^{1/2}}{nP^{2/3}} \qquad \text{7-30b}$$

Therefore, m is a function of the velocity-versus-area relationship, and x is a function of the characteristics of the cross section.

The rating table of Equation 7-28 assumes that the flow (q) and cross-sectional area (A) data measured from numerous storm events will lie about a straight line when plotted on log-log paper. That is, taking the logarithms of Equation 7-28 yields the straight line:

$$\log q = \log x + m \log A \qquad \text{7-31}$$

Thus the intercept is log x, and m is the slope of the line. For the form of Equation 7-31, the intercept log x equals the logarithm of the discharge at an area of 1.0.

The coefficients of Equation 7-31 can be fit with any one of several methods. Visually, a line could be drawn through the points and the slope computed; the value of x would equal the discharge for the line when A equals 1.0.

The coefficients of Equation 7-31 could also be fitted using linear regression analysis after making the logarithmic transform of the data. This is identical to the analysis of the rating-table fitting in which stage is the predictor variable. The statistical fit may be more rational than the visual fit, especially when the scatter of the data is significant and the visual fit is subject to a lack of consistency.

As indicated before, Manning's equation can be used where rating table data (i.e., q versus A) are not available. Manning's equation can be applied for a series of depths and the rating table constructed. Of course, the rating table values and, thus, the coefficients are dependent on the assumptions underlying Manning's equation.

In many cases, the graph of log q versus log A will exhibit a nonlinear trend, which indicates that the model of Equation 7-28 is not correct. The accuracy in using Equation 7-28 to represent the rating table will depend on the degree of nonlinearity in the plot. The SCS TR-20 manual provides a means of deriving a weighted value of m, which is as follows. The slope between each pair of points on the rating curve is estimated numerically:

$$S_i = \frac{\log q_i - \log q_{i-1}}{\log A_i - \log A_{i-1}} \qquad \text{7-32}$$

in which S_i is the slope between points i and (i-1). The weighted value of m, which is denoted as $\overline{m}$, is:

$$\bar{m} = \frac{q_3 S_3 + \sum_{j=4}^{k} (q_j - q_{j-1}) S_j}{q_i} \qquad 7\text{-}33$$

in which k is the number of pairs of points on the rating table. The weighting of Equation 7-33 provides greater weight to the slope between points for which the range of (q_j-q_{j-1}) is larger.

The modified Att-Kin method uses Equation 7-25b to perform the routings necessary to derive the downstream hydrograph. The modified Att-Kin method provides for both attenuation and translation. To apply the modified Att-Kin method, the values of m and x in Equation 7-28 are evaluated using either cross-section data or a rating table developed from measured runoff events. The value of K is then computed from Equation 7-26 and used to compute C_m with Equation 10-21. The routing equation (Equation 7-25b) can then be used to route the upstream hydrograph.

After deriving the first estimate of the downstream hydrograph, it is necessary to check whether or not hydrograph translation is necessary. The hydrograph computed with Equation 7-25b is translated when the kinematic travel time (Δt_p) is greater than Δt_{ps} where Δt_{ps} is the difference in the times to peak between the upstream hydrograph I and the hydrograph computed with Equation 7-25:

$$\Delta t_{ps} = t_{po} - t_{pi} \qquad 7\text{-}34$$

in which t_{po} and t_{pi} are the times-to-peak of the downstream (outflow) and upstream (inflow) hydrographs, respectively. The kinematic travel time is given by:

$$\Delta t_p = \frac{S_{po}}{q_{po}} \left[\frac{(q_I / q_{po})^{1/m} - 1}{(q_I / q_{po}) - 1} \right] / 3600 \qquad 7\text{-}35$$

in which q_{po} is the peak discharge of the downstream hydrograph, q_I, is the peak discharge of the upstream hydrograph, and S_{po} is given by:

$$S_{po} = \left(\frac{q_{po}}{k} \right)^{1/m} \qquad 7\text{-}36$$

and

$$k = \frac{x}{L^m} \qquad 7\text{-}37$$

If $\Delta t_p > \Delta t_{ps}$, the storage-routed hydrograph from Equation 7-25b is translated by an amount (Δt_p-Δt_{ps}).

This procedure can be summarized by the following steps:

- Step 1. From cross-section information, evaluate the rating table coefficients m and x.

- Step 2. Compute K and then C_m. (Note: It is necessary for $C_m < 1$ and preferable that $C_m < 0.67$.)

- Step 3. Use the routing equation Equation 7-25b to route the upstream hydrograph.

- Step 4. Compute Δt_{ps} from Equation 7-34.

- Step 5. Compute the kinematic travel time Δt_p (Equation 7-35).

- Step 6. If $\Delta t_p > \Delta t_{ps}$, translate the computed downstream hydrograph.

7.1.5 Application of Routing Methods

Example 7-1

Consider a river reach as shown in Figure 7-2. A 4.8 km reach of river is to be modified by cutting off the meander and reducing the length of channel to four km. What effect will this channel improvement have on the peak discharge experienced at the roadway at point B?

A synthetic hydrograph is developed at Point A using the procedures presented in Chapter 6 for a 25-year design discharge. The upstream hydrograph, which is used as the inflow, is given in Table 7-1. The peak discharge is 84 m^3/s. The average discharge for this hydrograph is 34 m^3/s. Using the trapezoidal cross section given in Figure 7-2 and a flow depth of 2 m, the average velocity is computed from the continuity equation and travel time = length/velocity. In the unmodified 4.8 km reach, the cross-sectional area corresponding to Q = 34 m^3/s is 24 m^2, which yields a velocity of 1.4 m/s (= 34 $m^3/s/24\ m^2$). The travel time at this velocity is 4800 m/[1.4 m/s (3600 s/h)] = 0.95 hours. For the modified 4 km reach, the travel time is computed to be 0.79 hours.

For the unmodified reach, using the **Muskingum** method, the coefficients C_o, C_1, and C_2 are first computed from Equation 7-6, Equation 7-7, and Equation 7-8 using Δt = 0.5 hour and assumed values of X = 0.2 and K = 0.95 hours as follows:

$$C_0 = \frac{-0.95(0.2)+0.5(0.5)}{0.95-0.95(0.2)+0.5(0.5)} = 0.059$$

$$C_1 = \frac{0.95(0.2)+0.5(0.5)}{0.95-0.95(0.2)+0.5(0.5)} = 0.436$$

$$C_2 = \frac{0.95-0.95(0.2)-0.5(0.5)}{0.95-0.95(0.2)+0.5(0.5)} = 0.505$$

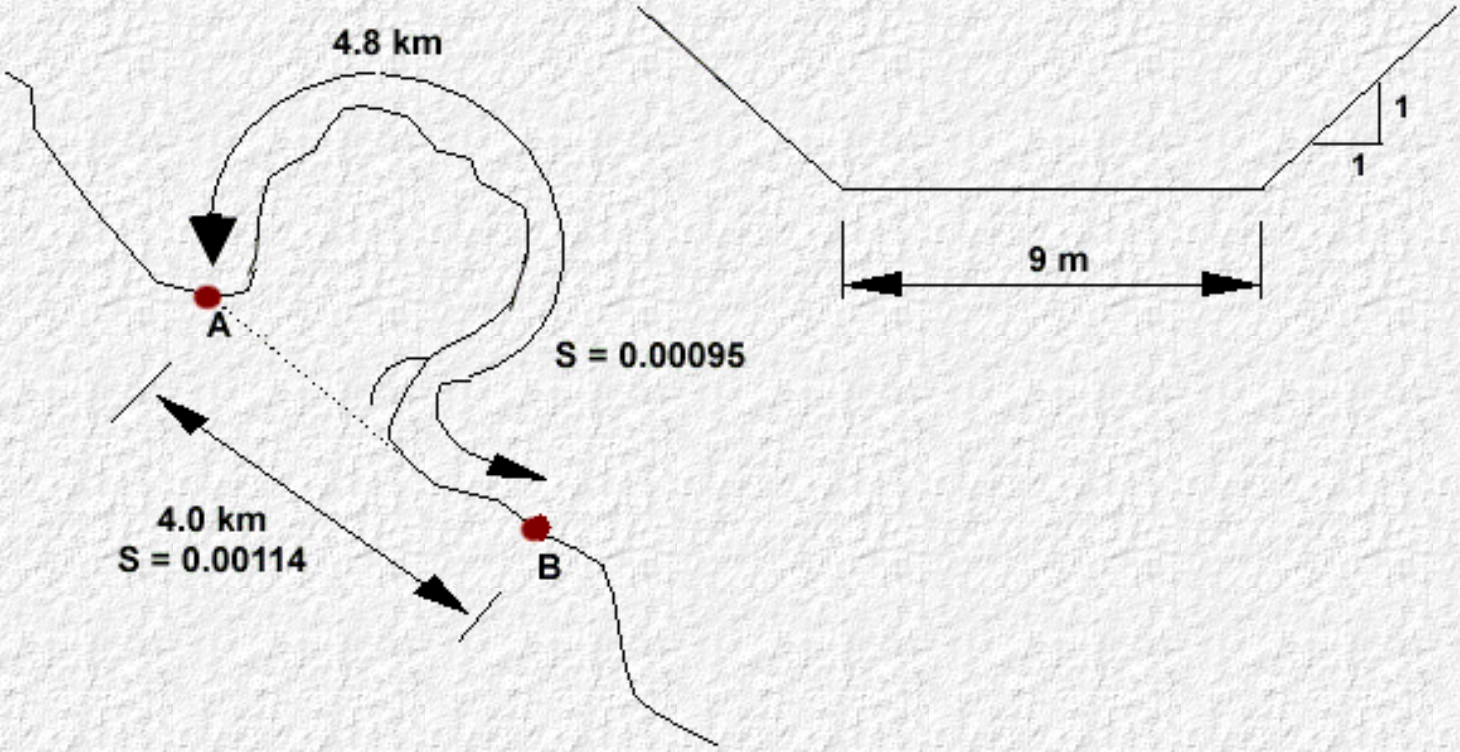


Figure 7-2. Schematic of River Reach for Example 7-1

Table 7-1. Inflow and Outflow Hydrographs for Three Routing Methods

Time (h)	Inflow (m^3/s)	Muskingum Outflow (m^3/s)	Kinematic Wave Outflow (m^3/s)	Muskingum-Cunge Outflow (m^3/s)	Modified Att-Kin Outflow (m^3/s)

0.0	0	0	0	0	0
0.5	7	0	0	2	0
1.0	13	4	6	7	2
1.5	23	9	12	13	5
2.0	32	16	22	22	11
2.5	49	25	30	33	17
3.0	68	38	47	48	27
3.5	76	53	66	63	39
4.0	84	65	75	74	51
4.5	78	74	84	79	61
5.0	71	76	79	77	66
5.5	60	73	72	70	68
6.0	52	66	61	62	65
6.5	46	59	53	54	61
7.0	40	52	47	47	57
7.5	36	46	41	41	52
8.0	32	41	37	37	47
8.5	28	36	33	33	42
9.0	24	32	29	29	38
9.5	20	28	25	25	34
10.0	16	24	21	21	30
10.5	13	20	16	17	25
11.0	11	16	13	14	22
11.5	7	13	11	11	18
12.0	6	10	7	8	15
12.5	3	8	6	6	12
13.0	0	5	3	3	9
13.5	0	3	0	1	7
14.0	0	1	0	0	5
14.5	0	1	0	0	3
15.0	0	0	0	0	2
15.5	0	0	0	0	2
16.0	0	0	0	0	1
16.5	0	0	0	0	0
17.0	0	0	0	0	0

The sum of the coefficients is $C_o + C_1 + C_2 = 0.059 + 0.436 + 0.505 = 1.000$. The outflow hydrograph coordinates can now be computed with Equation 7-5. Beginning at t = 0.5 hours:

$$O_2 = C_o I_2 + C_1 I_1 + C_2 O_1$$
$$= 0.059(7) + 0.436(0) + 0.505(0) = 0.413$$

At t = 1 hour:

$$O_2 = 0.059(13) + 0.436(7) + 0.505(0) = 3.8$$

These values along with the remaining calculations are tabulated in Table 7-1.

The same procedure is used to route the hydrograph through the modified reach. The routing coefficients are recomputed using K = 1.01, the travel time through the modified reach. The new coefficients are:

$$C_o = 0.104$$
$$C_1 = 0.463$$
$$C_2 = 0.433$$
$$C_o + C_1 + C_2 = 1.000$$

The results of the hydrograph routing through the modified reach are summarized in Table 7-2. The peak discharge at point B for the unmodified channel is 76 m^3/s and for the modified channel is 77 m^3/s. The difference is not significant and the channel modification will have minimal effect upon the peak discharge experienced at the bridge for this design hydrograph.

The same inflow hydrograph can be routed through the 4.8 km reach using the **kinematic wave** method. If the average discharge (34 m^3/s) and the corresponding cross-sectional area (24 m^2) are used to compute the velocity and celerity, then V = 1.4 m/s. Assuming β = 5/3 and Δt = 1,800 s, then C = 0.88, C_o = -0.064, C_1 = 1, and C_2 = 0.064. The resulting outflow hydrograph is computed from Equation 7-13 and is shown in Table 7-1. The calculations proceed in the same manner as for the Muskingum method. Beginning at t = 0.5 hours:

$$0_2 = -0.064(7) + 1(0) + 0.064(0) = -0.448\ m^3/s$$

Since a negative flow is not possible, a value of zero is assumed. At t = 1 hour:

$$0_2 = -0.064(13) + 1(7) + 0.064(0) = 6\ m^3/s$$

Note: the hydrograph has been translated (i.e., the peak discharge now occurs at hour 4.5), but has not attenuated.

The inflow hydrograph can also be routed using the **Muskingum-Cunge** method. From Equation 7-19 through Equation 7-23, and using the same Δx and using the same Δt as for the kinematic wave method, C=0.875, D=0.718, C_o=0.2287, C_1=0.4462, and C_2=0.3251. The outflow hydrograph is computed from Equation 7-18 and is given in Table 7-1 in a manner similar to the Muskingum and kinematic wave methods. The peak flow attenuates to 79 m^3/s, and translates to hour 4.5.

The inflow hydrograph was again routed using the **modified Att-Kin** method. Assume that the rating curve coefficients are x = 0.031 and m = 1.6. Using Equation 7-37, $k=0.031/(4800)^{1.6}=4x10^8$ and the cross-sectional area at the maximum discharge computed from Equation 7-28 is $A = (84/0.031)^{1/1.6} = 139.8m^2$. The velocity is V =q/A=0.60 m/s. From Equation 7-26 K=1.39 hours and the routing coefficient from Equation 7-25 is 0.305. Using the routing equation, the downstream hydrograph is given in Table 7-1. The peak outflow is 68 m^3/s and has translated to hour 5.5.

Each method yielded different downstream peak discharges, and the peak flow occurs at different times. The method to choose for a given river reach depends on the amount and type of data available.

Table 7-2. Inflow and Outflow Hydrographs for Modified Channel Using Muskingum Method

Time (h)	Inflow (m^3/s)	Outflow (m^3/s)
0.0	0	0
0.5	7	1
1.0	13	5
1.5	23	11
2.0	32	19
2.5	49	28
3.0	68	42
3.5	76	58
4.0	84	69
4.5	78	77
5.0	71	77
5.5	60	72
6.0	52	65
6.5	46	57
7.0	40	50
7.5	36	44
8.0	32	39
8.5	28	35
9.0	24	30
9.5	20	26
10.0	16	22
10.5	13	18
11.0	11	15
11.5	7	12
12.0	6	9
12.5	3	7
13.0	0	4
13.5	0	2
14.0	0	1
14.5	0	0
15.0	0	0
15.5	0	0
16.0	0	0
16.5	0	0
17.0	0	0

7.2 Reservoir Routing

Whenever the outflow from a river channel section or body of water is dependent only upon the storage in the reach or reservoir, storage routing techniques can be applied. In highway drainage design, this condition is often approximated when water is backed up by a culvert and impounded (stored) by the highway embankment. Another application is in the design of detention storage basins that are often used to mitigate the increase in peak discharge associated with urbanization (see Chapter 10).

7.2.1 Required Functions for Storage Routing

The method of reservoir routing presented in this section is the Storage-Indication method and is again based on the steady-state continuity equation. Storage routing requires the development of four functions:

1. the stage-storage relationship (h vs. S)
2. the stage-discharge relationship (h vs. O)
3. the storage-discharge relationship (O vs. S)
4. the storage-indication relationship (O vs. S + ½OΔt)

The stage-storage-discharge (SSD) relationship is formed from the stage-storage and stage-discharge relationships and is a function of both the topography at the site of the storage structure and the characteristics of the outlet facility. The topographic features of the site control the relationship between stage and storage, and the relationship between stage and discharge is primarily a function of the characteristics of the outlet facility. The development of the stage-storage and stage-discharge relationships is discussed in Section 10.7. If the same values of stage are used to derive these two relationships, then the corresponding values of storage and discharge can be used to form the storage-discharge relationship.

7.2.2 The Storage Indication Curve

To form the fourth relationship, the storage-indication curve, Equation 7-3 is algebraically transformed so that the known (I_1, I_2, S_1, and O_1) are on one side of the equation and the unknowns (S_2 and O_2) are on the other side:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(I_1+I_2)\Delta t + (S_1-\tfrac{1}{2}O_1\Delta t) = (S_2+\tfrac{1}{2}O_2\Delta t) \qquad \text{7-38}$$

The right-hand side of Equation 7-38 can be generalized, with the storage-indication relationship being graphed as O vs. S + ½OΔt. The following procedure can be used to develop the storage-indication curve:

1. Select a value of O.
2. Determine the corresponding value of S from the storage-discharge relationship.
3. Use the values of S and O to compute (S + OΔt/2).
4. Plot a point on the storage-indication curve O versus (S + OΔt/2).

Repeat these four steps for a sufficient number of values of O to define the storage-indication curve. Generally, linear interpolation is applied when routing with the storage-indication method. Therefore, values of O should be selected at an interval that is sufficiently small to give good definition to the inflow hydrograph. As a guide, values of O only as large as the peak of the inflow hydrograph are necessary since the ordinates of the outflow hydrograph will not exceed those of the inflow hydrograph.

7.2.3 Input Requirements for the Storage-Indication Method

The objective of the storage-indication method is to derive the outflow hydrograph. Five elements of data are needed:

1. the storage-discharge relationship
2. the storage-indication relationship
3. the inflow hydrograph
4. initial values of the outflow rate (O_1) and storage (S_1)
5. the routing interval (Δt)

While the outflow hydrograph is the primary output for most design problems, the storage function (i.e., S vs. t) is also an important output of the routing method. The maximum value of S from the S-versus-t relationship is the required storage volume at maximum flow stage. The maximum storage occurs when the outflow rate first exceeds the inflow rate. If Equation 10-44 is used to derive the stage-storage curve, then the stage can be obtained from the stage-storage curve and the water surface area at maximum stage determined from the areas used with Equation 10-44.

7.2.4 Computational Procedure

The procedure for routing the inflow hydrograph is as follows:

1. Assume an initial value for O_1, (usually zero or equal to the inflow at the same time).
2. Determine the average inflow: $0.5\Delta t(I_1 + I_2)$.
3. Compute $S_1 - O_1\Delta t/2$.
4. Use Equation 7-38 to determine the value of $S_2 + O_2\Delta t/2$ by summing the values from steps 2 and 3.
5. Using the value computed in step 4 as input, find O_2 from the storage-indication curve.
6. Use O_2 from step 5 with the storage-discharge relationship to obtain S_2.

These steps are repeated for the next time increment using I_2, O_2, and S_2 as the new values of I_1, O_1, and S_1, respectively.

Example 7-2

A highway engineer needs to design a culvert so that, when the 50-year peak discharge is impounded, the maximum water level is 0.3 meters below the roadway elevation. What size CMP culvert should be specified?

The hydrograph associated with the 50-year peak discharge is given in Table 7-3. The stage-discharge relationships for CMP culverts of various sizes are tabulated in Table 7-4. When the depth is greater than 1.8 meters, the embankment is overtopped and the discharge increases significantly as the embankment begins to function as a broad crested weir. At a depth of 2.1 meters the discharge is 4.8 m^3/s due to overtopping alone.

The depth-storage relationship is site specific. For the particular location in this example, the depth-versus-storage relationship is tabulated in Table 7-5. Using the data of Table 7-4 and Table 7-5, the values of $(S + O\Delta t/2)$ for the various culvert sizes and a range of values of O are determined. Note that an appropriate value for Δt must be selected. If the inflow hydrograph is given as a set of discrete values, then the interval on which they are recorded is used as Δt. In this example, it is 1 hour. The $(S + O\Delta t/2)$ values determined above are then plotted versus O as shown in Figure 7-3. The steps of the procedure outlined above are then used to route the inflow hydrograph. For the purpose of this example, pipe diameters of 600, 800, and 900 mm will be used.

The inflow hydrograph is first routed for the 600-mm diameter culvert in Table 7-6a. This table shows a peak outflow of 1.7 m^3/s which, according to the stage-discharge table for CMP culverts, cannot be handled by the 600-mm diameter culvert without exceeding the roadway elevation. (Recall that it is desirable to keep the depth below 1.5 meters or 0.3 meter below the embankment elevation.) The same routing procedure is now applied for the 800- and 900-mm diameter culverts, which are shown in Table 7-6b and Table 7-6c, respectively. The peak outflow discharge for the 800-mm culvert is 1.5 m^3/s which requires a depth of slightly more than 1.8 meters. It, too, is unsatisfactory. For the 900-mm diameter culvert, a peak flow of 1.6 m^3/s is obtained, which can be handled with a depth less than 1.5 meters. A culvert diameter of 900 mm meets the design criteria that the maximum water level remain 0.3 meters below the roadway elevation.

Table 7-3. Inflow Hydrograph for CMP Culvert Storage Routing Example.

Time (h)	Discharge (m^3/s)
0	0
0.5	0.30
1.0	0.60
1.5	0.85
2.0	1.10
2.5	1.40
3.0	1.70
3.5	1.40
4.0	1.10
4.5	0.85
5.0	0.60
5.5	0.30
6.0	0

Table 7-4. Discharge (m^3/s) versus Headwater Depth for Various Culvert Sizes

Diameter (mm)	Head Water Depth (m)						
	0	0.3	0.6	0.9	1.2	1.5	1.8

600	0	0.12	0.36	0.57	0.74	0.88	0.99
800	0	0.14	0.45	0.82	1.05	1.27	1.44
900	0	0.17	0.51	0.99	1.42	1.73	1.98
1100	0	0.20	0.58	1.16	1.70	2.27	2.60
1200	0	0.23	0.64	1.30	2.01	2.55	3.17

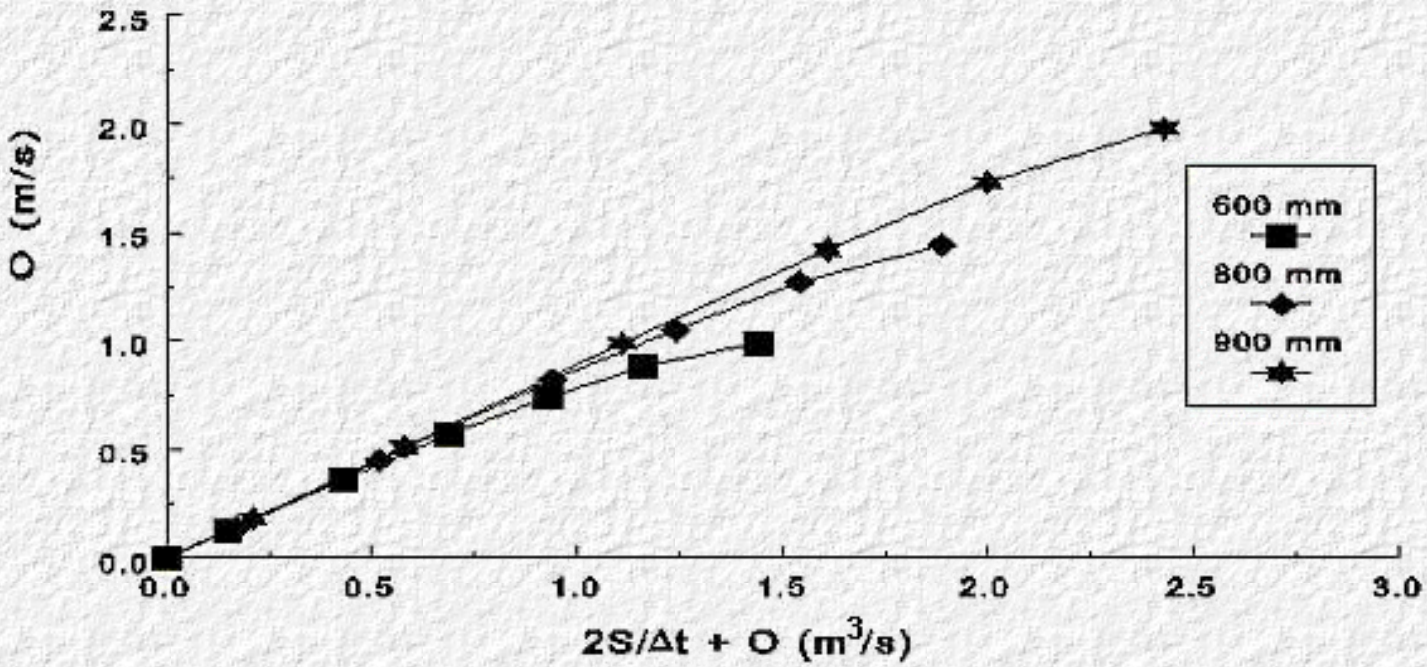


Figure 7-3. Storage-Indication Curves for Example 7-2

Table 7-5. Depth-Storage Relationship for Example 7-2

Depth (m)	Storage (m^3)
0	0
0.3	57
0.6	127
0.9	220
1.2	337
1.5	495
1.8	818
2.1	1294

Table 7-6a. Hydrograph Routed through a 600-mm Diameter Culvert

Time (min)	Inflow (m^3/s)	Average inflow rate (m^3/s)	Average inflow volume (m^3)	S-OΔt/2 (m^3)	S+OΔ/2 (m^3)	Outflow (m^3/s)	Storage (M^3)
0	0	0.15	270	0	270	0	0
30	0.30	0.45	810	-105	705	0.21	82
60	0.60	0.73	1305	-284	1021	0.55	211
90	0.85	0.98	1755	-327	1428	0.75	347
120	1.10	1.25	2250	-222	2028	0.92	603
150	1.40	1.55	2790	136	2926	1.05	1082
180	1.70	1.55	2790	390	3180	1.41	1658
210	1.40	1.25	2250	423	2673	1.53	1801
240	1.10	0.98	1755	356	2111	1.29	1514
270	0.85	0.73	1305	190	1495	1.07	1151
300	0.60	0.45	810	-186	624	0.93	654
330	0.30	0.15	270	-256	14	0.49	184

Table 7-6b. Hydrograph Routed through an 800-mm Diameter Culvert

Time (min)	Inflow (m^3/s)	Average inflow rate (m^3/s)	Average inflow volume (m^3)	S-O∆t/2 (m^3)	S+O∆/2 (m^3)	Outflow (m^3/s)	Storage (M^3)
0	0	0.15	270	0	270	0	0
30	0.30	0.45	810	-121	689	0.22	74
60	0.60	0.73	1305	-366	939	0.59	161
90	0.85	0.98	1755	-507	1248	0.80	216
120	1.10	1.25	2250	-599	1652	1.03	325
150	1.40	1.55	2790	-643	2147	1.27	504
180	1.70	1.55	2790	-460	2330	1.45	844
210	1.40	1.25	2250	-357	1893	1.49	987
240	1.10	0.98	1755	-557	1198	1.36	669
270	0.85	0.73	1305	-585	720	0.99	307
300	0.60	0.45	810	-384	426	0.61	168
330	0.30	0.15	270	-215	56	0.36	106

Table 7-6c. Hydrograph Routed through a 900-mm Diameter Culvert

Time (min)	Inflow (m^3/s)	Average inflow rate (m^3/s)	Average inflow volume (m^3)	S-O∆t/2 (m^3)	S+O∆/2 (m^3)	Outflow (m^3/s)	Storage (M^3)
0	0	0.15	270	0	270	0	0
30	0.30	0.45	810	-134	676	0.22	68
60	0.60	0.73	1305	-390	915	0.59	143
90	0.85	0.98	1755	-544	1211	0.81	185
120	1.10	1.25	2250	-725	1526	1.08	243
150	1.40	1.55	2790	-893	1897	1.34	316
180	1.70	1.55	2790	-1019	1771	1.62	439
210	1.40	1.25	2250	-984	1266	1.53	3932
240	1.10	0.98	1755	-754	1001	1.12	56
270	0.85	0.73	1305	-600	705	0.89	201
300	0.60	0.45	810	-409	401	0.62	148
330	0.30	0.15	270	-216	54	0.34	93

Go to Chapter 8

Chapter 8 : HDS 2

Urbanization and Other Factors Affecting Peak Discharges and Hydrographs

Go to Chapter 9

Highways are relatively permanent, and consequently highway drainage structures must be designed as installations with design lives of 50 years or more. The designer must recognize that highway drainage structures will be in place for a long time, but that the existing conditions in the drainage basin will not necessarily remain the same over that period of time. Many areas of the country have experienced significant changes in land use and tremendous urban growth.

The effects of urbanization, channelization, detention basins, diversions, and natural disasters must be considered in the design of highway structures. Each of these factors can change the hydrologic character of a watershed, and designers need to quantify the effects of these factors in order to assess their magnitude and, if the effects are significant, modify the design accordingly. Methods presented in this chapter provide designers with the tools necessary to quantify some of these factors.

8.1 Urbanization

As a watershed undergoes urbanization, the peak discharge typically increases and the hydrograph becomes shorter and rises more quickly. This is due mostly to the improved hydraulic efficiency of an urbanized area. In its natural state, a watershed will have developed a natural system of conveyances consisting of gullies, streams, ponds, marshes, etc., all in equilibrium with the naturally existing vegetation and physical watershed characteristics. As an area develops, typical changes made to the watershed include:

1. removal of existing vegetation and replacement with impervious pavement or buildings,
2. improvement to natural watercourses by channelization, and
3. augmentation of the natural drainage system by storm sewers and open channels.

These changes tend to decrease depression storage, infiltration rates, and travel time. Consequently, peak discharges increase, with the time base of hydrographs becoming shorter and the rising limb rising more quickly.

Methods of quantifying the effects of urbanization are discussed in this section.

8.2 USGS Urban Watershed Studies

In 1978, the Federal Highway Administration contracted with the USGS to conduct a nationwide survey of flood frequencies under urban conditions. The purposes of the study were to: review the literature of urban flood studies, coile a nationwide data base of flood frequency characteristics including land use variables for urban watersheds, and define estimating techniques for ungaged urban areas. Results of the study are described in detail in UGS Water Supply Paper 2207 (Sauer et al., 1983).

A review of nearly 600 urbanized sites resulted in a final list of 269 sites that met criteria wherein at least 15 percent of the drainage area was covered with commercial, industrial, or residential development; reliable flood data were available for 10 or more years (either actual peak flow data or synthesized data from a calibrated rainfall-runoff model); and the period of record was coincident with a period of relatively

constant urbanization. The complete data base including topographic and climatic variables, land use variables, urbanization indices and flood frequency estimates are available from the USGS National Center, Reston, VA.

The USGS study developed a procedure for quantifying the effects of urbanization on peak discharge and flood volume. Regression equations relate the peak discharge at a specified frequency to:

1. drainage area,
2. peak discharge for the same watershed in a rural condition, and
3. a basin-development factor (BDF).

The basin-development factor is a measure of the degree of urbanization that exists (or might exist in the future) in the watershed. The BDF is discussed in more detail in Section 8.2.2.

The USGS regression equations can be used to estimate the peak discharge and corresponding hydrograph for existing conditions of urbanization, and they can also be used to estimate the peak discharge and hydrograph for future conditions. The equations for peak discharge are presented first followed by a procedure for hydrograph estimation. The urban peak flow equations are applicable to a wide variety of geographic and climatologic conditions. They can provide useful estimates of the relative impact that varying amounts of urbanization have on peak discharge and runoff. However, these estimates cannot be treated as absolutes, and some judgment must be exercised in their application.

8.2.1 Peak Discharge Equations

Initially, the USGS study developed regression equations for urban peak flow discharge in terms of seven independent variables. Subsequently, it was found that by eliminating the less significant independent variables from the regression analyses, simpler equations could be obtained without appreciably increasing the standard error of regression. Ultimately, the following three-parameter equations were developed by the USGS for peak discharges in urbanized watersheds:

$$UQ_2 = 4.130\ A^{0.21}(13 - BDF)^{-0.48}\ RQ_2^{0.73} \qquad 8\text{-}1$$

$$UQ_5 = 4.117\ A^{0.17}(13 - BDF)^{-0.39}\ RQ_5^{0.78} \qquad 8\text{-}2$$

$$UQ_{10} = 3.864\ A^{0.16}(13 - BDF)^{-0.36}\ RQ_{10}^{0.79} \qquad 8\text{-}3$$

$$UQ_{25} = 3.690\ A^{0.15}(13 - BDF)^{-0.34}\ RQ_{25}^{0.80} \qquad 8\text{-}4$$

$$UQ_{50} = 3.542\ A^{0.15}(13 - BDF)^{-0.32}\ RQ_{50}^{0.81} \qquad 8\text{-}5$$

$$UQ_{100} = 3.515\ A^{0.15}(13 - BDF)^{-0.32}\ RQ_{100}^{0.82} \qquad 8\text{-}6$$

$$UQ_{500} = 3.378\ A^{0.16}(13 - BDF)^{-0.30}\ RQ_{500}^{0.82} \qquad 8\text{-}7$$

where:

UQ_r is the peak discharge of recurrence interval, r, for an urbanized condition in (m^3/s) where r ranges from 2 to 500 years

A is the area of the drainage basin in km^2
BDF is the Basin Development Factor as defined below
RQ_r is the estimate of peak discharge of recurrence interval, r, for rural conditions in (m^3/s).

These equations are applicable for watersheds between 0.5 and 260 km^2.

8.2.2 Basin Development Factor

Several indices of urbanization were evaluated in the course of the USGS study. The Basin Development Factor (BDF), which provides a measure of the efficiency of the drainage system within an urbanizing watershed, was selected for a number of reasons. It was highly significant in the regression equations and its value is fairly easy to determine from topographic maps and field surveys.

To determine the BDF, the basin is first divided into three sections as shown in Figure 8-1. Each section contains approximately one-third of the drainage area of the watershed. Travel time is given consideration when drawing these boundaries so that the travel distances along two or more streams within a particular third are about equal. This does not mean that the travel distances of all three subareas are equal; only that within a particular subarea the travel distances are approximately equal.

Within each section of the basin, four aspects of the drainage system are evaluated and assigned a code:

1. **Channel improvements**. If channel improvements such as straightening, enlarging, deepening, and clearing are prevalent for the main drainage channel and principal tributaries (those that drain directly into the main channel), then a code of one (l) is assigned. Any one, or all, of these improvements would qualify for a code of one. To be considered significant, at least 50 percent of the main drainage channel and principal tributaries must be improved to some extent over natural conditions. If channel improvements are not prevalent, then a code of zero (0) is assigned.

2. **Channel linings**. If more than 50 percent of the main drainage channel and principal tributaries have been lined with an impervious material, such as concrete, then a code of one (l) is assigned. If less than 50 percent of these channels are lined, then a code of zero (0) is assigned. The presence of channel linings would probably indicate the presence of channel improvements as well. Therefore, this is an added factor and indicates a more highly developed drainage system.

3. **Storm drains or storm sewers**. Storm drains are defined as enclosed drainage structures (usually pipes), frequently used on the secondary tributaries where the drainage is received directly from streets or parking lots. Quite often these drains empty into the main tributaries and channel that are either open channels or in some basins may be enclosed as box or pipe culverts. When more than 50 percent of the secondary tributaries within a section consists of storm drains, then a code of one (l) is assigned. If less than 50 percent of the secondary tributaries consists of storm drains, then a code of zero (0) is assigned. It should be noted that if 50 percent or more of the main drainage channels and principal tributaries are enclosed, then the aspects of channel improvements and channel

linings would also be assigned a code of one (l).

4. **Curb and gutter streets**. If more than 50 percent of a subarea is urbanized (covered by residential, commercial, and/or industrial development), and if more than 50 percent of the streets and highways in the subarea is constructed with curbs and gutters, then a code of one (l) should be assigned. Otherwise, a code of zero (0) is assigned. Frequently, drainage from curb and gutter streets will empty into storm drains.

The above guidelines for determining the various drainage system codes are not intended to be precise measurements. A certain amount of subjectivity is involved. It is recommended that field checking be performed to obtain the best estimate. The basin development factor (BDF) is computed as the sum of the assigned codes. With three subareas per basin, and four drainage aspects to which codes are assigned in each subarea, the maximum value for a fully developed drainage system would be 12. Conversely, if the drainage system has not been developed, then a BDF of zero would result. Such a condition does not necessarily mean that the basin is unaffected by urbanization. In fact, a basin could be partially urbanized, have some impervious area, and have some improvements to secondary tributaries, and still have an assigned BDF of zero. It will be shown later that such a condition will still frequently cause increases in peak discharges.

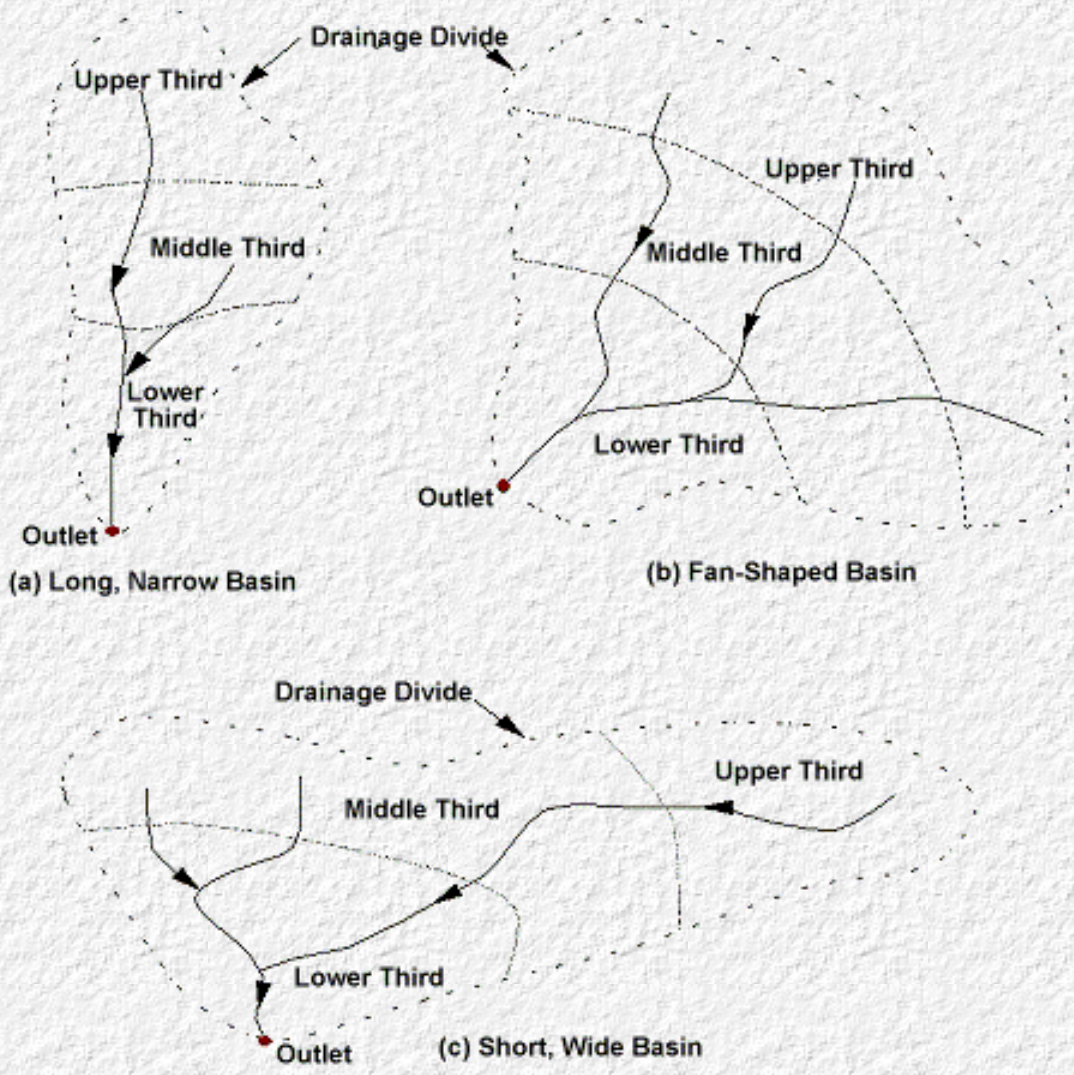


Figure 8-1. Subdivision of Watersheds for Determination of Basin Development Factor

The BDF is a fairly easy index to estimate for an existing urban basin. The 50 percent guideline is usually not difficult to evaluate because many urban areas tend to use the same design criteria throughout, and therefore the drainage aspects are similar throughout. Also, the BDF is convenient to use for projecting future development. Full development and maximum urban effects on peaks would occur when BDF = 12. Projections of full development, or intermediate stages of development, can usually be obtained from city development plans.

Example 8-1

Information is first collected from topographic maps and a field survey for the 109.3-hectare watershed. The watershed is divided into three subareas of approximately equal area. The separation is based on homogeneity of hydrologic conditions, with the following values measured:

Subarea	Area (ha)	Main channel length (m)	Length of secondary tributaries (m)	Road miles (m)	Length of channel improved (m)	Length of channel lined (m)	storm drains (m)	Curb & gutter (m)
Upper	26.2	780	1580	870	140	0	410	210
Middle	49.3	1140	1200	1430	615	540	680	920
Lower	33.8	910	660	1710	525	480	460	970
Sum	109.3	2830						

Based on these values, the BDF is completed as follows:

Total Length of Main Channel: 2830 m

Total Length of Secondary Tributaries:
Upper Third: 1580 m
Middle Third: 1200 m
Lower Third: 660 m

Total Road Miles:
Upper Third: 870 m
Middle Third: 1430 m
Lower Third: 1710 m

The BDF is determined as follows:

Channel Improvements

Upper Third: 140 m have been straightened and deepened
[140/780 < 50%]
Middle Third: 615 m have been straightened and deepened
[615/1140 > 50%] Code = 0
Lower Third: 525 m have been straightened and widened
[525/910 > 50%] = 1

Channel Lining

Upper Third: 0 m of channel are lined = 1
[0/780 < 50%]
Middle Third: 540 m of channel are lined
[540/1140 < 50%] Code = 0
Lower Third: 480 m of channel are lined

[480/910 > 50%] = 0

Storm Drains on Secondary Tributaries = 1

Upper Third: 410 m have been converted to drains
[410/1580 < 50%]

Middle Third: 680 m have been converted to drains
[680/1200 > 50%] Code = 0

Lower Third: 460 m have been converted to drains
[460/660 > 50%] = 1

Curb and Gutter Streets = 1

Upper Third: 20% urbanized with 210 m curb/gutter
[210/870 < 50%]

Middle Third: 70% urbanized with 920 m curb/gutter
[920/1430 > 50%] Code = 0

Lower Third: 55% urbanized with 970 m curb/gutter
[970/1710 > 50%] =1

=1

Total BDF = 7

Example 8-2

The 25-year peak discharge is computed for an urban watershed of 67.34 km^2 with a BDF of 4. The percentage increase over the undeveloped rural condition is also computed.

1. Determine the equivalent rural discharge using the published USGS statewide regression equation. For this site the 25-year peak discharge for the rural conditions is determined from the following equation:

$$RQ_{25} = 4.21 \ A^{0.666}$$

$$RQ_{25} = 4.21(67.34)^{0.666} = 69 \ m^3/s$$

2. Determine the urbanized discharge:

$$UQ_{25} = 3.69 \ A^{0.15}(13 - BDF)^{-0.34} RQ^{0.80}$$

$$UQ_{25} = 3.69(67.34)^{0.15}(13 - 4)^{-0.34}(69)^{0.80} = 97.3 m^3/s$$

The 25-year peak discharge for the urban watershed is 97.3 m^3/s.

3. Determine the percent change:

$$\frac{UQ_{25} - RQ_{25}}{RQ_{25}} x \ 100 = \frac{97.3 - 69}{69} x \ 100 = 41\%$$

8.2.3 Effects of Future Urbanization

The regression equations can also be used to determine the effects of future urbanization upon peak discharges. This calculation is simplified by performing some algebraic manipulation of the regression equations. This is illustrated by showing the impact on the 5-year peak discharge when the BDF changes from 5 to 10.

For the present and future conditions, the 5-yr. peak discharge is computed with Equation 8-2:

$$UQ_5 = 4.117\ A^{0.17}(13 - BDF_i)^{-0.39}\ RQ_5^{0.78}$$

where:

i = p and i = f for the present and the future BDF, respectively.

The change in the BDF is:

$$\Delta BDF = (BDF_f - BDF_p)$$

which can be rearranged to:

$$BDF_f = BDF_p + \Delta BDF$$

The ratio of the future UQ_{5f} to the present UQ_{5p} is:

$$\frac{UQ_{5f}}{UQ_{5p}} = \frac{4.117\ A^{0.17}\ [13 - (BDF_p + \Delta BDF)]^{-0.39}\ RQ_5^{0.78}}{4.117\ A^{0.17}\ (13 - BDF_p)^{-0.39}\ RQ_5^{0.78}}$$

Canceling the common terms and rearranging yields:

$$\frac{UQ5f}{UQ5p} = \left[1 - \frac{\Delta BDF}{13 - BDF_p}\right]^{-0.39}$$

For this example, BDF_p = 5 and ΔBDF = (10 - 5); therefore:

$$\frac{UQ5f}{UQ5p} = \left[1 - \frac{5}{8}\right]^{-0.39} = 1.47$$

Thus, the future 5-year peak discharge is 47 percent higher than the present 5-year peak discharge.

The same approach can be applied to the other recurrence intervals yielding the following general equation:

$$\frac{UQ_f}{UQ_p} = \left[1 - \frac{\Delta BDF}{13 - BDF_p}\right]^n \qquad 8\text{-}8$$

where:

n varies with recurrence intervals as given in Table 8-1.

8.2.4 Hydrograph Estimation

Using the regression equations presented above, it is possible to determine a peak discharge for an urbanizing watershed for a number of recurrence intervals. If a corresponding hydrograph is needed for these peak discharges, the procedure presented below can be used. This method was developed by the USGS based upon a study of 62 stations in various geographic locations for which calibrated rainfall-runoff models existed. These stations are a subset of the 269 gaged basins used to develop the urban peak discharge equations. The results are applicable to a wide range of geographic and climatic conditions. The resulting hydrograph is as accurate as other synthetic hydrographs.

A standardized dimensionless hydrograph was developed by Stricker and Sauer (1982) that is used for all watersheds. The ordinates of the hydrograph are given in terms of their ratio to the estimated peak discharge, Q_p. The time scale of the hydrograph is given in terms of its ratio tabulated in Table 8-2 to the basin lag time, T_L. The dimensionless hydrograph is shown in Figure 8-2 and its ordinates are Q_p.

The USGS developed the following equation for estimating basin lag time:

$$T_L = 0.38\ L^{0.62}\ ST^{-0.31}(13 - BDF)^{0.47} \qquad 8\text{-}9$$

where:

T_L is the lag time for the urban watershed in hours
L is the basin length from the outlet to the watershed divide in km
ST is the main channel slope in m/km measured between points that are 10 and 85 percent of the main channel length
BDF is the basin development factor as defined in the previous section. (If ST is greater than 13.3 m/km, use 13.3 m/km.)

Table 8-1. Variation of BDF Exponent (n) with Recurrence Interval (T_r)

T_r (yrs)	n
2	-0.43
5	-0.39
10	-0.36
25	-0.34
50	-0.32
100	-0.32

Table 8-2. Time and Discharge Ratios of the Dimensionless Urban Hydrograph (from Stricker and Sauer, 1982)[51]

Time ratio (t/T_L)	Discharge ratio (Q_t/Q_p)
0.45	0.27
0.50	0.37
0.55	0.46

0.60	0.56
0.65	0.67
0.70	0.76
0.75	0.86
0.80	0.92
0.85	0.97
0.90	1.00
0.95	1.00
1.00	0.98
1.05	0.95
1.10	0.90
1.15	0.84
1.20	0.78
1.25	0.71
1.30	0.65
1.35	0.59
1.40	0.54
1.45	0.48
1.50	0.44
1.55	0.39
1.60	0.36
1.65	0.32
1.70	0.30

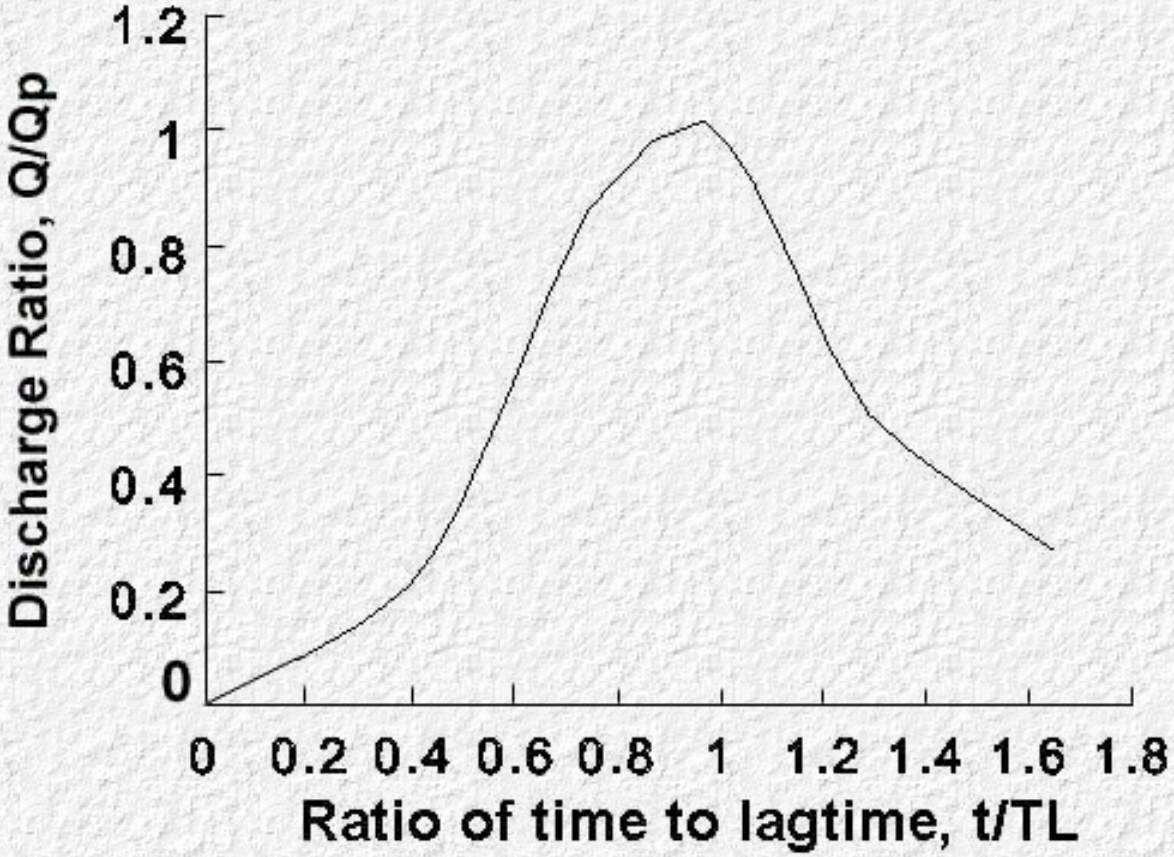


Figure 8-2. Dimensionless USGS Urban Hydrograph

Design Procedure. Using Equation 8-9 and the peak discharge equations (Equation 8-1 to Equation 8-7), a hydrograph can be constructed using the following stepwise procedure:

- Step 1. From the best available topographic maps, determine the drainage area, main-channel length, and main-channel slope of the basin.

- Step 2. Compute the equivalent rural peak discharge from the applicable USGS flood-frequency report.

- Step 3. Compute the basin development factor. This parameter can be easily determined using drainage maps and by making field inspections of the drainage basin.

- Step 4. Compute the peak discharge for urban conditions using the appropriate equation at the selected frequency (Equation 8-1 to Equation 8-7).

- Step 5. Compute the lag time from Equation 8-9.

- Step 6. The coordinates of the runoff hydrograph can be computed by multiplying the value of lag time by the time ratios and the value of peak discharge by the discharge ratios presented in Table 8-2. The recurrence interval corresponds to the recurrence interval of Q_p.

Example 8-3

The procedure is illustrated in an example taken from Jackson (1976) to compute a hydrograph associated with the 100-year discharge estimated for Little Sugar Creek at Charlotte, N.C.

- 1. The drainage area (A) is determined as 106.2 km^2 and the basin length (L) and slope (ST) are determined to be 17.6 km and 2.5 m/km, respectively.

- 2. The equivalent rural 100-year peak discharge (RQ_{100}) is 211 m^3/s (Jackson, 1976).

- 3. The basin development factor (BDF) is computed to be 9.

- 4. Using Equation 8-6, the urban peak discharge for the 100-year recurrence-interval flood (UQ_{100}) is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
UQ_{100} &= 3.515\ A^{0.15}(13 - BDF)^{-0.32}\ RQ_{100}^{0.82} \\
&= 3.515(106.2)^{0.15}(13-9)^{-0.32}(211)^{0.82} \\
&= 366\ m^3/s
\end{aligned}
$$

- 5. Using Equation 8-9, the lagtime (T_L) is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_L &= 0.38\ L^{0.62}\ ST^{-0.31}(13 - BDF)^{0.47} \\
&= 0.38(17.6)^{0.62}(2.5)^{-0.31}(13 - 9)^{0.47} \\
&= 3.2\ h
\end{aligned}
$$

6. The hydrograph is computed from the dimensionless ratios (Table 8-3). The resulting hydrograph is plotted in Figure 8-3.

7. For the lag time of 3.2 hours, an estimate of the time of road overtopping at a discharge of 255 m^3/s is computed as follows:

$$Q / Q_p = 255 / 366 = 0.70$$

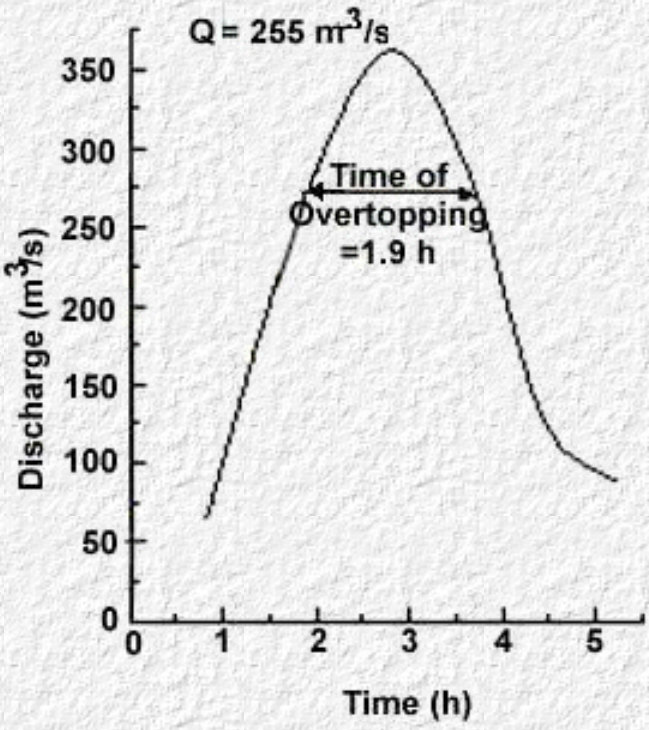


Figure 8-3. Urban Hydrograph for Little Sugar Creek, NC, USGS Dimensionless Hydrograph Method

The time ratio on the rising limb of the hydrograph can be linearly interpolated using the values from columns 1 and 3. Specifically, the discharge ratio of 0.7 is entered into column 3. If falls between the values of 0.67 and 0.76, which correspond to time ratios of 0.65 and 0.70, respectively, from column 1. Thus, the interpolated value is:

$$(t / T_L)_b = 0.65 + \frac{(0.70 - 0.67)}{(0.76 - 0.67)} (0.70 - 0.65) = 0.669$$

The time of the end of overtopping can be interpolated using values on the recession of the hydrograph of Table 8-3. The procedure follows the same method used to interpolate on the rising limb, with values taken from columns 1 and 3 of Table 8-3. The interpolated value is:

$$(t / T_L)_e = 1.25 + \frac{(0.65 - 0.71)}{(1.30 - 1.25)} (0.7 - 0.71)$$
$$= 1.262$$

The road overtopping time, W, is:

$$W = [(t/T_L)_e - (t/T_L)_b]T_L$$
$$= [1.262 - 0.669](3.2) = 1.9\,h$$

The time of overtopping can also be obtained graphically from the hydrograph shown in Figure 8-3. The computations will provide greater accuracy than the graphical approach.

Table 8-3. Computation of Ordinates of Runoff Hydrograph

(1) Time ratio t/T_L	(2) Time (h)	(3) Discharge ratio Q_t/Q_p	(4) Discharge (m^3/s)
0.45	1.4	0.27	99
0.50	1.6	0.37	135
0.55	1.8	0.46	168
0.60	1.9	0.56	205
0.65	2.1	0.67	245
0.70	2.2	0.76	278
0.75	2.4	0.86	315
0.80	2.6	0.92	337
0.85	2.7	0.97	355
0.90	2.9	1.00	366
0.95	3.0	1.00	366
1.00	3.2	0.98	359
1.05	3.4	0.95	348
1.10	3.5	0.90	329
1.15	3.7	0.84	307
1.20	3.8	0.78	285
1.25	4.0	0.71	260
1.30	4.2	0.65	238
1.35	4.3	0.59	216
1.40	4.5	0.54	198
1.45	4.6	0.48	176
1.50	4.8	0.44	161
1.55	5.0	0.39	143
1.60	5.1	0.36	132
1.65	5.3	0.32	117
1.70	5.4	0.30	110

(2) $T_L * (t/T_L) = 3.2 *$ column 1
(4) $Q_p * (Q_t/Q_p) = 366 *$ column 3

8.3 Index Adjustment of Flood Records

The flood frequency methods of Chapter 4 assume that the flood record is a series of events from the same population. In statistical terms, the events should be independent and identically distributed. In hydrologic terms, the events should be the result of the same meteorological and runoff processes. The year-to-year variation should only be due to the natural variation such as that of the volumes and durations

of rainfall events.

Watershed changes, such as deforestation and urbanization, change the runoff processes that control the watershed response to rainfall. In statistical terms, the events are no longer identically distributed because the population changes with changes in land use. Afforestation might decrease the mean flow. Urbanization would probably increase the mean flow but decrease the variation of the peak discharges. If the watershed change takes place over an extended period, then each event during the period of change is from a different population. Thus, magnitudes and exceedence probabilities obtained from the flood record could not represent future events. Before such a record is used for a frequency analysis, the measured events should be adjusted to reflect homogeneous watershed conditions. One method of adjusting a flood record is referred to as the index-adjustment method (which should not be confused with index-flood method of Chapter 5).

Flood records can be adjusted using an index method, which is a class of methods that uses an index variable, such as the percentage of imperviousness or the fraction of a channel reach that has undergone channelization, to adjust the flood peaks. Index methods require values of the index variable for each year of the record and a model that relates the change in peak discharge, the index variable, and the exceedence probability. In addition to urbanization, index methods could be calibrated to adjust for the effects of deforestation, surface mining activity, agricultural management practices, or climate change.

8.3.1 Index Adjustment Method for Urbanization

Since urbanization is a common cause of nonhomogeneity in flood records, it will be used to illustrate index adjustment of floods. The literature does not identify a single method that is considered to be the best method for adjusting an annual flood series when only the time record of the percentage of imperviousness is available. Each method depends on the data used to calibrate the prediction process, and the data base used to calibrate the methods are usually very sparse. However, the sensitivities of measured peak discharges suggest that a 1 percent increase in urbanization causes an increase in peak discharge of about 1 to 2.5 percent for the 100-year and the 2-year events, respectively (McCuen, 1989).

Based on the general trends of results published in available urban flood-frequency studies, (McCuen, 1989) developed a method of adjusting a flood record for the effects of urbanization. Urbanization refers to the introduction of impervious surfaces or improvements of the hydraulic characteristics of the channels or principal flow paths. Figure 8-4 shows the peak adjustment factor as a function of the exceedence probability for percentages of urbanization up to 60 percent. The greatest effect is for the more frequent events and the highest percentage of urbanization.

Given the return period of a flood peak for a nonurbanized watershed, the effect of an increase in urbanization can be assessed by multiplying the discharge by the peak adjustment factor, which is a function of the return period and the percentage of urbanization. Where it is necessary to adjust a discharge to another watershed condition, the measured discharge can be divided by the peak adjustment factor for the existing condition to produce a "rural" discharge. This computed discharge is then multiplied by the peak adjustment factor for the second watershed condition. The first operation (i.e., division) adjusts the discharge to a magnitude representative of a nonurbanized condition while the second operation (i.e., multiplication) adjusts the new discharge to a computed discharge for the second watershed condition.

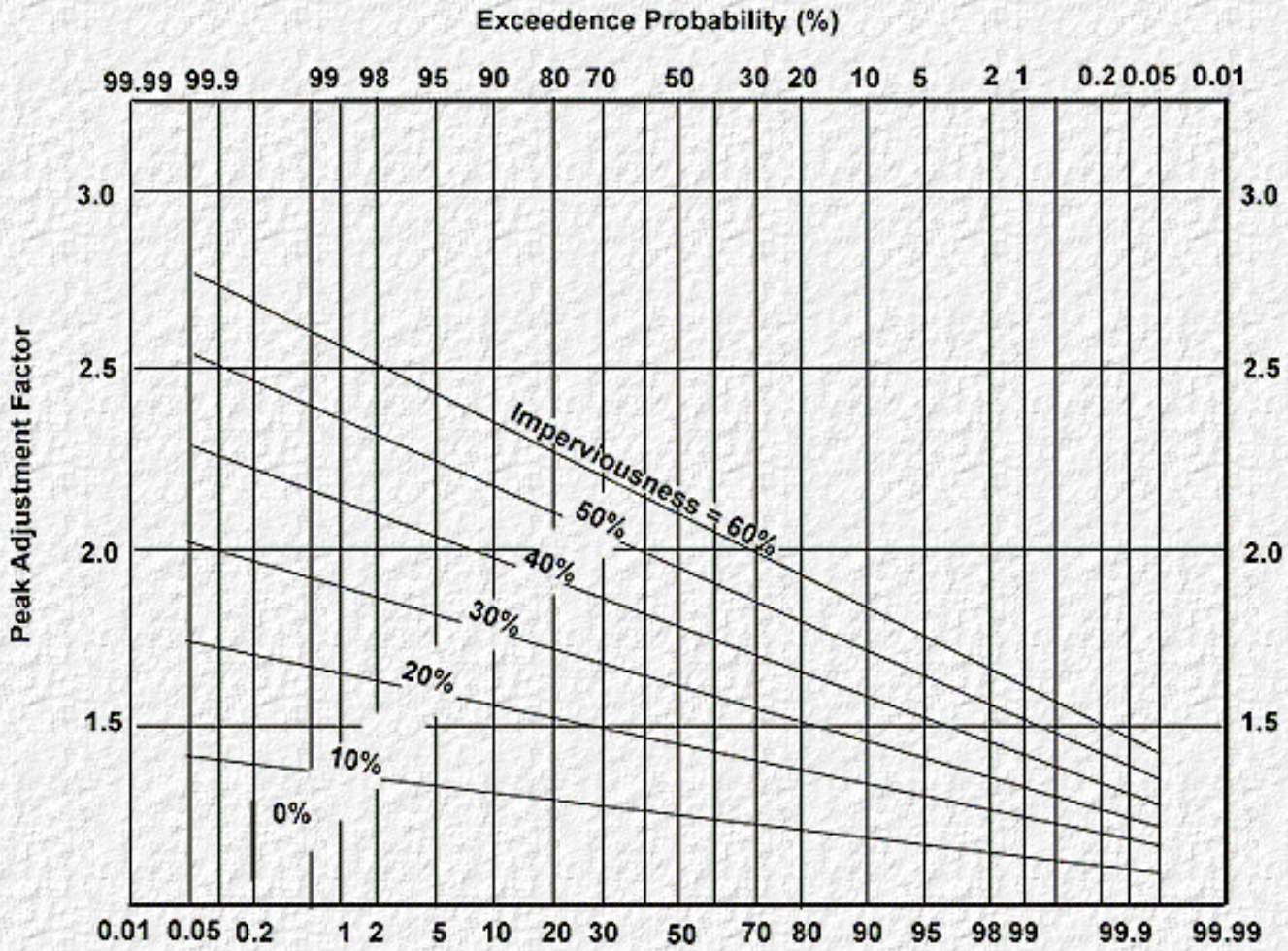


Figure 8-4. Peak Adjustment Factors for Correcting a Flood Discharge Magnitude for Urbanization (From McCuen, 1989)

8.3.2 Adjustment Procedure

The adjustment method of Figure 8-4 requires an exceedence probability. For a flood record, the best estimate of the probability is obtained from a plotting position formula. The following procedure can be used to adjust a flood record for which the individual flood events have occurred on a watershed that is undergoing a continuous change in the level of urbanization:

1. Identify the percentage of urbanization for each event in the flood record. While percentages may not be available for every year of record, they will have to be interpolated or extrapolated from existing estimates so a percentage is assigned to each flood event of record.

2. Identify the percentage of urbanization for which an adjusted flood record is needed. This is the percentage to which all flood events in the record will be adjusted, thus producing a record that is assumed to include events that are independent and identically distributed.

3. Compute the rank (i) and exceedence probability (p) for each event in the flood record; a plotting position formula can be used to compute the probability.

4. Using the exceedence probability and the percentage of urbanization from Step 1, find

from Figure 8-4 the peak adjustment factor (f_1) to transform the measured peak from the actual level of urbanization to a nonurbanized condition.

5. Using the exceedence probability and the percentage of urbanization from Step 2 for which a flood series is needed, find from Figure 8-4 the peak adjustment factor (f_2) that is necessary to transform the computed nonurbanized peak of Step 4 to a discharge for the desired level of urbanization.

6. Compute the adjusted discharge (Q_a) by:

$$Q_a = \frac{f_2}{f_1} Q \qquad 8\text{-}10$$

in which Q is the measured discharge.

7. Repeat steps 4, 5, and 6 for each event in the flood record and rank the adjusted series.

8. If the ranks of the events in the adjusted series differ from the ranks of the previous series, which would be the measured events after one iteration of Steps 3 to 7, then the iteration process should be repeated until the ranks do not change.

Example 8-4

Table 8-4 contains the 48-year record of annual maximum peak discharges for the Rubio Wash watershed in Los Angeles, CA. Between 1929 and 1964 the percent of impervious cover, which is also given in Table 8-4, increased from 18 to 40 percent. The mean and standard deviation of the logarithms of the measured record are 1.6994 and 0.1896, respectively. The station skew is -0.70, and the map skew is -0.45.

The procedure given above was used to adjust the flood record for the period from 1929 to 1963 to current impervious cover conditions. For example, while the peak discharges for 1931 and 1945 occurred when the percent impervious cover was 19 and 34 percent, respectively, the values were adjusted to a common percentage of 40 percent, which is the watershed state after 1964. For this example, imperviousness was used as the index variable as a measure of urbanization.

Three iterations of adjustments were required. The iterative process is required because the ranks for some of the earlier events changed considerably from the ranks of the measured record; for example, the rank of the 1930 peak changed from 30 to 22 on the first trial, and the rank of the 1933 event went from 20 to 14. Because of such changes in the rank, the exceedence probabilities change and thus the adjustment factors, which depend on the exceedence probabilities, change. After the third adjustment is made, the rank of the events did not change, so the process is complete. The adjusted series is given in Table 8-4.

The adjusted series has a mean and standard deviation of 1.7321 and 0.1786, respectively. The mean increased but the standard deviation decreased. Thus the adjusted flood frequency curve will, in general, be higher than the curve for the measured series but will have a small slope. The computations for the adjusted and unadjusted flood frequency curves are given in Table 8-5. Since the measured series was not homogeneous, the generalized skew of -0.45 was used to compute the values for the flood frequency curve. The percent increase in the 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year flood magnitudes are also given in Table 8-5. The change is

relatively minor because the imperviousness did not change after 1964 and the change was small (i.e., 10 percent) from 1942 to 1964; also most of the larger storm events occurred after the watershed had reached the developed condition. The adjusted series would represent the annual flood series for a constant urbanization condition (i.e., 40 percent imperviousness). Of course, the adjusted series is not a measured series.

8.4 Channelization

Channelization is the process of modifying the hydraulic conveyance of a natural watershed. This is usually done to improve the hydraulic efficiency of the main channel and tributaries and thereby alleviate localized flooding problems. On the other hand, the results of channelization are usually reflected in an increase in the peak discharge and a decrease in the time to peak of the runoff hydrograph.

The effects of channelization have been incorporated into several of the methods described above for inclusion of urban effects. The USGS Basin Development Factor is determined primarily from channel improvements. The methods of channel routing presented in Chapter 7 can also be used to evaluate the effects of channelization as was illustrated by the example presented in that section.

Various urban studies such as that by Liscum and Massey (1980) have shown that the impacts of channelization on flood characteristics may be as significant as the encroachment of impervious cover. Therefore, the designer must be able to evaluate the effects of channelization work done by others on highway design as well as any improvements made in conjunction with highway construction.

8.5 Detention Storage

Temporary in-channel or detention storage usually reduces peak discharges. Unfortunately, there is no simple way to determine the effect of detention storage at a specified urban site. The reservoir- and channel-routing techniques discussed in Chapter 7 can be used to make assessments of these quantities.

8.6 Diversion and Dam Construction

The highway designer needs to be aware of the construction or planned construction of diversions or dams on the watershed because these works will significantly affect the magnitude and character of the runoff reaching the highway crossing. The designer should make a point to become informed of proposed projects being studied by the various water resources agencies active in their part of the country. Local agencies such as power utilities, irrigation boards, and water supply companies should be canvassed whenever a major highway drainage structure is designed. The methods of channel and reservoir routing can be used to assess the effects that such projects will have on highway drainage. Recently, the practice of decommissioning dams has increased. Effects on drainage of highways downstream need to be considered.

Table 8-4. Adjustment of the Rubio Wash Annual Maximum Flood Record for Urbanization

		Measured series			Ordered data			
Year	Urbanization (%)	Annual peak	Rank	Exceed. prob.	Rank	Annual peak	Year	Exceed. prob.
1929	18.0	18.7	47	.9592	1	104.8	1970	.0204
1930	18.0	47.8	30	.6122	2	90.0	1974	.0408
1931	19.0	22.6	46	.9388	3	89.6	1972	.0612

1932	20.0	42.8	34	.6939	4	85.5	1951	.0816
1933	20.0	58.6	20	.4082	5	84.4	1956	.1020
1934	21.0	47.6	31	.6327	6	81.8	1968	.1224
1935	21.0	38.8	35	.7143	7	78.7	1958	.1429
1936	22.0	33.4	41	.8367	8	78.7	1942	.1633
1937	23.0	68.0	14	.2857	9	77.6	1957	.1837
1938	25.0	48.7	29	.5918	10	75.0	1946	.2041
1939	26.0	28.3	43	.8776	11	73.9	1976	.2245
1940	28.0	54.9	26	.5306	12	71.9	1969	.2449
1941	29.0	34.0	39	.7959	13	69.6	1967	.2653
1942	30.0	78.7	8	.1633	14	68.0	1937	.2857
1943	31.0	54.6	27	.5510	15	65.4	1953	.3061
1944	33.0	50.4	28	.5714	16	65.1	1965	.3265
1945	34.0	46.1	32	.6531	17	64.8	1950	.3469
1946	34.0	75.0	10	.2041	18	62.3	1952	.3673
1947	35.0	59.2	19	.3878	19	59.2	1947	.3878
1948	36.0	15.0	48	.9796	20	58.6	1933	.4082
1949	37.0	30.0	42	.8571	21	58.6	1975	.4286
1950	38.0	64.8	17	.3469	22	57.8	1964	.4490
1951	38.0	85.5	4	.0816	23	57.8	1966	.4694
1952	39.0	62.3	18	.3673	24	56.2	1973	.4898
1953	39.0	65.4	15	.3061	25	55.8	1955	.5102
1954	39.0	36.5	36	.7347	26	54.9	1940	.5306
1955	39.0	55.8	25	.5102	27	54.6	1943	.5510
1956	39.0	84.4	5	.1020	28	50.4	1944	.5714
1957	39.0	77.6	9	.1837	29	48.7	1938	.5918
1958	39.0	78.7	7	.1429	30	47.8	1930	.6122
1959	39.0	27.9	44	.8980	31	47.6	1934	.6327
1960	39.0	25.5	45	.9184	32	46.1	1945	.6531
1961	39.0	34.0	39	.7959	33	44.5	1963	.6735
1962	39.0	33.4	41	.8367	34	42.8	1932	.6939
1963	39.0	44.5	33	.6735	35	38.8	1935	.7143
1964	40.0	57.8	22	.4490	36	36.5	1954	.7347
1965	40.0	65.1	16	.3265	37	35.1	1971	.7551
1966	40.0	57.8	23	.4694	38	34.0	1961	.7755
1967	40.0	69.6	13	.2653	39	34.0	1961	.7959
1968	40.0	81.8	6	.1224	40	33.4	1962	.8163
1969	40.0	71.9	12	.2449	41	33.4	1962	.8367
1970	40.0	104.8	1	.0204	42	30.0	1949	.8571
1971	40.0	35.1	37	.7551	43	28.3	1939	.8776
1972	40.0	89.6	3	.0612	44	27.9	1959	.8980
1973	40.0	56.2	24	.4898	45	25.5	1960	.9184
1974	40.0	90.0	2	.0408	46	22.6	1931	.9388
1975	40.0	58.6	21	.4286	47	18.7	1929	.9592
1976	40.0	73.9	11	.2245	48	15.0	1948	.9796

Table 8-4. (cont.) Adjustment of the Rubio Wash Annual Maxium Flood Record for Urbanization
ITERATION 1

			Correction factor		Adjusted Series		
Year	Urbanization (%)	Measured Peak	Exist.	Ultim.	Peak	Rank	Exceed. Prob.
1929	18.0	18.7	1.560	2.075	24.9	47	.9592
1930	18.0	47.8	1.434	1.781	61.5	22	.4490
1931	19.0	22.6	1.573	2.001	29.4	44	.8980
1932	20.0	42.8	1.503	1.863	53.6	32	.6531
1933	20.0	58.6	1.433	1.703	72.2	14	.2857
1934	21.0	47.6	1.506	1.806	58.6	25	.5102
1935	21.0	38.8	1.528	1.881	48.0	34	.6939
1936	22.0	33.4	1.589	1.900	41.1	36	.7347
1937	23.0	68.0	1.448	1.648	80.4	8	.1633
1938	25.0	48.7	1.568	1.830	57.1	28	.5714
1939	26.0	28.3	1.690	1.969	33.2	42	.8571
1940	28.0	54.9	1.603	1.773	62.1	21	.4286
1941	29.0	34.0	1.712	1.910	38.4	37	.7551
1942	30.0	78.7	1.508	1.602	86.0	5	.1020
1943	31.0	54.6	1.663	1.790	59.8	23	.4694
1944	33.0	50.4	1.705	1.855	54.1	31	.6327
1945	34.0	46.1	1.752	1.872	49.0	33	.6735
1946	34.0	75.0	1.585	1.672	79.1	10	.2041
1947	35.0	59.2	1.675	1.773	62.1	20	.4082
1948	36.0	15.0	2.027	2.123	15.7	48	.9796
1949	37.0	30.0	1.907	1.984	31.0	43	.8776
1950	38.0	64.8	1.708	1.740	66.0	17	.3469
1951	38.0	85.5	1.557	1.583	86.9	4	.0816
1952	39.0	62.3	1.732	1.757	62.9	19	.3878
1953	39.0	65.4	1.706	1.740	66.0	17	.3469
1954	39.0	36.5	1.881	1.920	36.9	38	.7755
1955	39.0	55.8	1.788	1.838	56.3	29	.5918
1956	39.0	84.4	1.589	1.619	85.1	6	.1224
1957	39.0	77.6	1.646	1.683	78.3	11	.2245
1958	39.0	78.7	1.620	1.660	79.4	9	.1837
1959	39.0	27.9	1.979	2.020	28.2	45	.9184
1960	39.0	25.5	1.999	2.044	25.8	46	.9388
1961	39.0	34.0	1.911	1.943	34.4	40	.8163
1962	39.0	33.4	1.935	1.956	33.8	41	.8367
1963	39.0	44.5	1.853	1.890	44.9	35	.7143
1964	40.0	57.8	1.781	1.822	57.8	27	.5510
1965	40.0	65.1	1.731	1.748	65.1	18	.3673
1966	40.0	57.8	1.790	1.822	57.8	27	.5510
1967	40.0	69.6	1.703	1.722	69.6	15	.3061
1968	40.0	81.8	1.619	1.634	81.8	7	.1429
1969	40.0	71.9	1.693	1.713	71.9	13	.2653

1970	40.0	104.8	1.480	1.480	104.8	1	.0204
1971	40.0	35.1	1.910	1.931	35.1	39	.7959
1972	40.0	89.6	1.559	1.559	89.6	3	.0612
1973	40.0	56.2	1.798	1.846	56.2	30	.6122
1974	40.0	90.0	1.528	1.528	90.0	2	.0408
1975	40.0	58.6	1.773	1.806	58.6	24	.4898
1976	40.0	73.9	1.683	1.693	73.9	12	.2449

Table 8-4. (cont.) Adjustment of the Rubio Wash Annual maxium Flood Record for Urbanization ITERATION 2

			Correction factor		Adjusted series		
Year	Urbanization (%)	Measured Peak	Exist.	Ultim.	Peak	Rank	Exceed. Prob.
1929	18.0	18.7	1.560	2.075	24.9	47	.9592
1930	18.0	47.8	1.399	1.781	60.9	22	.4490
1931	19.0	22.6	1.548	2.001	29.2	44	.8980
1932	20.0	42.8	1.493	1.863	53.4	32	.6531
1933	20.0	58.6	1.395	1.703	71.7	14	.2857
1934	21.0	47.6	1.475	1.806	58.3	25	.5102
1935	21.0	38.8	1.522	1.881	47.9	34	.6939
1936	22.0	33.4	1.553	1.900	40.9	36	.7347
1937	23.0	68.0	1.405	1.648	79.7	8	.1633
1938	25.0	48.7	1.562	1.830	57.1	28	.5714
1939	26.0	28.3	1.680	1.969	33.2	42	.8571
1940	28.0	54.9	1.573	1.773	61.9	21	.4286
1941	29.0	34.0	1.695	1.910	38.3	37	.7551
1942	30.0	78.7	1.472	1.602	85.7	5	.1020
1943	31.0	54.6	1.637	1.790	59.7	23	.4694
1944	33.0	50.4	1.726	1.855	54.2	31	.6327
1945	34.0	46.1	1.760	1.872	49.0	33	.6735
1946	34.0	75.0	1.585	1.672	79.1	10	.2041
1947	35.0	59.2	1.690	1.773	62.1	20	.4082
1948	36.0	15.0	2.027	2.123	15.7	48	.9796
1949	37.0	30.0	1.921	1.984	31.0	43	.8776
1950	38.0	64.8	1.708	1.740	66.0	17	.3469
1951	38.0	85.5	1.557	1.583	86.9	4	.0816
1952	39.0	62.3	1.741	1.757	62.9	19	.3878
1953	39.0	65.4	1.724	1.740	66.0	17	.3469
1954	39.0	36.5	1.901	1.920	36.9	38	.7755
1955	39.0	55.8	1.820	1.838	56.4	29	.5918
1956	39.0	84.4	1.606	1.619	85.1	6	.1224
1957	39.0	77.6	1.668	1.683	78.3	11	.2245
1958	39.0	78.7	1.646	1.660	79.4	9	.1837
1959	39.0	27.9	1.999	2.020	28.2	45	.9184
1960	39.0	25.5	2.022	2.044	25.8	46	.9388
1961	39.0	34.0	1.923	1.943	34.4	40	.8163

1962	39.0	33.4	1.935	1.956	33.8	41	.8367
1963	39.0	44.5	1.871	1.890	45.0	35	.7143
1964	40.0	57.8	1.822	1.822	57.8	27	.5510
1965	40.0	65.1	1.748	1.748	65.1	18	.3673
1966	40.0	57.8	1.822	1.822	57.8	27	.5510
1967	40.0	69.6	1.722	1.722	69.6	15	.3061
1968	40.0	81.8	1.634	1.634	81.8	7	.1429
1969	40.0	71.9	1.713	1.713	71.9	13	.2653
1970	40.0	104.8	1.480	1.480	104.8	1	.0204
1971	40.0	35.1	1.931	1.931	35.1	39	.7959
1972	40.0	89.6	1.559	1.559	89.6	3	.0612
1973	40.0	56.2	1.846	1.846	56.2	30	.6122
1974	40.0	90.0	1.528	1.528	90.0	2	.0408
1975	40.0	58.6	1.806	1.798	58.6	24	.4898
1976	40.0	73.9	1.693	1.693	73.9	12	.2449

Table 8-4. (cont). Adjustment of the Rubio Wash Annual maxium Flood Record for Urbanization ITERATION 3

			Correction Factor			Adjusted Series	
Year	Urbanization (%)	Measured peak	exist.	Ultim.	Peak	Rank	Exceed. pro
1929	18.0	18.7	1.560	2.075	24.9	47	.9592
1930	18.0	47.8	1.399	1.781	61.5	22	.4490
1931	19.0	22.6	1.548	2.001	29.4	44	.8980
1932	20.0	42.8	1.493	1.863	53.6	32	.6531
1933	20.0	58.6	1.401	1.713	72.2	13	.2653
1934	21.0	47.6	1.475	1.806	58.6	25	.5102
1935	21.0	38.8	1.522	1.881	48.0	34	.6939
1936	22.0	33.4	1.553	1.900	41.1	36	.7347
1937	23.0	68.0	1.405	1.648	80.4	8	.1633
1938	25.0	48.7	1.562	1.830	57.1	28	.5714
1939	26.0	28.3	1.680	1.969	33.2	42	.8571
1940	28.0	54.9	1.573	1.773	62.1	21	.4286
1941	29.0	34.0	1.695	1.910	38.4	37	.7551
1942	30.0	78.7	1.472	1.602	86.0	5	.1020
1943	31.0	54.6	1.637	1.790	59.8	23	.4694
1944	33.0	50.4	1.726	1.855	54.1	31	.6327
1945	34.0	46.1	1.760	1.872	49.0	33	.6735
1946	34.0	75.0	1.585	1.672	79.1	10	.2041
1947	35.0	59.2	1.683	1.765	62.1	21	.4286
1948	36.0	15.0	2.027	2.123	15.7	48	.9796
1949	37.0	30.0	1.921	1.984	31.0	43	.8776
1950	38.0	64.8	1.708	1.740	66.0	17	.3469
1951	38.0	85.5	1.557	1.583	86.9	4	.0816
1952	39.0	62.3	1.741	1.757	62.9	19	.3878
1953	39.0	65.4	1.724	1.740	66.0	17	.3469

1954	39.0	36.5	1.901	1.920	36.9	38	.7755
1955	39.0	55.8	1.820	1.838	56.3	29	.5918
1956	39.0	84.4	1.606	1.619	85.1	6	.1224
1957	39.0	77.6	1.668	1.683	78.3	11	.2245
1958	39.0	78.7	1.646	1.660	79.4	9	.1837
1959	39.0	27.9	1.999	2.020	28.2	45	.9184
1960	39.0	25.5	2.022	2.044	25.8	46	.9388
1961	39.0	34.0	1.923	1.943	34.4	40	.8163
1962	39.0	33.4	1.935	1.956	33.8	41	.8367
1963	39.0	44.5	1.871	1.890	44.9	35	.7143
1964	40.0	57.8	1.822	1.822	57.8	27	.5510
1965	40.0	65.1	1.748	1.748	65.1	18	.3673
1966	40.0	57.8	1.822	1822	57.8	27	.5510
1967	40.0	69.6	1.722	1.722	69.6	15	.3061
1968	40.0	81.8	1.634	1.634	81.8	7	.1429
1969	40.0	71.9	1.703	1.703	71.9	14	.2857
1970	40.0	104.8	1.480	1.480	104.8	1	.0204
1971	40.0	35.1	1.931	1.931	35.1	39	.7959
1972	40.0	89.6	1.559	1.559	89.6	3	.0612
1973	40.0	56.2	1.846	1.846	56.2	30	.6122
1974	40.0	90.0	1.528	1.528	90.0	2	.0408
1975	40.0	58.6	1.798	1.793	58.6	25	.5102
1976	40.0	73.9	1.693	1.693	73.9	12	.2449

8.7 Natural Disasters

It was pointed out earlier that highways are considered permanent structures. Although it is rarely economically feasible to design a highway drainage structure to convey extremely rare discharges unimpeded, the occurrence of such events should not be ignored. Many highway departments have adopted policies which require drainage structures to be designed for a specified recurrence interval, but checked for a higher recurrence interval (often the 100-year discharge, the overtopping flood or the flood of record). It was shown in Section 4 that there is a 40 percent chance that during a 50-year period a drainage structure will be subjected to a discharge equal to or greater than the 100-year discharge. The longer the design life of a structure, the more likely it will be subjected to a discharge much greater than the design discharge. This risk can be quantified based upon the laws of probability, and this is discussed in more detail in Chapter 4 on risk analysis.

Checking for the effects of a rare event is one method of focusing the designer's attention upon this aspect of design. However, factors other than discharge must be evaluated. These include the occurrence of earthquakes, forest fires, dam breaks and other unlikely but possible events. The designer needs to assess the vulnerability of the particular site with respect to the effects of these occurrences and consider secondary outlets for the flows. It is very difficult to assign a recurrence interval to such natural disasters, but their impacts need to be assessed.

The effects of forest fires upon the rainfall-runoff response of a watershed can be estimated based upon previous experience. The U.S. Forest Service can be contacted to provide guidance in this area. The effects of dam breaks have been studied by the National Weather Service, and the NWS is available for

consultation and guidance.

After a natural disaster strikes, detailed studies of the effects may be made and reports generated that can serve as guidance to the designer. The National Weather Service, the USGS, and the Corps of Engineers are the primary sources of such reports. The primary responsibility for disaster recovery within the Federal Government rests with Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). FEMA hydraulic specialists, located in the Federal regions, are very knowledgeable and should be consulted.

Table 8-5. Computed Discharges for Log-Pearson Type III with Generalized Skew for Measured Series and Series Adjusted to 40 Percent Imperviousness

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Return period (yrs)	LP3 deviate, K, for g = -0.45	Discharges based on:		Increase (%)
		Measured series (m^3/s)	Adjusted series (m^3/s)	
2	0.07476	51.7	55.6	7.5
5	0.85580	72.7	76.7	5.5
10	1.22366	85.4	89.2	4.4
25	1.58657	100.1	103.6	2.5
50	1.80538	110.1	113.4	3.0
100	1.99202	119.4	122.4	2.5

(3) $Q = 10^{1.6994 + 0.18963 K}$

(4) $Q = 10^{1.7321 + 0.17856 K}$

Go to Chapter 9

Chapter 9 : HDS 2
Arid Lands Hydrology

Go to Chapter 10, Part I

Many parts of the Western United States are classified as arid or semiarid. The classification is based, in part, on the rainfall. However, vegetation and soils are also factors in classification. Generally speaking, arid lands are those where natural rainfall is inadequate to support crop growth. Semiarid lands are those where rainfall is only sufficient to support short-season crops.

From an engineering hydrology standpoint, arid and semiarid lands are characterized by little rainfall, which, when it does occur, is usually of an intense nature with runoff having a rapid response. Flash flooding is a major concern in such areas.

Hydrologic data are typically not available in arid and semiarid areas, at least in significant quantities. Where gages have been installed, the records are often characterized by years in which there is little or no rainfall and thus, no significant flooding. In other years, intense rainfalls of short duration produce high peak discharges relative to the total volume of runoff. These factors make it comparatively difficult to provide estimates of flood magnitudes or probabilities.

9.1 Zero-Flood Records

Annual maximum flood records that include values of zero are not uncommon in arid regions. Thus, a frequency curve based on logarithms, such as the log Pearson Type III, cannot be developed because the logarithm of zero is minus infinity. In such cases, Bulletin 17B (1982) provides a method for computing a frequency curve for records that include zero-flood years. The method is based on the method of Jennings and Benson (1969). The method is referred to as the conditional probability adjustment. When this method is applied, three frequency curves are computed; these are referred to as the initial or unadjusted curve, the conditional frequency curve, and the synthetic frequency curve. The selection from among the curves to make estimates of flood magnitudes depends on the assessment of the hydrologist.

The procedure to follow when analyzing records that include zero-flood years consists of the following six steps:

Click the hotlink to find detailed discussion on these six steps.

- Step 1. Preliminary analysis
- Step 2. Check for outliers
- Step 3. Compute unadjusted frequency curve
- Step 4. Compute conditional frequency curve
- Step 5. Compute synthetic frequency curve
- Step 6. Select a curve to make estimates

- Step 1. Preliminary Analysis. The first step in the analysis is to separate the record into two parts, all

non-zero floods and zero floods. The procedures can only be applied when the number of zero-flood years does not exceed 25 percent of the total record length; thus,

$$\frac{n_z}{N_t} \leq 0.25 \qquad 9\text{-}1$$

in which

n_z in the number of zero-flood years
N_t is the total record length including those years with zero-floods.

After eliminating the zero-flood years, the mean, standard deviation, and standardized skew coefficient of the logarithms are computed with the remainder of the data. The skew should be rounded to the nearest tenth.

Step 2. Check for Outliers. The test for outliers from Bulletin 17B is discussed in Section 4.3.6.1. While low outliers are more common than high outliers in flood records from arid regions, tests should be made for both. The procedure depends on the station skew. If low outliers are identified, then they are censored (i.e., deleted from the flood record) and the moments recomputed. When high outliers are identified, the moments must be recomputed using the historic-peak adjustment.

Step 3. Compute Unadjusted Frequency Curve. The moments of the logarithms from step 1, or from step 2 if outliers were identified, are used to compute the unadjusted frequency curve. For this step, station skew rather than weighted skew should be used. For selected exceedence probabilities, values of the LP3 deviates (K) are obtained from Table 4-13 for the station skew. The deviates are then used with the log mean ($\overline{X}$) and log standard deviation (S) to compute the logarithm of the discharge:

$$\log Q = \overline{X} + KS \qquad 9\text{-}2$$

The computed discharges are then obtained by $Q = 10^{\log Q}$. The frequency curve can be plotted using the Q values and the exceedence probabilities used to obtain the corresponding values of K. The data points can be plotted using a plotting position formula such as the Cunnane or Weibull.

Step 4. Compute Conditional Frequency Curve. To derive the conditional frequency curve, the conditional probability (p_c} is computed as:

$$p_c = \frac{N_t - n_z}{N_t} = \frac{\text{number of floods excluding zero values}}{\text{total number of years in record}} \qquad 9\text{-}3$$

If historic information is available, then the conditional probability should be computed by Equation 9-4 rather than Equation 9-3:

$$p_c = \frac{H - WL}{H} \qquad 9\text{-}4$$

in which

H is the historic record length
L is the number of peaks truncated
W is the systematic record weight.

The probability p_c is then multiplied by each probability used in step 3 to obtain the K values and plot the unadjusted frequency curve in step 3. The adjusted probabilities and the discharges computed with Equation

9-2 are plotted on frequency paper to form the conditional frequency curve. If the curve is plotted on the same paper as the unadjusted curve from step 3, then the conditional frequency curve can be compared to the measured data points.

Step 5. Compute Synthetic Frequency Curve. The conditional frequency curve of step 4 does not have known moments. Approximate values, which are referred to as synthetic statistics, can be computed. Since there are three moments, three points on the conditional frequency curve will be used to fit the synthetic frequency curve. Specifically, the discharge values for exceedence probabilities of 0.01, 0.1, and 0.50 are used. The discharges are obtained from the conditional frequency curve. The following equations are used to compute the synthetic statistics:

$$G_s = -2.50 + 3.12 \log (Q_{0.01}/Q_{0.10}) / \log(Q_{0.10}/Q_{0.50}) \qquad 9\text{-}5$$

$$S_s = [\log (Q_{0.01}/Q_{0.50})]/(K_{0.01} - K_{0.50}) \qquad 9\text{-}6$$

$$\bar{X}_s = \log (Q_{0.50}) - K_{0.50} (S_s) \qquad 9\text{-}7$$

in which:

$K_{0.50}$ and $K_{0.01}$ are the LP3 deviates obtained from Table 4-13 for the synthetic skew G_s. Equation 9-5 for the synthetic skew is an approximation for use between skew values of -2.0 and +2.5. If appropriate, the synthetic skew can be used to compute a weighted skew, which would be used in place of the synthetic skew.

The synthetic statistics can then be used to compute the synthetic frequency curve. When verifying the synthetic curve, the plotting positions for the synthetic curve should be based on either the total number of years of record or the historic record length H, if the historic adjustment is used.

Step 6. Select a Curve to Make Estimates. The first five steps have resulted in three frequency curves: the unadjusted, the conditional, and the synthetic curves. All three are of potential value for making flood estimates. Each should be compared to the measured data and the goodness of fit assessed.

The disadvantages of the unadjusted curve are that it uses station skew, which can be highly variable for small record lengths, and that it does not account for the zero years in the record, which can be significant if the number of zero-flood years is relatively large. The adjustment with Equation 9-3 or Equation 9-4 is an attempt to overcome the lack of accountability for zero-flood years, but since the zero-flood years are essentially years of low rainfall, applying the adjustment of Equation 9-3 to the high-flow years may produce a distortion on the high end of the curve. The disadvantages of the synthetic curve are that it depends on three exceedence probabilities, which have been selected conceptually, and that the form of Equation 9-5, Equation 9-6, and Equation 9-7 are subjective. These disadvantages should be considered when selecting one of the curves to make estimates.

Example 9-1

Table 9-1 contains the annual maximum discharge record (1932-1973) for Orestimba Creek near Newman, CA (USGS Gaging Station 11-2745). This record was analyzed in Bulletin 17B. The record includes six years in which there was no discharge. To ensure that the adjustment method is applicable, the ratio of the number of zero-flood (n_z) years to the total record length (N_t) must be less than or equal to 0.25. In this case, the method can be applied since 6/42 equals 0.143.

The six zero values are dropped from the record, which gives $n = N_t - n_z = 36$, and the moments of the logarithms computed:

1.5309 = Mean of the logarithms

0.6445 = Standard deviation of the logarithms
-0.8384 = Standardized skew coefficient of the logarithms

The skew is rounded to the nearest tenth, which in this case is -0.8.

The remaining record (n = 36) should be checked for outliers. The procedure detailed in Chapter 4 is used. Since the skew is less than -0.4, the record is first checked for low outliers. For a 36-year record length, an outlier deviate (K_n) of 2.639 is obtained from Table 4-21. The logarithm of the critical flow for low outliers is computed as follows:

$$\log Q_0 = \overline{X} - K_n S$$
$$= 1.5309 - 2.639(0.6445)$$
$$= -0.1699$$

Therefore, the critical flow (Q_o) is 0.676 m^3/s. Since one of the flows in Table 9-1 is less than this critical flow, the 1955 flow of 0.45 m^3/s is considered a low outlier. The value is censored and the remaining 35 values are used to compute the following moments of the logarithms:

1.5846 = mean of the logarithms
0.5665 = standard deviation of the logarithms
-0.4394 = standardized skew of the logarithms

According to the flow chart for handling outliers, it is next necessary to check for high outliers. The procedure of Section 4.3.7 is used. For a sample size of 35, the outlier deviate (K_n) from Table 4-21 is 2.628. Thus, the logarithm of the critical flow for high outliers is:

$$\log Q_0 = \overline{X} + K_n S$$
$$= 1.5846 + 2.6280(0.5665)$$
$$= 3.0734$$

Therefore, the critical flow (Q_0) is 1184 m^3/s. None of the flows in the record exceeded this; thus, there are no high outliers.

The unadjusted curve is computed using the 35 values. The mean, standard deviation, and skew of the logarithms are 1.5846, 0.5665, and -0.4394. The skew is rounded to -0.4. The computations of the unadjusted curve are given in Table 9-2, and the curve is shown in Figure 9-1, with the values of column 4 of Table 9-2 plotted versus the exceedence probabilities of column 1.

Table 9-1. Annual Maximum Flood Series: Orestimba Creek, CA (Station 11-2745)

Year	Flow (m^3/s)	Log of flow	Plotting probability
1932	120.630	2.081	0.222
1933	9.769	.990	0.806
1934	14.611	1.165	0.750
1935	37.378	1.573	0.556
1936	33.980	1.531	0.611
1937	61.731	1.791	0.417
1938	91.463	1.961	0.333
1939	3.256	.513	0.972
1940	97.410	1.989	0.306
1941	86.933	0.939	0.361
1942	53.236	1.726	0.444
1943	182.644	2.262	0.083
1944	36.529	1.563	0.583

1945	169.052	2.228	0.111
1946	22.144	1.345	0.667
1947	.000	*	*
1948	.000	*	*
1949	9.486	.977	0.833
1950	4.955	.695	0.861
1951	82.685	1.917	0.389
1952	103.640	2.016	0.278
1953	4.163	.619	0.917
1954	.000	*	*
1955	.453	-.344	+
1956	159.141	2.202	0.139
1957	40.776	1.610	0.528
1958	288.832	2.461	0.028
1959	152.345	2.183	0.167
1960	12.686	1.103	0.778
1961	.000	*	*
1962	49.271	1.693	0.472
1963	235.030	2.371	0.056
1964	4.417	.645	0.889
1965	15.857	1.200	0.722
1966	3.625	.559	0.944
1967	118.931	2.075	0.250
1968	.000	*	*
1969	143.850	2.158	0.194
1970	28.600	1.456	0.639
1971	16.537	1.218	0.694
1972	.000	*	*
1973	42.758	1.631	0.500

* Zero-flow year
\+ Low outlier

Table 9-2. Computation of Unadjusted and Conditional Frequency Curves

(1) Exceedence probability P_d	(2) LP3 deviate (K) for g = -0.4	(3) log Q	(4) Q (m^3/s)	(5) Adjusted exceedence probability
0.99	-2.61539	0.1030	1.268	0.825
0.90	-1.31671	0.8387	6.897	0.750
0.70	-0.47228	1.3171	20.75	0.583
0.50	0.06651	1.6223	41.91	0.417
0.20	0.85508	2.0690	117.2	0.167
0.10	1.23114	2.2820	191.4	0.083
0.04	1.60574	2.4943	312.1	0.033
0.02	1.83361	2.6233	420.1	0.017
0.01	2.02933	2.7342	542.3	0.0083
0.002	2.39942	2.9439	878.8	0.0017

(3) log Q = + KS
= 1.5846 + 0.5665 K
(5) $(35/42)*P_d$

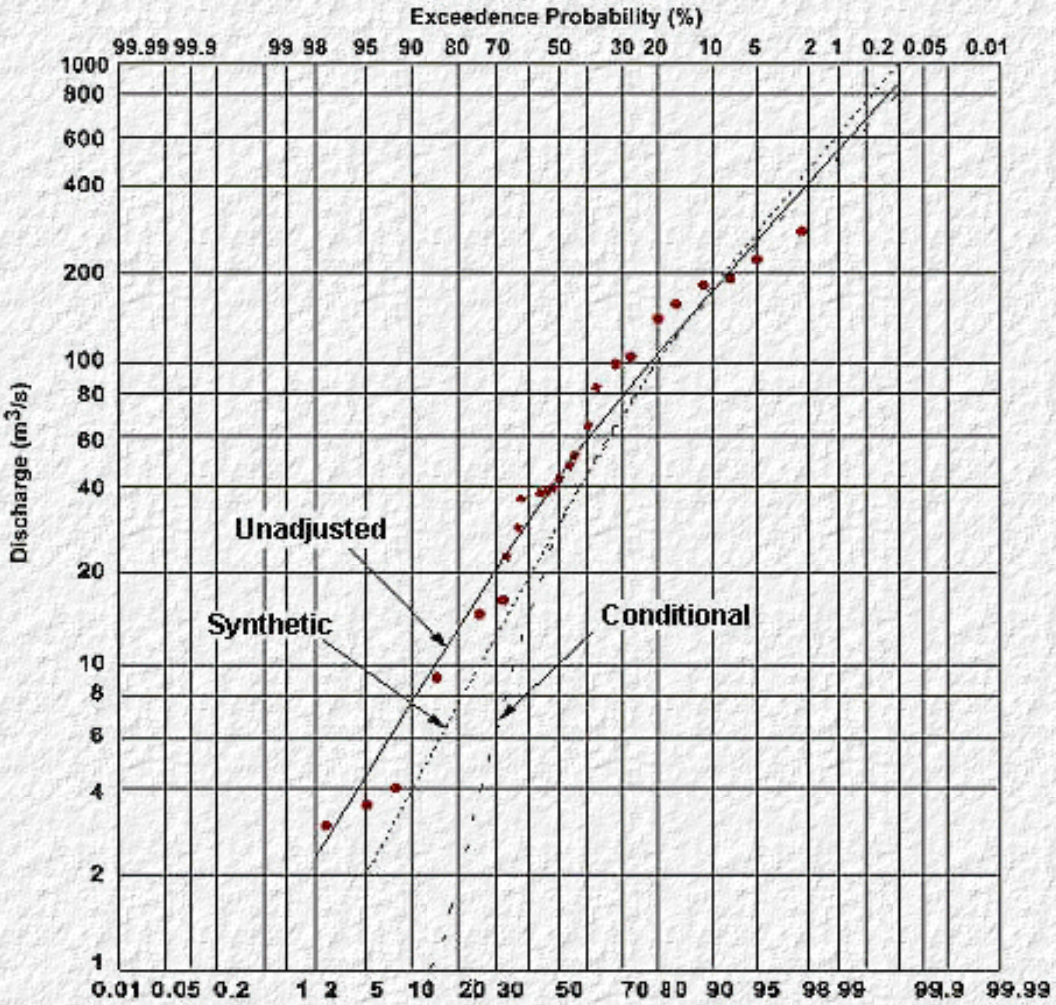


Figure 9-1. Unadjusted, Conditional, and Synthetic Frequency Curves for Orestimba Creek, CA

Using the statistics for the censored series with n = 35, the conditional frequency curve is computed using the conditional probability adjustment. Log Pearson III deviates are obtained from Table 4-13 for a skew of -0.4 and selected exceedence probabilities (see Table 9-2). Since there are 35 events remaining after removing the zero flows and the outlier, the expected probability of Equation 9-3 is 35/42 = 0.8333.

The frequency curves with and without the conditional probability adjustment are shown in Figure 9-1. The conditional curve graphs the flow of column 4 of Table 9-2 versus the probability from column 5. The measured data (n = 35) are also plotted in Figure 9-1. Neither curve provides a good representation of the data in the lower tail. While the low outlier is not included with the plotted data, it is of interest to plot the point.

The synthetic statistics can be computed using Equation 9-5, Equation 9-6, and Equation 9-7. These require values of discharges from the adjusted frequency curve for exceedence probabilities of 0.01, 0.1, and 0.5, which are denoted as $Q_{0.01}$, $Q_{0.10}$, and $Q_{0.50}$, respectively. These three values must be estimated graphically because the probabilities do not specifically appear in the computations (column 5) of Table 9-2. There is no mathematic equation that represents the adjusted curve. The values from the adjusted curve of Figure 9-1 are as follows: $Q_{0.01}$ = 510 m^3/s, $Q_{0.10}$ = 170 m^3/s, and $Q_{0.50}$ = 30 m^3/s, respectively. Thus, the synthetic skew of Equation 9-5 is:

$$G_s = -2.50 + 3.12 \left[\frac{\log (510/170)}{\log (170/30)} \right] = -0.524$$

The computed value of -0.524 should be rounded to the nearest tenth; thus, G_S = -0.5. The synthetic standard deviation is computed with Equation 9-6 and a skew of -0.5:

$$S_s = \frac{\log (510/30)}{1.95472 - 0.08302} = 0.6574$$

where:

the values of $K_{0.01}$ and $K_{0.50}$ are obtained from Table 4-13 using the synthetic skew of -0.5. The synthetic mean is:

$$\overline{X}_S = \log (30) - 0.08302(0.6574)$$
$$= 1.4225$$

The weighted skew is used with the synthetic mean and synthetic standard deviation to compute the final frequency curve. The generalized skew coefficient for the location of the gage is -0.3, with a mean square error of 0.302. The mean square error for the synthetic skew, which is obtained from Table 4-7, is 0.163. Thus, the weighted skew is:

$$G_w = \frac{0.302(-0.524) + 0.163(-0.3)}{0.302 + 0.163} = -0.4455$$

This can be rounded to the nearest tenth; thus, G_W = -0.4, which is used to obtain the deviate K values from Table 4-13.

Table 9-3. Computation of the Synthetic Frequency Curve

(1) Exceedence probability P_d	(2) LP3 deviate (K) for g = -0.4	(3) log Q	(4) Q (m^3/s)
0.99	-2.61539	-0.2969	0.5
0.90	-1.31671	0.5569	3.6
0.70	-0.47228	1.1120	12.9
0.50	0.06651	1.4662	29.3
0.20	0.85508	1.9846	96.5
0.10	1.23114	2.2319	170.5
0.04	1.60574	2.4781	300.7
0.02	1.83361	2.6279	424.5
0.01	2.02933	2.7566	570.9
0.002	2.39942	2.9999	999.7

(3) $\log Q = \overline{X}_S + KS_S$
$= 1.4225 + 0.6574\ K$

The synthetic curve is computed using the following equation:

$$\log Q = 1.4225 + K(0.6574)$$

where the K values are obtained from Table 4-13. The computations are provided in Table 9-3. The synthetic curve is plotted in Figure 9-1.

None of the three curves closely follow the trend in the measured data, especially in the lower tail. The synthetic curve is based, in part, on the generalized skew, which is the result of regionalization of values from

watersheds that may have different hydrologic characteristics than those of Orestimba Creek. In order to make estimates of flood magnitudes, one of the curves must be selected. This would require knowledge of the watershed and judgment of the hydrologist responsible for the analysis.

9.2 Transmission Losses

When the initial part of a runoff hydrograph enters and flows through a dry stream channel, significant amounts of water can seep into the bed and banks of the stream. This seepage is called transmission loss. Transmission loss rates vary widely over the duration of a flood hydrograph and throughout a region. Such losses are important because they can significantly change the shape of a hydrograph and because the volume of seepage can reduce the volume of flow at downstream channel sections.

The amount of losses depend on the material characteristics of the stream cross section, the surface area of the beds and banks of the reach, the location of the ground-water table, antecedent moisture of the cross section, and the existence and type of vegetation in the stream. The latter two factors are usually not considered in design work, but may need to be considered in the analysis of data.

9.2.1 Volume Estimation

Empirical equations are commonly used for transmission loss estimation. While the power model (i.e., $Y = b_o X^{b1}$) is frequently used in hydrology, the nature of transmission loss can lead to a model of the following form:

$$Q_L = b_o Q_u^{b_1} - b_2 \qquad 9\text{-}8$$

in which

Q_L is the runoff depth (centimeters) at a downstream section
Q_u is the depth of runoff (centimeters) at the upstream cross section
b_o, b_1, and b_2 are coefficients that must be fitted with measured data of Q_L and Q_u.

The difference between Q_u and Q_L is the transmission loss. The coefficient b_2 is needed to account for large initial losses that occur before the loss rate stabilizes.

When b_2 of Equation 9-8 equals zero, the equation takes the form of the power model, which is commonly used in hydrology. In such cases, values for b_o and b_1 are obtained using least-squares regression analysis of the logarithms of Q_L and Q_u. Where the coefficient b_2 of Equation 9-8 is expected to be significant, the fitting process is more complex. It can be easily solved using the numerical approach discussed by McCuen (1993). As an alternative, Equation 9-8 can be rearranged to the form:

$$Q_L + b_2 = b_o Q_u^{b_1} \qquad 9\text{-}9$$

A value is assumed for b_2 and added to each measured value of Q_L. Values of b_o and b_1 are obtained using least-squares regression analysis of the logarithms of ($Q_L + b_2$) and Q_u. Several trial values of b_2 are made until the best value of b_2 is found.

Equation 9-8 is useful for locations where gages are available at the upstream and downstream cross-sections. The model is not appropriate for regionalization. In a region of relatively homogeneous transmission characteristics where numerous gages are used to collect data, the ratio of relative amounts of direct runoff (R) can be graphed as a function of drainage area (A) and

related by the power model:

$$R = c_o A^{c_1} \qquad 9\text{-}10$$

in which:

c_0 and c_1 are regression coefficients.

Models that have the form of Equation 9-10 for predicting runoff volumes typically have positive values for coefficient c_1. But in the case of transmission losses, where the volume actually decreases, the coefficient will be negative. Dorroh provided the following model for use in certain areas of the Southwest U.S.:

$$R = 1.21 \; A^{-0.2} \qquad 9\text{-}11$$

and Mockus provided the following model for use in certain Great Plains areas:

$$R = 0.7525 \; A^{-0.0926} \qquad 9\text{-}12$$

Transmission loss models enable the downstream flow volume (Q_d) to be estimated for a given upstream volume (Q_u):

$$Q_d = Q_u \left(\frac{R_d}{R_u} \right) \qquad 9\text{-}13$$

in which:

R_d and R_u are the downstream and upstream values of R obtained from a model such as Equation 9-11 or Equation 9-12.
The transmission loss is, thus, the difference between Q_u and Q_d.

Equation 9-13 can be placed in terms of drainage area by substituting Equation 9-10 into Equation 9-13:

$$Q_d = Q_u \left(\frac{b_o A_d^{b_1}}{b_o A_u^{b_1}} \right) = Q_u \left(\frac{A_d}{A_u} \right)^{b_1} \qquad 9\text{-}14$$

Equation 9-14 can be used to show the rate of transmission loss (L) as the downstream area increases:

$$L = Q_u - Q_d = Q_u \left[1 - \left(\frac{A_d}{A_u} \right)^{b_1} \right] \qquad 9\text{-}15$$

Example 9-2

To illustrate the use of this approach for estimating transmission losses, consider a measured flow depth of 28 mm at a gage for a drainage area of 9.2 km^2. If Equation 9-15 applies, the transmission loss at a downstream point that drains 22.6 km^2 is:

$$L = 28 \left[1 - \left(\frac{22.6}{9.2} \right)^{-0.0926} \right] = 2.2 \; mm$$

Thus, the depth at the downstream point is 25.8 mm, which can be obtained from (Q_u - L) or from Equation 7-28 and Equation 7-13.

9.2.2 Hydrograph Estimation

Transmission losses occur through the bed and banks of the channel. Assuming a homogeneous material along the length of a channel reach, the losses can be expected to occur at a constant rate in terms of flow rate per unit length of the channel (e.g., m^3/s per km of channel). Such a variable can be used to show the effects of transmission losses on a hydrograph.

Just as an initial abstraction was subtracted from the total hydrograph when developing a unit hydrograph (see Chapter 6), an initial loss is subtracted from the total hydrograph before a constant-rate transmission loss is applied. The initial loss is computed as the volume of the voids below the channel bed that is available for water. Thus, for a channel reach of length L (m) and width W (m) that has a soil with porosity p and a depth D (m) to high-seepage-rate inhibiting material, the volume of initial loss V_i (m^3):

$$V_i = LWDp \qquad \text{9-16}$$

The volume of the initial part of the runoff hydrograph can be computed using the trapezoidal rule and all runoff up to a volume V_i is assumed to be part of the total transmission loss.

After the initial loss is subtracted, a constant-rate loss can be subtracted from the hydrograph. SCS (1972) provided the following equations for estimating this loss as a function of the material of the bed and banks:

$$Q_r = 0.0254\ A_c^{0.5} \text{ for sandy and gravelly material} \qquad \text{9-17}$$

$$Q_r = 0.00754\ A_c^{0.5} \text{ for sandy loam material} \qquad \text{9-18}$$

$$Q_r = 0.00460\ A_c^{0.5} \text{ for clayey material} \qquad \text{9-19}$$

in which:

Q_r is the loss rate (cubic meters per second per km of channel length)
A_c is the cross-sectional area of the channel section (m^2).

Example 9-3

A 2450-m channel with a width of 11 m has a sandy and gravelly bed and bank material. The bed overlies a sandy soil mass with a porosity of 0.39 to a confining layer 1.6 m below the bed. The average relationship between the cross-sectional area of the channel A (m^2) and the discharge rate Q (m^3/s) is:

$$A = 16.4\ Q^{0.6}$$

The ordinates of the upstream hydrograph are given in column 2 of Table 9-4 for a time increment of 10 minutes. The hydrograph is routed through the reach using the Convex routing method with a routing coefficient of 0.33; the routed hydrograph is given in column 3 of Table 9-4. The initial loss is computed using Eq 9-16:

$$V = LWDp = 2450(11)(1.6)(0.39) = 16{,}817\ m^3$$

For a time increment of 600 seconds, the rate of initial loss Q_i equals the volume divided by the time increment:

$$Q_i = \frac{V}{\Delta t} = \frac{16,817\ m^3}{600\ s} = 28.0\ m^3/s$$

Thus, all of the flow in the first 40 minutes is lost and part of the flow in the next 10 minutes; specifically, 6.5 m^3/s is needed to give a total initial loss of 28.0 m^3/s, so only 11.2 m^3/s of the 17.7 m^3/s appears at the downstream end of the reach. The initial loss does not effect the remainder of the hydrograph. The net flow (column 5) is used to compute the average cross-sectional area of the reach, which is then used as input to the transmission loss equation for a sandy/gravelly bed (Equation 9-17). The values obtained from Equation 9-17 must be multiplied by the reach length (2.45 km) to obtain values in m^3/s. The final hydrograph equals net flow minus the transmission loss. At the peak discharge, the transmission loss is about 3 percent of the flow. The hydrographs are shown in Figure 9-2.

Table 9-4. Adjustment of Hydrograph for Transmission Losses

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
Time (min)	Upstream Flow (m^3/s)	Routed Flow (m^3/s)	Initial loss (m^3/s)	Net flow (m^3/s)	Area of loss (m^2)	Transmission Loss (m^3/s)	Final flow (m^3/s)
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	6	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	17	2.0	2.0	0	0	0	0
30	24	6.9	6.9	0	0	0	0
40	28	12.6	12.6	0	0	0	0
50	27	17.7	6.5	11.2	69.9	0.5	10.7
60	23	20.7	0	20.7	101.0	0.6	20.1
70	19	21.5	0	21.5	103.3	0.6	20.9
80	15	20.7	0	20.7	101.0	0.6	20.1
90	11	18.8	0	18.8	95.4	0.6	18.2
100	8	16.2	0	16.2	87.2	0.6	15.6
110	5	13.5	0	13.5	78.2	0.6	12.9
120	3	10.7	0	10.7	68.0	0.5	10.2
130	1	8.2	0	8.2	58.0	0.5	7.7
140	0	5.8	0	5.8	47.1	0.4	5.4

(3) $O_2 = 0.33\ I_1 + 0.67\ O_1$
(5) Net flow = Routed flow minus initial loss
(6) $A = 16.4\ Q^{0.6}$
(7) $Q_L = 0.0254\ A^{0.5}$
(8) Final flow = Net flow minus transmission loss

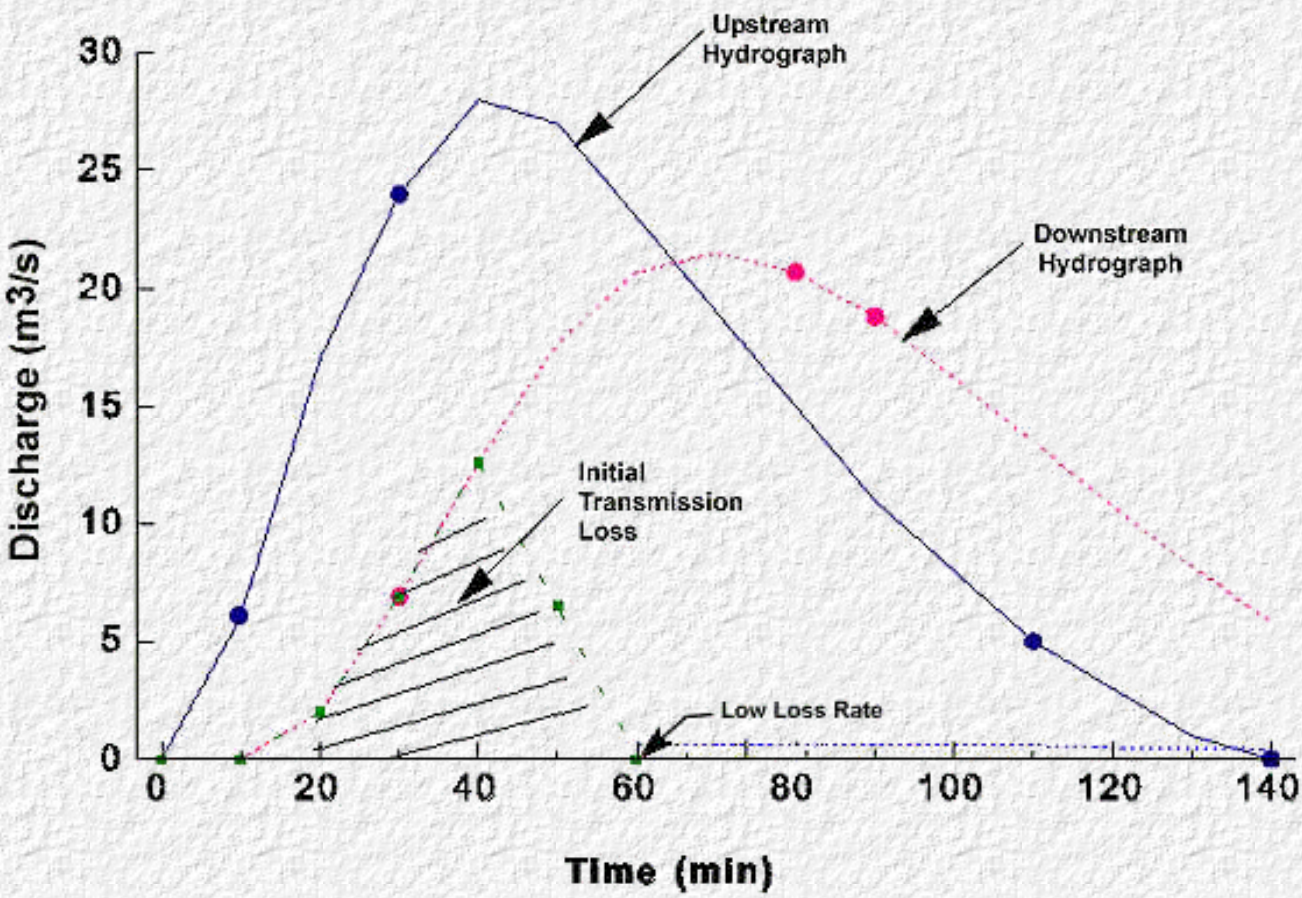


Figure 9-2. Adjustment of Hydrograph for Transmission Losses

9.2.3 SCS Transmission Loss Method

The SCS NEH-4 provides a method developed by Lane (1983) for estimating the outflow volume Q at the end of a reach given the volume at the upper end of the reach, P. Where measured data from previous storm events are available, a linear water yield model is used:

$$Q = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } P \le P_0 \\ a + bP & \text{for } P > P_0 \end{cases} \qquad \begin{matrix} \text{9-20a} \\ \text{9-20b} \end{matrix}$$

where:

a and b are regression coefficients
P_o is the threshold volume computed as:

$$P_o = \frac{-a}{b} \qquad \text{9-21}$$

This method requires the following constraints on the regression coefficients:

$$a \le 0$$
$$0 < b \le 1$$

If these constraints are not met, then the data should be examined to detect data points that may cause the irrationality. Graphical analysis is useful for identifying data points that may be

questionable.

The corresponding peak discharge is computed by:

$$Q = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } Q = 0 \\ \frac{K}{D}[a - (1 - b)p] + bp & \text{if } Q > 0 \end{cases} \qquad \begin{matrix} \text{9-22a} \\ \text{9-22b} \end{matrix}$$

in which:

k is a constant to adjust the dimensions
D is the duration of the inflow
p is the peak rate of inflow at the upper reach.

Lane (1983) provides extensions of this method such that lateral inflow can be accounted for and for sites where gaged data are not available.

9.3 Regression Equations for Southwestern U.S.

Because of the unique conditions of arid and semiarid regions, problems are created by delineating regions on the basis of state boundary lines. A recent report from the USGS (Thomas, Hjalmarson, and Waltemeyer, 1993) provides regression equations for the southwestern U.S. These equations are also part of the National Flood Frequency Program (see Section 5.5). The following paragraphs are absorbed from the report.

9.3.1 Purpose and Scope

The report describes the results of a study to develop reliable methods for estimating the magnitude and frequency of floods for gaged and ungaged streams in the southwestern United States and to improve the understanding of flood hydrology in the southwestern United States. The large study area, which encompasses most of the arid lands of the southwestern United States, includes all of Arizona, Nevada, and Utah, and parts of California, Colorado, Idaho, New Mexico, Oregon, Texas, and Wyoming.

The data examined in the study includes sites with drainage areas of less than 5,200 km^2 and mean annual precipitation of less than 1,730 mm. The focus of the study, however, was on drainage areas of less than about 518 km^2 and arid areas with less than 510 mm of mean annual precipitation. The series of annual peak discharges for sites used in this study are unaffected by regulation, and the individual sites have at least ten years of record through water year 1986.

The basic regional method used in this study is an information-transfer method in which flood-frequency relations determined at gaged sites are transferred to ungaged sites using multiple-regression techniques. Flood-frequency relations were determined at gaged sites using guidelines recommended in Bulletin 17B. Ordinary and generalized least-squares multiple-regression analyses were used to relate the gaged-site flood-frequency relations to basin and climatic characteristics.

The regional study offers several advantages compared with previous State-wide regional studies. The large data base of more than 1,300 gaged sites with about 40,000 station years of annual maximum peaks can decrease the time-sampling error of flood estimates, which can be a problem with small data sets in the southwestern United States. Some of the recent regional studies developed for single States have large differences in the estimated flood-frequency relations at State boundaries. These different estimates of flood magnitudes at State boundaries were removed in this study. Regional relations that were derived from the large data base with a large range of values are potentially more reliable than relations derived from smaller data bases and

can be used with less extrapolation for ungaged streams.

9.3.2 Descriptions of Study Area

The study area is over 1.5 million km^2. The area is bounded by the Rocky Mountains on the east, the northern slopes of the Snake River basin on the north, the Cascade-Sierra Mountains on the west, and the international border with Mexico on the south. The Basin and Range province in the western and southern part of the study area has mostly isolated block mountains separated by aggraded desert plains. The mountains commonly rise abruptly from the valley floors and have piedmont plains that extend downward to neighboring basin floors. Several large flat desert areas are interspersed between the mountains, and some are old lake bottoms that have not been covered with water for hundreds of years. Many of the piedmont plains contain distributary-flow areas that are composed of material deposited by mountain-front runoff.

Most of the streams in the study area flow only in direct response to rainfall or snowmelt. In the northern latitudes and at the higher elevations where the climate is cooler and more humid, most of the streams flow continuously. Streams in alluvial valleys and base-level plains are perennial or intermittent where the stream receives ground-water outflow. Small streams in the southern latitudes commonly flow only a few hours during a year.

An arid or semiarid climate in the middle latitudes exists where potential evaporation from the soil surface and from vegetation exceeds the average annual precipitation. About 90 percent of the study area is arid or semiarid and has a mean annual precipitation of less than 510 mm. In addition to the generally meager precipitation, the climate of the study area is characterized by extreme variations in precipitation and temperature. Mean annual precipitation ranges from more than 1270 mm in the Cascade-Sierra Mountains in California to less than 80 mm in the deserts of southwestern Arizona and southeastern California. Temperatures range from about 43ºC in the southwestern deserts in the summer to below -18ºC in the northern latitudes and mountains in the winter. Precipitation in the study area is variable temporally and spatially. In some extremely arid parts of the study area, the mean annual precipitation has been exceeded by the rainfall from one or two summer thunderstorms.

9.3.3 Peak Discharge Equations

Equations for estimating 2-, 5-, 10-, 15-, 50-, and 100-year peak discharges at ungaged sites in the southwestern United States were developed using generalized least-squares, multiple-regression techniques and a hybrid method that was developed in this study. The equations are applicable to unregulated streams that drain basins of less than about 500 km^2. Drainage area, mean basin elevation, mean annual precipitation, mean annual evaporation, latitude, and longitude are the basin and climatic characteristics used in the equations. The study area was divided into 16 flood regions. The equations for one region are given in Table 9-5 as an illustration.

Detailed flood-frequency analyses were made of more than 1,300 gaging stations with a combined 40,000 station years of annual peak discharges through water year 1986. The log-Pearson Type III distribution and the method of moments were used to define flood-frequency relations. A low-discharge threshold was applied to about one-half of the sites to adjust the relations for low outliers. With few exceptions, the use of the low-discharge threshold resulted in markedly better appearing fits between the computed relations and the plotted annual peak discharges. After all adjustments were made, 80 percent of the gaging stations were judged to have adequate fits of computed relations to the plotted data. The individual flood-frequency relations were judged to be unreliable for the remaining 20 percent of the stations because of extremely poor fits of the

computed relations to the data, and these relations were not used in the generalized least-squares regional regression analysis. Most of the stations with unreliable relations were from extremely arid areas with 43 percent of the stations having no flow for more than 25 percent of the years of record. A new regional flood-frequency method, which is named the hybrid method, was developed for those more arid regions.

An analysis of regional skew coefficient was made for the study area. The methods of attempting to define the variation in skew by geographic areas or by regression with basin and climatic characteristics all failed to improve on a mean of zero for the sample. The regional skew used in the study, therefore, was the mean of zero with an associated error equal to the sample variance of 0.31 log units.

Table 9-5. Generalized Least-Squares Regression Equations for Estimating Regional Flood-Frequency Relations for the High-Elevation Region 1 (from Thomas et al., 1993)

Equation: Q, peak discharge, in cubic feet per second; AREA, drainage area, in square miles; and PREC, mean annual precipitation, in inches. Data were based on 165 stations. Average number of years of systematic record is 28.

Recurrence Interval, in years	Equation	Average standard error of prediction, in percent	Equivalent years of record
2	$Q=0.124\ AREA^{0.845}\ PREC^{1.44}$	59	0.16
5	$Q=0.629\ AREA^{0.807}\ PREC^{1.12}$	52	0.62
10	$Q=1.43\ AREA^{0.786}\ PREC^{0.958}$	48	1.34
25	$Q=3.08\ AREA^{0.768}\ PREC^{0.811}$	46	2.50
50	$Q=4.75\ AREA^{0.758}\ PREC^{0.732}$	46	3.37
100	$Q=6.78\ AREA^{0.750}\ PREC^{0.668}$	46	4.19

Go to Chapter 10, Part I

Chapter 10 : HDS 2

Stormwater Management
Part I

Go to Chapter 10, Part II

It is widely recognized that land development, especially in urban areas, is responsible for significant changes in runoff characteristics. Within the context of the hydrologic cycle, land development generally decreases the natural storage of a watershed. The removal of trees and vegetation reduces the volume of interception storage. Grading of the site reduces the volume of depression storage and often decreases the permeability of the surface soil layer, which reduces infiltration rates and the potential for storage of rainfall in the soil matrix. In urban areas, increased impervious cover also reduces the potential for infiltration and soil storage of rainwater.

The reduction of natural storage (i.e., interception, depression, and soil storage) causes changes in runoff characteristics. Specifically, both the total volume and the peak of the surface (or direct) storm runoff increase. The loss of natural storage also causes changes in the timing of runoff, specifically a decrease in both the time to peak and the time of concentration. Runoff velocities are increased, which can increase surface rill and gully erosion rates. Higher stream velocities may also increase rates of bed-load movement.

Land development is often accompanied by changes to drainage patterns and channel characteristics. For example, channels may be cleared of vegetation and straightened, with some also being lined with concrete or riprap. Modifications to the channel may result in decreases in channel storage and roughness, both of which can increase flow velocities and the potential for flooding at locations downstream from the developing area.

Recognizing the potential effects of these changes in runoff characteristics on the inhabitants of the local community, various measures have been proposed to offset these reductions in natural storage. The intent of stormwater management (SWM) is to mitigate the hydrologic impacts of this lost natural storage, usually using manmade storage. Although a variety of SWM alternatives have been proposed, the stormwater management basin remains the most popular. The SWM basin is frequently referred to as a detention or retention basin, depending on its effects on the inflow hydrograph. For our purpose here, the terms will be used interchangeably because the fundamental hydrologic concepts behind each are the same.

To mitigate the detrimental effects of land development, SWM policies have been adopted with the intent of limiting peak flow rates from developed areas to those which occurred prior to development. In addition to specifying the conditions under which SWM methods must be used, these policies indicate the intent of SWM. Specifically, the intent of many SWM policies is to limit runoff characteristics after development to those that existed prior to development. This intent can be interpreted to mean that the flood frequency curve for the post-development conditions coincides with the curve for the pre-development conditions. However, policy statements usually specify one or two exceedence frequencies (i.e., return periods) at which the post-development peak rate must not exceed the pre-development peak rate for the same exceedence frequency. Such policies often use return periods of 2, 10, or 100 years as the target points on the frequency curve.

Where channel erosion is of primary concern, a smaller return period, such as the 6-month event, may serve as the target event. Policies may also specify a specific design method to be used in the design

of a SWM control method. Although data do not exist to show that any one method is best, the designation of a specific method as part of a SWM policy will ensure design consistency.

10.1 Classification

Figure 10-1 shows a schematic of the cross section of a detention basin with a single-stage riser. A pool is formed behind the retaining structure. The hydrograph of the post-development flood runoff enters the pool at the upper end of the detention basin. Water can be discharged from the pool through a pipe that passes through or around the detention structure. The size of the pipe can serve to limit the outflow rate, thus forming a permanent pool, with the permanent-pool elevation changing only through evaporation and infiltration losses.

The use of a permanent pool has a number of advantages, including water quality control, aesthetic considerations, and wildlife habitat improvement. Of course, a permanent pool also increases the total storage volume, which requires both a larger retaining structure and a larger commitment of land, both of which increase the cost of the project.

Figure 10-1 does not show several other elements of detention basin design. The riser inlet may need to be fitted with both an antivortex device and a trash rack. The antivortex device prevents the formation of a vortex, thus maintaining the hydraulic efficiency of the outlet structure. The trash rack prevents trash (and people) from being sucked into the riser by high-velocity flows. Antiseep collars can be fitted to the outside of the discharge pipe to prevent erosion about the pipe within the retaining structure if the seepage gradient exceeds the critical gradient.

All detention basins should have an emergency spillway to pass runoff from very large flood events, so the retaining structure is not overtopped and washed out. The elevation of the bottom of the emergency spillway, which will pass high flows around the retaining structure, is above the elevation of the riser outlet but below the top of the retaining structure. The zone between is called the detention or surcharge storage zone.

A number of methods have been proposed for use in the planning and design of stormwater detention facilities. Design requires the simultaneous sizing of both the storage volume characteristics and the riser/outlet characteristics. Some SWM methods can only be used to estimate the volume of storage that would be required to meet the intent of the SWM policies. Such methods will be referred to herein as planning methods. Other planning methods are used to determine the characteristics of the outlet facility. Ultimately, the final design should be determined using a method that simultaneously estimates the volume of storage and the characteristics of the outlet facility.

The simultaneous solution is important because there are a wide array of feasible solutions for any one site and set of design conditions. The separate determination of the volume of storage and the characteristics of the outlet facility can lead to an ineffective, and possibly incorrect, design. In summary, planning methods are less accurate and require less effort than design methods.

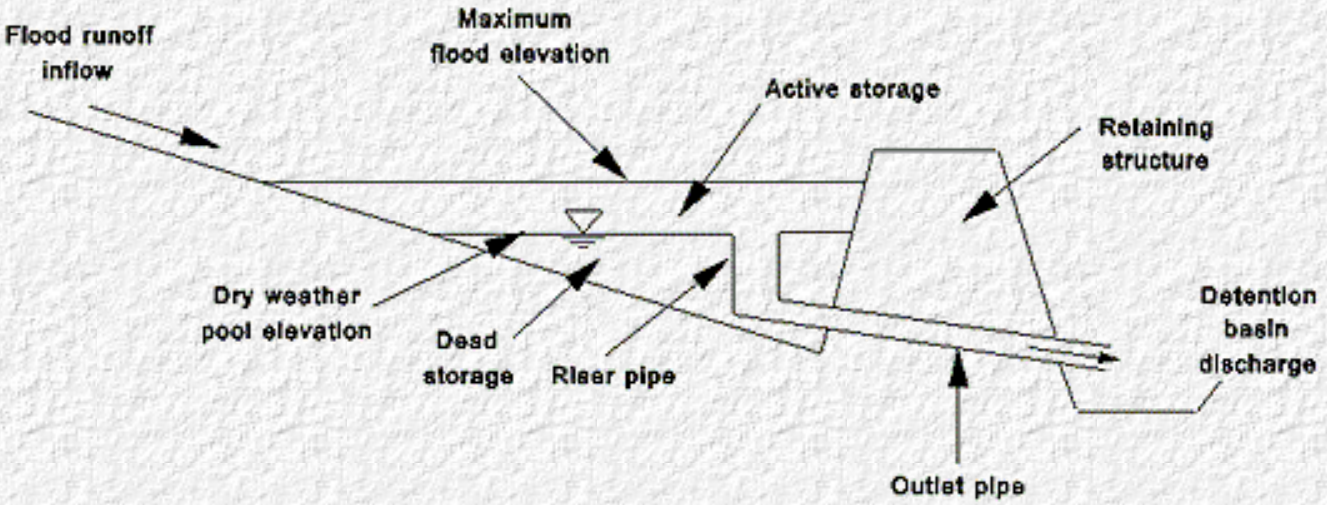


Figure 10-1. Schematic Cross-Section of a Detention Basin with a Single-Stage Riser

---

10.1.1 Analyses versus Synthesis

The problem of analysis versus synthesis is best evaluated in terms of systems theory. The problem is viewed in terms of the input (inflow runoff hydrograph), output (outflow hydrograph), and the transfer function (stage-storage-discharge relationship). In the analysis phase, the two hydrographs would be measured for an existing stormwater management facility, and it would be necessary to calibrate the stage-storage-discharge relationship. While the stage-storage relationship could be determined from topography, the stage-discharge relationship would have to be analyzed. For a given storage facility, the physical characteristics of the outlet facility would be known. Therefore, the analysis would involve determining the best values of the weir and/or orifice coefficients for the outlet. Given the cost involved in data collection, analyses are rarely undertaken; therefore, only the synthesis case will be discussed in this manual.

In the synthesis case, the objective is to make estimates of either the outflow hydrograph or the necessary characteristics of the proposed riser. For watershed studies where detention basins exist, it may be necessary to synthesize flood hydrographs for the detention basin outflow. In this case, the outflow hydrograph is estimated from a design storm. The standard procedure is to assume a design storm and a unit hydrograph. Rainfall excess is computed from the design storm and then the rainfall excess is convolved with the unit hydrograph. The resulting direct runoff hydrograph is used as the design input (inflow runoff hydrograph). Weir coefficients are assumed along with the linear storage equation of Chapter 7 to compute the outflow hydrograph of direct runoff.

The second case of synthesis, which will be referred to as the problem of design, has the objective of estimating the characteristics of the riser/outlet facility in order to meet some design objective. In this case, the output of the design problem is the area of the orifice or the weir length, riser and conduit diameters, and outlet facility elevation characteristics. Unlike the analysis case, the weir or orifice coefficient is assumed, as is the design criterion. This is unlike the watershed evaluation case outlined in the previous paragraph.

10.1.2 Planning versus Design

A number of detention basin planning methods have been proposed in the professional literature. These provide estimates of the required volume of detention storage. The outlet structure is sized independently of the detention volume determination. These methods will be classed as planning methods, although they are occasionally used for design. They are referred to as planning methods because the riser characteristics and volume are determined independently of each other.

Design techniques differ in two ways from the planning methods. First, the planning methods only require peak discharge estimates, as opposed to requiring entire flood hydrographs. Thus routing hydrographs through the detention basin is not necessary when using these planning methods. Second, since routing is not required, a stage-storage-discharge relationship is not required; instead, a "standard" storage-discharge relationship is inherent in the planning methods. A design method uses flood hydrographs, routing, and a site-specific stage-storage-discharge relationship. For this reason, a design method will be more accurate than the planning method. However, the planning methods are much easier to apply. Hence the terms planning and design are used to distinguish between approaches to SWM problem solving that reflect differences in expected accuracy, as well as the cost and effort involved.

The problem of planning the detention facility is separated into two parts, estimating the volume of storage and sizing the characteristics of the outlet facility.

10.2 Estimating Detention Volumes

A number of methods have been proposed and are being used for estimating detention volumes. Recognizing that these methods often yield widely different estimates, a brief comparison of some of the more widely used methods is in order. A relationship between the ratio of the storage volume to the runoff volume and the ratio of the "pre-development" and "post-development" peak discharges is the basis for many of these methods. For SWM policies that require the peak discharge out of the SWM basin to be no greater than the pre-development peak discharge, the before-to-after ratio is often referred to as the ratio of the outflow to inflow since the peak of the outflow from the detention basin equals the pre-development peak discharge and the inflow to the detention basin equals the post-development peak discharge.

10.2.1 The Loss-of-Natural-Storage Method

The loss-of-natural-storage method for estimating detention volumes is based on the idea that the volume of manmade storage (Q_s) equals the volume of lost natural storage:

$$Q_s = Q_a - Q_b \qquad \text{10-1a}$$

in which

Q_a and Q_b are the depths (mm) of runoff for the post-development and pre-development watershed conditions. It is important to note that the variable Q is often referred to as a volume even though it has the dimension of a depth.

While it is actually a depth, when it is referred to as a volume, the assumption is made that it is an equivalent depth spread uniformly over the entire watershed. The volume of storage, V_s, in cubic meters, is computed by multiplying Q_s by the drainage area A in hectares:

$$V_s = 10 A Q_s \qquad \text{10-1b}$$

The runoff depths Q_a and Q_b of Equation 10-1a can be computed using any one of a number of methods. For the SCS method, the SCS runoff equation (Equation 5-17) can be used with the post-development and pre-development CNs. If the rational method is used to estimate peak discharges, runoff depths Q can be estimated using the peak discharge q_p (m^3/s), the time of concentration t_c (minutes), and the drainage area A (hectares):

$$Q = 6\left(\frac{q_p \ t_c}{A}\right) \qquad \text{10-2}$$

Equation 10-2 can be solved for both the pre- and post-development conditions using the appropriate values of q_p and t_c. Then the values are entered into Equation 10-1a to compute the depth of storage, which is then used to compute the volume of storage with Equation 10-1b.

Example 10-1

A 2.3 hectare watershed is being developed. Existing conditions have a rational coefficient C of 0.2 and a time of concentration of 18 minutes. In the developed state, the coefficient C will be 0.45, and the time of concentration will be 11 minutes. Using the local IDF curve, the rainfall intensities for the existing and developed conditions are 79 mm/h and 102 mm/h, respectively.

From Equation 5-12, the peak discharges for the existing and developed conditions are:

$$q_{pb} = \frac{CIA}{360} = \frac{(0.2)(79)(2.3)}{360} = 0.10 \ \ m^3/s$$

and

$$q_{pa} = \frac{CIA}{360} = \frac{(0.45)(102)(2.3)}{360} = 0.29 \ \ m^3/s$$

Thus, the depths of runoff are computed with Equation 10-2:

$$Q_b = 6\left(\frac{Q_p t_c}{A}\right) = 6\left(\frac{0.10(18)}{2.3}\right) = 4.7 \ mm$$

and

$$Q_a = 6\left(\frac{0.29(11)}{2.3}\right) = 8.4 \ \ mm$$

Using Equation 10-1a, the depth of storage is:

$$Q_s = Q_a - Q_b = 8.4 - 4.7 = 3.7\,mm$$

The volume of storage is computed from Equation 10-1b:

$$V_s = 10(2.3)(3.6) = 83\,m^3$$

10.2.2 The Rational Formula Hydrograph Method

Given the popularity of the rational method, a number of detention volume estimation methods have been developed using the rational method. These methods typically assume a triangular-shaped hydrograph with a time base equal to $2t_c$. One method uses the difference between the post-development and pre-development peak discharges in m^3/s and the post-development time of concentration t_{ca}:

$$V_s = 60\,(q_{pa} - q_{pb})\,t_{ca} \qquad 10\text{-}3$$

in which

V_s is in m^3, t_{ca} is in minutes
q_{pa} and q_{pb} are in m^3/s; this is shown schematically in Figure 10-2.

Both q_{pa} and q_{pb} are computed with the rational formula of Equation 5-12.

Example 10-2

Because of development within a 6-hectare watershed, a detention basin is planned upstream of an existing roadway to prevent ponding at the culvert. Pre- and post-development peak discharges of 0.34 and 0.83 m^3/s were computed with the rational method. The after development time of concentration is 13 minutes. Thus, the required volume of storage is:

$$V_s = 60(0.83 - 0.34)(13) = 382.2\,m^3$$

At an average depth of 1.4 m, the pond will have an average area of 273 m^2.

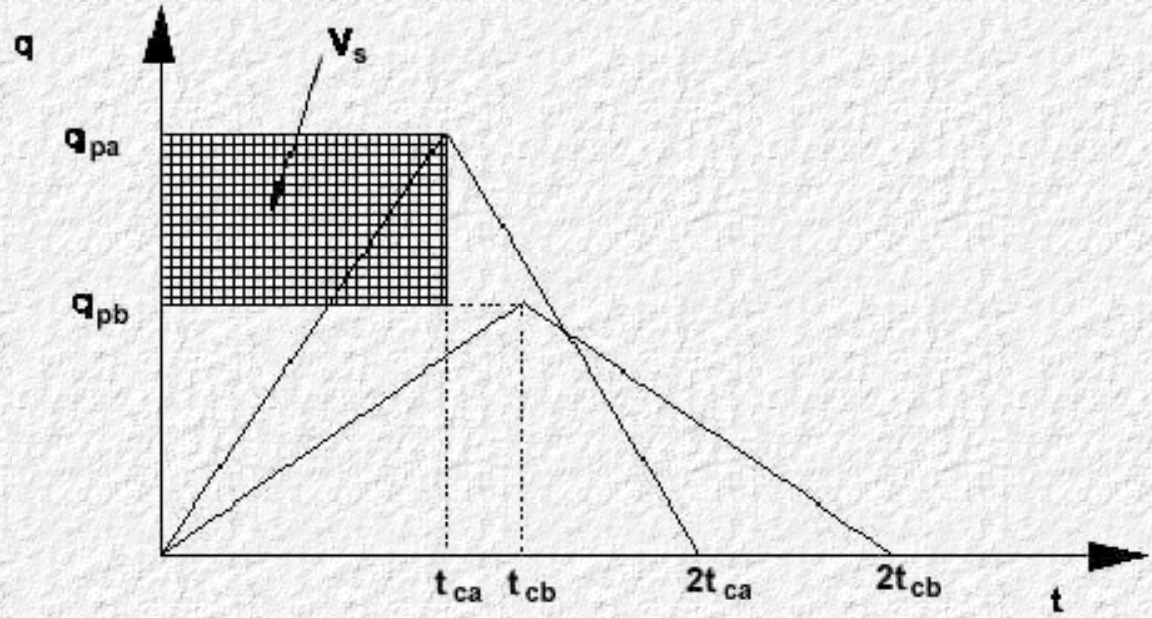


Figure 10-2. Schematic Diagram of Volume of Storage (V_s) Determination for the Rational Formula Hydrograph Method

---

10.2.3 The SCS TR-55 Method

Chapter 6 of SCS Technical Release 55, or TR-55 (SCS, 1986), provides a method for quickly analyzing effects of a storage reservoir on peak discharges. It is based on average storage and routing effects for many structures that were evaluated using the TR-20 method (SCS, 1984). The ratio of the depth of storage to the depth of runoff (Q_s/Q_a) is given as a function of the ratio of the peak rate of outflow to the peak rate of inflow (α). The relationship between Q_s/Q_a and α is:

$$R_s = \frac{Q_s}{Q_a} = C_o + C_1\alpha + C_2\alpha^2 + C_3\alpha^3 \qquad 10\text{-}4$$

in which

C_0, C_1, C_2, and C_3 are coefficients (see Table 10-1) that are a function of the SCS rainfall distribution.

The volume of storage (m^3) is computed by:

$$V_s = 10\ R_s\ Q_a\ A \qquad 10\text{-}5$$

in which

Q_a is the post-development depth of runoff (mm)
A is the drainage area (hectares).

Example 10-3

Development within a 7.285-hectare watershed is planned near a local roadway. A

planning estimate of the storage required to detain runoff from a 100-mm storm is needed. The curve number for existing conditions is 70, and development within the watershed will increase the CN to 80. The pre- and post-development times of concentration are 0.55 hour and 0.37 hour, respectively.

The pre- and post-development runoff depths are obtained from the SCS runoff equation with values of 33.8 mm and 51.8 mm, respectively. From Table 5-6 the I_a/P ratios for a 10-cm storm are 0.22 and 0.13. From Equation 5-2, the unit peak discharges are 0.194 $m^3/s/km^2/mm$ and 0.258 $m^3/s/km^2/mm$. Thus, the pre-development peak discharge is:

$$q_{pb} = 0.194(0.07285\ km^2)(33.8\ mm) = 0.478\ m^3/s \qquad 10\text{-}6$$

The post-development peak discharge is:

$$q_{pa} = 0.258(0.07285\ km^2)(51.8\ mm) = 0.974\ m^3/s \qquad 10\text{-}7$$

These values yield a discharge ratio R_q (or α) of 0.489, which is used as input to Equation 10-4 to obtain the volume ratio R_s of 0.28:

$$R_s = 0.682 - 1.43(0.489) + 1.64(0.489)^2 - 0.804(0.489)^3 = 0.28$$

Thus, the volume of storage is computed using Equation 10-5:

$$V_s = 10\,R_s Q_a A = 10(0.28)(51.8)(7.285) = 1{,}057\ m^3 \qquad 10\text{-}8$$

10.3 Weir and Orifice Equations

Weirs and orifices are engineered devices that can be used to control and measure flow rates. While these devices can occur naturally, for the context of engineering design, the discussion will center on the equations used in the design of hydrologic/hydraulic facilities.

Table 10-1. Coefficients for the SCS Detention Volume Method

Rainfall Distribution	C_o	C_1	C_2	C_3
I or IA	0.660	-1.76	1.96	-0.730
II or III	0.682	-1.43	1.64	-0.804

10.3.1 Orifice Equation

Figure 10-3 shows a schematic of a tank with a hole of area A_2 in its bottom. Assuming all losses can be neglected, Bernoulli's equation can be written between a point on the surface of the pool (point 1) and a point in the cross section of the orifice (point 2):

$$\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + \frac{V_1^2}{2g} + z_1 = \frac{P_2}{\gamma} + \frac{V_2^2}{2g} + z_2 \qquad 10\text{-}9$$

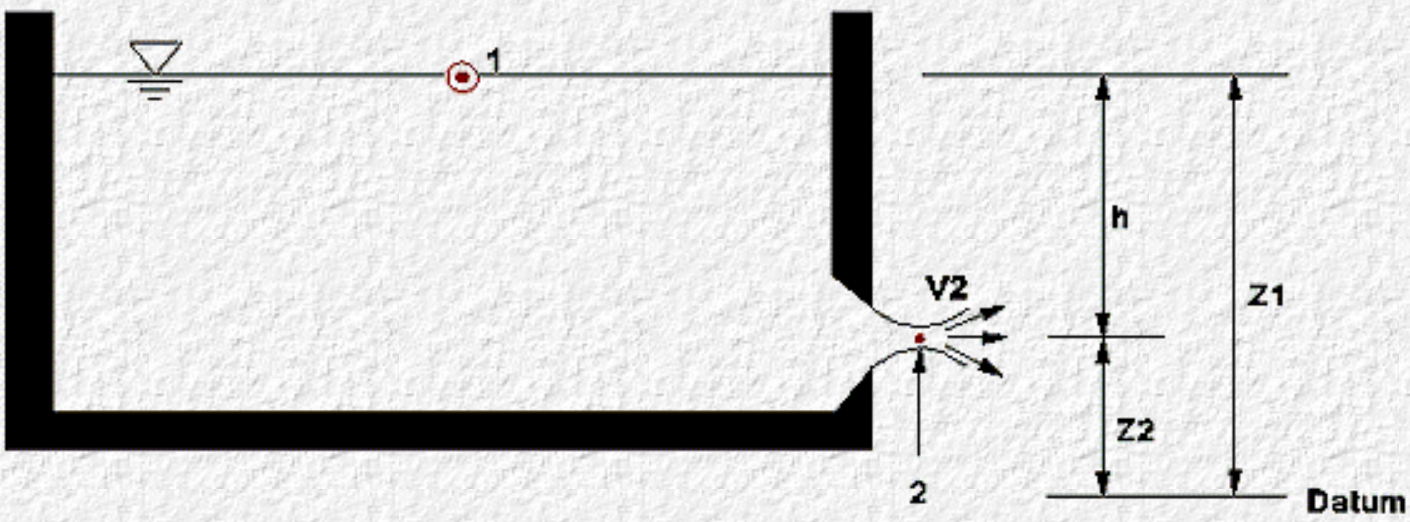


Figure 10-3. Schematic Diagram of Flow Through an Orifice

This can be simplified by making the following assumptions:

1. the pressure at both points is atmospheric, therefore $p_1 = p_2$;
2. the surface area of the pool A_1 is very large relative to the area of the orifice A_2, so from the continuity equation V_1 is essentially zero; and
3. $z_1 - z_2 = h$. Thus, Equation 10-9 becomes:

$$h = V_2^2 / 2g \qquad 10\text{-}10$$

Solving for V_2 and substituting it into the continuity equation yields:

$$q = AV = A\sqrt{2gh} \qquad 10\text{-}11$$

Equation 10-11 depends on two assumptions that are not always true: zero losses and atmospheric pressure across the opening of the orifice. It is actually atmospheric at a point below the orifice, where the cross-sectional area of the discharging water is slightly smaller than the area of the orifice. Because of these assumptions, the discharge will be less than that given by Equation 10-11. The actual discharge through the orifice is estimated by applying a discharge coefficient C_d to Equation 10-11:

$$q = C_d\, A\sqrt{2gh} \qquad 10\text{-}12$$

in which:

C_d is called the discharge coefficient and is dimensionless.

For some design problems, the q of Equation 10-12 is multiplied by an efficiency factor f to reflect other types of losses that limit the discharge rate. Values of C_d range from 0.5 to 1.0, with a value of 0.6 commonly used. If the orifice is not horizontal, the depth h is usually measured from the center of area of the orifice.

Example 10-4

For a particular detention basin being planned, the peak discharge must be limited to 0.55 m^3/s. At maximum stage for the design storm, the water depth above the center of area of the orifice is 0.7 m. The need is to estimate the area of the orifice in the riser pipe that will be used to limit the discharge to the allowable rate of 0.55 m^3/s. Assuming a discharge coefficient of 0.6, Equation 10-12 can be used to solve for the area of the orifice:

$$A = \frac{q}{C_d\sqrt{2gh}} = \frac{0.55}{0.6\sqrt{2(9.81)(0.7)}} = 0.247\ m^2$$

Thus, a 0.247 m by 1 m orifice would limit the discharge to 0.55 m^3/s.

10.3.2 Weir Equation

Consider the cross section shown in Figure 10-4. Point 1 is located at a point upstream of the obstruction at a distance where the obstruction does not influence the flow characteristics. Point 2 is at the obstruction. The following analysis assumes

1. ideal flow,
2. frictionless flow,
3. critical flow conditions at the obstruction, and
4. the obstruction has a unit width perpendicular to the direction of flow.

For the critical flow conditions, the following equations describe hydraulic conditions at the obstruction:

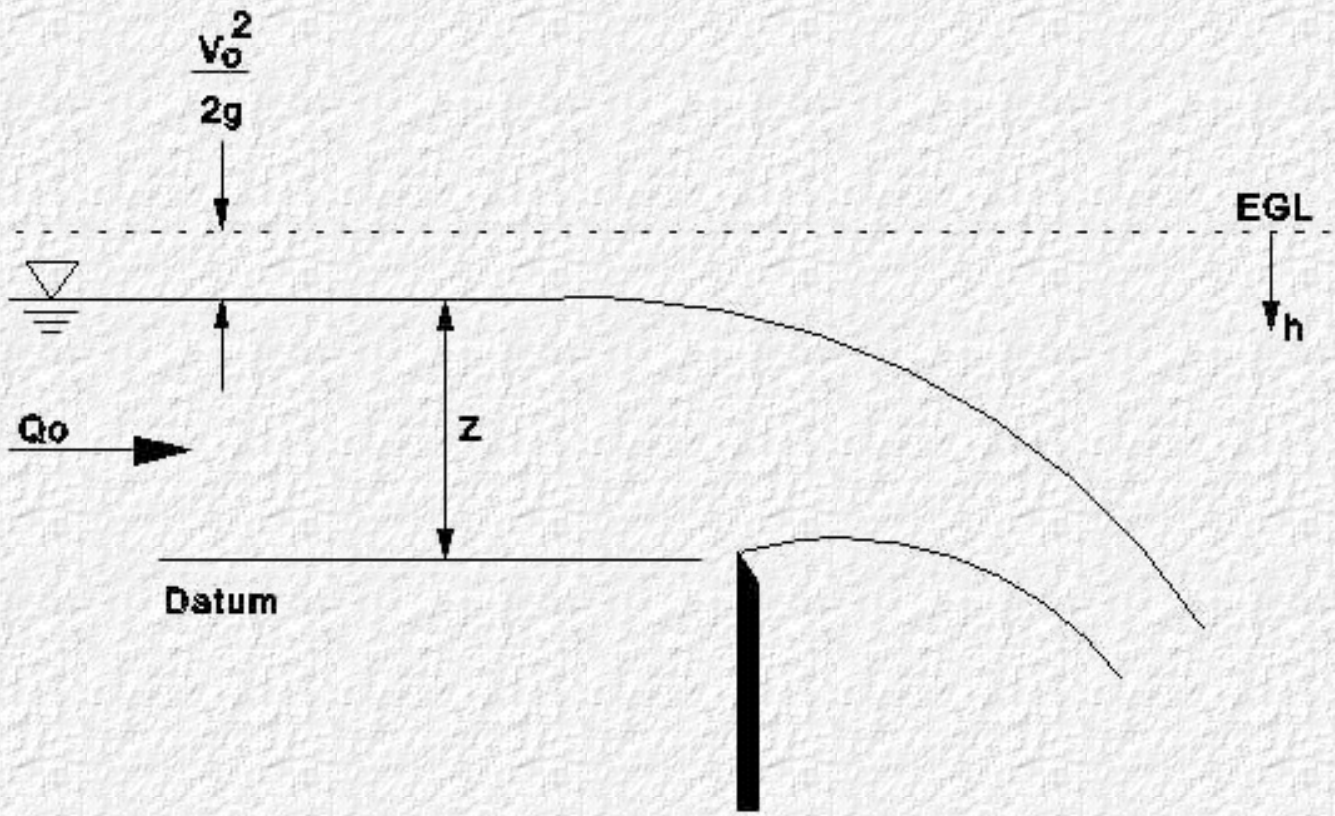


Figure 10-4. Schematic Diagram of Flow over a Sharp-Crested Weir

$$F_r = 1 = \frac{V_c}{(gd_c)^{0.5}} \qquad 10\text{-}13$$

$$d_c = \left(\frac{q_u^2}{g}\right)^{1/3} \qquad 10\text{-}14$$

$$E = d_c + \frac{V_c^2}{2g} = \frac{3}{2}\, d_c \qquad 10\text{-}15$$

where:

F_r is the Froude number
V_c is the critical velocity
d_c is the critical depth
q_u is the discharge rate per unit width
E is the specific energy.

If hydrostatic pressure is assumed at sections 1 and 2, then $P_i/\gamma = h_i$. Thus, Bernoulli's equation is:

$$h_1 + \frac{V_1^2}{2g} + z_1 = h_2 + \frac{V_2^2}{2g} + z_2 \qquad 10\text{-}16$$

Letting $Z = z_2 - z_1$ and assuming that the velocity head at section 1 is much

smaller than the velocity head at section 2, Equation 10-16 reduces to:

$$h_1 = \frac{V_c^2}{2g} + d_c + Z$$

Using Equation 10-13 and Equation 10-15, the velocity head is $V_c^2/2g = d_c/2$. Letting $h = h_1 - z$, then:

$$h = \frac{d_c}{2} + d_c = \frac{3d_c}{2} \text{ or } d_c = \frac{2}{3}h$$

Solving Equation 10-14 for q_u, it then follows that:

$$q_u = (gd_c^3)^{0.5} = \left[g\left(\frac{2}{3}h\right)^3\right]^{0.5} = \left(\frac{8g}{27}\right)^{0.5} h^{3/2} \qquad 10\text{-}17$$

For q_u in $m^3/s/m$, h in m, and g in m/s^2, Equation 10-17 yields:

$$q_u = 1.705\, h^{1.5} \qquad 10\text{-}18$$

Letting $q = q_u L$ and replacing the constant 1.705 with the weir coefficient C_w yields the general weir equation:

$$q = C_w\, Lh^{1.5} \qquad 10\text{-}19$$

in which L is the length of the weir in meters.

Values of C_w can range from 1.25 to 1.7, depending on the losses that occur at the weir, but values from 1.4 to 1.7 are commonly used. The range of values reflects the varied effect of losses at the weir. Losses depend on the depth of flow over the weir, the weir length, and the height of the weir. Accurate estimates of C_w are difficult to obtain even in laboratory studies. Generally, C_w increases with increasing flow depth and decreases with increases in either weir length or weir height. It also varies with the type of weir (sharp-crested or broad-crested) and the shape of the weir (triangular, rectangular, etc.). A value of 1.65 can be used where more information is not available.

Example 10-5

An existing detention basin near the site of a project where highway drainage is being renovated has a weir length of 2 m and a weir coefficient of 1.6. The pond was sized such that the depth of ponded storm water at flood stage is 1.1 m. The discharge passing the weir is needed to assess the adequacy of highway drainage. Equation 10-19 gives a discharge of:

$$q = C_w\, Lh^{1.5} = 1.6(2)(1.1)^{1.5} = 3.7\ m^3/s$$

10.4 Sizing of Detention Basin Outlet Structures

The methods described in Section 10.2 can be used only to estimate the volume of detention storage. The second step necessary to size a detention basin is the determination of the physical characteristics of the outlet structure. The outlet may be based on either a weir or an orifice, or both. Hydraulic procedures such as those given by Normann et al. (1985) can be applied. The following hydrologic procedures are commonly used for small structures.

Figure 10-1 shows a schematic of a basin with a pipe outlet. In addition to determining the diameter of the pipe barrel for a pipe outlet facility, it is also necessary to establish elevations of the pipe inlet and outlet. For those policies that require a permanent pool (i.e., wet pond), both the volume of dead storage and the corresponding elevation of the permanent pool must be set.

Both the size and effectiveness of a detention basin are largely dependent on the exceedence frequency (i.e., return period). Studies have shown that a basin designed for single-stage control of a frequent event (i.e., 2- or 5-year event) will tend to overcontrol the less frequent events (i.e., 50- or 100-year events). Conversely, a basin designed for single-stage control of a less frequent event will tend to undercontrol the more frequent events. An outlet facility sized to pass the 2-year event will not allow the 100-year event to pass with the same speed that a pipe outlet sized for a 100-year event will pass through; thus, overcontrol results.

Initially, most SWM policies required a single-stage riser. More enlightened SWM policies use two-stage control because of the problems of undercontrol and overcontrol associated with single-stage risers. The sizing of both single-stage and two-stage risers will be discussed here.

In the sizing of risers, it is necessary to determine both the required volume of storage and the physical characteristics of the riser. The physical characteristics include the outlet pipe diameter, the riser diameter, either the length of the weir or the area of the orifice, and the elevation characteristics of the riser. Single-stage risers with weir flow and orifice flow are shown in Figure 10-5a and Figure 10-5b, respectively. For weir flow control, Equation 10-19 defines the relationship between the discharge q and 1. the depth in feet, h, above the weir; 2. the discharge or weir coefficient, C_W; and 3. the length of the weir, L_W. The general formula for flow through an orifice was provided by Equation 10-12.

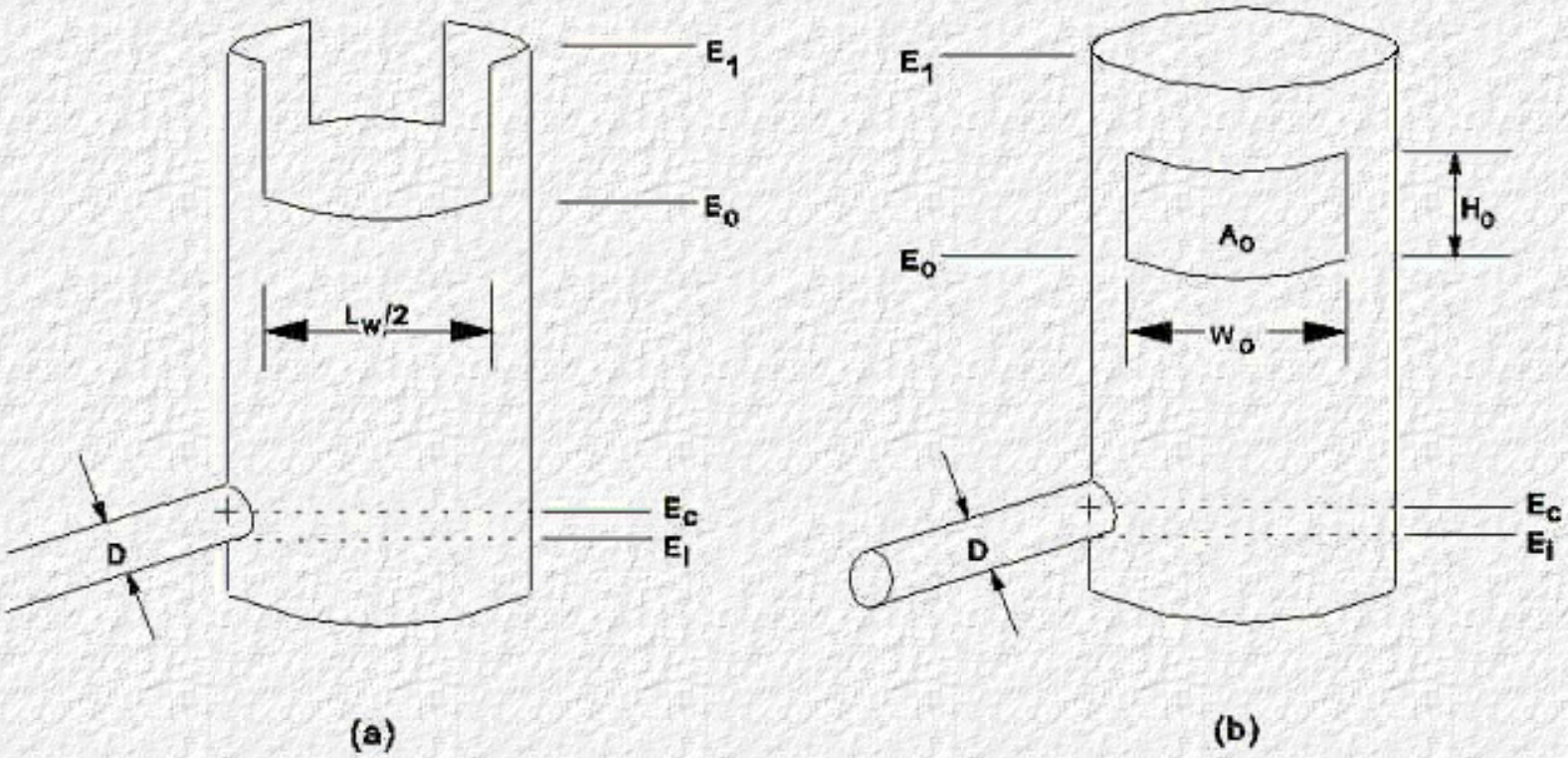


Figure 10-5. Single-Stage Riser Characteristic for (a) Weir Flow and (b) Orifice (or Port) Flow

---

Go to Chapter 10, Part II

Go to Chapter 11

10.5 Sizing of Single-Stage Risers

The procedure given in this section leads to the dimensions of a single-stage riser. Single-stage risers provide control of runoff for cases where practice specifies one exceedence frequency. A procedure for two-stage risers is given in Section 10.6.

10.5.1 Input Requirements and Output

Estimating the characteristics of a riser requires the following inputs:

1. watershed characteristics, including area, pre- and post-development times of concentration, and pre- and post-development curve numbers (assuming SCS CN procedures are used for abstractions),
2. rainfall depth(s) for the design storm(s),
3. characteristics of the riser and outlet pipe structure, including pipe roughness (n), length, and an initial estimate of the diameter,
4. elevation information, including stage vs. storage values, the wet-pond elevation, if applicable, and the elevation of the centerline of the pipe, and
5. hydrologic and hydraulic models, including a model for estimating peak discharges and runoff depths, a model for estimating the volume of storage as a function of pre- and post-development peak discharges, and a model for estimating weir and orifice coefficients, as necessary.

The output from the analysis includes the following:

1. the length of the weir or the area of the orifice,
2. the depth and volume of storage,
3. elevations of riser characteristics, and
4. the diameter of the outlet pipe.

10.5.2 Procedure for Sizing the Riser

In the following procedure, both the riser characteristics and the volume of storage will be estimated. The following steps (after Woodward, 1983) are used to size a single-stage riser:

- Step 1.
  . Using the 24-hour rainfall and the pre-development CN, find the runoff depth, Q_b in millimeters.
  b. Using the 24-hour rainfall and the post-development CN, find the runoff depth, Q_a in millimeters.

- Step 2.
  . Determine the pre-development peak discharge q_{pb}.
  b. Determine the post-development peak discharge, q_{pa}.

- Step 3. Compute the discharge ratio:

$$R_q = \frac{q_{pb}}{q_{pa}} \qquad 10\text{-}20$$

- Step 4. Use Equation 10-4 with R_q as a to find the storage volume ratio R_s.

- Step 5. Compute the volume of storage as an equivalent depth in millimeters:

$$Q_s = Q_a R_s \qquad 10\text{-}21$$

and as a volume in cubic meters:

$$V_s = 10\, Q_a\, R_s\, A \qquad 10\text{-}22$$

where:

A is the watershed area in hectares
Q_a in millimeters is from step 1b.

- Step 6. Using the elevation E_o of either the weir or the bottom of the orifice, obtain the volume of dead storage V_d in cubic meters from the elevation-storage curve.

- Step 7. Compute the total storage in cubic meters:

$$V_t = V_d + V_s \qquad 10\text{-}23$$

- Step 8. Enter the elevation-storage curve with V_t to obtain the water surface elevation, E_l.

- Step 9. Size the culvert barrel using full culvert evaluation (see HDS-5 by Normann et al., 1985) or the commonly used method as follows:

. Compute the friction head-loss coefficient K_p using Manning's roughness coefficient (n) and the diameter (D in meters) of the outlet pipe:

$$K_p = 125\, n^2 D^{-4/3} \qquad 10\text{-}24$$

b. Using the product LK_p, which is denoted as X, compute C_*:

$$C_* = 0.4556 + 0.1536X - 0.02567\, X^2 + 0.002185\, X^3 \qquad 10\text{-}25$$

c. Compute the conduit diameter (assuming that E_c is greater than the tailwater elevation and the pipe is flowing full):

$$D = 1.346\, C_* q_{pb}^{0.5} h^{-0.25} \quad \text{where } h = E_1 - E_c \qquad 10\text{-}26$$

where:

q_{pb} is in m^3/s, h is in meters
D is in meters.

If the final estimate from Equation 10-26 differs significantly from the initial estimate used in Equation 10-24, then a second trial should be made.

(d) Adjust D to the nearest larger commercial pipe size.

Step 10. If the outlet is an orifice, determine the characteristics of the orifice:

. Set the orifice width, W_O; as a rule of thumb, try 0.75D.

b. Compute the area of the orifice A:

$$A_o = \frac{0.4135\, q_{pb}}{(E_1 - E_0)^{0.5}} \qquad 10\text{-}27$$

in which

A_o is in m^2
q_{pb} is in m^3/s
$(E_1 - E_o)$ is in m.

This equation assumes a discharge (orifice) coefficient of 0.55.

(c) Compute the height of the orifice opening H_o:

$$H_o = \frac{A_o}{W_o} \qquad 10\text{-}28$$

Step 11. If the outlet is a weir, determine the weir length:

$$L_w = \frac{q_{pb}}{C_w(E_1 - E_0)^{1.5}} \qquad 10\text{-}29$$

Step 12. Compute the invert elevation E_i (m) of the conduit at the face of the riser:

$$E_i = E_c - \frac{D}{2} \qquad 10\text{-}30$$

A blank worksheet for sizing the detention basin and riser is provided as Table 10-2.

Note: that for a single-stage riser either step 10 or step 11 is used, but not both.

Example 10-6

The 9.31 hectare watershed of Figure 10-6 can be used to illustrate the sizing of a single-stage riser. Given the small drainage area, a corrugated-metal pipe (n = 0.024) with an orifice will be used as the riser.

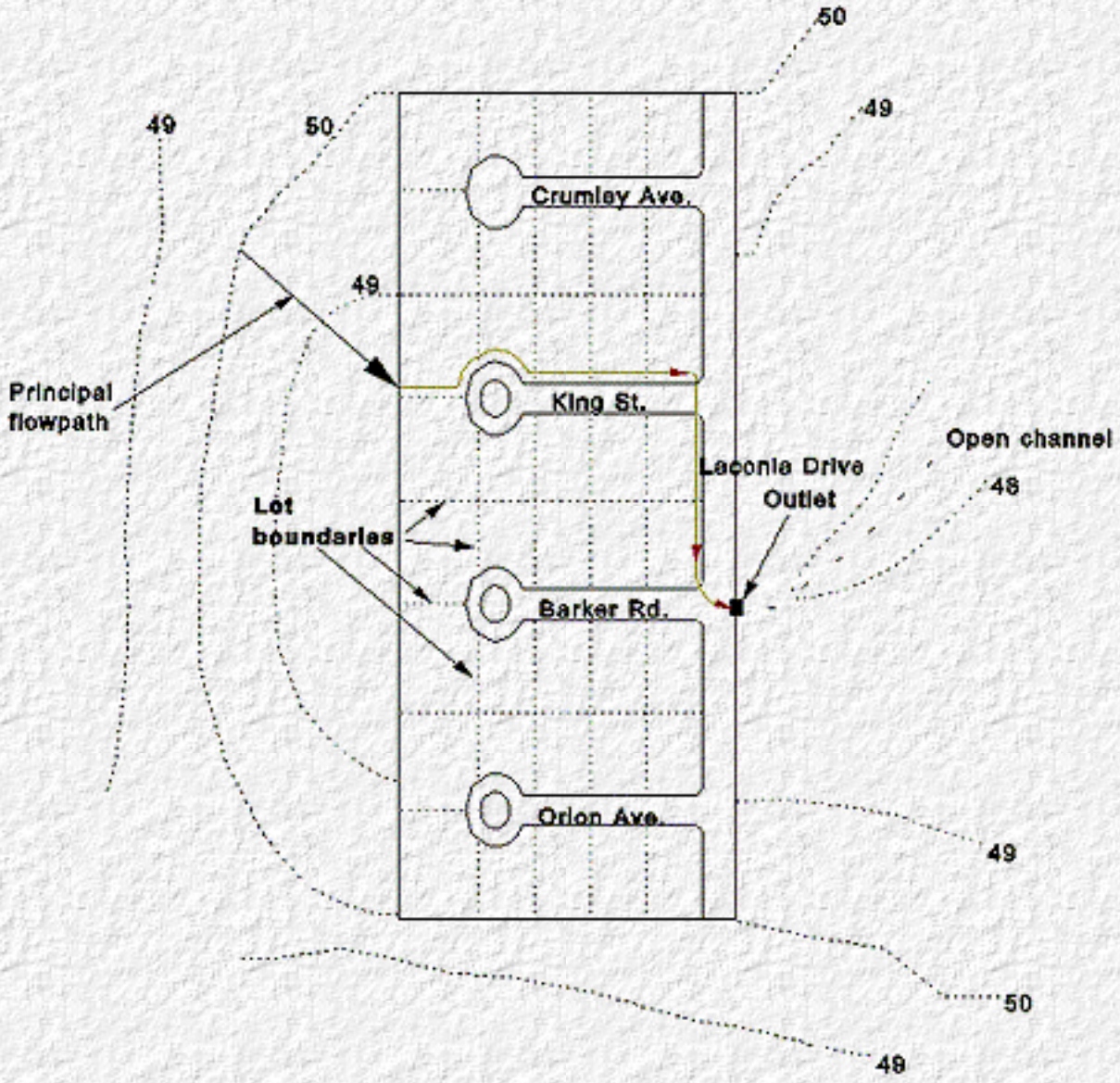


Figure 10-6. Topographic and Land Use Map (Not to Scale: Elevation in Meters)

The pre-development watershed conditions are as follows: CN_b = 60; t_{cb} = 1.25 hours; P = 122 mm. The post-development watershed conditions are as follows: CN_a = 70, t_{ca} = 1 hour; P = 122 mm. The outlet pipe will have an approximate length of 35 m and a centerline elevation (E_c) of 47.0 m. The base of the orifice will have an elevation of 48 m.

The computational results are given in Table 10-3. Some of the central calculations are as follows. The peak discharges are computed with the SCS Graphical method, with pre- and post-development values of 0.315 m^3/s and 0.635 m^3/s, respectively. This yields a discharge ratio of 0.496.

Details on constructing a stage-storage relationship are given in Section 10.7.1. For this example, the stage-storage relationship at the site of the detention structure is:

$$V_s = 721.4\ h^{2.17}$$

in which h is the stage (in meters) measured above the datum, which is at an elevation of 46.5 m, and V_s is the storage (m^3). For a wet-pond depth (E_o) of 48 m, the dead storage is 1739 m^3. The active storage is computed using the drainage area (A), the depth of runoff (Q_a), and the storage-volume ratio (R_s):

Click here to view Table 10-2. Worksheet for Sizing a Riser

$$Q_s = R_s Q_a = 0.278(48.0) = 13.4\ mm$$

$$V_s = 10\ R_s Q_s A = 10(0.278)(48.0)(9.31) = 1242\ m^3$$

where:

Q_s is the equivalent depth of storage.

The total storage is the sum of the active and dead storages, which is 2981 m^3. The depth of total storage is found by solving Equation 10-31 for h:

$$h = \left(\frac{V_s}{721.4}\right)^{1/2.17} = 1.92\ m$$

which gives a water surface elevation of 48.42 m.

The diameter of the barrel is computed with Equation 10-26:

$$D = 1.346(0.731)(0.315)^{0.5}(48.42 - 47.0)^{-0.25}$$
$$= 0.5\ m$$

The area of the orifice is computed with Equation 10-27:

$$A_o = \frac{0.4135(0.315)}{(48.42 - 48.0)^{0.5}} = 0.20\ m^2$$

Thus, one possible orifice is 0.300 m by 0.667 m.

The invert of the outlet conduit (E_i) is: $E_i = E_c - 0.5\ D = 47.0 - 0.5(0.5) = 46.75$ m. The diameter of the riser barrel is usually 2 to 3 times the diameter of the outlet conduit, so a 1.5 m corrugated metal pipe can be used for the riser.

10.6 Sizing of Two-Stage Risers

Where stormwater or drainage policies require control of flow rates of two exceedence frequencies, the two-stage riser is an alternative for control. The structure of a two-stage riser is similar to the single-stage riser except that it includes either two weirs or a weir and an orifice (see Figure 10-7). For the weir/orifice structure, the orifice is used to control the more frequent

event, and the larger event is controlled using the weir. The runoff from the smaller and larger events are also referred to as the low-stage and high-stage events, respectively. Values for variables at low and high stages may be followed by a subscript 1 or 2, respectively; for example, q_{pb2} will indicate the pre-development peak discharge for the high-stage event. Recognizing that the two events will not occur simultaneously, both the low-stage weir or orifice and the high-stage weir are used to control the high-stage event.

10.6.1 Input Requirements and Output

The input requirements for sizing a two-stage riser are similar to that for a single-stage riser. In addition to the single-stage inputs, it is necessary to specify the types of control (i.e., weir/weir or weir/orifice), the rainfall depth for the second stage, and the discharge coefficient for the second stage. In addition to the output for the single-stage analysis, the size characteristics of the second stage of the riser are computed. The procedure also yields the required volume of storage for both storm events.

Click here to view Table 10-3. Calculations for Example 10-6

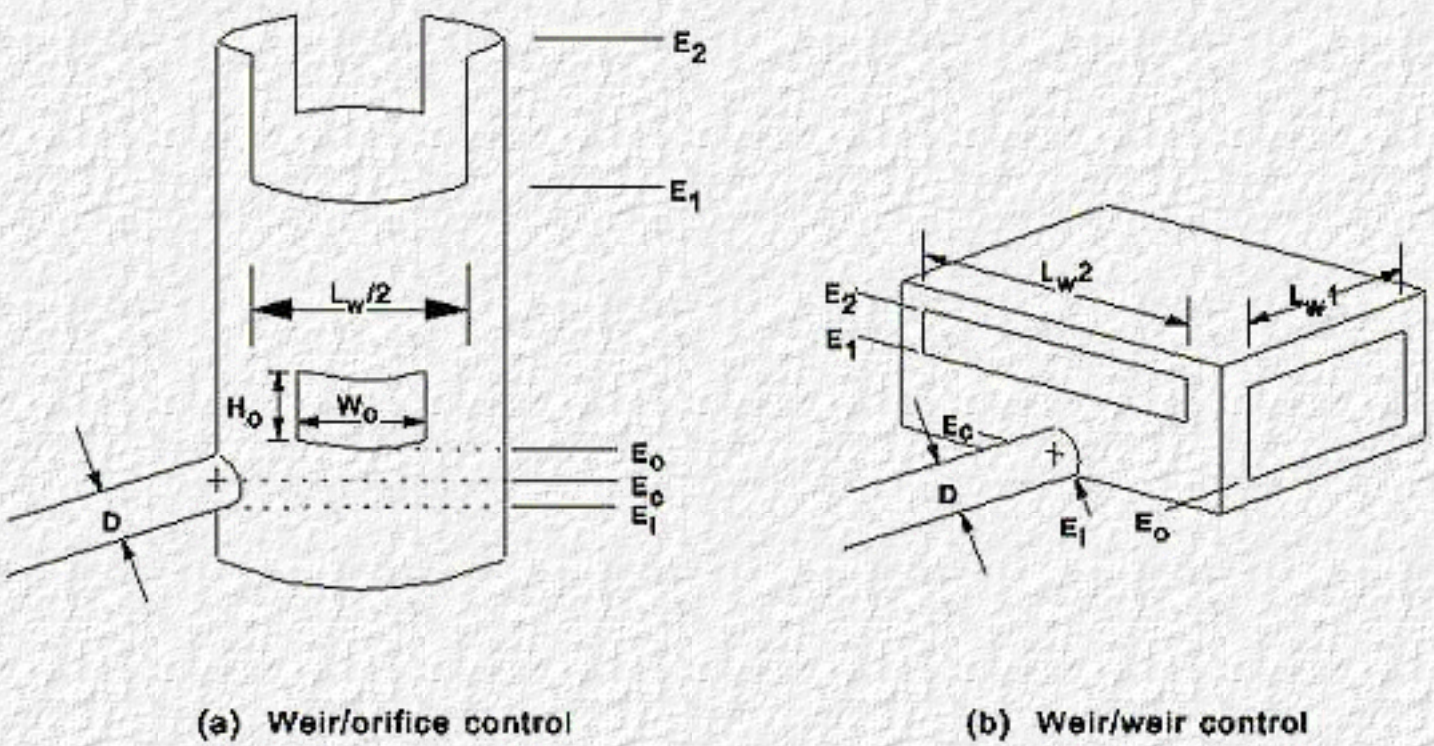


Figure 10-7. Two-Stage Outlet Facility

10.6.2 Procedure for Sizing the Riser

The sizing of a two-stage riser is only slightly more complicated than the sizing of a single-stage riser. The procedure follows the same general format as for the single-stage riser, but both the high-stage weir and low-stage outlet characteristics must be determined. The input for sizing a two-stage riser is the same as that for a single-stage riser, but many of the values must be computed for both the low-stage and high-stage events. The input consists of watershed characteristics, rainfall depths, site characteristics, outlet characteristics, and the stage-storage relationship for the location.

The following steps can be used to size a two-stage riser for the cases where the low-stage outlet is either a weir or an orifice and the high-stage outlet is a weir:

- Step 1.
  - . Using the 24-hour rainfalls and the pre-development CN, find the runoff depths for both the low- and high-stage events, Q_{bl} and Q_{b2}.
  - b. Using the 24-hour rainfalls and the post-development CN, find the runoff depths for both the low- and high-stage events, Q_{al} and Q_{a2}.

- Step 2.
  - . Determine the pre-development peak discharges for both the low- and high-stage events, q_{pbl} and q_{pb2}.
  - 2. Determine the post-development peak discharges for both the low- and high-stage events, q_{pal} and q_{pa2}.

- Step 3. Compute the discharge ratios for both the low- and high-stage events:

$$R_{ql} = \frac{q_{pbl}}{q_{pal}} \qquad \text{10-32a}$$

$$R_{q2} = \frac{q_{pb2}}{q_{pa2}} \qquad \text{10-32b}$$

- Step 4. Use the values of R_{ql} and R_{q2} as a with Equation 10-4 to find the storage volume ratios: R_{sl} and R_{s2}.

- Step 5. Compute the volume of storage in m^3 for both the low- and high-stage events:

$$V_{s1} = 10\ Q_{a1} R_{s1}\ A \qquad 10\text{-}33a$$

$$V_{s2} = 10\ Q_{a2} R_{s2}\ A \qquad 10\text{-}33b$$

where:

A is the drainage area (hectares)
Q_{a1} and Q_{a2} are post-development runoff depths (millimeters).

Step 6. Using the elevation E_o obtain the volume of dead storage V_d from the elevation-storage curve.

Step 7. Compute the total storage (m^3) for both the low- and high-stage events:

$$V_{t1} = V_d + V_{s1} \qquad 10\text{-}34a$$

$$V_{t2} = V_d + V_{s2} \qquad 10\text{-}34b$$

Step 8. Enter the elevation-storage curve with V_{t1} and V_{t2} to obtain the low- and high-stage water surface elevations, E_1 and E_2.

Step 9.

. Obtain the friction head loss coefficient K_p from Equation 10-24.

b. Using the product LK_p obtain C_* from Equation 10-25.

c. Compute the conduit diameter (assuming that E_c is greater than the tail-water elevation):

$$D = 1.346\ C_* q_{pb2}^{0.5}\ h^{-0.25} \quad where\ h = E_1 - E_c \qquad 10\text{-}35$$

d. Adjust D to the nearest larger commercial pipe size.

Step 10. If the low-stage control is an orifice, determine characteristics of the orifice:

. Set the orifice width, W_o; as a rule of thumb, try 0.75*D.

b. Compute the area of the orifice:

$$A_o = \frac{0.4135\ q_{pb1}}{(E_1 - E_0)^{0.5}} \qquad 10\text{-}36$$

c. Compute the height of the orifice:

$$H_o = \frac{A_o}{W_o} \qquad 10\text{-}37$$

d. Estimate the flow rate (m^3/s) through the low-stage orifice during the

high-stage event:

$$q_{o2} = 2.661 \; A_o(E_2 - E_1)^{0.5} \qquad 10\text{-}38$$

Step 11. If the low-stage control is a weir, determine the characteristics of the weir:

a. Compute the weir length:

$$L_{w1} = \frac{q_{pb1}}{C_w(E_1 - E_o)^{1.5}} \qquad 10\text{-}39$$

b. Compute the flow over the low-stage weir during the high-stage event:

$$q_{o2} = C_w \; L_{w1}(E_2 - E_o)^{1.5} \qquad 10\text{-}40$$

Step 12. Compute the high-stage weir length:

$$L_{w2} = \frac{q_{pb2} - q_{o2}}{C_w(E_2 - E_1)^{1.5}} \qquad 10\text{-}41$$

Step 13. Compute the conduit invert elevation (m) at the face of the riser:

$$E_i = E_c - \frac{D}{2} \qquad 10\text{-}42$$

Example 10-7

Consider the forested (fair condition) watershed shown in Figure 10-8. A 21.4 hectare tract within the watershed (dashed lines) is to be developed as a commercial/business center, with the total watershed having an area of 52.0 hectares. To control the runoff rates from the developed area, a detention structure is planned at the watershed outlet. The local drainage policy requires control of both the 2- and 10-year peak discharges. The two-stage riser method can be used to develop a planning estimate of the storage volume and outlet facility characteristics. The input and calculations are given in Table 10-4. The stage-storage relationship at the site is:

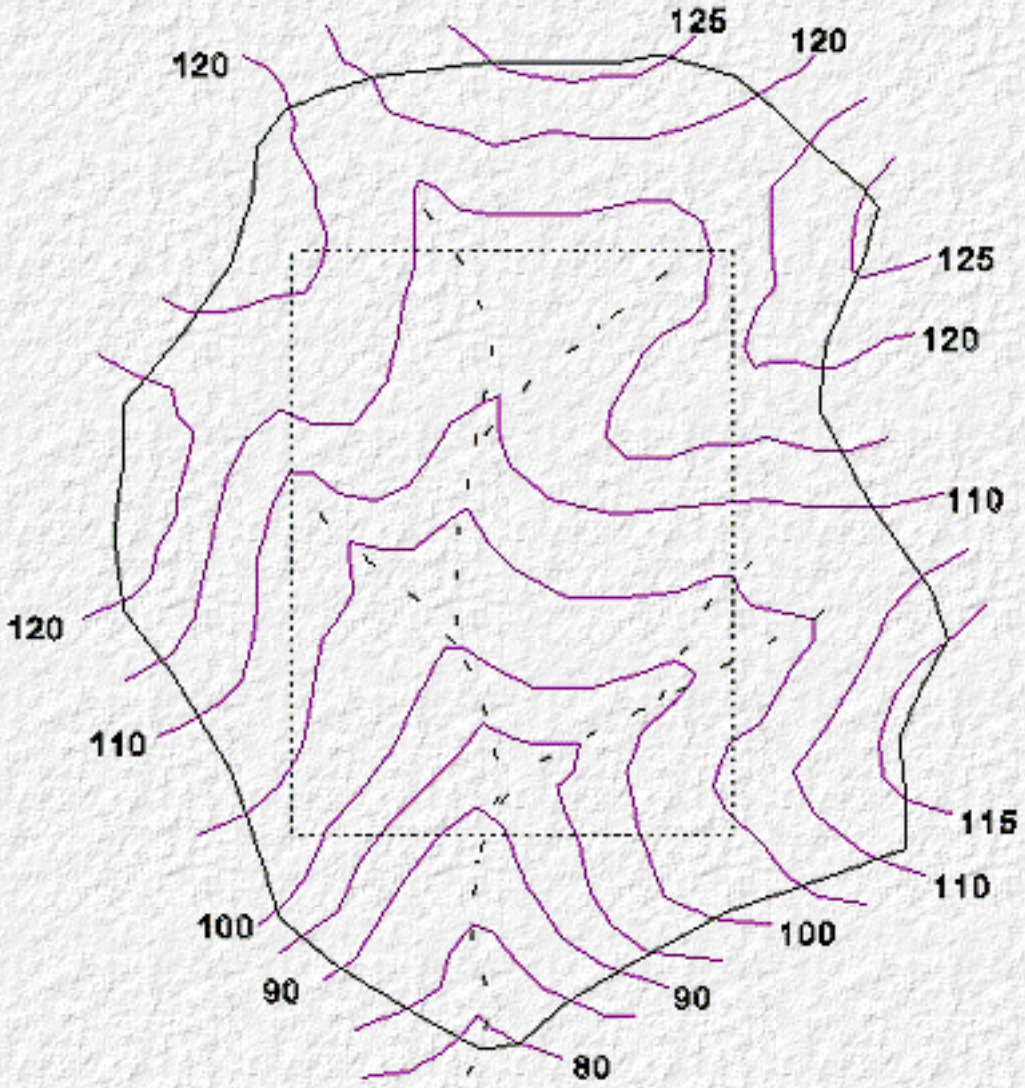


Figure 10-8. Topographic Map for Example 10-7

Stage (m)	Total storage (m^3)
0.00	0
0.50	1700
1.00	3600
1.25	4625
1.50	5700
1.75	6825
2.00	8800
2.25	9225
2.50	10500
2.75	11825
3.00	13200

Click here to view Table 10-4. Calculations for Example 10-7.

For the watershed of Figure 10-8, the pre-development CN, assuming a C soil

group, is 73. Assume that the 2-year, 24-hour and 10-year, 24-hour rainfall depths are 76 and 127 mm, respectively; therefore, the runoff depths computed using the SCS runoff equation are 21.7 and 57.9 mm, respectively. From Table 5-6, the I_a/P ratios are 0.25 and 0.15, respectively, for the 2- and 10-year events. The pre-development time of concentration is 0.388 hours. Based on a t_c of 0.388 hour and the previously given values of I_a/P, unit peak discharges of 0.2272 and 0.2480 $m^3/s/km^2/mm$ are obtained from Equation 5-21 for the 2- and 10-year events, respectively. Thus the 2- and 10-year peak discharges are:

$$q_{pb1} = (0.2272\ m^3/s/km^2/mm)\ (0.52\ km^2)\ (21.7\ mm) = 2.558\ m^3/s$$
$$q_{pb2} = (0.2480\ m^3/s/km^2/mm)\ (0.52\ km^2)\ (57.9\ mm) = 7.470\ m^3/s$$

For the post-development condition, 21.4 hectares will be developed for commercial/business. Initial site plans indicate 88 percent of the developed area will be impervious cover, with the remainder in lawn cover (good condition). Thus the weighted CN for the 52.0-hectare watershed is:

$$CN = \frac{21.4}{52.0}[0.88(98) + 0.12(74)] + \frac{30.6}{52.0}(73) = 82$$

For rainfall depths of 76 and 127 mm, the runoff depths are 34.9 and 78.2 mm, respectively. The post-development I_a/P ratios are 0.15 and 0.1, respectively. Development caused the t_c to decrease to 0.28 hour, thus, the unit peak discharges are 0.289 and 0.300 $m^3/s/km^2/mm$, and the peak discharges are:

$$q_{pa1} = (0.289\ m^3/s/km^2/mm)\ (0.52\ km^2)\ (34.9\ mm) = 5.25\ m^3/s$$
$$q_{pa2} = (0.300\ m^3/s/km^2/mm)\ (0.52\ km^2)\ (78.2\ mm) = 12.22\ m^3/s$$

Table 10-4 provides a summary of the sizing of the detention structure. Using the ratios of the pre-development to post-development peak discharges with the SCS detention relationship (Equation 10-4), the volumes of active storage for low-stage and high-stage control are 5104 and 9636 m^3, respectively.

For a permanent pond depth of 0.7 m, 2460 m^3 would be stored as dead storage. Thus the total volume of storage at the low-stage and high-stage flood conditions would be 7564 and 12,096 m^3, respectively; these volumes correspond to depths of 1.84 and 2.80 meters. Using Equation 10-35, the diameter of the pipe outlet is:

$$D = 1.346\ (0.501)\left[\frac{7.470}{(1.84 - 0.6)^{0.5}}\right]^{0.5} = 1.75\ m$$

Since the difference $E_2 - E_1$ is only 0.96 m, H_o will be set at 0.5 m. The area of the orifice that would be required to limit the discharge through the orifice to the pre-development peak discharge of 2.558 m^3/s can be computed with Equation

10-36:

$$A_o = \frac{0.4135(2.558)}{(1.84 - 0.7)^{0.5}} = 0.99\ m^2$$

Therefore, the length of the rectangular orifice is 1.98 m, which is computed using Equation 10-37. To compute the length of the weir with Equation 10-41, the discharge (q_r) through the orifice when the high-stage event occurs must be estimated with Equation 10-38:

$$q_r = 2.661(0.99)(2.80 - 1.84)^{0.5} = 2.58\ m^3/s$$

Thus with Equation 10-41, the weir length is:

$$L_w = \frac{7.47 - 2.57}{1.7(2.80 - 1.84)^{1.5}} = 3.1\ m$$

10.7 Derivation of a Stage-Storage-Discharge Relationship

Routing a hydrograph through a reservoir or detention structure requires the relationship between stage, storage, and discharge. The stage-storage-discharge (SSD) relationship is a function of both the topography at the site of the storage structure and the characteristics of the outlet facility. The topographic features of the site control the relationship between stage and storage, and the relationship between stage and discharge is primarily a function of the characteristics of the outlet facility.

Although it may appear that the SSD relationship consists of two independent functions, in practice it is important to view the relationship between stage, storage, and discharge as a single function because changes can be made to the topography at the site that indirectly changes the stage-discharge relationship. Such changes will also change the stage-discharge relationship. However, to introduce the concept, the two will be treated separately.

10.7.1 The Stage-Storage Relationship

The stage-storage relationship depends on the topography at the site of the storage structure. Consider the unrealistic case of a site where the topography permits a storage structure that has a horizontal rectangular bottom area with vertical sides. In this case, the storage is simply the bottom area (i.e., length times width) multiplied by the depth of storage. If the relationship is plotted in a Cartesian axis system with storage as the ordinate and stage as the abscissa, the stage-storage relationship will be a straight line with a slope equal to the surface area of the storage facility.

For the case where the bottom of the storage facility is a rectangle (L x W), the longitudinal cross section is a trapezoid with base W and side slopes of angle α, and the ends are vertical, the stage-storage relationship is given by:

$$S = \frac{L}{\tan \alpha} h^2 + (LW)h \qquad 10\text{-}43$$

in which h is the height above the bed of the storage facility.

If Equation 10-43 is plotted on a graph, the stage-storage relationship has the shape of a second-order polynomial with a zero intercept and a shape that depends on the values of L, W, and α.

Unless the site undergoes considerable excavation, the simple forms described previously are not "real world." However, the concepts used to derive the stage-storage relationship for the simple forms are also used to derive the stage-storage relationship for an actual site. Instead of a continuous function such as Equation 10-43, the stage-storage relationship is derived as a discrete function (i.e., a set of points). The area within contour lines of the site can be planimetered, with the storage in any depth increment Δh equal to the product of the average area and the depth increment Δh. Thus the storage increment S is given by:

$$\Delta S = \frac{1}{2} (A_i + A_{i+1}) \Delta h \qquad 10\text{-}44$$

where:

A_i and A_{i+1} are the surface areas for the ith and $(1 + 1)^{th}$ contours.

Example 10-8

Consider the storage facility of Equation 10-43. If the basin has a length of 200 m, a width of 100 m, and side slopes of 2H:1V, then Equation 10-43 becomes:

$$S = 400\, h^2 + 20{,}000\, h$$

At a depth of 1.5 m, the facility would have a storage volume of 30,900 m^3.

Example 10-9

To illustrate the use of Equation 10-44, consider the site shown in Figure 10-9. The area bounded by each contour line was estimated (Table 10-5) and the average area within adjacent contours computed. The topographic lines are drawn with a 1-m contour interval. The stage-storage relationship was computed using Equation 10-44 and is given in Table 10-5 and Figure 10-10.

Click here to view Table 10-5. Derivation of Stage-Storage Relationship for Example 10-9.

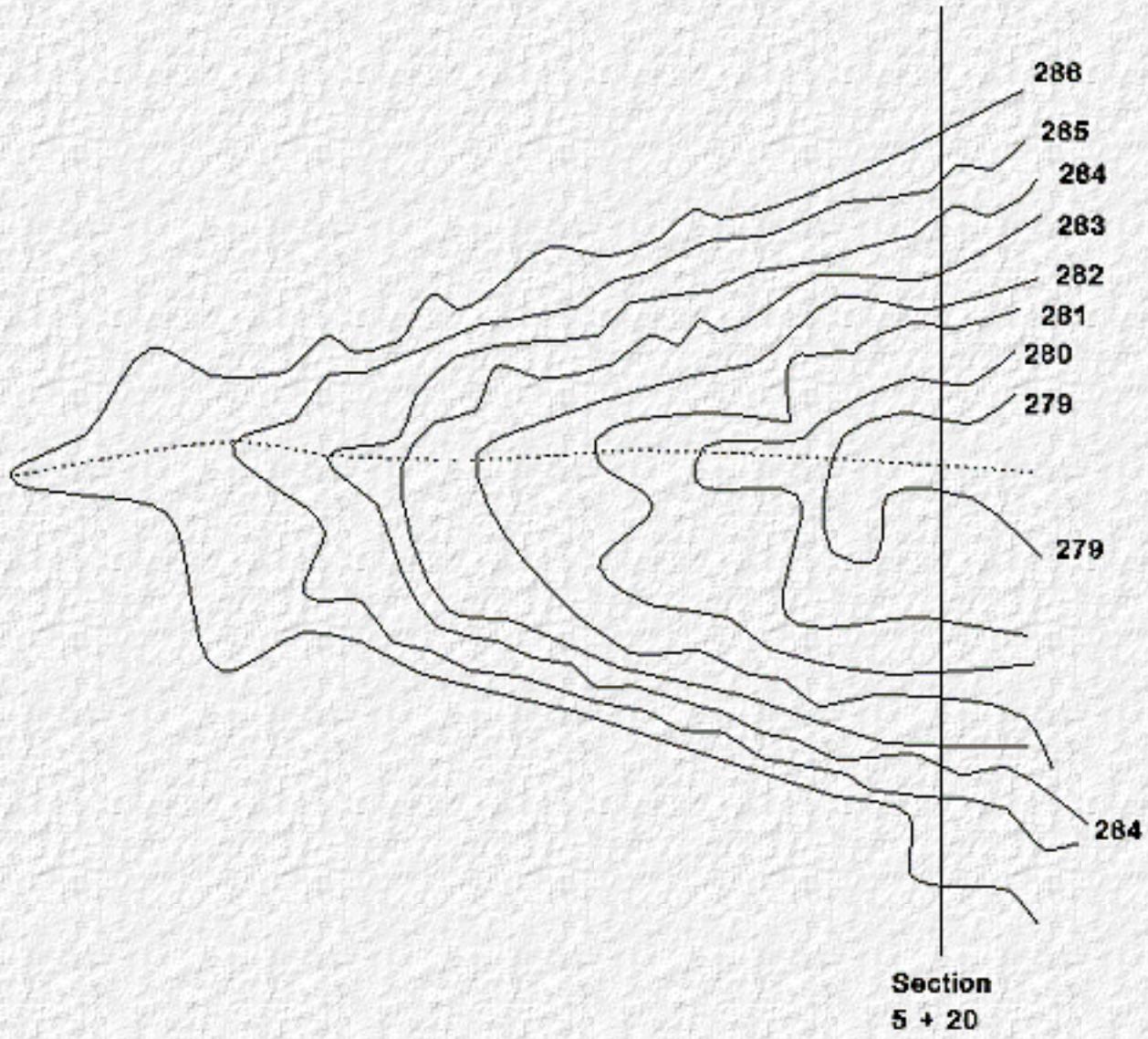


Figure 10-9. Topographic Map for Deriving Stage-Storage Relationship at Site of Structure (Section 5 + 20; Not to Scale)

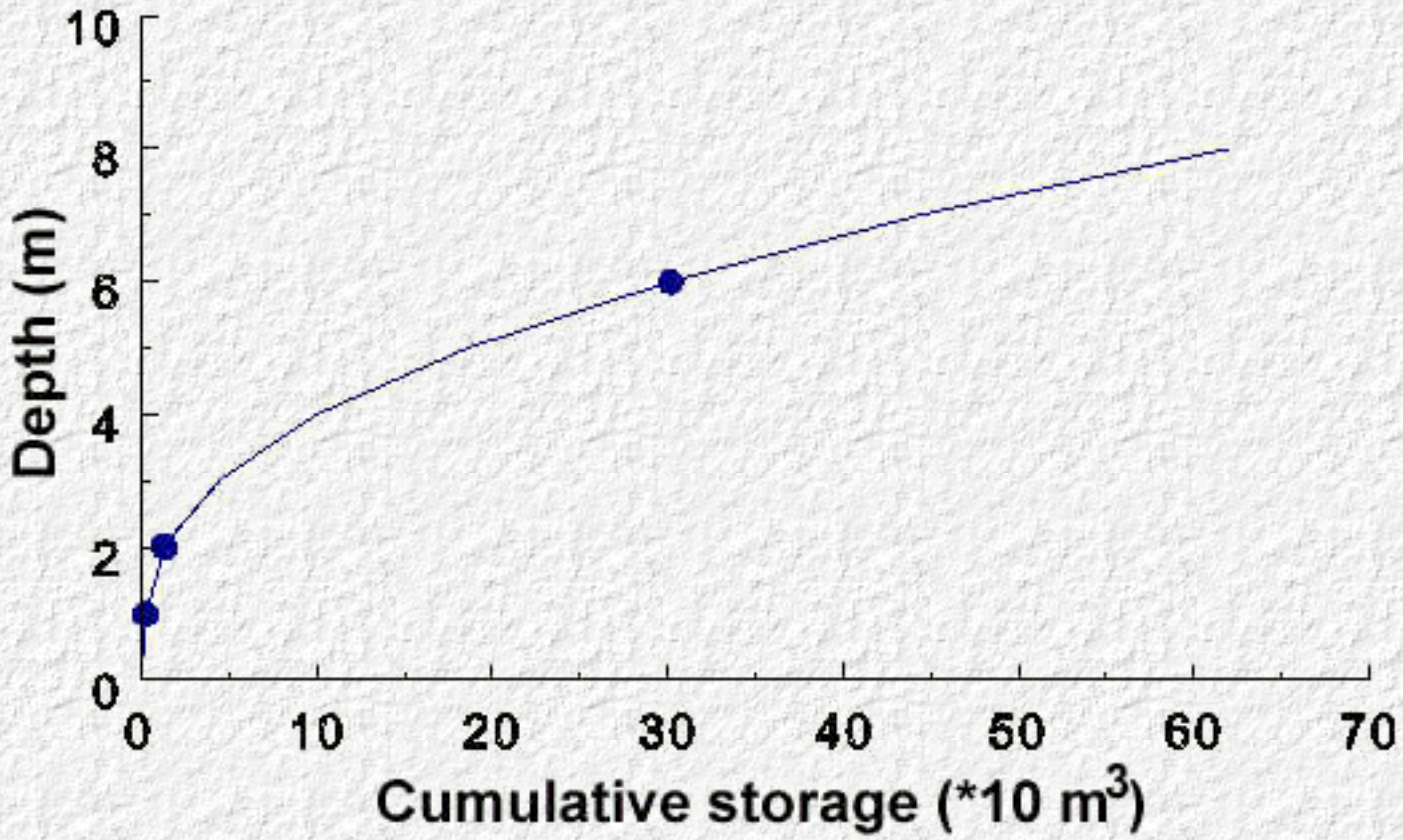


Figure 10-10. Stage-Storage Relationship

Example 10-10

Many storage facilities are designed to include a permanent pool. In such cases, the elevation of the weir or the bottom of the orifice is set above the elevation of the bottom of the pond. Storage below the elevation of the outlet is called dead storage. Storage above the elevation of the outlet is called active storage. Total storage is the sum of the active and dead storages.

The data of Table 10-6 can be used to illustrate the development of stage-active storage relationship. Areas are planimetered from a topographic map at the site of the detention facility. An increment of 0.25 m is used. The areas are given in Column 2 and the average areas are given in Column 3. The incremental volumes are the product of the change in depth, 0.25 m, and the average area. The total storage is the cumulative of the incremental storages.

if the outlet facility has a minimum elevation of 0.5 m, then all storage below this elevation is dead storage. The active storage is 0.0 at an elevation of 0.5 m. The active storage above 0.5 m equals the difference between the total storage and the dead storage. The stage (Column 1) versus active storage (Column 7) would be used when designing a storage facility.

Click here to view Table 10-6. Computation of Stage-Active Storage Relationship for Example 10-10.

10.7.2 The Stage-Discharge Relationship

The discharge from a reservoir or detention facility depends on the depth of flow and the characteristics of the outlet facility. The outlet facility can include either a weir, and orifice, or both. The weir and orifice equations were introduced in Section 10.3. For a given weir length or orifice area, the stage-discharge relationship can be computed directly from either Equation 10-12 or Equation 10-19.

10.7.3 Stage-Storage-Discharge for Two-Stage Risers

There has been very little theoretical research or empirical studies of the hydraulics of two-stage risers; thus a number of procedures have been proposed for routing through such facilities. Some proposals have assumed that, when weir flow begins, flow through the orifice ceases. Other proposals have assumed that flow through the orifice is independent of flow over the weir. It would probably be more realistic to assume that the two are not independent and that, as the depth of storage above the elevation of the weir increases, the interdependence between weir flow and orifice flow increases. This interdependence is recognized in the calculations of the orifice flow Q_r in the SCS two-stage riser method. Specifically, Q_r is calculated by:

$$Q_r = C_d A_o [2g(E_2 - E_1)]^{0.5} = 4.43 C_d A_o (E_2 - E_1)^{0.5} \qquad \text{10-45}$$

in which:

C_d is the discharge coefficient and is usually assumed to equal 0.6,
E_2 and E_1 are the maximum water surface elevations in the reservoir at routed high and low stages, respectively.

Equation 10-45 implies that the effective head controlling flow through the orifice is the same head as that controlling flow over the weir, which is a reasonable assumption if the riser pipe is reasonably full.

10.8 Design Procedure

Two general types of hydrologic synthesis are used for storage routing methods. First, watershed studies are frequently conducted where structures currently exist. In this case of synthesis, the response of the system rather than the design of a structure is the objective. A design-flood hydrograph is routed through an existing structure using a known stage-storage-discharge relationship, with the output of the computation being a computed hydrograph.

Very often, watershed studies are undertaken to evaluate the hydrologic effects of various land use conditions, such as a natural state, current conditions, and completely developed, or for

different zoning practices. For such watershed studies the routing is not undertaken as part of the design of the structure.

The second case of hydrologic synthesis is the design of the storage and outlet facility. Quite often, the design of a storage facility centers around a target discharge. For example, in the design of urban detention basins, stormwater management policies may require the post-development peak discharge to be no greater than the peak discharge for the pre-development watershed conditions at a selected exceedence frequency (i.e., return period).

In designing the riser to meet the target discharge, the goal of the design is to identify the riser characteristics (weir length and/or area of the orifice) that will limit the computed post-development peak discharge out of the detention basin so that it does not exceed the target discharge, which is usually the peak discharge that would occur if development had not taken place within the watershed. The stage-storage-discharge relationship is a function of both the target discharge and the riser characteristics. Because of this interdependence, the design procedure is iterative. That is, the design procedure begins with some assumption about the riser characteristics. Then the storage routing procedure is applied to determine whether or not the target-discharge requirement has been met. The riser characteristics are continually modified until the target is met. If the weir length is too long or the orifice area too large, the target discharge will be exceeded. If the computed discharge is less than the target discharge (i.e., the weir length is too short or the orifice is too small), the design will result in storage that is greater than that really required.

The design procedure is summarized in the flowchart of Figure 10-11. There are four requirements for the design. First, initial conditions must be established; this includes setting the time interval Δt, the storm time at which computations end, and the initial outflow O_1 and storage S_1. Second, the design-storm inflow hydrograph and the target discharge q_o must be computed. The design-storm inflow hydrograph is usually the output from the convolution of a rainfall-excess hyetograph and a unit hydrograph, with the post-development conditions used to compute the rainfall excess. The target discharge is usually the peak discharge of the pre-development hydrograph. Third, the riser characteristics (i.e., number of stages, type of outlet, and values of the discharge coefficients) must be set. Fourth, topographic information must be obtained and the stage-storage relationship computed. These four inputs are indicated in Figure 10-11 by nodes A, B, C, and D, respectively.

The design process is iterative, with two loops. The interior loop, which begins at node F in Figure 10-11, uses the storage-indication routing method to route the design-storm inflow hydrograph through a storage structure that has an assumed design. The exterior loop, which begins at node E in Figure 10-11, uses assumed weir lengths or orifice areas and assumed elevations to compute the stage-discharge and storage-indication curves.

Based on these inputs and initial computations, the inflow hydrograph can be routed through the storage basin; this begins at node F in Figure 10-11. The storage-indication routing procedure was detailed in Section 7.2. Once the outflow hydrograph is computed, its peak discharge is compared to the target discharge q_o. If it is greater that q_o, then the capacity of the assumed outlet configuration is too large. Thus, the weir lengths or orifice areas should be

decreased (return to node E in Figure 10-11). If the peak discharge of the outflow is less than the target discharge q_o, then the assumed outlet configuration does not provide for sufficient outflow. The weir lengths or orifice areas can be increased (return to node E in Figure 10-11). This will require recomputing the stage-discharge relationship, the storage-indication curve, and the storage-discharge curve.

The routing process, which begins at node F of Figure 10-11, is then repeated with the new stage-storage-discharge information, and the maximum discharge of the new outflow hydrograph is compared to the target discharge. When the peak outflow approximately equals the target discharge, then the assumed outlet facility is a reasonable design. The required storage is estimated by the largest value of storage S_2. The depth of storage is estimated by using the maximum S_2 as input to the stage-storage curve. The computed design should be evaluated for safety and cost.

Example 10-11

A detailed example will be used to illustrate the detention basin design process. The watershed has a drainage area of 15.5 hectares and is entirely in C soil. The design will use a 10-year exceedence frequency. In the pre-development condition, the watershed was 40 percent forest in good condition (CN = 70) and 60 percent in brush in good condition (CN = 65); therefore, the weighted CN is 67. For post-development conditions, the watershed has the following land cover: 26.1 percent in 1/8-ac lots (CN = 90); 36.6 percent in 1/4-ac lots (CN = 83); 13.0 percent in light commercial (75 percent impervious); and 24.3 percent in open space in good condition (CN = 74). The CN for the commercial area is 0.75(98) + 0.25(74) = 92. Thus, the weighted CN for the watershed is:

$$CN_a = [0.261(90)+0.366(83)+0.130(92)+0.243(74)] = 83.8 \text{ (use 84)}$$

Characteristics of the principal flowpaths for both watershed conditions are given in Table 10-7. For a 10-year exceedence frequency, assume that the 24-hour rainfall depth is 122 mm.

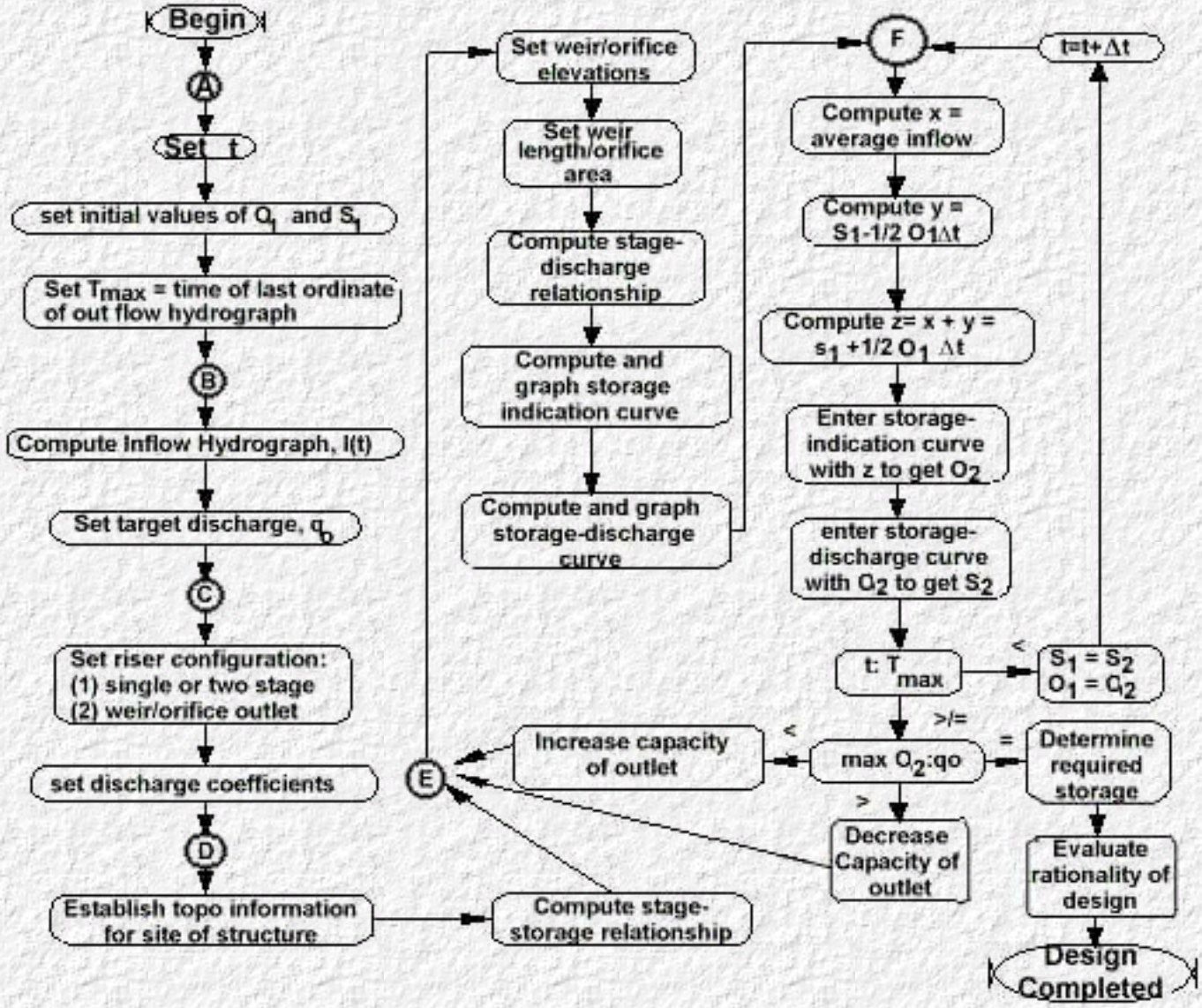


Figure 10-11. Flowchart of Storage Basin Design Procedure

Using the pre- and post-development CN's, the rainfall depths are computed from Equation 5-17 as 42.4 mm and 78.5 mm, respectively. The initial abstractions are 22.73 and 9.68 mm, which yields I_a/P ratios of 0.21 and 0.08 (use 0.1) for pre- and post-development, respectively. Using the times of concentration and I_a/P ratios, unit peak discharges of 0.215 and 0.306 $m^3/s/km^2/mm$ are taken from Equation 5-21 for the pre- and post-development conditions, respectively. These yield peak discharges of:

$$q_{pb} = q_{ub} Q_b A = 0.215(0.155)(42.4) = 1.41 m^3/s$$

$$q_{pa} = q_{ua} Q_a A = 0.306(0.155)(78.5) = 3.72 m^3/s$$

Thus, development within the watershed increased the 10-year peak discharge by 164 percent. The detention basin must be designed to reduce the peak discharge from 3.72 m^3/s to 1.41 m^3/s.

The stage-storage relationship is computed from topographic information. At the site where the detention structure will be located, surface areas were estimated from the topographic map at an increment of 0.15 m (see Table 10-8). The product of the average area (column 3) and the incremental depth of 0.15 m yields the incremental storage (column 4). The storage for any stage is the accumulated incremental storage. A graphical presentation of columns 1 and 5 would be the stage-storage relationship. The values were used to fit the following power model:

$$V_s = 3{,}256\ h^{1.027}$$

in which V_s is the storage (m^3) and h is the depth (m).

For design, an input hydrograph is necessary. The SCS TR-20 computer program (SCS, 1984) was used to derive the input hydrograph. The ordinates on a 0.1-hour increment are used for a 2-hour period of the 24-hour storm; discharges for the remainder of the 24-hour storm duration were either zero or very small.

The design policy requires a one-stage riser with a weir. An inflow hydrograph will be routed using the storage-indication method. An initial estimate of the weir length is made using the weir equation, with an assumed depth of 1.5 m:

$$L_w = \frac{q_o}{C_w h^{1.5}} = \frac{1.41}{1.6(1.5)^{1.5}} = 0.5\ m$$

Thus, an initial weir length of 0.5 m will be used. The stage-storage-discharge relationship and the storage-indication curve are given in Table 10-9.

The inflow hydrograph is routed with the storage-indication method; the results are given in Table 10-10. The largest outflow occurred at 102 minutes, which is storm time 12.7 hours. The peak outflow is 1.29 m^3/s, which is less than the allowable peak of 1.41 m^3/s. The maximum storage is 4525 m^3.

Since the computed peak is less than the allowable peak, the required storage volume can be reduced by allowing a higher peak discharge out of the basin. Thus, the weir length is increased to 0.6 m and the computations repeated. Since the weir length is changed, the stage-discharge and storage-indication curves must be recomputed (see Table 10-11). The inflow hydrograph is routed (see Table 10-12) with a resulting peak discharge of 1.44 m^3/s. Since this exceeds the allowable, another trial is made for a weir length of 0.57 m (see Table 10-13 and Table 10-14). The peak equals 1.41 m^3/s and the required storage equals 4378 m^3.

Click on a hyperlink below to view the following tables.

- Table 10-7. Computation of Times of Concentration
- Table 10-8. Derivation of Stage-Storage Relationship
- Table 10-9. Stage-Storage-Discharge and Storage-Indication Curves for a Weir Length of 0.5 Meters

- Table 10-10. Storage-Indication Analysis for Weir Length of 0.5 m
- Table 10-11. Stage-Storage-Discharge and Storage-Indication Curves for a Weir Length of 0.6 Meters
- Table 10-12. Storage-Indication Analysis for Weir Length of 0.6 m
- Table 10-13. Stage-Storage-Discharge and Storage-Indication Curves for a Weir Length of 0.57 Meters
- Table 10-14. Storage-Indication Analysis for Weir Length of 0.57 m

---

Go to Chapter 11

Chapter 11 : HDS 2

The Role of Geographic Information Systems in Hydrologic Modeling

Go to Table of Contents

11.1 Introduction

A simple model, such as the rational method described in Section 5.3.1, will continue to be sufficient to meet the design requirements of many drainage structures. In a growing number of cases, however, the hydrologic aspects of drainage design are too complex to be met with a model as simple as the rational method. In addition to ensuring the safety of the structure during flood conditions, the hydrologist must often consider issues such as stormwater management, floodplain inundation and broad environmental impacts. Analysis of these issues generally requires the use of a complete runoff hydrograph and detailed mapping. In an ungaged watershed, complete hydrographs can be synthesized with physically-based models that simulate and link the individual runoff processes taking place in the watershed.

Many physically based models can be used to develop a runoff hydrograph. Most have a module that estimates the depth of runoff, or rainfall excess, as a function of the rainfall and the spatial distribution of the land cover and soils in the watershed. The SCS curve number procedure described in Chapter 6 is an example of such an approach. The runoff hydrograph is then developed by routing the time and spatially varying rainfall excess across the land surfaces and through the stream network.

Because of the complexity and computational intensity of physically based models, their use centers on readily available computer programs such as the U.S. Department of Agriculture's SCS TR-20 (SCS, 1984), the EPA Storm Water Management Model (Huber and Dickinson, 1988; Roesner, Aldrich and Dickinson, 1988) and the US Army Corps of Engineers' HEC-1 (HEC, 1985). Another approach is to use the computer programs in the Federal Highway Administration's Integrated Drainage Design Computer System - HYDRAIN (Young and Krolak, 1992). After the input parameters have been entered into any of these models, procedures that would require days to be executed through hand calculations are completed in seconds or minutes.

Physically based models that have parameters defined in terms of the spatial distribution of the watershed land cover and drainage network are very attractive. The hydrologist can vary the model parameters to simulate the behavior of the watershed under existing or future development conditions or to examine the consequences of an array of design options. A major problem with the use of any physically based model is that the definition of the model parameters is usually a difficult, tedious, time-consuming and expensive task. While the execution of the model's computer program may take seconds, it may take weeks of map manipulations and table look-ups to define the input parameters when the watershed is large.

If the hydrologist is to use the complex models that are being required with increasing frequency, the input data must be developed with the same efficiency and quality control as can be accomplished in the computer execution of the model. The tools available in the relatively new field of geographic information systems (GIS) can be used to define map-based input parameters in a fraction of the time required by traditional approaches. For example, a GIS can be used to develop and store a digital

database containing the land cover, soil type and topography for a state or county highway department's entire area of jurisdiction. After the data are stored on the disk of a desktop workstation, a properly configured GIS often allows the user to meet the office phases of the modeling tasks without leaving the desk.

11.1.1 Purpose of a Hydrologic GIS and an Operational Scenario

The function of a GIS in hydrologic modeling is to improve quality by reducing the labor intensity of the map manipulations, table look-ups, and repetitious computations required to define input parameters. By reducing the time required to define the input parameters, a larger portion of the project time is available to interpret results and explore alternative design strategies. Although a GIS will allow a hydrologist to be more productive, it cannot replace judgement and experience. Indeed, a well designed GIS must allow the hydrologist to easily add special conditions to the database and modify pre-programmed procedures when unusual watershed conditions are encountered.

As an illustration of the GIS approach, assume that the SCS procedures described in Section 5.3.2, Section 6.3.3 and Section 6.3.4 are to produce subwatershed hydrographs that will be routed through a channel network to generate the runoff hydrographs required for the design of a bridge. After the input parameters have been defined, the modeling tasks will be executed on a personal computer with the SCS TR-20. The watershed will have to be modeled for both existing and proposed future conditions. After the land cover and hydrologic soil type databases for the jurisdiction have been stored and any needed field data have been obtained from the watershed, a well designed hydrologic GIS will allow the modeling tasks to be accomplished with the following scenario:

> The hydrologist sits at a desktop workstation and defines a watershed of interest by outlining the main and subwatershed boundaries on maps taped to a digitizing table. The GIS then uses the vector coordinates of these boundary polygons to access the jurisdiction-wide database and assemble the land cover and soil data that define the existing conditions in the watershed. In response to prompts on the screen, the hydrologist inputs any special conditions that have been observed in the field and digitizes the locations of land cover changes that will represent the future condition of the watershed. The keyboard and digitizing table are then used to digitize the location and slopes of the main stream network, minor tributaries and overland flow planes and to enter representative channel cross-sections and roughness coefficients for existing and future watershed conditions. All the data overlays and other required manipulations are automatically performed to define the parameters and write the files required by the SCS TR-20. The SCS TR-20 then produces the existing and proposed hydrographs and supporting software provides the array of maps, graphs and tables needed to interpret the analyses.

As described by Ragan (1991), the Bridge Design Division of the Maryland State Highway Administration installed a GIS with a 25,500 km² database in 1990 to execute the above scenario on watersheds that are larger than 160 hectares. The GIS is used routinely. Testing has shown that watersheds having drainage areas in the vicinity of 25 km² normally require at least two weeks to manually compute the curve numbers, subareas and times of concentration using paper topographic, land cover and soil maps. These

tasks are completed in less than two days with the GIS. When the watersheds have drainage areas in the vicinity of 400 km², the tasks that usually require 2-3 months for manual definition are completed in less than a week with the GIS.

The scenario presented above could apply to any of the array of physically based computer models used in the design of highway crossings and drainage structures. For example, the Maryland system described by Ragan (1991) has been extended to manage the definition of the Basin Development Factors and other parameters required by the USGS regression equations discussed in Section 8.2.1.

11.1.2 Organizational Considerations in Adopting a GIS

A GIS can be an invaluable tool in hydrologic analyses. On the other hand, an organization may devote considerable financial and human resources toward the installation of a sophisticated GIS only to find that it does not meet the needs of their hydrologists. While some organizations have the resources to develop their own GIS or hire a consultant to develop a special hydrologic GIS for them, most purchase the nucleus of their systems from a vendor. Others obtain software that has been developed by a government agency. Most of these vendor supplied and government systems are very good, but they are designed to address a range of general problems in the broad marketplace. Thus, an "off-the-shelf" or generic GIS may not meet the specific needs of the hydrologist unless they are modified or interfaced with other software. While geographic information systems have successfully supported a wide range of hydrologic projects, the hydrologic tasks that must be performed vary with the project objectives. Further, the manner in which the tasks are performed is a function of the organization of the team running the project. Thus, if a GIS is to be successful, it must be configured to meet the unique objectives of the organization while, of paramount importance, being easy to use by the personnel of the project teams.

An organization developing a geographic information system for hydrologic use should establish a GIS implementation team that can guide the effort from concept through installation, training and operational support. The implementation team must have a balance among individuals who are selected for their expertise as GIS specialists and the hydrologists who will be using the system. GIS expertise is critical because a GIS is complex and, if not properly configured, will not perform at the desired level. In many instances, the GIS expertise may have to be provided by one of the many consulting firms that help organizations translate a generic GIS into a site-specific tool. It is the organization's hydrologists, however, that must exercise an aggressive leadership role on the implementation team because they are the ones who have the experience that defines what must be done and how it is to be done.

11.1.3 Objective

Hydrologists must understand the concepts of GIS if they are take the leadership role on the implementation team and then get optimal benefits from the system after it is fully operational. Thus, the objective of the present chapter is to introduce those aspects of GIS that are critical to success in hydrologic modeling that supports the design of highway crossings and drainage structures. The focus is on the GIS that is to support a hydrologic

model that is defined in terms of the spatial distribution of the land cover and soils and the characteristics of the overland flow, swale and stream network of the watershed.

11.1.4 Approach

The field of geographic information systems is vast. There is no way that one chapter can provide an in-depth examination of the GIS field. Rather than pursuing a general discussion of GIS that parallels a geography textbook, the chapter guides the hydrologist through pertinent GIS requirements and operations by relating them to tasks performed in watershed modeling, such as those in the scenario of Section 11.1.1.

Section 11.2 presents a definition of GIS that is relevant to hydrologic applications and provides a brief overview of the generic functions of a GIS. Section 11.3 translates these generic concepts into requirements for a hydrologic GIS capable of performing the tasks presented in the scenario of Section 11.1.1. The first step in Section 11.3 is to present a small watershed example that reviews the traditional use of charts, tables, map overlays and map measurements to determine the SCS curve number(CN) of Section 5.3.2.2 - Section 5.3.2.6 and the time of concentration of Section 2.6.

Concepts that are of fundamental importance to understanding the use of GIS in hydrologic modeling are then introduced by explaining how these traditional table look-up and map operations can be translated into digital procedures. The discussion is then expanded by developing the requirements that a GIS would have to meet if it is to support the modeling of a complex watershed where a number of subwatershed hydrographs are routed through a stream network.

Section 11.4 examines some of the important issues in database development and discusses the relations between the hydrologists and GIS specialists as the system is being defined, installed and supported through the periods of training and revision to full operational status. The intent of the approach is to give the hydrologist an understanding of how a GIS works and what it has to do to support a physically based model that is used to estimate peak discharges and hydrographs required for the design of roadway crossings and drainage structures.

11.2 What is a Geographic Information System?

11.2.1 GIS Definition and Function

Although geographic information systems technology is relatively new, it is a field that is experiencing tremendous growth. Many definitions have evolved, each influenced by the application of interest to its author. A definition that is appropriate for the field of hydrologic modeling is:

A geographic information system is a set of interactive hardware/software tools that aid in the translation of georeferenced data into quantitative information required for decision making.

An example of an application of this definition in hydrology would be to use rainfall, watershed land cover, soil, and topographic data as inputs to a model that provides information in the form of a runoff hydrograph required for a design project.

A GIS user must be able to create, store, maintain and retrieve a digital database that may include a number of layers such as land cover, soil type and topography. The GIS software must be able to translate the tasks defined by the user into machine procedures that assemble the appropriate data sets and then perform actions on these data sets to provide the quantitative information needed to support the decision to be made. The GIS must also provide the user with output in appropriate formats such as maps, tables, graphs and text that optimize the interpretation of information.

11.2.2 GIS Structure

Figure 11-1 is a schematic showing the major components of a geographic information system. Some GIS installations are so massive that they require a network of the most powerful computers to support their operations. Other GIS users, including most hydrologists concerned with roadway crossings and drainage structures, can meet all their needs with a stand-alone desktop unit built around an off-the-shelf personal computer or workstation.

The present overview of GIS operations in hydrologic modeling concentrates on systems that can be served by a single desktop unit such as a personal computer. This is not an unreasonable restriction. For example, the Maryland State Highway Administration's Division of Bridge Design has been using the GIS described by Ragan (1991) to support their hydrologic modeling since 1990. That system uses stand-alone personal computers running under DOS or Windows to maintain a 25,000 km^2 database and run analyses on watersheds as large as several thousand sq. km.

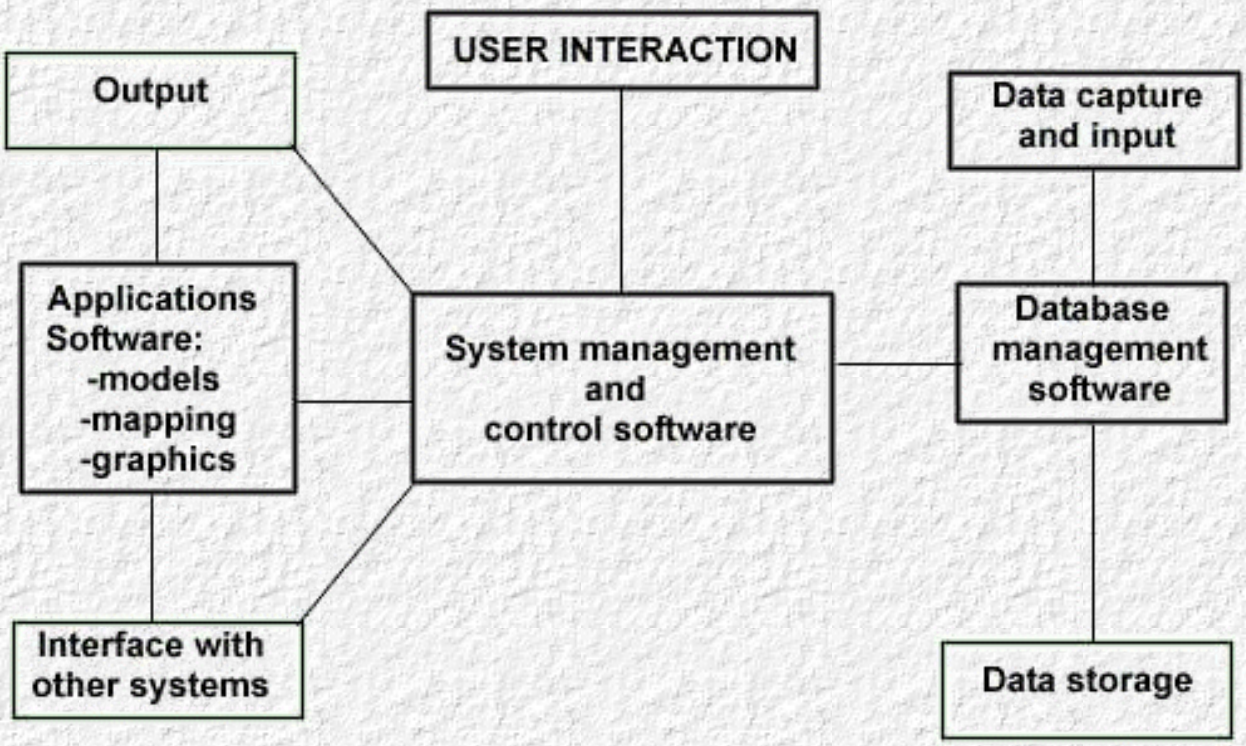


Figure 11-1. Major Components of a Geographic System

Figure 11-2 is a schematic of a desktop workstation that will be used to describe GIS functions and components of Figure 11-1. The "User Interaction" in Figure 11-2 combines the computer screen, keyboard, mouse and digitizing table to allow the user to define the tasks to be performed, the data to be used and the form of the output products. The "Data Capture and Input" functions are met with the scanner, digitizing table, keyboard and data imported on floppy or compact disks or through a network. "Data Storage" is in the form of files maintained on the hard disk or a compact disk in the workstation. The "Applications Software" module includes hydrologic models such as the SCS TR-20 or HEC-1, interfaces to HYDRAIN, and utilities that perform tasks such as computing channel cross-sections and estimating runoff coefficients. The primary "Output" device of Figure 11-2 is the computer screen with hard copy going to a desktop black and white or color printer through screen capture software. To be of optimal value, the hydrologic GIS should also output to a large scale color plotter driven by the organization's CAD system. Finally, the interface with other systems can be as simple as data transfer through floppy disks or the workstation can be on a local or large-scale network.

11.2.3 Sources of Additional Information

The field of geographic information systems is growing with new concepts and approaches being introduced. Thus, hydrologists using or considering the use of GIS must develop a solid understanding of the current state-of-the art. There are numerous textbooks including *Geographic Information Systems: An Introduction* (Star and Estes, 1990), *Geographic Information Systems: A Management Perspective* (Aronoff, 1990) and *Geographic Information Systems - A Guide to the Technology* (Antenucci, et al., 1991). A reference that specifically addresses the use of a GIS to support the hydrologic analysis of

highway bridges is *A Geographic Information System to Support Statewide Hydrologic Modeling* with the SCS TR-20 (Ragan 1991). Adaption of Geographic Information Systems for Transportation (Vonderohe, et al, 1993) discusses the application to a range of transportation problems. A Process for Evaluating Geographic Information Systems (Guphill, 1988) and "Implementation of GIS for Water Resources Planning and Management (Leipnik, Kemp and Loaiciga, 1993) are excellent guides as an organization moves through the process of adopting a GIS. There are a number of GIS journals including the *International Journal of Geographic Information Systems, GIS World* and *Geo Info Systems*. *Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing* publishes many papers on GIS. The journals and conference proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, the American Water Resources Association and the Transportation Research Board include many excellent papers on GIS applications.

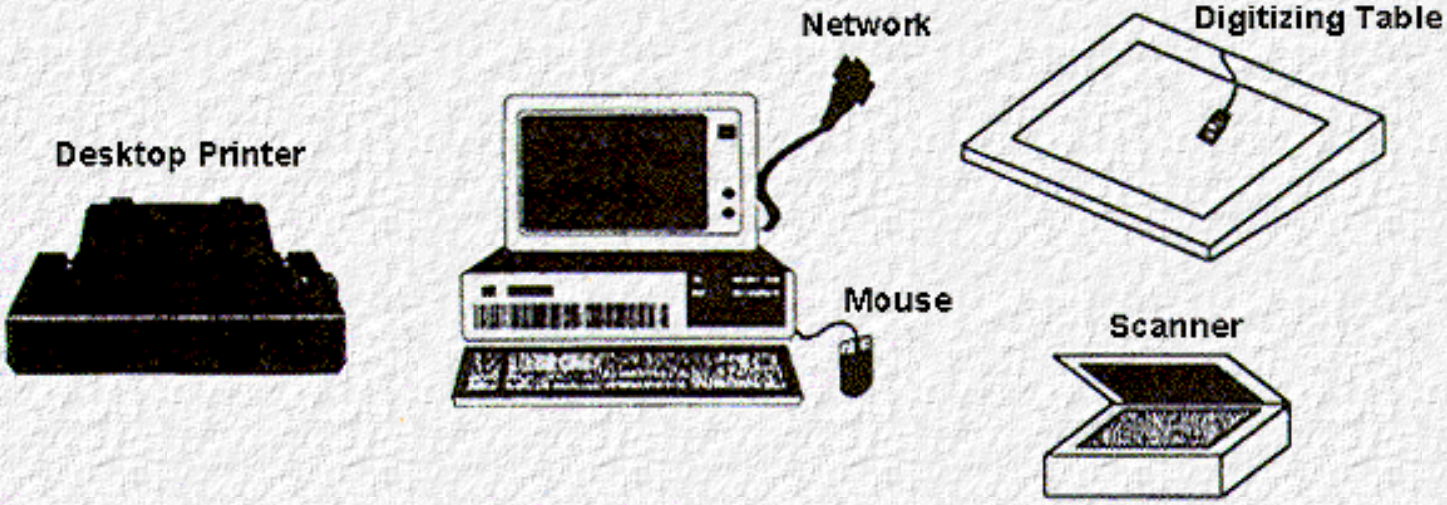


Figure 11-2. Elements of a GIS Workstation Built around a Personal Computer

11.3 GIS Requirements for Hydrologic Modeling

11.3.1 Introduction Through a Small Watershed Example

If the GIS is to be successful, the hydrologist must be able to translate the generic GIS characteristics described in Section 11.2.1 and Section 11.2.2 into the specific capabilities required to support the use of a particular model. A good strategy in the development of a GIS is to define the structure and operation by presenting the implementation team with an example that describes, in detail, how the organization performs the tasks using traditional map-based approaches. The GIS requirements are then developed by translating the manual approaches into digital procedures. Fundamental to the success of this translation is that the hydrologists understand how the GIS is storing and processing data in terms of file structures and file operations. In-depth knowledge can be achieved through the sources of Section 11.2.3. However, a basic understanding of file structures and operations can be developed by relating the digital format GIS operations to the steps followed in a conventional map-based approach to the definition of model parameters.

The use of an example to define GIS requirements for hydrologic modeling and to explain some of the concepts of file structure and operation is the foundation of Section 11.3.1. Section 11.3.1.1 reviews a map-based approach to defining model parameters for a small watershed. The objective of the example problem is to use maps and tables to define several parameters that will be inputs to a computer model that generates a design hydrograph. Section 11.3.1.2 introduces the relevant elements of GIS structure and operations by explaining how the manual operations with the tables and maps are translated into digital procedures.

11.3.1.1 Use of Manual Approach to Establish GIS Requirements

In this scenario, the hydrologist uses a personal computer to run a model such as the SCS TR-20, HEC-1 or the modules in FHWA HYDRAIN to generate design hydrographs. Maps and tables are used to define the watershed area, percent of imperviousness, weighted curve number and the time of concentration. The hydrologist then uses the computer keyboard to type the parameters into the format required by the model.

The SCS curve number (CN) is described in Section 5.3.2.2 - Section 5.3.2.6. A number of widely used hydrologic models use the CN in Equation 5-17 and Equation 5-18 to compute the rainfall excess. The CN approach is simple enough to be easily understood. At the same time, the manual overlaying of the spatially distributed land covers and soil types to define a weighted watershed CN are sufficiently difficult to indicate the advantage of computer assistance when the drainage areas are large. Further, the manual operations with the paper maps and tables listing land cover and soil characteristics provide a good base for understanding the structure and operations with GIS files that are introduced in Section 11.3.1.2.

The watershed time of concentration is the sum of the travel times through the stream network and overland flow as computed with the equations of Section 2.6. The travel times through the drainage network will be estimated using equations that have been presented in earlier sections. These equations require that the hydrologist have information on the characteristics of the main stream and overland flow, as is the case with most physically based models.

The overland or sheet flow travel time, t_{ol}, is obtained with:

$$t_{ol} = \frac{2.782}{i^{0.4}} \left(\frac{nL}{\sqrt{S}} \right)^{0.6} \qquad \text{11-1}$$

presented earlier as Equation 2-1 and discussed in Section 2.6.2. The velocity method of Section 2.6.3, with Equation 2-2, Equation 2-3, and Equation 2-4 can also be used to estimate travel times for other parts of the principal flowpath. Travel time down the stream is estimated using the bank-full velocity obtained from the Manning equation:

$$V = \frac{1.0}{n} R_h^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

presented earlier as Equation 2-5 and discussed in Section 2.6.3.

Figure 11-3 illustrates minimum resources needed to define the parameters listed above. Figure 11-3A shows the watershed boundary and the flow network needed to define the area and time of concentration. Figure 11-3B is a plot of the "typical bank-full" stream cross-section that will be used to estimate the velocity in the stream as part of the time of concentration. Figure 11-3C and Figure 11-3D are maps showing the land cover and SCS Hydrologic Soil Groups for an area of 3660 meters by 2128 meters that surrounds the watershed. The land cover map could have been developed by overlaying a thin paper onto an aerial photograph and drawing polygons around areas having a given land cover. The map of hydrologic soils would have been developed using the county soil maps available from the SCS. Table 11-1, a simplification of Table 5-5 for the purposes of this problem, lists symbols that can be used to represent each land cover category that might be found in the vicinity of the watershed, the CN for each soil type and the percent of imperviousness. The CN and hydrologic soils are discussed in Section 5.3.2. The term ">3 DU/HA" refers to residential areas that have a density greater than 3 dwelling units per hectare and an average percent of imperviousness of 65 percent. Table 11-2 is a list of symbols that can be used to represent each of the four hydrologic soil groups. The last columns of Table 11-1 and Table 11-2, to be discussed in Section 11.3.1.2, control the assignment of colors when maps are developed by a computer.

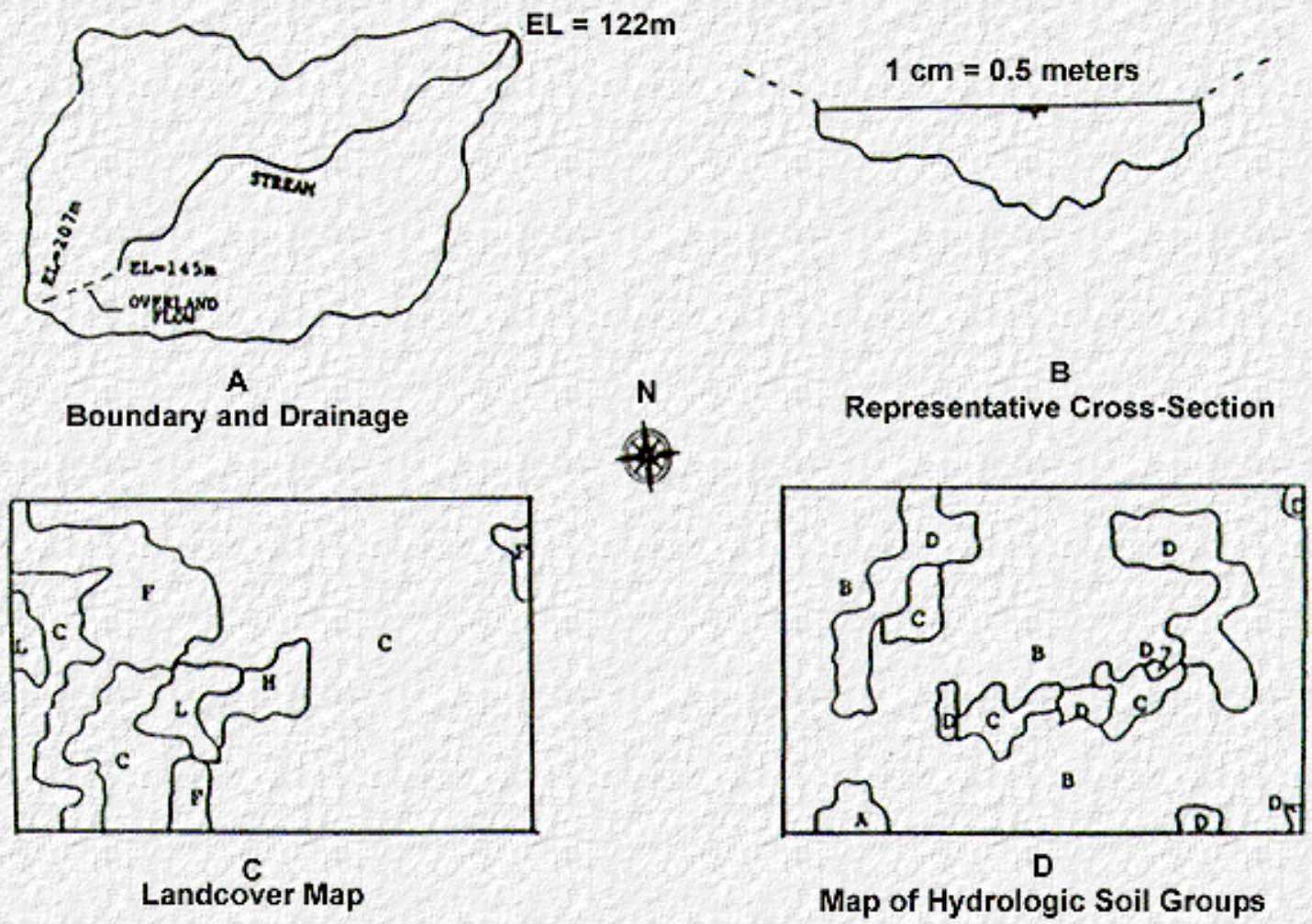


Figure 11-3. Minimum Information Requirements to Run an SCS Model

Table 11-1. Characteristics of Land Cover in Area of Interest

CURVE NUMBER								
LINE	CATEGORY	SYM	%IMP	A	B	C	D	Color
1	RESID(0.1-1 DU/HA)*	L	25	54	70	80	85	14
2	RESID(>1-3 DU/HA)	M	38	61	75	83	87	12
3	RESID(>3 DU/HA)	H	65	77	85	90	92	6
4	COMM/INDUSTRIAL	A	85	89	92	94	95	4
5	INSTITUTIONAL	I	72	81	88	91	93	5
6	FOREST	F	0	36	60	73	79	2
7	BRUSH	B	0	35	56	70	77	8
8	WATER	W	0	100	100	100	100	1
9	WETLANDS	X	0	100	100	100	100	9
10	BARE SOIL	U	0	77	86	91	94	15
11	CROPLAND	C	0	72	81	88	91	3
12	GRASS	G	0	49	69	79	84	10
13	SURFACE MINING	E	0	77	86	91	94	11
14	CROPLAND-B	@	0	77	86	91	94	7

15	R-30	#	90	90	94	95	97	6
16	RT-12%	%	70	78	88	93	94	5
17	C-2	$	90	88	92	95	96	4

*Dwelling Units per Hectare (DU/HA)

A mechanical planimeter could be used to determine the area of each land cover category or soil group within each of the polygons of Figure 11-3C and Figure 11-3D. An expedient approach is to overlay a grid as illustrated in Figure 11-4A and Figure 11-4B and assign the symbols of Table 11-1 and Table 11-2 to represent the dominant category within each cell. The number of cells in each category are then counted. The smaller the cell size, the closer will be the agreement with the areas obtained using the more accurate, but more time consuming planimetric approach.

The grid cell representation provides a relatively easy way to develop information required to model the watershed of Figure 11-3A. The grid cell representation of the watershed is illustrated by Figure 11-5A and Figure 11-5B. First, the number of cells within each land cover and soil category inside the watershed are counted and the resulting areas are presented in Table 11-3 and Table 11-4. The basin area is 500.69 hectares and the distributions provide an inventory for environmental impact analyses, etc.

Table 11-2. SCS Hydrologic Soil Groups

CATEGORY	SYMBOL	COLOR
Group A	A	14
Group B	B	2
Group C	C	4
Group D	D	8

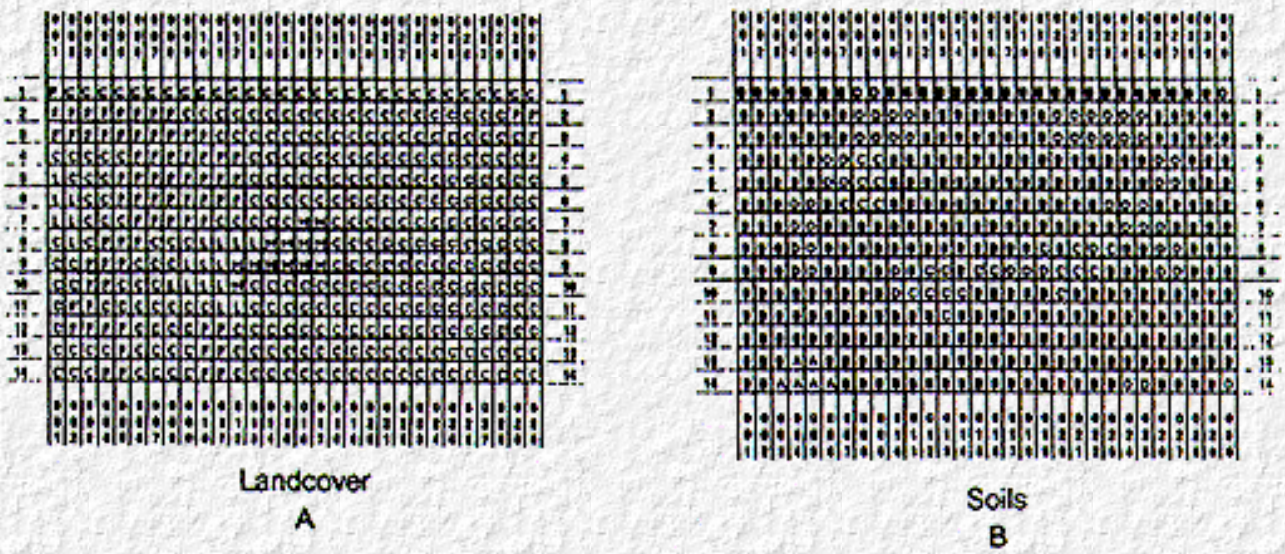
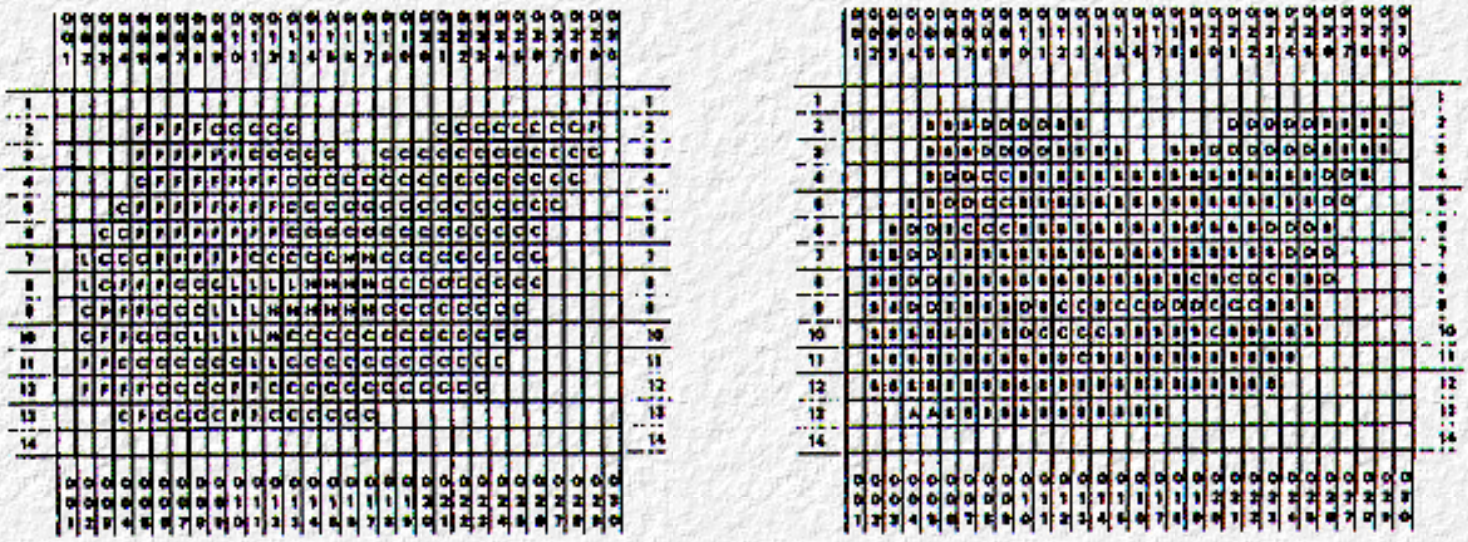


Figure 11-4. Grid Cell Representation of the Spatial Distribution of Landcover and Hydrologic Soil Groups



Landcover
A

Soils
B

Figure 11-5. Grid Cell Representation of Landcover and Hydrologic Soil Groups within a Watershed

Table 11-3. Summary of Land Cover Distribution in Watershed of Figure 11-3

SYM	CATEGORY	NUMBER of CELLS	HECTARES	PERCENT
L	RESID (.1-1DU/HA)	15	27.82	5.56
H	RESID (>3 DU/HA)	13	24.11	4.81
F	FOREST	58	107.56	21.48
C	CROPLAND	184	341.20	68.15
	TOTAL	**270**	**500.69**	**100.00**

Table 11-4. Summary of Hydrologic Soil Group Distribution in Watershed of Figure 11-3

SYMBOL	CATEGORY	NUMBER OF CELLS	HECTARES	PERCENT
A	GROUP A	2	3.71	0.74
B	GROUP B	197	365.32	72.96
C	GROUP C	23	42.65	8.52
D	GROUP D	48	89.01	17.78
	TOTAL	**270**	**500.69**	**100.00**

The distribution of the cells shown in Figure 11-5A and Figure 11-5B are used in conjunction with Table 11-1 and Table 11-2 to define the runoff curve number required by the SCS models. For example, Table 11-1 shows that the "F" representing the dominant land cover in cell (8,2) of Figure 11-5A is "Forest". Figure 11-5B shows the corresponding soil cell to be in the D

hydrologic group. Table 11-1 is then used to show that cell (8,2), an area of "Forest" on a "D Hydrologic Soil", has a curve number of 79. This overlay/ table look up process is extended for all cells within the boundary to estimate an average or "weighted" curve number for the watershed. Table 11-5 illustrates one approach that can be used to manage the cell counting process and Table 11-6 shows the computations to define the average curve number and percent of imperviousness.

The first step in determining the time of concentration is to consider the main stream. The length of the stream is measured on the map of Figure 11-3A and elevations determine the slope. Measurements of the cross section of Figure 11-3B provide the area of flow and the wetted perimeter needed to define the hydraulic radius, R_h, in the Manning Equation. A Manning roughness coefficient of n = 0.035 is estimated from field investigations. Equation 11-2 equation is solved for the velocity as:

$$V = \frac{1}{0.035}(0.49)^{2/3}(0.00833)^{1/2} = 1.62\ m/s \qquad 11\text{-}3$$

and the length, 2780 meters as measured on Figure 11-3A, is used to determine the time of flow down the main stream as:

$$t_{ch} = 2780/(60)(1.62) = 28.6\ minutes \qquad 11\text{-}4$$

The length of overland flow is measured on Figure 11.3A as 377 meters, the elevations define the slope as 26.4 percent, a Manning n = 0.4 is assumed and Equation 11-1 is solved for t_{ol}. As in many instances, assume that this particular jurisdiction has a design standard that limits the length of overland flow to 55 meters, regardless of what is measured on the map. Further, the rainfall intensity-duration frequency analyses outlined in Section 2.1.4 have to be interfaced to determine i = 6.3 cm/h. Thus, the time required for overland flow from Equation 11-1 is:

$$t_{ol} = \frac{2.782}{(6.3)^{.4}}\left[\frac{0.4(55)}{\sqrt{0.26}}\right]^{.6} = 12.7\ minutes \qquad 11\text{-}5$$

Table 11-5. Example of Type of Tabulation Used to Define Cell Counts for Curve Number Computation

LAND COVER CATEGORY	CELLS IN SOIL GROUP				TOTAL CELLS
	A	B	C	D	
RESID(0.1-1 DU/HA)	0	12	1	2	15
RESID(>3 DU/HA)	0	7	5	1	13
FOREST	1	37	7	13	58
CROPLAND	1	141	10	32	184
TOTAL					270

Table 11-6. Example of Weighted Curve Number Computation

LAND COVER CATEGORY	CELLS x CURVE NUMBER A B C D	PRODUCT
RESID(0.1-1 DU/HA)	12(70) + 1(80) + 2(85) =	1090
RESID(>3 DU/HA)	7(85) + 5(90) + 1(92) =	1137
FOREST	1(36) + 37(60) + 7(73) + 13(79) =	3794
CROPLAND	1(72) + 141(81) + 10(88) + 32(91) =	15285
TOTAL		21306
Weighted Curve Number = 21306/270 = 79 Percent Imperviousness 15(25) + 13(38) = 869/270 = 3.2%		

The time of flow down the channel is added to the overland flow time to get the time of concentration as:

$$t_c = 28.6 + 12.7 = 41.3 \text{ minutes} = 0.69 \text{ h} \qquad (11\text{-}6)$$

The final step is to arrange the watershed area, weighted curve number, time of concentration and the precipitation of interest into the required format for keyboard input to the model. Even this task can be frustrating because the format requirements of many models are quite cumbersome.

These are the steps used to model the watershed under existing conditions. With increasing frequency, the hydrologist must develop hydrographs for some proposed condition where new land covers have been built on parts of the watershed and all or some of the drainage network has been modified. If proposed conditions have to be modeled, the changes would be made on Figure 11-3A, Figure 11-3B, Figure 11-3C and Figure 11-5A and all the above steps repeated with little gain in efficiency.

11.3.1.2 Translation of Manual Approach into GIS Procedures

The map-based steps used to define the area, curve number and time of concentration are tedious even for this small watershed. Through GIS technologies, the steps described in Section 11.3.1.1 can be translated into equivalent digital procedures that can be executed in a fraction of the time required by conventional approaches. Some of the pertinent GIS concepts will now be explored by translating the map-based approaches described above into digital files and file operations.

In the example, the spatial distributions of the land cover and soil databases were represented and analyzed as the arrays of grid cells shown in Figure 11-4A and Figure 11-4B. When this grid cell representation is translated into a digital format for use in a GIS, it is termed a "raster data structure" or a raster file. If the symbols of Figure 11-4A and Figure 11-4B were entered line by line into the computer from a keyboard, a matrix with 30 columns and 14 lines would be created. Each symbol would represent the dominant land cover or soil category in the rectangular area located at the indicated column/line. It should be noted that, while keyboard entry of symbols to create a raster format file is practical in this simple case, it is too time consuming and subject

to error to be used routinely for the development of large raster databases. Digitizing tables or scanning techniques discussed in Section 11.4.1.3 would normally be used.

Typically, a raster file will store hundreds of rows and columns. If the map coordinates of the northwest corner cell are stored with the database, the coordinates of all cells are easily computed. Another feature of the GIS raster file structure is that it is "random access" - meaning that it can go directly to a window defined by the coordinates of the local northwest and southeast corner cells and operate on the cells within that window. In a random access file, each row is a "record" and each cell is a "field" in the record. The random access capability is critical to efficient operations in hydrologic modeling. If, for example, the raster array covers an entire county, the data for a small watershed can be accessed quickly by defining the coordinates of the window surrounding the boundary. Without the random access feature, the search for the watershed would start at the northwest corner cell of the county and progress line by line, column by column until the appropriate cells are located - a slow process even on a fast computer.

In performing the tasks involving Figure 11-5A and Figure 11-5B, the first step was to note the symbol for each cell. Table 11-1 and Table 11-2 were then used to determine the category the cell represented and to assign percents of imperviousness and a curve number. In a GIS, the digital equivalents of Table 11-1 and Table 11-2 are called "attribute files". As in the manual example, attribute files assign properties to symbols in the raster database. For example, if the symbol "H" is accessed in the land cover raster database, the attribute file of the form of Table 11-1 is accessed to identify the cell as "RESID(>3DU/HA)" with an imperviousness of 65 percent.

Another important task in GIS is to produce color maps. The color screen of a personal computer or workstation is an array of picture elements, or "pixels", distributed in essentially the same format as Figure 11-4A and Figure 11-4B. The basic procedure in developing a color display of the raster equivalent of Figure 11-4A is for the software to access the symbol at a given cell location. The location of the corresponding screen pixel is identified and the last column of the attribute equivalent of Table 11-1 is accessed to define the color to be displayed. If, for example, a cell is identified as "F", the numerical color in the attribute file of Table 11-1 is "2", which is the code for green. Thus, the appropriate screen pixel is displayed green. The size of the screen display can be enlarged by displaying a box of pixels, rather than a single pixel, to represent the location of the cell. Screen capture software can then pick up the display and print it on a color or black/white printer. Also, a file of the displayed image can be produced for use in the organization's CAD system or for further processing so it can be incorporated with text and published in a report.

In the context of this example, the hydrologic GIS is designed to duplicate the steps that would normally be performed manually, but with much more speed and quality control. Overlaying the cells of a raster data plane onto the

corresponding cells of one or several other data planes and then performing table lookups in the attribute files to define information such as a curve number is a major capability of a GIS. In a typical step, column 8 on row 2 of the raster equivalent of Figure 11-5A is overlaid onto the corresponding location on the equivalent file of Figure 11-5B. The match is "F" land cover on a "D" soil. The attribute file representing Table 11-1 is then accessed to assign a CN=79 to the cell in the same manner as in the manual approach described in Section 11.3.1.1.

A simple extension of overlaying operations to define a specific quantity, such as the CN, is the "logical overlay." The logical overlay involves finding those areas where a specific set of conditions occur together. For example, the land cover and soil data planes could be overlaid to locate all areas that are forest on a C hydrologic soil. A hydrologic GIS needs this logical overlay capability to support parallel issues such as environmental impact studies, sediment control programs, etc.

It is important to note that the raster format is only one approach to representing the spatial distribution of the land cover and soil categories 11-3C and 11-3D. A number of GIS packages maintain the data in a vector format that retains the polygons of Figure 11-3C and Figure 11-3D. The emphasis of this discussion is on the raster format because, at the present time, many of the file operations required for hydrologic modeling are more efficient with the raster than with the polygon formats. However, the vector format polygon files are generally more powerful for the display of maps and determining areas, especially when a single data plane is involved.

In the manual approach of Section 11.3.1.1, the watershed boundary was drawn and visual inspection selected the cells that were inside. In the GIS environment, points are digitized with the cursor of a digitizing table to define a string of vector segments that would close into a polygon representing the boundary. The GIS software would then implement "region growing" to isolate the cells within the polygon. In one region growing approach, a new "binary mask" raster file containing the cells within a window surrounding the boundary is generated. The region growing procedure assigns all cells inside the boundary a "1" and all cells outside a "0" or a blank as illustrated in Figure 11-6. The watershed curve number is then computed by overlaying the files representing Figure 11-6, Figure 11-4A and Figure 11-4B. Those cells under a "1" are included in the computations and those not under a "1" are excluded.

In the manual approach, the lengths of the stream and overland flow plane were measured on Figure 11-3A. A hydrologic GIS is configured to allow these elements to be entered with the cursor of the digitizing table. Sufficient points are digitized along the stream and overland flow path to define files that store coordinates of vector segments that are interfaced with the map scale to compute the lengths. The elevations required for the slopes and the Manning roughness coefficients are entered with the keyboard or buttons on the digitizer cursor in response to prompts on the computer screen. The GIS must have a module to manage the digitizing and computation of the hydraulic

radius of the bank-full cross-section of Figure 11-3B. There must also be a prompt to allow the hydrologist to enter special conditions, such as the local jurisdiction regulations that limit the overland flow length used in Equation 11-1 to a maximum of 55 meters. The files containing these data are then be entered into a module that solves Equation 11-3 through Equation 11-6 to give the time of concentration.

After these inputs are provided by the hydrologist, the GIS software places the watershed area, weighted curve number and time of concentration into a file formatted for entry into the hydrologic model being supported.

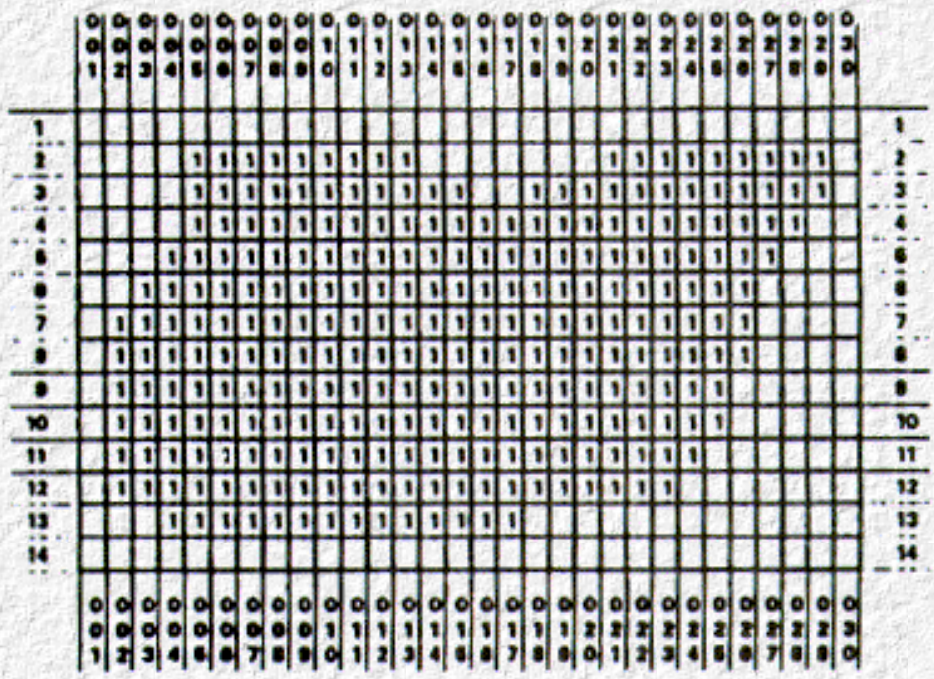


Figure 11-6. Binary Mask Developed through Region Growing to Isolate Watershed from Database

---

11.3.2 GIS Requirements for the Modeling of a Complex Watershed

The example of Section 11.3.1 was kept simple so that the similarity between the map-based and GIS approaches could be established with a minimum of confusion. Indeed, most of today's engineering graduates could write a computer program in either FORTRAN or QuickBasic that would perform all the tasks outlined in Section 11.3.1.2 and, thereby, produce a GIS that could support parameter definition when a single watershed is involved.

At this point the complexity of the modeling task is expanded to the case where the watershed of Figure 11-3A is Subwatershed 8 in the basin represented by Figure 11-7A. The drainage area of the watershed shown in Figure 11-7A is 131 km^2. In a watershed of this size, travel time and floodplain storage in the stream network will have a major impact on the hydrograph at the watershed outlet. The role of the stream system is simulated by routing the hydrographs from each subwatershed through the network shown in Figure

11-7B using one of the routing techniques presented in Chapter 7. As stated earlier, the computational intensity of these tasks lead hydrologists to rely on computer models such as the SCS TR-20, HEC-1 and the modules of FHWA HYDRAIN. The use of GIS to support the hydrologic modeling of complex watersheds, such as the one in this section, is discussed by Ragan (1991).

As an additional requirement, assume that the watershed of Figure 11-7A and Figure 11-7B has to be modeled for both the existing and proposed land cover distributions shown in Figure 11-8A and Figure 11-8B. When an organization is using a GIS to support the modeling of watersheds throughout its area of jurisdiction, the land cover/curve number attribute table is probably more like Table 5-5 than Table 11-1. Two situations typically occur in hydrologic modeling. First, field investigations may reveal that there are areas in the watershed that are different from any of the categories in the attribute table that has been prepared for general use. Second, modeling future conditions is frequently based on local zoning categories rather than the names of land cover categories that appear in the attribute files. Thus, the GIS must allow the attribute files, digital equivalents of Table 11-1 or Table 5-5, to be easily edited so that new land cover and zoning categories can be added or deleted for use on a particular watershed. In the case illustrated by Figure 11-8A and Figure 11-8B, a "CROPLAND-B" has been to be added to improve the representation of the existing land cover and three zoning categories added to describe the anticipated future development.

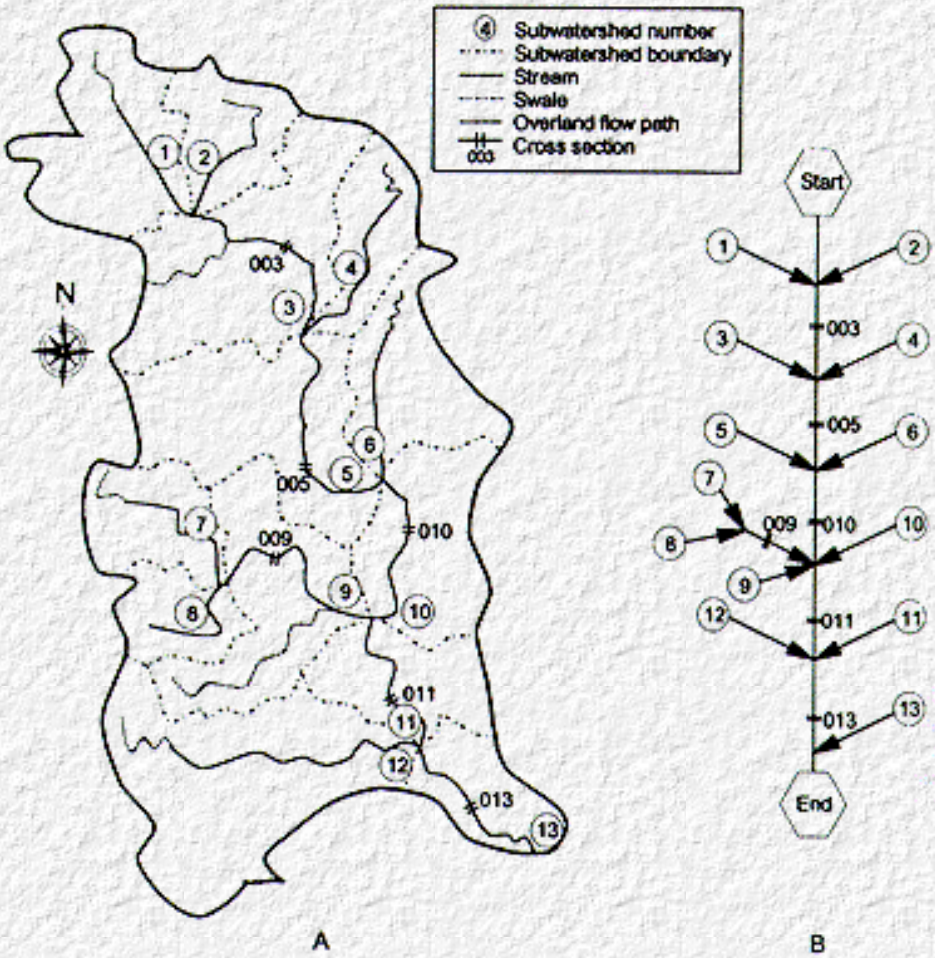


Figure 11-7. Distribution of Subwatersheds and Network Representation of a Complex River Basin

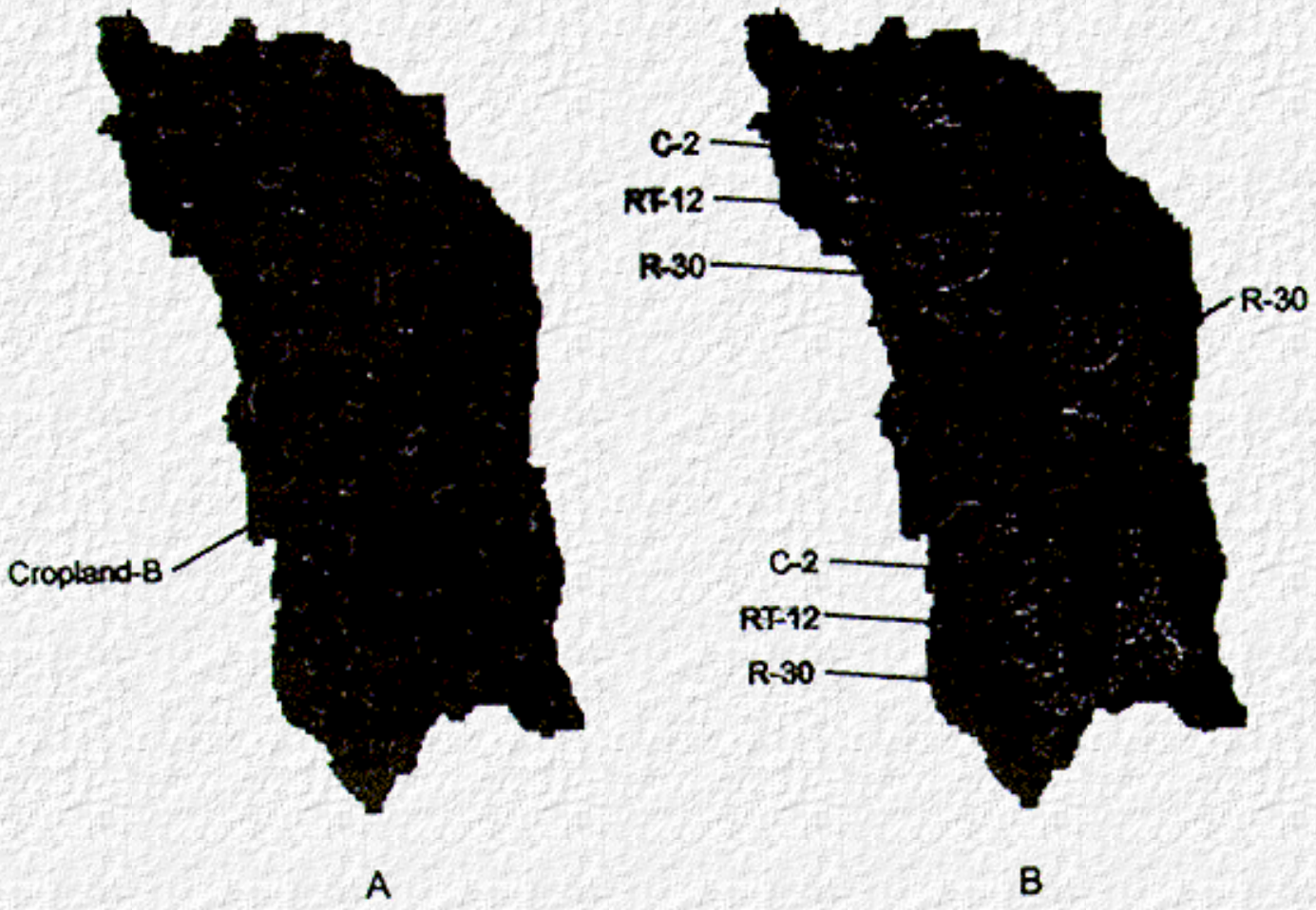


Figure 11-8. Existing and Ultimate Development Landcover Distribution in a Complex Watershed

In defining the input parameters needed to model the watershed of Figure 11-7, the steps described in Section 11.3.1.2 are followed to determine the drainage area, curve number and time of concentration for each of the 13 subwatersheds for both existing and proposed conditions. To accomplish this, the GIS provides screen prompts to guide the digitizing of the boundary of the main watershed. The area to be changed to "CROPLAND-B" for existing conditions is digitized. The GIS then generates a raster database of the form of Figure 11-5A to represent the field verified existing condition. The process is repeated as the areas that are being rezoned for future development are digitized. A second raster database that stores the land cover distribution of Figure 11-8B is then generated to support the definition of parameters used to model the watershed under future conditions.

The next series of prompts guides the hydrologist through the digitizing of the line segments that define the boundary of subwatershed number 1 on Figure 11-7A. The existing and future land cover cells enclosed by the subwatershed boundary defines the curve numbers. Conditions along the flow path, including the bank-full cross-section of the tributary, are digitized as described in Section 11.3.1.2 and used to define the

subwatershed time of concentration. These local parameters, required to compute the subwatershed hydrograph, are then put into a file. The process is repeated until the model parameters for all thirteen subwatersheds have been completed and stored in a file.

The next step is for the GIS to assist in setting up the data that defines the stream network that will control the flood routing. Prompts will guide the digitizing of the stream segments, the location of the junctions and a sufficient number of elevations to define the slopes of each routing reach. The stream junctions will correspond to the outlet locations of the subwatersheds, thus, points where the subwatershed hydrographs will be combined.

The bank-full stream cross-sections and a Manning roughness coefficient are used to determine the velocities needed for the time of concentration. The flood routing component of the modeling requires complete cross-sections along with channel, left overbank and right overbank roughness coefficients. The GIS can be configured to accept the cross-sections from survey notes, plots or through interpolation along digitized contours. In the example of Figure 11-7, most routing techniques require the cross-section data to be translated into some form of stage-discharge tables for cross-sections 003, 005, 009, 010, 011 and 013. Thus, the developer of a hydrologic GIS must anticipate the need to provide a module that generates the stage-discharge tables and then puts them into a file that is formatted for use by the model.

When dealing with a watershed of the complexity of Figure 11-7, the computation and merging of the subwatershed hydrographs and routing through the stream network usually involves the use of computer models such as the SCS TR-20 or HEC-1. The input file required by the model must not only define the model parameters, but also, the linking and routing processes illustrated by Figure 11-7B. Thus, the protocols in setting up the input files for a model such as the SCS TR-20 or HEC-1 are stringent. The well-designed GIS should incorporate "network analysis" that uses the digitized stream segments and junctions to automatically set-up the input file that will cause the model to be executed in accordance with the watershed schematic of Figure 11-7B.

11.3.3 Summary

The flexibility described in the previous paragraphs is mandatory in a hydrologic GIS. If the GIS cannot duplicate the tasks that the hydrologist performs in a conventional map-based approach, it is not going to meet the modeling requirements. Most of the generic, off-the-shelf GIS will require considerable modification to provide the capabilities outlined in the above paragraphs.

11.4 Implementation Issues

11.4.1 The Database

11.4.1.1 Storage and Resolution

A state or county highway department may conduct modeling studies such as those presented in Section 11.3 many times during a year. One project may be in one part of the jurisdiction while the next will be in another area. If the watershed sizes are above some minimum and the objectives of the modeling efforts are similar from one project to the next, the optimal approach is to develop a jurisdiction-wide database that will be maintained and immediately available on the hard disk of the workstation. In a map-based approach, the hydrologist goes to storage cabinets to obtain the topographic maps, aerial photos or land cover maps and the soil maps. With the data available on the hard disk of the workstation, the hydrologist would simply use the mouse to point to the data to be retrieved.

Figure 11-9 illustrates the concept of a hydrologic GIS designed for use by a state highway department. This is the Maryland State Highway Administration's Geographic Information System for Hydrologic Analysis (GISHYDRO) described by Ragan (1991). Land cover, hydrologic soil type and slope databases were developed for the entire state and are stored on the hard disks of personal computer workstations configured as shown in Figure 11-2. The objective is to use the keyboard and digitizing table to select an area anywhere in the state, define a watershed structure such as that illustrated by Figure 11-7, and immediately assemble the required data.

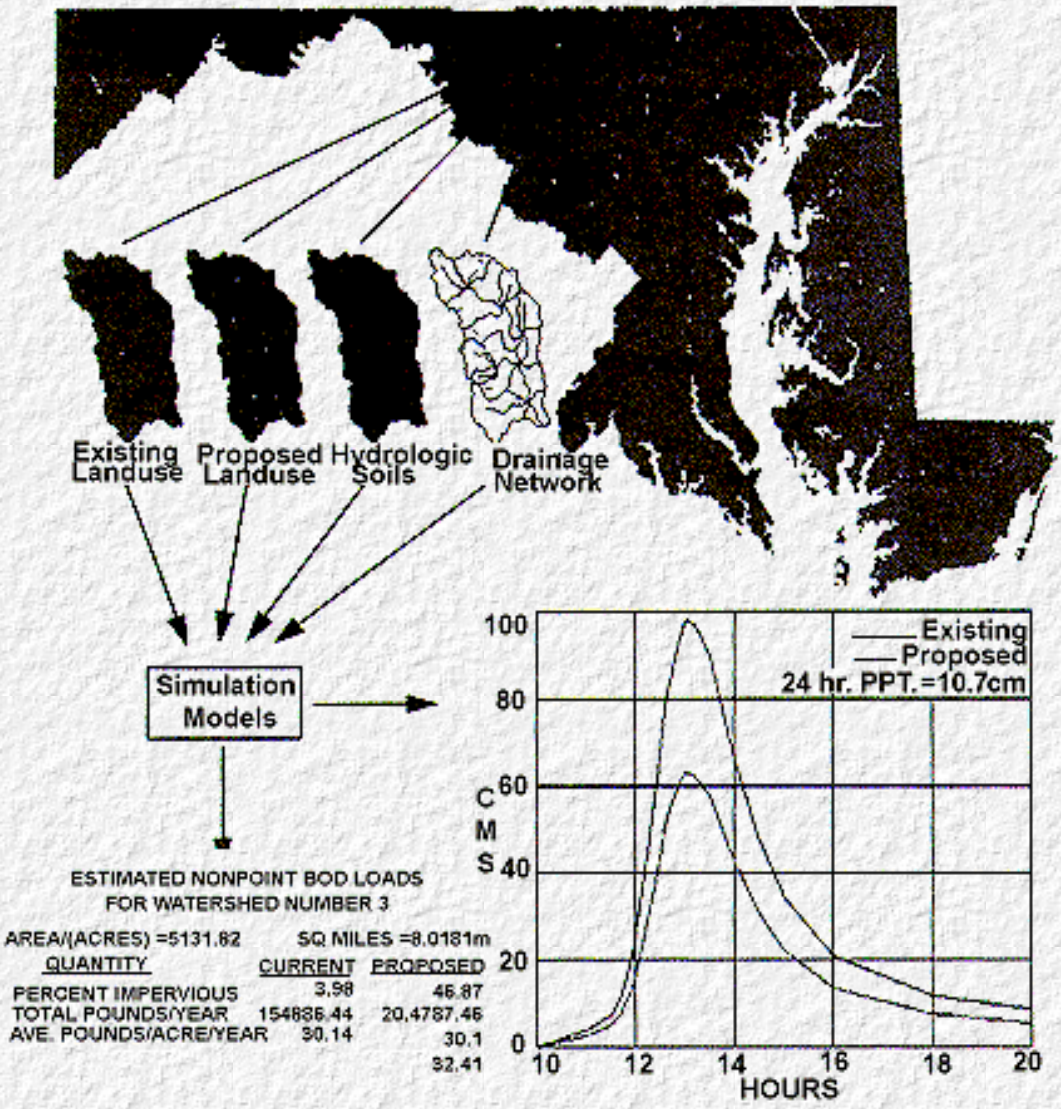


Figure 11-9. Overview of Watershed Definition and Modeling Using a Statewide Database

The hydrologic database, especially if it is to support a GIS that will be used anywhere in a state, can be very large. Even with the efficiencies of today's workstations, a large database must be properly structured if it is to be quickly accessed and easily maintained. A watershed modeling project, such as that of Figure 11-7, is typically referenced by the county or counties involved and the USGS quad sheets that define the boundary. Thus, it is appropriate to name the data files with the same names as the USGS quad sheets and then store these files in directories named for the counties. This hierarchical storage structure is illustrated by Figure 11-10. In this approach, if the hydrologist is going to use the data referenced by a particular USGS quad sheet, it is a two-step process in which he or she uses the mouse to point to the county name and then the quad name. Without such a structure, the GIS would have to search the whole state to find a particular location.

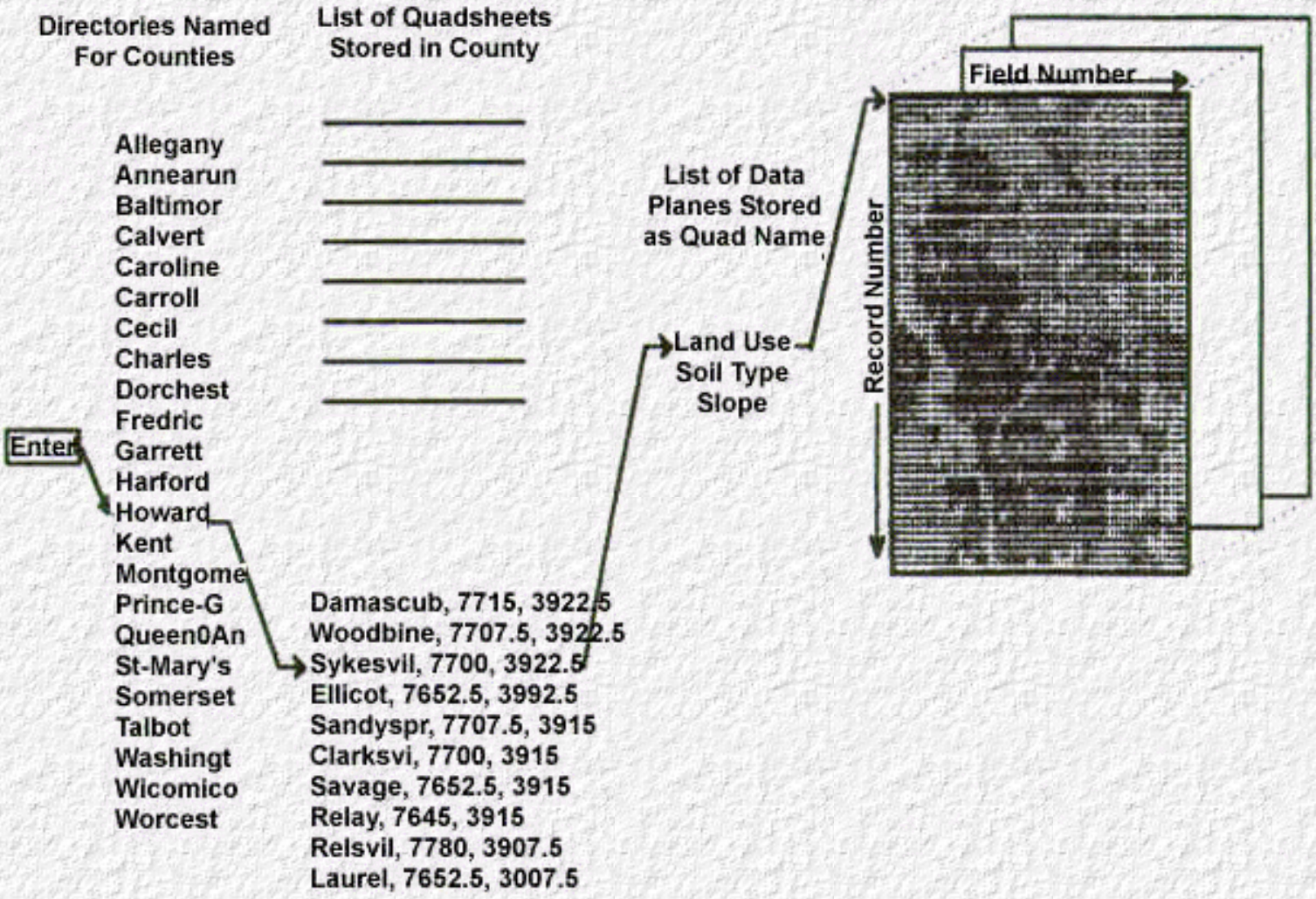


Figure 11-10. Example of a Detailed Landcover Distribution Required for the Modeling of a Very Small Watershed

One of the first issues to be brought up when GIS is discussed is the cost of the database. There is a general impression that the database must always be very expensive. Obviously, the cost is going to be significant, but, it can be controlled. First a highway department should not attempt to develop a jurisdiction-wide database that is going to meet all of their hydrologic modeling needs. The cost of a state-wide database that would support the modeling of very small watersheds such as the 2.5 hectare basin shown in Figure 11-11 would probably be prohibitive. Modeling very small watersheds with a high quality model can require the location of each building, road, parking lot and storm sewer along with a detailed description of the soil distribution.

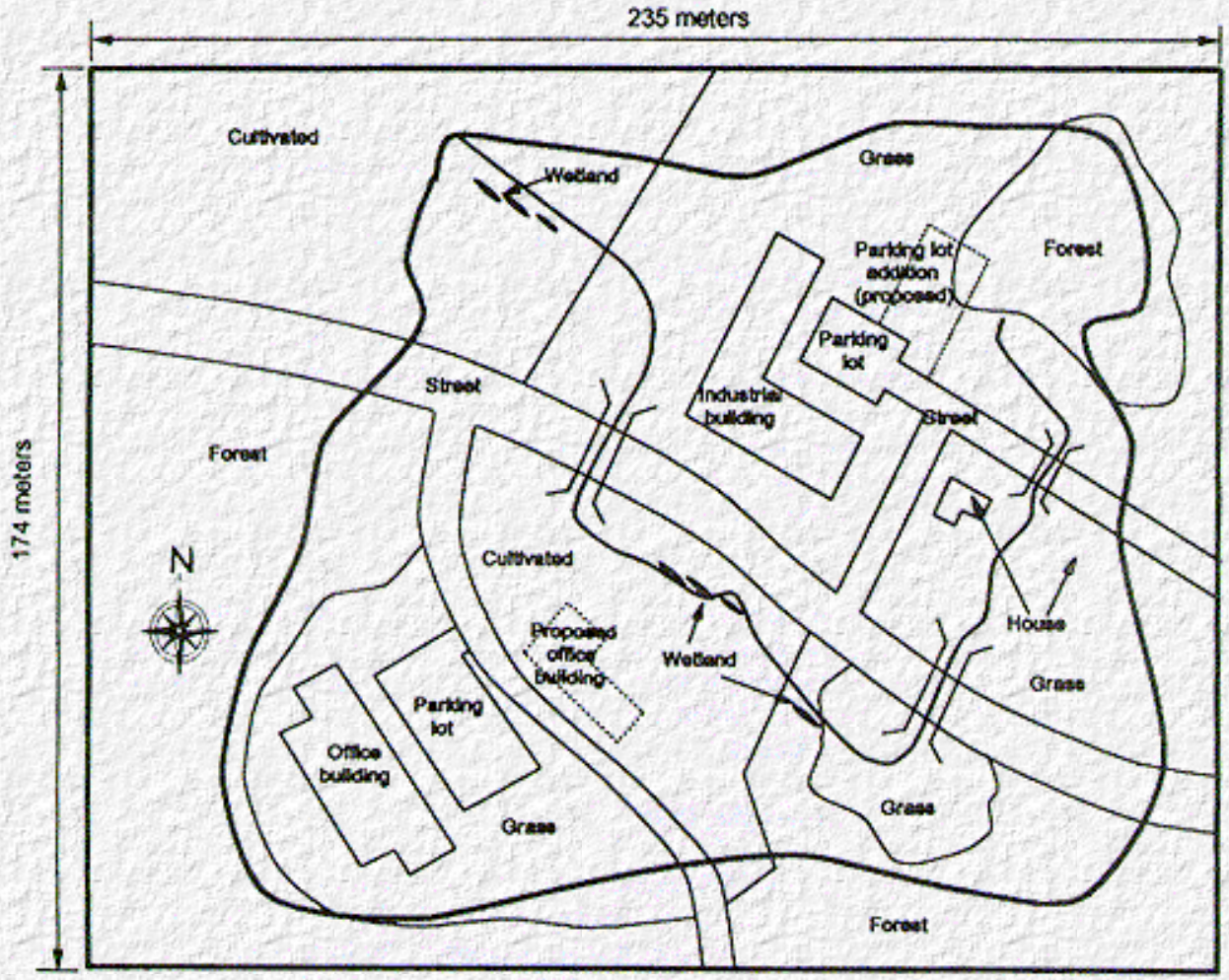


Figure 11-11. County/USGS Quadsheet Based Hierarchical Data Storage for a State-Wide GIS

Modeling the watersheds of Section 11.3 when their areas are larger than around 60 hectares can be accomplished with the more general land cover categories such as those in Table 11-1 stored as an array of 1.86 hectare cells in a raster format Ragan (1991). Such a database can be developed at a reasonable cost. Thus, a practical approach is to select a lower limit on the size of a watershed to be modeled and build a jurisdiction-wide, on-line database to support that task. The GIS is then designed to allow the hydrologist to develop high resolution, local databases to support the modeling on special projects, such as the watershed Illustrated by Figure 11-11, on a case by case basis. GISHYDRO allows the use of either a digitizing table or a desktop scanner to generate the raster format landcover and soil files when small watersheds are involved.

It is not necessary to store land cover in cells that represent an area of one hectare if they can be stored in five hectare cells without changing a parameter beyond some acceptable, predetermined limit. In general, relatively large cells can be used to represent the spatial distribution of land cover in the agricultural fields of the great plains, but, much smaller cells would have to be used to adequately describe a suburban area. The resolution, or cell size, of the raster database should be defined through pilot studies. The GIS

developers should be provided with land cover and soil maps of several areas that are representative of those that will be modeled. Sensitivity studies would then be conducted to gain insight into the consequences of changing the size of the data cell.

Figure 11-12 indicates how a sensitivity study could be conducted. In this case, three different land/soil complexes were involved. The problem is to define how much a curve number is changed as the size of the data cells is increased from 30 to 60 to 120 to 210 to 300 meters. The objective is to use the largest possible cell size to minimize database development and operation costs. If the database covers an area having a land cover distribution similar to Distribution I, then the data cell could be increased from 30 meters to 210 meters and only change the curve number by 5 percent for a watershed of 1.5 km^2. If land cover distribution II were involved, 210-meter data cells would give curve numbers for a 1.5 km^2 watershed that differed from that obtained with a 30-meter cell by approximately 12 percent. For Distribution III, the difference would be about 23 percent.

If the data are to be stored in a vector rather than a raster format, a similar sensitivity study is required. Instead of testing for the minimum cell size, the quest is for the "minimum mapping unit", the smallest polygon storing data. The minimum mapping unit is important because many county land cover maps and government distributed databases are specified in terms of this unit.

The hydrologist needs the results of the pilot studies to make a decision that balances the requirements of the parameter estimates with the economics of database development and management. If the modeling objectives can be met with a 120-meter database, the hydrologist will be developing and working with one-sixteenth the data that would be involved with a 30-meter database. Unfortunately, the GIS community can only provide the information illustrated by Figure 11-12 through pilot studies.

11.4.1.2 Sources of Digital Format Geographic Data

Generally, the most expedient approach to the development of a GIS database is to obtain data that is already in a map referenced digital format. Thus, a first step in the development of a database should be to contact agencies in the region to determine if they are using GIS databases that are appropriate for hydrologic modeling. Converting an existing database into the format required by a particular GIS is not usually a major problem.

If it is not possible to modify an existing GIS database to meet the requirements of hydrologic modeling, there are a number of digital format data products that can be used. The federal government can be an excellent source of digital format data that can be integrated into a GIS. This section discusses some of the most widely used digital format data.

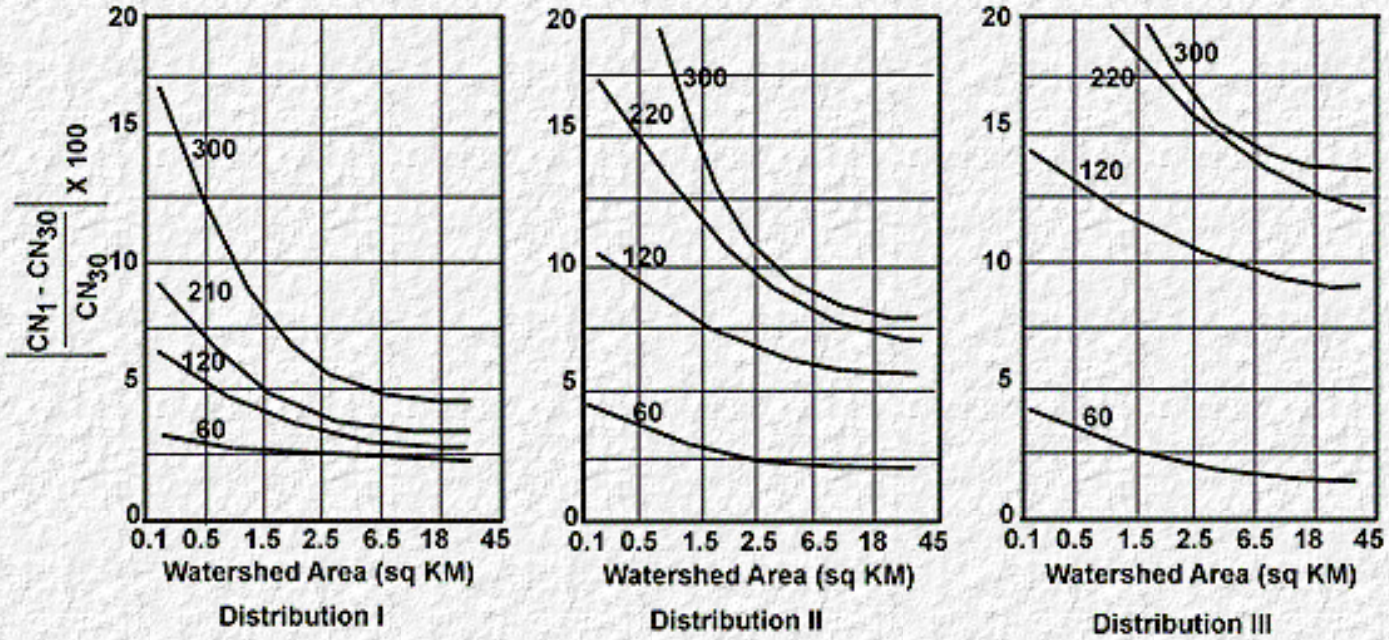


Figure 11-12. Plots Showing the Absolute Change in the Curve Number Estimation as the Size of the Grid Cell Is Increased above 30 Meters (Three Landcover Soil Complexes)

The USGS distributes digital land cover and land use at scales of 1:100,000 or 1:250,000. There are 37 land use and land cover categories stored as polygons as small as 4 hectares - the minimum mapping unit. The files also contain political boundaries, hydrologic units and federal/state land ownership information.

Satellite imagery is an important resource for the development of a land cover database. The 10-20 meter resolution French SPOT and 30 meter U.S. Landsat systems are the most widely used. Imagery from these satellites are available in either photographic or digital formats. Photographic interpretation of 10 meter SPOT or 30 meter Landsat photographic products, especially if they are in color, is often a realistic approach to define land cover distributions. If digital format satellite imagery is to be the source, the hydrologist must ensure that the supplier of the land cover data is experienced and well-equipped in image processing.

The USGS digital line graph (DLG) data are digital representations of the cartographic information on topographic quadrangle maps. DLG data are available in nine categories that provide digital representations of features such as streams, wetlands, vegetative cover, buildings and transportation networks.

The USGS digital elevation model (DEM) data, an array of regularly spaced elevations, will find increasing applications in hydrologic modeling. DEM data in 7.5 minute units are spaced at 30 meters while the 1-degree units are spaced at 3 arc seconds. There is a great deal of interest in the DEM data because modeling techniques are emerging that allow the hydrologist to simply digitize a point on a stream and then "grow" the watershed boundary, synthesize the details of the drainage network, and generate dine-area curve

unit hydrographs. care must be exercised when using the watershed "growing" capabilities of the DEM. The accuracy of automatic watershed delineation with a DEM decays significantly as the number of elevation points inside a watershed boundary decrease.

The SCS of the U.S. Department of Agriculture is the primary source of data concerning soils. The SCS is developing computerized databases to integrate soil map information with other data in geographic information systems. These digital format databases are being developed at three levels of detail with the Soil Survey Geographic Database (SSURGO) being the most appropriate for hydrologic modeling associated with highway drainage structures. SSURGO is not available for all counties in the United States. The availability of SSURGO and other levels of SCS digital soil data within a region of interest can be determined by contacting the respective SCS state office..

The U.S. Bureau of the Census provides several digital products that can be of value in a hydrologic GIS. The TIGER/Line files (Topological Integrated Geographically Encoding and Referencing) can be used to plot streams and roads. The TIGER files used in conjunction with the Bureau's socio-economic data can provide important information for hydrologic modeling on urbanizing watersheds.

Many of the federal digital format data products, such as the USGS land use/land cover, can be downloaded through the Internet. There are also a number of "value added companies that sell geographic databases that cover a state, county or other political unit. The nucleus of these databases is typically one of the federal products described in this section. The company may add data to better reflect existing local conditions, reformat files for easier use, provide software to improve access to the data, and provide technical assistance.

11.4.1.3 Digitizing Paper Format Data Sources

If the source of data is paper format, there are three approaches to translating the data into a digital format. For a one-time GIS project on a small area such as that described in Section 11.3.1.2, cell by cell keyboard entry is a reasonable approach. In the keyboard entry approach, a transparent grid is overlaid onto the map and the dominant category in each cell is typed and each line is stored as a record.

Larger areas are translated into digital format with either a digitizing table or an optical scanner. The digitizing table has been the "standard" for many years. In this approach, the technician traces lines with the cursor. Software then translates the digitizer inputs into the required GIS formats. Optical scanners are becoming more readily available and inexpensive. In a scanner approach, the paper product is placed on a glass stage and a light source transfers the image into a computer workstation. A technician interacts through screen prompts with software that translates the image into the GIS formats. The scanner is generally faster than the digitizing table and less

subject to operator error. However, the technical skills required to support the scanner are much higher than with the digitizing table. The Maryland State Highway Administration's GIS used a scanner to develop the land cover database and a digitizing table to develop the soils. A discussion of the issues that defined these two approaches is presented by Ragan (1991).

The county soil maps published by the U.S. Department of Agriculture SCS is the usual paper format source of soil data. These maps can usually be obtained from the state offices of the SCS.

The soil maps provide an appropriate point to discuss the problem of getting one data plane, such as the soils to overlay in the right location on a second data plane such as the land cover. Many of the data sets to be used as sources are of different scales and some are distorted. As an example, many of the county soil maps were produced some years ago with the soil boundaries drawn on uncontrolled photomosaics. Although the nominal scale is shown on the map sheet, many are not geometrically correct. Thus, all of the soil boundaries will not correctly overlay on the land cover unless the two data planes are "registered" and "geometrically corrected" during the digitizing process. Usually, the registering and geometric corrections are made by locating ground control points,. features such as road intersections, that can be found on both of the maps that are to be overlaid. The coordinates of the ground control points are then used to develop regression equations that correct the digitized boundaries so that he overlays are correct. Geometric corrections discussed in the material cited in Section 11.2.3.

11.4.2 Relations with the GIS Implementation Team

In Section 11.1.2 it was suggested that the steps leading to the adoption of a GIS to support hydrologic modeling should be managed by an implementation team. The team membership is a balance between individuals selected for their expertise as GIS specialists and the hydrologists who will be using the system. Scenarios similar to those presented in the previous sections can be used to guide the installation.

The implementation team should provide periodic work sessions for the future users during the development phase. As components are developed to the point where they will operate, these work sessions will test the performance and define changes that need to be made before formal delivery of the system. These work sessions will not only ensure a better system, but they will also be educating members of the hydrology user group in GIS procedures as the system evolves.

The importance of formal training upon delivery cannot be over emphasized. The GIS specialists and hydrologists must work together to develop extensive hands-on training using problems that are representative of those to be encountered. A portion of the training must focus on the structure of the system so opportunities for future expansion or new applications can be recognized.

Finally, the implementation team relationship between the hydrologists and the GIS specialists should continue after the formal acceptance of the package. This is to allow continued improvement. When the package is initially delivered, the hydrologists who will use the system will have only a limited appreciation of its capabilities. The new GIS supported approaches to tasks may, at first, seem very efficient. After the hydrologists have been using the system for some period of time, they will then be able to use their experience and their increasing understanding of GIS to recommend approaches that were not thought of during the work sessions held in the development phase.

11.5 Conclusion

A well-designed GIS can be a valuable tool to support hydrologic analyses. GIS allows the use of models that were impractical in the past because of the difficulties in defining and managing the required data. By letting the computer perform the tedious, time-consuming map measurements and overlay manipulations, tremendous efficiencies can be gained in the use of the models. If properly programmed, the GIS will perform all the steps the same way, every time, exactly as model manuals prescribe. Thus, quality control is improved at the same time the organization is making better use of its personnel. Instead of spending much of the project time defining the input parameters to the model, the GIS allows the hydrologist to spend more time using the models to interpret results and explore alternative solutions. Some of the benefits that can be expected from GIS supported hydrologic analyses are presented in Table 11-7. The objective of a hydrologic GIS should not be to model more watersheds per unit of time with fewer people. The objective should be to optimize the quality of an analysis by using efficient information management to support the best models available.

Table 11-7. Benefits of GIS-Based Hydrologic Modeling

Dependable Parameter Definition
Consistent use of Models by all Personnel
Opportunity to Explore More Options
Structure Configurations
Structure Locations
Watershed Conditions
Examine Results Produced by Different Models
Better Use of Professional Personnel
Better Base for Communications
User Organization with Consultants
User Organization with Regulatory Agencies
Internal Briefings & Discussions
Public Hearings
Information Resource for Other Applications

Go to Table of Contents

GLOSSARY

Abstractions: Parts of the total rainfall that do not contribute to direct runoff, including rainfall intercepted by vegetation, rain water stored in depressions, and water that enters the watershed surface and remains beyond the duration of the storm.

Accuracy: The closeness of a statistic or measurements to the true value. It incorporates both bias and precision.

Alluvial: Soil and rock material deposited from flowing water.

Analysis: A term that means "to break apart" and that is applied to methods used to break down hydrologic data in order to develop a hydrologic model or design method (see synthesis).

Annual maximum discharge: The largest instantaneous peak discharge in a year.

Antecedent moisture: Water stored in the watershed prior to the start of rainfall.

Attribute File: A computer file that assigns descriptive characteristics to map or georeferenced features. For example, a symbol might be plotted on a computer screen to show the location of a land cover feature. The attribute file would define characteristics such as the land cover type and percent of imperviousness represented by the symbol.

Autocorrection: The degree of association between values in a time or space series, such as the annual maximum flood series. Watershed changes, such as urbanization, can cause autocorrected flood series.

Bankful discharge rate: The discharge rate when streamflow just overflows its natural banks.

Baseflow: Streamflow arising from the depletion of ground water storage.

Basin development factor: An index of urbanization that accounts for channel improvements, channel lining, storm drains or sewers, and curb-and-guttered streets.

Bias: A systematic error in a statistic or in measurements. A negative bias indicates underpredicition, and a positive bias indicates systematic overprediction.

Binomial distribution: A probability mass function used in hydrologic risk studies. The discrete distribution is based on four assumptions: (1) there are n occurrences, or trials, of the random variable; (2) the n trials are independent; (3) there are only two possible outcomes for each trial; and (4) the probability of the outcomes is constant from trial to trial.

Calibration: The process of deriving optimum values of model coefficients using measured data. Optimality is based on some goodness-of-fit criterion function. Fitting a model using least squares regression is an example of a calibration method.

Celerity: Propagation speed of a flood wave.

Census Tract: A geographic area bounded by street segments, streams or other linear features that has been established for using the statistical data provided by the US Bureau of Census.

Channel routing: Mathematical relations used to calculate outflow from a stream channel.

Coefficient of variation: The ratio of the standard deviation to the mean. This dimensionless parameter is abbreviated C_v.

Computer Aided Design (CAD): A automated system to support design, drafting and the display of graphically oriented information.

Confidence Coefficient: A measure of the certainty with which a statement is made. It is often set equal to one minus the level of significance.

Confidence limits: Statistical limits that define an interval in which the true value of a statistic is expected to lie.

Confluence: The location where two rivers join.

Continuity equation: Based on the continuity of mass, the continuity equation states that for incompressible flow the discharge rate equals the product of the flow velocity and the cross-sectional area.

Control section: A stream cross section where the discharge rate is uniquely determined by the depth of flow immediately upstream.

Convolution: The multiplication-translation-addition process used to route a rainfall-excess hyetograph using the unit hydrograph as the routing model.

Correlation coefficient: An index that represents the combined effects of soil characteristics, the land cover, the hydrologic condition, and antecedent soil moisture conditions.

Critical velocity: The velocity where streamflow passed from turbulent to laminar conditions or from laminar to turbulent conditions.

Culvert: An open channel used primarily to convey flow under highways, railroad embankments, or runways.

Curve number: An index that represents the combined effects of soil characteristics, the land cover, the hydrologic condition, and antecedent soil moisture conditions.

Database: A collection of inter-related data that is stored in a logical collection of files and managed as a unit to serve one or more applications.

Data Plane: A grouping of geographic data such as land cover or soil type that is stored or identified separate from other data.

Dead storage: Storage in a reservoir or detention basin below the elevation of the principal spillway.

Depth-area relationship: A graphical relationship of the ratio of the watershed-averaged rainfall to a point rainfall versus the drainage area. Separate curves are usually given for selected storm durations.

Depth of runoff: An average depth of runoff assumed to be constant over the entire watershed area. Computed as the ratio of the total volume of rainfall excess to the watershed area.

Design flood: A hypothetical flood hydrograph that results from the routing of a design storm rainfall excess and a synthetic unit hydrograph. A return period is usually associated with the design flood, often the frequency of the design storm.

Design storm: A hypothetical storm event used in design. It is assumed to represent average or most likely conditions.

Deterministic methods: A class of methods that contain no random components (in contrast to stochastic methods).

Digital Elevation Model (DEM): An array of regularly spaced elevation points.

Digitizer: A device consisting of a table and a cursor with cross-hairs that is used to translate the location of map features into digital coordinates.

Dimensionless hydrograph: A hydrograph that has ordinates of the ratio of the discharge to the peak discharge and values on the abscissa of the ratio of time to the time to peak, i.e., q/q_p versus t/t_p.

Direct runoff: The total runoff hydrograph minus base flow.

Drainage density: An index of the concentration of streams in a watershed, as measured by the ratio of the total length of streams to the drainage area.

Energy grade line: The sum of the pressure, velocity, and elevation heads.

Envelope curves: Bounds defined approximately by the maximum observed values. The peak discharge envelope curve, which is placed on a graph of peak discharge versus drainage area, is the upper bound of observed peak discharges for any drainage area. The envelope curves are usually established for homogeneous hydrologic regions.

Exceedence probability: The probability that the magnitude of the random variable (e.g., annual maximum flood peak) will be equalled or exceeded in any one time period, often one year.

Field: A character or group of characters that is a component of a record. Each field holds a single data value such as a character representing a land cover type or a group of characters that name a stream.

File: A source from which data can be obtained or a destination to which data can be sent.

Froude number: The ratio of inertia forces to gravity forces, usually expressed as the ratio of the flow velocity to the square root of the product of gravity and a linear dimension, i.e., $V/(gL)^{0.5}$. The Froude (rhymes with food) number is used in the study of fluid motion.

Generalized skew: A skew value derived by integrating skew values obtained from many sites in a region.

Hierarchical File Structure: A data management system structured in the form of a tree. The tree structure minimizes the steps involved when a large number of files, each storing a different type of data, must be traversed to access a specific data item. A field in the first file accessed, analogous to the tree trunk, points to the second file to be accessed, analogous to the correct branch, etc.

Histogram: A graph that shows the frequency of occurrence of a random variable within class intervals as a function of the value of the random variable. The frequency is the ordinate and the value of the random variable is the abscissa, which is divided into class intervals.

Historically adjusted moments: Values of the mean, standard deviation, and skew adjusted using historic flood information.

Hydraulic grade line: The sum of the pressure and elevation heads. The energy grade line minus a velocity head.

Hydraulic radius: The ratio of the cross-sectional area of flow to the wetted perimeter.

Hydrograph: A graph of the time distribution of discharge at a point on a stream.

Hydrologic cycle: A representation of the physical processes that control the distribution and movement of water.

Hyetograph: A time-dependent function of the rainfall intensity versus time.

Index-flood method: A peak discharge estimation method that quantifies a peak discharge for a specific exceedence probability by the product of a peak discharge estimated with a regression equation for the index flood and an index ratio.

Infiltration: The process of water entering the upper layers of the soil profile.

Initial abstractions: The portion of the rainfall that occurs prior to the start of direct runoff.

Instantaneous unit hydrograph: The hydrologic response of the watershed to 1-cm of rainfall excess concentrated in an infinitesimally small period of time.

Intensity: Volume per unit time.

Intensity-duration-frequency curve: A graph or mathematical equation that relates the rainfall intensity, storm duration, and exceedence frequency.

Isohyet: A line on a map of equal rainfall depth for the same duration, usually the duration of a storm.

Land cover/land use: Most conventional definitions have land cover relating to the type of feature on the surface of the earth such as roof-top, asphalt surface, grass and trees. Land use associates the cover with a socio-economic activity such as factory or school, parking lot or highway, golf course or pasture and orchard or forest. In hydrologic modeling, the terms land cover and land use are often used interchanagably because the inputs to the models require elements from each definition.

Least squares regression: A procedure for fitting a mathematical function such that the sum of the squares of the differences between the predicted and measured values are minimized.

Level of significance: A statistical concept that equals the probability of making a specific error, namely of rejecting the null hypothesis when, in fact, it is true. The level of significance is used in statistical decision making.

Maximum likelihood estimation: A mathematical method of obtaining the parameters of a probability distribution by optimizing a likelihood function that yields the most likely parameters based on the sample information.

Method-of-moments estimation: A method of fitting the parameters of a probability distribution by equating them to the sample moments.

Moving-average smoothing: A statistical method of smoothing a time or space series in which the nonsystematic variation is eliminated by averaging adjacent measurements. The smoothed series represents the systematic variation.

Nonhomogeneity: A characteristic of time or space series that indicates the moments are not constant throughout the length of the series.

Nonparametric statistics: A class of statistical tests that do not require assumptions about the population distribution.

Order-theory statistics: A class of statistical methods in which the analysis is based primarily on the order relations among the sample values.

Orifice equation: An equation based on Bernoulli's equation that relates the discharge through an orifice to the area of the orifice and the depth of water above the center of the orifice.

Outlier: An extreme event in a data sample that has been proven using statistical methods to be from a population different from the remainder of the data.

Parametric statistics: A class of statistical tests in which their derivation involved explicit assumptions about the underlying population.

Partial-duration frequency analysis: A frequency method that uses all floods of record above a threshold to derive a probability function to represent the data.

Pearson correlation coefficient: An index of association between paired values of two random variables. The value assumes a linear model.

Physically-based Hydrologic Models: That family of models that estimate runoff by simulating the behavior and watershed linkages of individual processes such as infiltration, depression and detention storage, overland and channel flows, etc.

Pixel: An array of picture elements on a color screen of a personal computer.

Plotting position formula: An equation used in frequency analysis to compute the probability of an event based on the rank of the event and the sample size.

Power model: A mathematical function that relates the criterion (dependent) variable, y, to the predictor (independent) variable,x, raised to an exponent, i.e., $y = ax^b$.

Precision: A measure of the nonsystematic variation. It is the ability of an estimator to give repeated estimates that are close together.

Probability paper: A graph paper in which the ordinate is the value of a random variable and the abscissa is the probability of the value of the random variable being equaled or exceeded. The nature of the probability scale depends on the probability distribution.

Rainfall excess: The portion of rainfall that causes direct flood runoff. It equals the total rainfall minus the initial abstraction and losses.

Random Access: Access to stored data in which the data can be referred to in any order whatever, instead of just in the order in which they are stored.

Raster Database: A method for displaying and storing geographic data as a rectangular array of characters where each character represents the dominant feature, such as a land cover or soil type, in a grid cell at the corresponding location on a map.

Rating curve: A graph or mathematical equation that relates the stage (h) and discharge (q), often expressed with a power model form, $q = ah^b$.

Real-time modeling: Hydrologic modeling in which a calibrated model is used with data for a storm event in progress to make predictions of streamflow for the remainder of the storm event.

Record: A string of characters or groups of characters (fields) that are treated as a single unit in a file.

Representative Channel Cross-Section: A cross-section that is selected for use in a model because the flow characteristics through that section are considered to be typical or representative of the flow conditions along a given length of a river or stream.

Reservoir routing: Mathematical relations used to calculate outflow from a reservoir.

Return period: A concept used to define the average length of time between occurrences in which the value of the random variable is equaled or exceeded.

Risk: The probability that an event of a given magnitude will be equaled or exceeded within a specific period of time.

Scanner: A device that measures the light passing through or the reflectance of light from a map or other document to convert the data into a computer compatible raster format file. Subsequent operations can then translate the raster data into vector formats, land cover files, etc.

SCS County Soil Map: A book prepared by the Soil Conservation Service of the USDA that describes and discusses the soil related environment and presents maps showing the distribution of soil characteristics for a county.

S-hydrograph: The cumulative hydrograph that results from adding an infinite number of T-hour unit hydrographs, each lagged T-hours.

Sheet flow: Shallow flow on the watershed surface that occurs prior to the flow concentrating into rills.

Skew: The third statistical moment, with the mean and variance being the first and second statistical moments. The skew is a measure of the symmetry of either data or a population distribution, with a value of zero indicating a symmetric distribution.

Slope-area method: A method of estimating discharge rates using basic equations of hydraulics, such as Manning's equation and the continuity equation.

Spearman correlation coefficient: An index of association between paired values of two random variables. It is computed using the ranks of the data rather than the sample values. It is the nonparametric alternative to the Pearson correlation coefficient.

Specific energy: The total energy head measured above the channel bed. The sum of the velocity head and the depth of flow.

Stage-storage-discharge relationships: A relationship between stage, storage, and discharge used in storage routing methods. It is usually computed from the stage-storage and stage-discharge relationships.

Standard error: A measure of the sampling variation of a statistic.

Standard error of estimate: The standard deviation of the residuals in a regression analysis. It is based on the number of degrees of freedom associated with the errors.

Synthesis: The term means "To put together" and is applied to the problem of hydrologic estimation using a known model (see analysis).

Synthetic unit hydrograph: A unit hydrograph not directly based on measured rainfall and runoff data.

TIGER/Line Files: Topologically Integrated Geographically Encoding and Referencing (TIGER) system available on CD-ROM from the U.S. Bureau of Census. The files store vector segments that when connected form line features such as streets and streams. The files also provide the names of the individual streets and streams and the street addresses between intersections.

Time-area curve: The relationship between runoff travel time and the portion of the watershed that contributes runoff during that travel time.

Time of concentration: The time required for a particle of water to flow from the hydraulically most distant point in the watershed to the outlet or design point.

Unit peak discharge: The peak discharge per unit area, with units of $m^3/sec/km^2$.

Vector Database: A method for displaying and storing geographic data as a distribution of vector segments that, when connected, form polygons that enclose homogeneous areas such as a defined land cover or form lines representing features such as roads or streams.

Water year: October 1 to September 30, with the water year number taken as the calendar year of the January 1 to September 30 period.

Weighted skew: An estimate of the skew based on both the station skew and a regionalized value of skew.

Wetted perimeter: The length of a cross section normal to flow in which the water is in contact with the stream bed or banks.

Work Station: A combination of hardware and software normally used by one person to interact with a computer system and perform computer supported tasks.

Zero-flood records: Annual maximum flood records that include zero values or values below a threshold.

References

1. AASHTO, 1991.

Model Drainage Manual. AASHTO,

Washington, D.C.

2. American Society of Civil Engineers, 1960.

"Design Manual for Storm Drainage."

New York.

3. Ang, A.H. and Tang, W.H., 1984.

Probability Concepts in Engineering Planning and Design, Volume II -Decision, Risk, and Reliability.

Wiley and Sons, New York.

4. Anrenucci, J.C., Brown, K., Croswell, P.L., Kevany, M.J., and Accher, H., 1991.

Geographic Information Systems - A Guide to the Technology.

Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.

5. Arnoff, S., 1990.

Geographic Information Systems: A Management Perspective.

WDL Publications, Ottawa.

6. Bao, Y., Tung, Y.K., and Hasfurther, V.R., 1987.

Evaluation of Uncertainty in Flood Magnitude Estimation on Annual Expected Damage Costs of Hydraulic Structures.
Water Res. Res, 23(11), 2023-2029.

7. Beard, Leo R., 1962.

"Statistical Methods in Hydrology." U. S. Army Engineer District,

Corps of Engineers, Sacramento, California.

8. Benson, M.A., 1962.

"Evolution of Methods for Evaluating the Occurrence of Floods."

U.S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 1580-A.

9. Bernier, J.M., 1987.

Elements of Bayesian Analysis of Uncertainty in Hydrological Reliability and Risk Models, in Engineering

Reliability and Risk in Water Resources (L. Duckstein and E.J. Plate, eds.).

Martinus Nijhoff Publishers, Boston, 405-422.

10. Condes de la Torre, A., 1992.

Operation of Hydrologic Data - Collection Stations by the U.S. Geological Survey in 1991.
USGS Open File Report 92-172.

11. Crippen, J.R., 1982.
"Envelope Curves for Extreme Flood Events." J. Hydraulic Engineering,
ASCE, Vol. 108(HY10): 1208-1212, Oct.

12. Crippen, J.R. and Bue, C.D., 1977.
Maximum Floodflows in the Conterminous United States,
U.S.G.S. Water-Supply Paper 1887, USGPO.

13. Dalrymple, T., 1960.
"Flood Frequency Analysis."
U. S. Geological Survey, Water Supply Paper 1543-A.

14. Dawdy, D.R., Lichty, R.W., and Bergman, J.M., 1972.
"A Rainfall-Runoff Model for Estimation of Flood Peaks for Small Drainage Basins."
U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper No. 506-B.

15. Fletcher, J.E., Huber, A.L., Haws, F.W., and Clyde, C.G., 1977.
"Runoff Estimates for Small Rural Watersheds and Development of a Sound Design Method." Volume I, Research Report No. FHWA-RD-77-159 and Volume II, Recommendation for Preparing Design Manuals and Appendices B, C, D, E, F, G and H, Rep. No. FHWA-RD-77-160,
Federal Highway Administration, Offices of Research & Development, Washington, D.C., October.

16. Guphill, S.C., 1988
A Process for Evaluating Geographic Information Systems,
USGS Open File Report 88-105.

17. Hare, G.S., 1970.
"Effects of Urban Development on Storm Runoff Rates," in Proceedings of a Seminar on Urban Hydrology.
Hydrologic Engineering Center, Davis, CA.

18. Hart, G.C., 1982.
Uncertainty Analysis, Loads, and Safety in Structural Engineering.
Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

19. HEC, 1985.
"HEC-1, Flood Hydrograph Package, Computer Program 723-X6-L2010."
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Hydrologic Engineering Center, January.

20. Huber, W.C. and Dickinson, R.E., 1988.
"Storm Water Management Model, Version 4 - Part A: User's Manual." EPA/600/3-88/001a,
NTIS, Springfield, VA, June.

21. Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1987.

Remote Sensing Technologies and Spatial Data Applications.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Research Document No 29.

22. Interagency Advisory Committee of Water Data, 1982.

Guidelines for Determining Flood Flow Frequency, Bulletin 17B.

USGS, Reston, VA.

23. Jackson, N.M., 1976.

"Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in North Carolina."

U.S. Geological Survey, Water Resources Investigations, 76-17.

24. Jennings, M.E. and Benson, M.A., 1969.

"Frequency Curves for Annual Flood Series with Some Zero Events or Incomplete Data."

Water Resources Research, 5(1): 276-280.

25. Jennings, M.E., Thomas, Jr., W.O., and Riggs, H.C., 1994.

Nationwide Summary of U.S. Geological Survey Regional Regression Equations for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods for Ungaged Sites, 1993.

USGS Water-Resources Investigations Report WRI 94-4002, Reston, VA.

26. Johnson, F.L. and Chang, F.F.M., 1984.

Drainage of Highway Pavements, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 12,

FHWA-TS-84-202, Washington, D.C.

27. Kite, G.W., 1988.

Frequency and Risk Analyses in Hydrology.

Water Resources Publications, Litteton, CO.

28. Lane, L.J., 1983.

Transmission Losses. Chapter 19 of the SCS National Engineering Handbook, Section 4,

USDA, Washington, D.C.

29. Langbein, W.A., 1949.

"Annual Floods and the Partial Duration Flood Series." Trans., American Geophysical Union, Vol. 30, Dec.

30. Lee, H-L. and Mays, L.W., 1983.

Improved Risk and Reliability Model for Hydraulic Structures.

Water Res. Res., 19(6), 1415-1422.

31. Leipnik, M.R., Kemp, K.K., Loaiciga, H.A., 1993.

"Implementation of GIS for Water Resources Planning and Management."

ASCE J. of Water Resources Planning and Management, March/April.

32. Liscum, F. and Massey, B.C., 1980.

"Technique for Estimating the Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in the Houston, Texas, Metropolitan Area."

U.S. Geological Survey, Water Resources Investigations 80-17, Austin, Texas.

33. McCuen, R.H., 1989.

Hydrologic Analysis and Design.

Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J.

34. McCuen, R.H., 1993.

Microcomputer Applications in Statistical Hydrology.

Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J.

35. Normann, J.M., Houghtalen, R.J., and Johnston, W.J., 1985.

Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts. Hydraulic Design Series No. 5,

Federal Highway Administration Report No. FHWA-IP-85-15, McLean, VA.

36. Pilon, P.J. and Harvey, K.D., 1992.

Consolidated Frequency Analysis (CFA) Reference Manual. Environment

Canada, Ottawa.

37. Plate, E.J., and Duckstein, L., 1988.

Reliability-Based Design Concepts in Hydraulic Engineering.

Water Res. Bull., 24(2), 235-245.

38. Ponce, V.M., 1989.

Engineering Hydrology: Principles and Practices.

Prentice-Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, N.J.

39. Potter, W.D., 1961.

"Peak Rates of Runoff from Small Watersheds."

Bureau of Public Roads, Hydraulic Design Series, No. 2.

40. Ragan, R.M., 1991.

A Geographic Information System for State-wide Hydrologic Modeling with the SCS-TR-20.

Report FHWA/MD-91/02, NTIS, Springfield, VA.

41. Riggs, H.C., 1968.

"Some Statistical Tools in Hydrology,"

Techniques of Water Resources Investigations of the United States, Geological Survey, Book 4, Chapter A1.

42. Roesner, L.A., Aldrich, J.A., and Dickinson, R.E., 1988.

"Storm Water Management Model, Version 4 - Part B: EXTRAN Addendum." EPA/600/3-88/001b, NTIS,

Springfield, VA, June.

43. Sanders, T.G. (Editor), 1980.

"Hydrology for Transportation Engineers."

U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

44. Sauer, V.B., Thomas, W. O., Stricker, V. A., and Wilson, K. V., 1983.
"Flood Characteristics of Urban Watersheds in the United States."
U.S. Geological Survey, Water Supply Paper 2207, Washington, D.C.

45. Schroeder, E.E. and Massey, B.C., 1970.
"Technique for Estimating the Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Texas."
U.S. Geological Survey, Water Resources Investigations 77-110.

46. Snyder, F.M.,1938.
"Synthetic Unit Graphs." Trans., American Geophysical Union, Vol. 19.

47. Soil Conservation Service, 1972.
"Soil Conservation Service National Engineering Handbook." Section 4, HYDROLOGY,
U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service, Washington, D.C.

48. Soil Conservation Service, 1984.
Technical Release No. 20.
U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C.

49. Soil Conservation Service, 1986.
"Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds." Technical Release No., 55,
U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C.

50. Star, J. and Estes, J., 1990.
Geographic Information Systems - An Introduction.
Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

51. Stricker, V.A. and Sauer, V.B., 1982.
"Techniques for Estimating Flood Hydrographs for Ungaged Urban Watersheds."
U.S. Geological Survey, Open File Report 82-365, April.

52. Tennessee Valley Authority, 1961.
Floods and Flood Control,
Tech. Report No. 26, Knoxville.

53. Thomas, B.E., Hjalmarson, H.W., and Waltemeyer, S.D., 1993.
Methods Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in the Southwestern United States.
U.S.G.S. Open File Report 93-419, Tucson, AZ, Oct.

54. Thomas, Jr., W.O., 1985.
"A Uniform Technique for Flood Frequency Analysis." J. Water Resources Planning and Management,
ASCE, Vol. III(3): 321-330.

55. Thomas, W.O., 1987.
"The Role of Flood-Frequency Analysis in the U.S. Geological Survey," in Applications of Frequency and Risk in Water Resources

(V.P. Singh, ed.). D. Reidel Publ. Co., pp 463-484.

56. Tung, Y-K. and Mays, A.M., 1980.
Risk Analysis for Hydraulic Design. J. Hyd. Div.,
ASCE, 106(HY5), 893-913.

57. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, 1973.
"HEC-1 Flood Hydrograph Package, Users Manual."
Hydrological Engineering Center.

58. U.S. Weather Bureau, 1961.
"Rainfall Frequency Atlas of the United States." Technical Paper No., 40,
U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC.

59. Vonderohe, A.P., Travis, L., Smith, R.L., and Tsai, V., 1993.
"Adaption of Geographic Information Systems for Transportation." Report 359,
Transportation Research Board, Washington, D.C.

60. Wahl, K.L., Thomas, W.O., Jr., and Hirsch, R.M., 1995.
The Stream-Gaging Program of the U.S. Geological Survey,
U.S.G.S. Circular 1123, Reston, VA.

61. Yen, B.C., 1987.
Reliability of Hydraulic Structures Possessing Random Loading and Resistance, in Engineering Reliability and Risk in Water Resources
(L. Duckstein and E.J. Plate, eds.). 95-113.

62. Yen, B.C. and Chow, V.T., 1983.
"Local Design Storm." Volume I-IV, Report Nos. FHWA-RD-82-063 to 066, Federal Highway Administration,
Office of Research and Development, Washington, D.C., May.

63. Young, G.K. and Krolak, J.S., 1992.
"HYDRAIN - Integrated Drainage Design System, Version 4.0." FHWA-RD-92-061, NTIS,
Springfield, VA, March.

64. Woodward, D.E., 1983.
Hydraulic Design of a Two-Stage Risers by a Shortcut Method.
Engineering Technical Note No. 28, Soil Conservation Service,
Bromall, PA.

Go to Table of Contents

1. Report No.	2. Government Accession No.	3. Recipient's Catalog No.
FHWA-SA-96-067		

4. Title and Subtitle	5. Report Date
HIGHWAY HYDROLOGY HYDRAULIC DESIGN SERIES NO. 2	March 1989
	6. Performing Organization Report No.
7. Author(s)	**8. Performing Organization Report No.**
Richard H. McCuen, Peggy A.Johnson, Robert M.Ragan	
9. Performing Organization Name and Address	**10. Work Unit No. (TRAIS)**
Department of Civil Engineering University of Maryland College Park, MD 20742-3021	**11. Contract or Grant No.** DTFH61-92-C-00082
12. Sponsoring Agency Name and Address	**13. Type of Report and Period Covered**
Federal Highway Administration Office of Technology Applications, HTA-20 Office of Engineering, HNG-31 400 Seventh Street Washington, D.C. 20590	FINAL REPORT October 1992-June 1996
	14. Sponsoring Agency Code

15. Supplementary Notes

FHWA COTR: Tom Krylowski
Technical Assistance: Philip Thompson, Abbi Ginsberg, Arlo Waddoups

16. Abstract

This manual is a revision of Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 19. The manual discusses the physical processes of the hydrologic cycle that are important to highway engineers and the methods that are used in the design of highway drainage structures. Hydrologic methods of primary interest are frequency analysis for analyzing gaged data, empirical methods for peak discharge estimation, and hydrograph analysis and synthesis. The peak discharge methods discussed include regression equations, the Rational method, and the SCS Graphical method. Assessment of the effects of urban development is discussed. Hydrologic methods used in arid lands are presented. Methods for the planning and design of detention basins are detailed. Channel and storage routing procedures commonly used in hydrologic analyses for highway drainage are presented. The basics of geographic information systems are presented because of the increasing use of GIS on highway projects. All computations are performed using SI units.

17. Key Words		18. Distribution Statement	
Hydrology, frequency analysis, peak discharge estimation, hydrograph development, channel and storage routing, urban and arid lands hydrology, stormwater management, GIS.		This document is available to the public through the National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 22151	
19. Security Classif. (of this report)	**20. Security Classif. (of this page)**	**21. No. of Pages**	**22. Price**
Unclassified	Unclassified	357	

Go to Table of Contents